

Camtasia Studio 4.0

Help File E-Book

By TechSmith Corporation

Camtasia Studio 4.0 License Agreement

TechSmith Corporation provides this manual "as is", makes no representations or warranties with respect to its contents or use, and specifically disclaims any expressed or implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. TechSmith Corporation reserves the right to make changes to the content of this manual, at any time, without obligation to notify any person or entity of such changes.

The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement. The software may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of the agreement. It is against the law to copy the software on any medium except as specifically allowed in the license agreement.

No part of this manual may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or information storage and retrieval systems, for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use, without the express written permission of TechSmith Corporation.

TechSmith Corporation reserves the right to make changes to the content of this manual, at any time, without obligation to notify any person or entity of such changes.

Copyright © 1990-2006 TechSmith Corporation.

All Rights Reserved. Printed in the United States of America.

Trademarks

TechSmith, SnagIt, Camtasia Studio and Morae are registered trademarks. EnSharpen and DubIt are trademarks of TechSmith Corporation.

All other registered trademarks and trademarks are the property of their respective companies. All rights reserved.

Camtasia Studio Welcome Options	12
Record the Screen with the Recording Wizard.....	14
Select Screen Region.....	15
Select Window.....	16
Recording Options.....	17
Audio Settings	18
Tune Volume Input Levels.....	19
Choose Camera Settings	20
Begin Recording.....	21
After you Record.....	22
Save the Recording.....	23
Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Add-In	24
Record the PowerPoint Presentation with the Add-In.....	25
PowerPoint Add-In Options.....	27
PowerPoint Add-In Options	28
PowerPoint Add-In Watermark Options.....	30
Advanced Video and Audio Setup.....	31
Turn the PowerPoint Add-In On or Off	33
Turn On the PowerPoint Add-In Within Camtasia Studio.....	33
Turn Off the PowerPoint Add-In Within Camtasia Studio.....	33
How Camtasia Studio's Applications Work Together	34
Record.....	36
Edit.....	37
Produce	38
Share	39
Camtasia Studio Interface Overview.....	40
Main Toolbar.....	41
Timeline View	42
Timeline Toolbar.....	43
Storyboard View	44
The Clip Bin.....	45
Changing the View of the Clip Bin.....	45
Adding Clips that are in the Clip Bin to the Timeline	46
Extract an AVI and WMV from a CAMREC Recording	46
Import Media.....	47
Clips & Elements on the Timeline	48
The Task List and the Task Area	54
The Preview Playback Area	55

Import a Camtasia Studio Project.....	57
Export a Camtasia Studio Project	58
View Timeline Preview in Full Screen Mode	59
Basic Timeline Edits	60
Use the Timeline to Search the Video	61
Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track	62
Make a Timeline Selection	63
Make a Cut on the Timeline	64
Make a Split on the Timeline	65
Add a Marker	66
Drag a Clip or Element to a New Location	67
Remove a Clip from the Timeline	68
Delete an Element from the Timeline	69
Extend the Frame of a Video Clip	70
Mark-In or Mark-Out a Clip or Element	71
Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip	72
Save the Current Frame as an Image	73
Basic Audio Edits	74
Adjust the Volume for the Entire Timeline	74
Fade In Audio	75
Fade Out Audio	75
Increase the Volume Up	76
Decrease the Volume Down.....	76
Replace Audio with Silence.....	77
Save Audio Track as an MP3 or WAV File.....	77
Add Special Effects and Enhancements	78
Title Clips.....	79
Create a Title Clip	80
Record Camera: Add a Picture-in-Picture Recording	81
Record a Picture-in-Picture (PIP) Video Clip.....	82
Picture-in-Picture Properties Options	83
Voice Narration.....	85
Voice Narration	86
Voice Narration Options	86
Extend Current Frame	88
Modify a Picture-in-Picture Recording.....	89
Modify a Side-by-Side Picture-in-Picture Clip	90
Modify an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip.....	91
Picture-in-Picture Properties.....	92

Manage PIP Clips	93
PIP Preview	94
Preview the PIP track on top of the Video track (embedded)	95
Preview the PIP track as a floating window.....	95
Audio Enhancements	97
Apply Audio Enhancements	98
Audio Enhancement Options.....	99
Transitions	101
Callouts.....	102
Add a Callout	103
Blur a Portion of the Screen	104
Callout Properties Options.....	105
Create a New Custom Callout.....	106
Include a Flash Hot Spot in a Callout.....	107
Manage Callouts.....	108
Zoom-n-Pan.....	109
Add Zoom in and Zoom Out Key Frames.....	110
Zoom-n-Pan Properties Options.....	110
Manage Zoom-n-Pan Keyframes	111
Flash Quiz & Survey.....	112
Add a Quiz	112
Quiz Appearance and Feedback.....	113
How to Report Quiz Results	113
Add a Survey	114
Survey Appearance and Feedback	114
How to Report Survey Results	114
Question Type	115
Multiple Choice	115
Fill in the Blank	117
Short Answer Question.....	118
Question Properties.....	119
Edit Answer Details.....	120
Captions	122
Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method	123
Add Captions with the Manual Captions Method	124
Adjust the Width of the Caption Text.....	126
Overlay Captions on the Video.....	127
Place Captions Underneath the Video	128
Open Caption Toolbar & Other Options	129
Sync Text & Audio Dialog Box.....	132
Add Metadata Using the Project Properties	134
Project Information.....	135

Author Information	137
iTunes Information	138
Produce and Share the Final Video	139
Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline	140
Preview Current Settings	141
Preview Manager	142
Change the Preview Manager Display Fields	143
Recommend my Production Settings Wizard	144
How will you distribute your video?	145
Web Distribution Production Option	146
E-Mail Distribution Production Option	147
CD Distribution Production Option	148
DVD-ready Distribution Production Option	149
Hard Drive or Other Distribution Production Option:	150
iPod or iTunes	151
Produce Multiple Files	152
What Type of Content does your Timeline Include?	153
Optimize for File Size or Video Quality	154
Optimize for File Size or Audio Quality	155
Flash Templates	156
Flash Template Examples	158
Camtasia Theater and the Legacy SWF Output Flash Template Option	160
Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box)	161
Would you like to Create a Table of Contents	163
Where would you like to save your video files(s)?	164
Completing the Camtasia Studio Production Wizard	165
Web Production is Complete	167
E-mail Production is Complete	169
CD Production is Complete	170
DVD Production is Complete	172
Hard Drive Production is Complete	173
iPod or iTunes Production is Complete	174
Web: What Would You Like To Do Next?	175
Share Your Video by E-Mail	177
CD: What Would You Like To Do Next?	178
DVD: What Would You Like To Do Next?	179
Hard Drive: What Would You Like To Do Next?	180
iPod, What Would You Like To Do Next?	181

Production Presets	183
Use a Production Preset to Produce the Video.....	184
Production Preset Details	184
Create a New Production Preset.....	187
Create a Production Preset at the End of the Production Process	188
Manage Production Presets	189
Tell Me More about this File Type	191
Adobe Flash (SWF/FLV)	193
Windows Media (WMV - Streaming Format).....	195
Custom Production Wizard Settings for Normal Screen Recordings	195
Custom Production Wizard Settings for High Motion Screen & Camcorder Recordings	196
QuickTime (MOV).....	198
Audio Video Interleave (AVI) and CD-ROM Distribution	199
Audio Video Interleave (AVI) & DVD Productions	200
iPod/iTunes.....	201
MP3 Audio Only.....	201
RealMedia Streaming Media (RM)	202
Camtasia for RealPlayer (RealPlayer Plug-In(CAMV)	203
GIF Animation File (GIF)	204
Custom Production Wizard	205
How would you like to produce the video?	206
Flash Templates	207
Flash Options	209
Flash Options Video Tab	209
Flash Options PIP Tab	212
Flash Options Audio Tab	214
Flash Options Table of Contents Tab.....	215
Flash Options Controls Tab	216
Loading Movie Options.....	218
Windows Media Encoding Options.....	219
QuickTime Encoding Options.....	221
AVI Encoding Options	222
iPod Options	224
MP3 Audio Only.....	225
RealMedia Encoding Options.....	226
Camtasia for RealPlayer Plug-in Encoding Options.....	228
Camtasia for RealPlay Options Description Table	229
Animated GIF Encoding Options.....	231
Video Size	233
Video Options	235

Watermark Dialog Box.....	236
Quiz and Survey Reporting Options	238
Manifest Options.....	239
HTML Options.....	241
Marker Options	242
Produce Video	244
Production Results.....	245
Batch Produce Several Projects at One Time.....	247
Use One Production Preset for all Produced Files.....	247
Use More Than One Production Preset for all Produced Files	250
Package a Video as a Pack and Show Executable File.....	253
Pack and Show Wizard	254
Pack and Show Wizard Options	254
Player Options Description Table	255
SWF Options	255
CAMV Options.....	256
Package Video Options	257
Recorder	258
Recorder Basics.....	260
Start, Pause, Stop, and Delete a Recording	261
Record the Screen with Audio	262
Record the Screen with Camera (PIP)	263
ScreenDraw and ScreenPad.....	264
Add Annotation Effects While Recording	265
Apply a Time or Date Stamp to a Recording.....	266
Apply an Elapsed Time Stamp to a Recording	267
Apply a Computer Name or User Name Stamp to a Recording	268
Apply a Caption to a Recording.....	269
Automatically Add Highlights to Multiple Areas of the Recording	270
Highlight One Area of the Recording.....	271
Time/Date Format Dialog Box	272
Custom Time Format Symbols	273
Custom Date Format Symbols	274
System Stamp & Caption Customization Options	275
Add Cursor & Highlight Effects While Recording	277
Add the Cursor while Recording.....	278
Add the Cursor and Mouse Clicks while Recording	279
Add a Cursor Highlight to a Recording.....	280

Add a Cursor Highlight and Keystroke Clicks to a Recording	281
Add the Cursor with Mouse Clicks and Apply Cursor Sounds while Recording	282
Add a Watermark While Recording	283
Add Zoom and Pan Effects While Recording.....	284
Add an AutoPan Effect During Recording	285
Add an AutoZoom Effect During Recording	286
Add a Zoom To Effect During Recording	287
Recorder Capture Modes	288
Recorder's Single Frame Capturing Mode	289
Time-Lapse Capture Mode	290
Set the Recorder to Time-Lapse Capture Mode	291
Time-lapse Capture Setup Options	291
Live Output Capture Mode	292
Set the Recorder to Live Output Mode	293
MenuMaker	294
Welcome to MenuMaker	295
MenuMaker Welcome Options	296
Create a MenuMaker Project	298
Choose a MenuMaker Template	298
Choose the Files to include on the CD	299
Enter Menu Title	300
Generate the Menu Using the Wizard	302
Create Menu Folder.....	302
Create Menu	303
Finish Menu	304
MenuMaker Options & Properties	305
Set the Display Options for my Menu using the Project Properties	306
Customize Camtasia Player Command Line Options	307
Customize Menu Using Menu Properties Tab Options	308
General Tab	309
Cursor Tab	310
List Tab	312
Content Tab	314
Content Tab File Name Field Descriptions.....	315
Content Tab Toolbar.....	316
Add Files In the Content Tab.....	317
Add a Submenu.....	319
Buttons Tab	320
Moving Content Files Within a Menu or Between Menus	322

Audio Editor	323
Theater	324
Create a Theater Flash Menu	325
Add Movies	326
Customize Controller	327
Save Project & Export Flash Menu	328
Menu Tab Overview	329
Menu Tab Options	330
General Properties Options	330
Menu Color Options	331
Menu List Options	331
Controls Tab View	333
Controls Tab Options	334
Player	336
Make Camtasia Player the Default Player	338
Technical Reference Library	339
Camtasia Studio Menu Options	340
Camtasia Studio File Menu Options	340
Camtasia Studio Edit Menu Options	342
Camtasia Studio View Menu Options	344
Camtasia Studio Play Menu Options	346
Camtasia Studio Tools Menu Options	347
Camtasia Studio Help Menu Options	348
Camtasia Studio Tools Options	349
Program Options	350
PowerPoint Options	352
Screencast.com Options	353
Upgrade Options	354
Recorder Toolbars	355
Main Toolbar	356
Change the Recorder View	357
Recorder Input Options	359
Fixed Region Dialog Box	360
Annotation Toolbar	361
Audio Toolbar	363
Cursor Toolbar	364

Zoom and Pan Toolbar	365
Camera Toolbar	367
Recorder Menu Options	368
Recorder Capture Menu Options	369
Recorder View Menu Options	370
Recorder Effects Menu Options	372
Recorder Tools Menu Options	373
Recorder Help Menu Options	374
Recorder Effects Options.....	375
Recorder Annotation Tab	376
Annotation Tab Options	376
Recorder Sound Tab	378
Recorder Cursor Tab	379
Cursor Setup Options	380
Highlight Cursor Options	381
Highlight Mouse Clicks Options	382
Recorder ScreenDraw Tab	383
Recorder Watermark Tab	384
Watermark Tab Options	385
Recorder Zoom Tab	386
Zoom Tab Options	387
Recorder Tools Options	388
Recorder Capture Tab	389
Camtasia Studio's CAMREC Files	391
Record an AVI – Not a CAMREC	391
Hardware Acceleration	392
Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Recorder	392
Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Studio's New Recording Wizard	393
Turn off Hardware Acceleration System-Wide	393
Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Specific Media Players	394
Recorder's File Name Options Button	395
Recorder Video Tab	396
Codec Setup (Video Compression)	398
Codec Configure Button	399
Recorder Audio Tab	400
Audio Format	401
Recorder Camera Tab	402
Recorder Hotkeys Tab	403
Create a Hotkey	404
Advanced Hotkeys	404
Recorder Program Tab	405

Camtasia Player Menu Options	406
Camtasia MenuMaker Menu Options	407
MenuMaker File Menu Options	408
MenuMaker Edit Menu Options	409
MenuMaker View Menu Options	410
MenuMaker Tools Menu Options	411
MenuMaker Help Menu Options.....	412
Camtasia MenuMaker Toolbar Options	413
Recorder or Player Command Line Customizations.....	415
Recorder's Command Line Customizations	416
Player Command Line Customizations	417
Player Background Color Command Line Customizations	419
Flash Player 8 Security.....	420
Contact TechSmith Technical Support.....	421
Index	423

Welcome to Camtasia Studio

Welcome to Camtasia Studio. Only Camtasia Studio offers exact video renderings of desktop activity and superior file compression in industry standard formats.



Camtasia Studio is perfect for:

- **Producing Web Site Content:** Create a video of an application and publish it on the Web with Flash.
- **Training, Education, and Distance Learning:** Capture, share and manage knowledge. Make and share how-to videos.
- Help Desk, Online Help, Help Systems: Handle error recording and reporting.
- **Desktop Monitoring:** Monitor desktop activities, process control and live content.
- **Documentation:** Preserve and archive desktop activities.
- **Conferencing:** Record, share and archive conference content.
- **CAD and Simulation:** Record and share animation, CAD designs, and annotation.

We suggest that you learn about using Camtasia Studio by visiting these helpful topics:

- **Record the Screen with the Recording Wizard**
- **Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Add-In**
- **How Camtasia Studio's Applications Work Together**
- **Camtasia Studio Interface Overview**
- **Basic Timeline Edits**
- **Basic Audio Edits**

Take the Camtasia Studio Tutorial

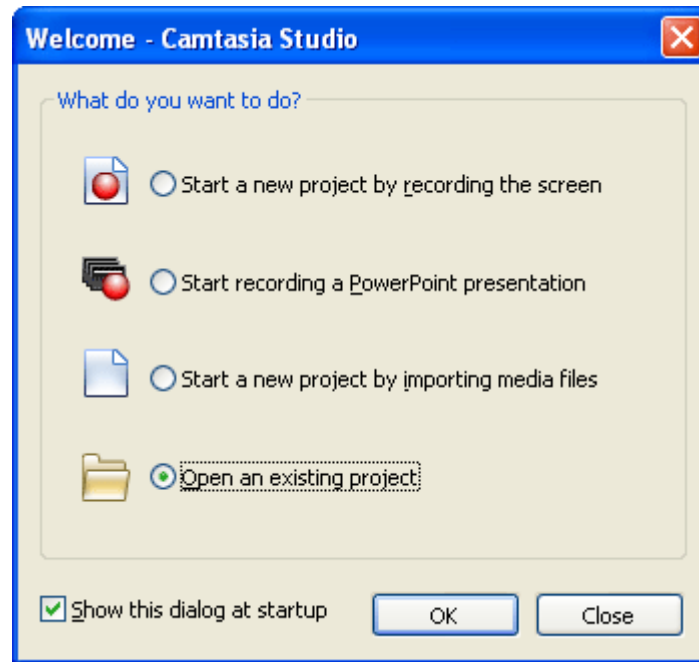
A tutorial, including media files, is included with the installation of Camtasia Studio. For this tutorial, use the TechSmith-created media files to create a Flash movie complete with Transitions, Voice Narration, Callouts, and more.

When the tutorial is completed, an attractive interactive Flash movie that contains three separate “chapters” or sections and appears in a Web-ready menu containing DVD-like navigation will have been created.

To access the *Create a Camtasia Studio Flash Movie PDF* document, open Windows Explorer. Find <C:\Program Files\TechSmith\Camtasia Studio 4\Tutorials>Create a Camtasia Studio Flash Movie.pdf>

Camtasia Studio Welcome Options

When you first start Camtasia Studio, the *Welcome* dialog box appears.



You have four options for beginning your work:

Start a new project by recording the screen

The first step in creating a Camtasia Studio project is to record the screen. Use the Recording Wizard to assist in making the recording options selections and actual screen recording. See also: **Record the Screen with the Recording Wizard**.

Start a new project by recording a PowerPoint presentation

Open a PowerPoint presentation to record. Once the PowerPoint presentation is open, use the PowerPoint Add-in to record. See also: **Record the PowerPoint Presentation with the Add-In**.

Start a new project by importing media files

Import media files into the Clip Bin. See also: **Import Media**.

Open an existing project

1. Choose the **Open an existing project** option.
2. The *Open* dialog appears.
3. Find the project.
4. Click **Open**.

See also:

Camtasia Studio Interface Overview

How Camtasia Studio's Applications Work Together

The Clip Bin

Main Toolbar

Timeline View

Import Media

Basic Timeline Edits

Basic Audio Edits

Record the Screen with the Recording Wizard

The first step in creating a Camtasia Studio project is to record the screen. This process will use the New Recording Wizard to help you make a new recording.

To begin, choose **Start > Programs > Camtasia Studio 4.0**. When the *Welcome* dialog box appears, choose the **Start a new project by recording the screen** option. The *New Recording Wizard* dialog box appears.



Select the portion of the screen to record and click **Next**.

If you chose:

Region of the screen, continue with **Select Screen Region**.

Specific Window, continue with **Select Window**.

Entire Screen, continue with **Recording Options**.

See also:

Audio Settings

Tune Volume Input Levels

Choose Camera Settings

Begin Recording

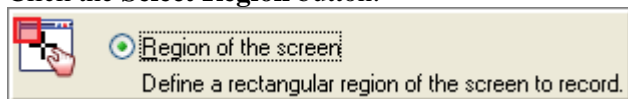
After you Record

Save the Recording

Select Screen Region

In the *Select Region* dialog box, define the region of the desktop that you want to record.

1. Click the **Select Region** button:



2. The cursor will turn into a crosshair and the wizard will minimize.
3. Drag the crosshair across the area on the desktop to select the region of the screen to record.
4. Release the mouse after the selection is made. The wizard will come back into view.
The selection is updated into the coordinates fields on this dialog box. If you are not happy with the selection, redo it by choosing the **Select Region** button once again and dragging a new selection.
5. Click **Next**. Continue with **Recording Options**.

Select Window

In the *Select Window* dialog box, define the window on the desktop that you want to record.

1. Make sure you have the window to be recorded open and on the desktop.
2. Click the **Select Window** button:

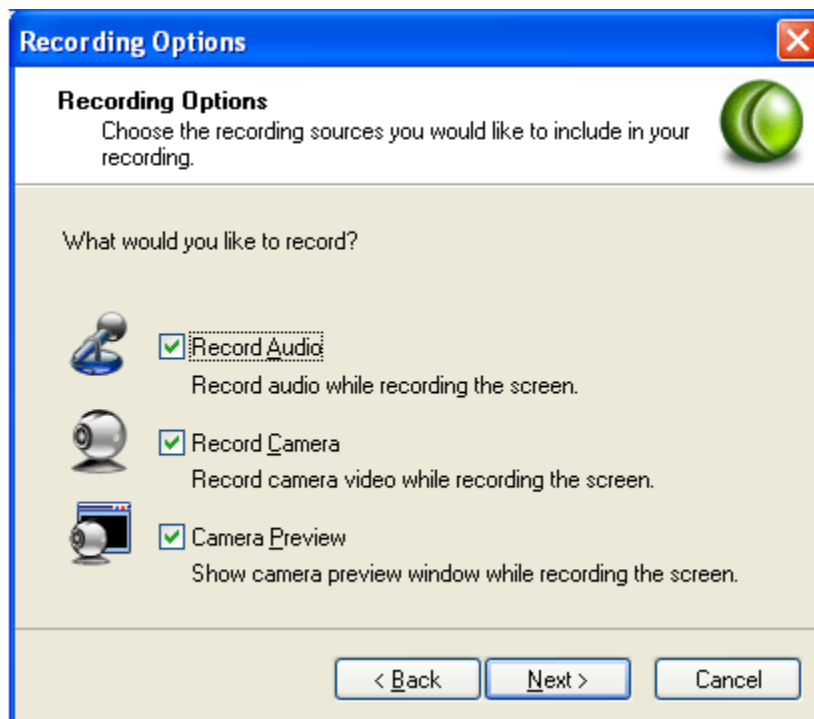


The wizard will minimize.

3. As you move the cursor around the screen, highlighted areas that are available for selection appear.
4. When you come to the window that you want to record, click on it with the mouse.
5. The wizard will come back into view.
6. The selection is updated into the coordinates fields on this dialog box. If you are not happy with the selection, redo it by choosing the **Select Window** button once again and making a new selection.
7. Click **Next**. Continue with **Recording Options**.

Recording Options

In the *Recording Options* dialog box select other streams to record.



To record audio while recording the screen, check the **Record Audio** box.

To record a web camera while recording the screen, check the **Record Camera** box.

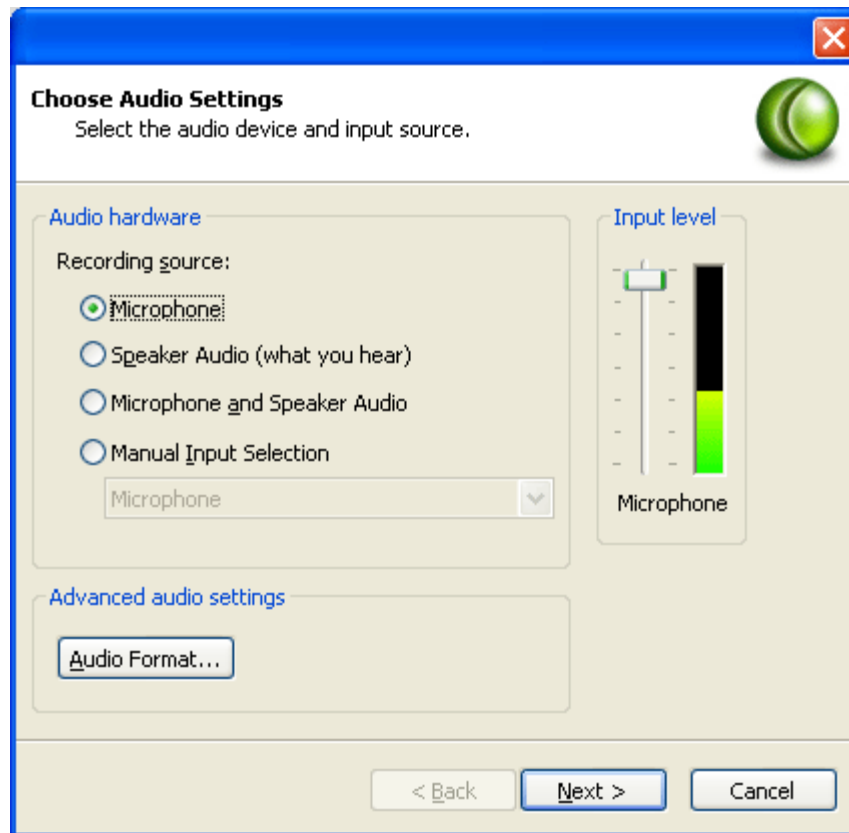
To see a preview of the web camera as you record the screen, check the **Camera Preview** box.

Click **Next**.

- If you selected Record Audio, see **Audio Settings**.
- If you selected Record Camera, see **Choose Camera Settings**.
- If you did not select audio or camera, see **Begin Recording**.

Audio Settings

In the *Choose Audio Settings* dialog box select the audio input device and the input source.

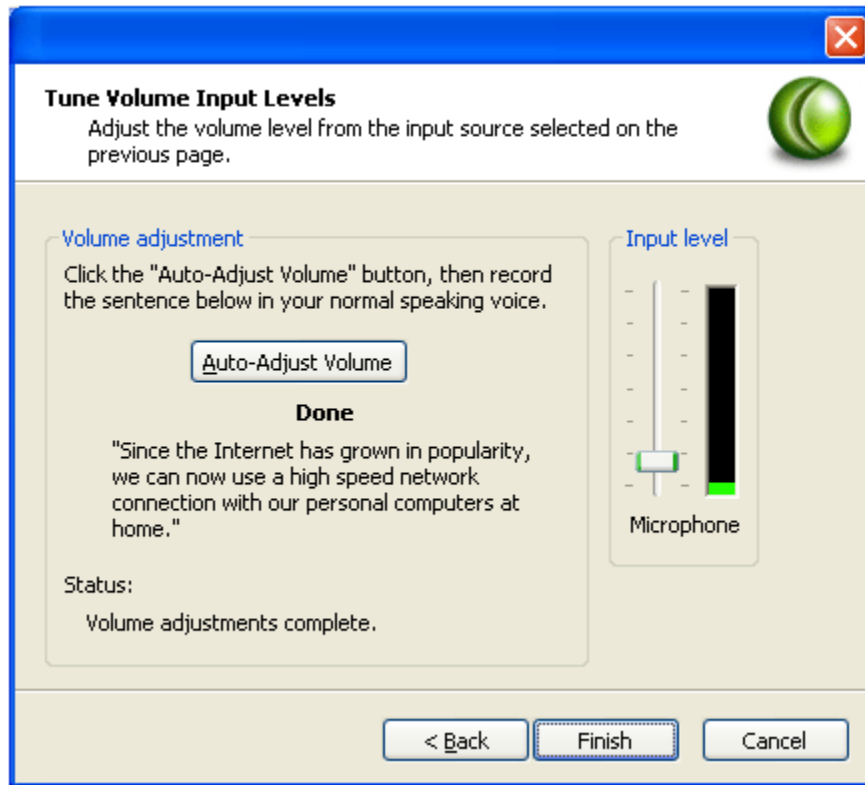


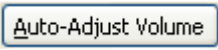
1. In the **Recording source** area, choose the audio input source. Only the input sources that are supported by the current soundcard are available for selection.
2. You should see that the audio input source is live by the activity within the **Input Level** gage. If you do not see any activity, try selecting another audio input source.
3. Adjust the Input Level slider up or down to control the overall volume level of the input. Adjust the slider so the loudest part of the audio is in the upper yellow to mid-orange range. If you are testing into the red range, the final audio may become clipped resulting in unsatisfactory results. In this case, you should adjust the slider down.
4. For more information on the **Advanced audio settings**, see **Audio Format** and **Recorder Audio Tab**.
5. When you have the correct audio options selected, click **Next**.

Continue with **Tune Volume Input Levels**.

Tune Volume Input Levels

In the *Tune Volume Input Levels* dialog box you can have Camtasia Studio automatically adjust the volume to the best level for the input source that is selected.



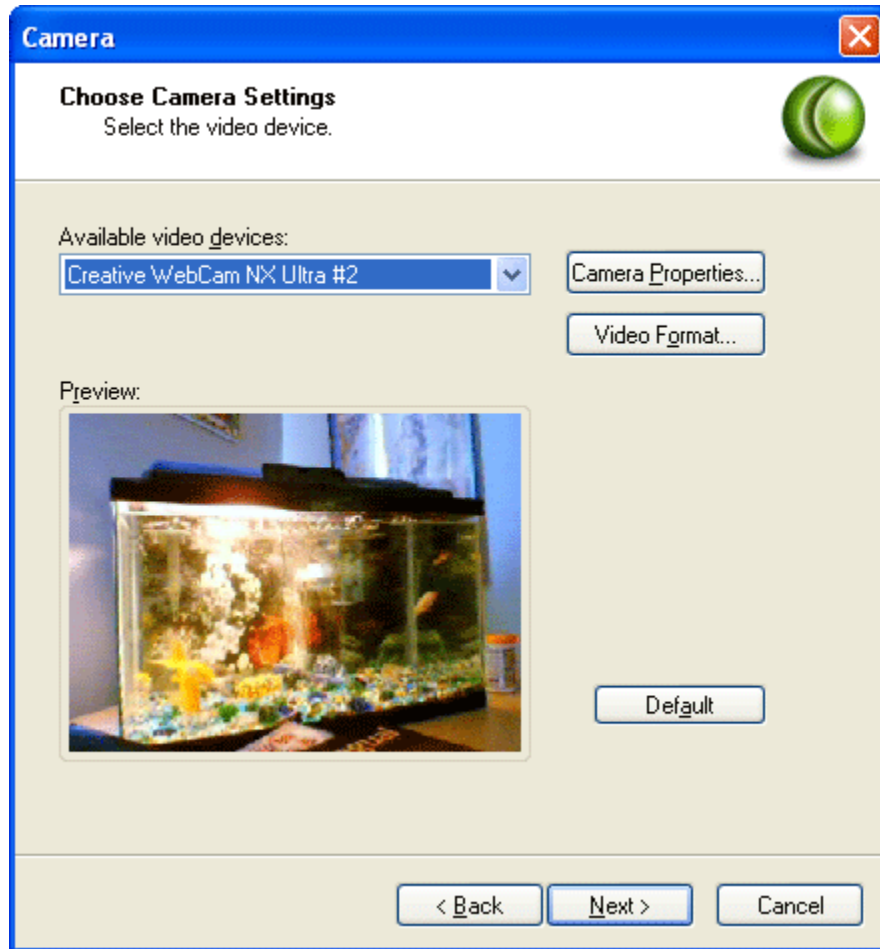
1. Click the **Auto-Adjust Volume** button .
2. A three second delay is counted down while you prepare to read the text: **Begin speaking in: 2**.
3. Once the status changes to “Go”, read the sentence in the way you will be speaking while recording.
4. After the timer runs out on the test, the volume level will automatically be adjusted for you.
5. Click **Next**.

If you selected Record Camera, continue with **Choose Camera Settings**.

If you did not select audio or camera, continue with **Begin Recording**.

Choose Camera Settings

In the *Choose Camera Settings* dialog box select the camera input device.



Each of the fields in this dialog box are explained in detail below.


1. In the Available video devices field, the correct camera device should be selected by default. If it is not, use the dropdown menu to select the camera. A preview appears letting you know that the camera is working correctly.
2. Click **Next**.

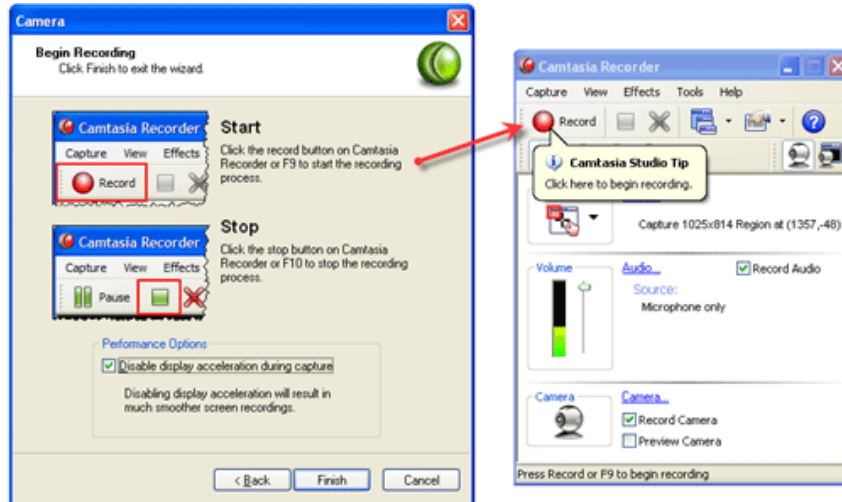
Continue with **Begin Recording**.

Name	Description & Use
Available video devices	Gives you a list of cameras that you can record from. Choose the camera device from the dropdown menu. A preview appears within the Preview window.
Camera Properties	Populated by your camera device. Consult your camera’s documentation for information on these options.
Video Format	Populated by your camera device. Consult your camera’s documentation for information on these options.
Default	Reset the camera settings to their original settings.

Begin Recording





1. Choose whether or not to enable the **Disable display acceleration during capture** option. See also: **Hardware Acceleration**.
2. Once you click **Finish**, the wizard will close and Recorder will appear. Take a moment to review the buttons that you use to control the recording.

3. Click the **Record** button  to begin recording. Or, press **F9** on the keyboard.



As you record, a small Recording toolbar stays on the screen.

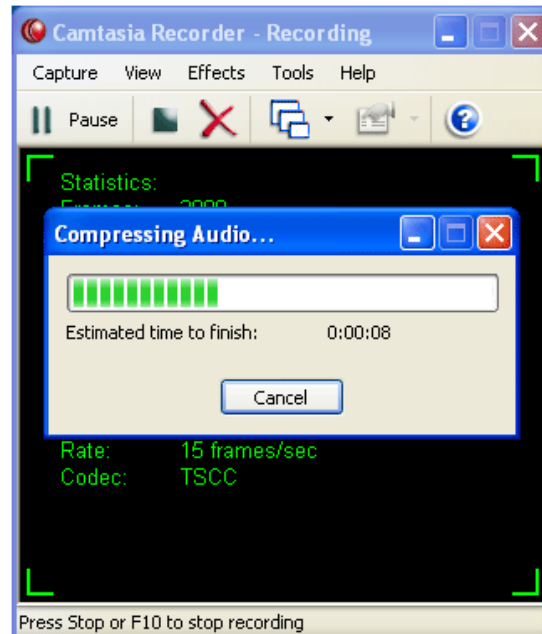


- Click **Pause**  to pause the recording.
- Click **Resume**  to begin recording once again.
- Click **Stop**  to end the recording. Or, press **F10** on the keyboard.
- Click **Delete**  to stop recording and delete what you have recorded so far.
- Use the slider to adjust the audio level up or down.

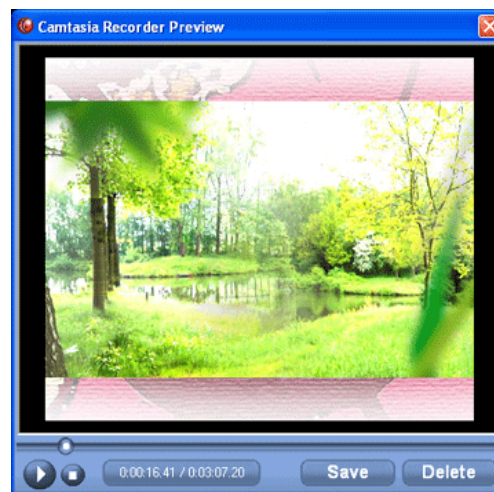
Continue with **After you Record**.




After you Record

When you have finished recording, a dialog box appears:




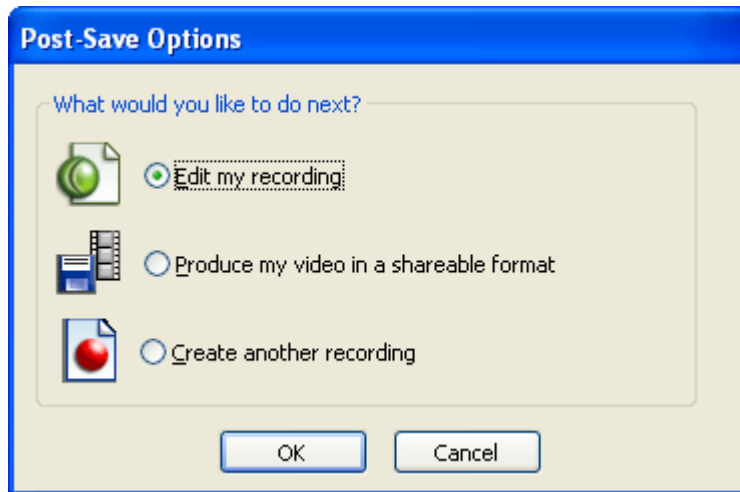
Once the compression and interleaving of the various input streams is complete, the video plays within the Recorder Preview window:



- Click **Play**  to replay the recording.
- To delete the recording, click **Delete** .
- To save the recording, click **Save** . Continue with **Save the Recording**.


Save the Recording

1. To save the recording, click **Save** .
2. A standard *Save* dialog box appears. Give this recording a name and location. Click **OK**.
3. The processing of the video begins. When the processing has completed, the *Post-Save Options* dialog box appears.
4. Make a post-save selection and click **OK**. Each option is described below.



Edit my recording

Camtasia Studio opens.

- The video is placed in the Clip Bin and on the Timeline, ready for you to edit.
- When you click **Save**  a Camtasia Studio project is saved – not a video. In order to create a video that is in a sharable file format, produce this project. Continue with **Produce and Share the Final Video**.

See also:

- **Camtasia Studio Interface Overview**
- **Basic Timeline Edits**
- **Basic Audio Edits**

Produce my video in a shareable format

The Production Wizard appears. Click the **Recommend my Production Settings** production option to step through a production process that is based on how you want to distribute or share the video.

See also:

- **Produce and Share the Final Video**
- **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**
- **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard**
- **Production Presets**
- **Custom Production Wizard**

Create another recording

Recorder appears allowing you to record another video.

Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Add-In

The Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Add-in is used to quickly and easily record and produce PowerPoint presentations right from within PowerPoint using the Camtasia Studio Recording toolbar:



With the Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Add-in you can:

- Quickly record and produce PowerPoint presentation as an interactive video that appears within a Web page.
- Save the PowerPoint recording as a Camtasia Studio project file to edit or produce it in a different video file format.
- Automatically add Markers to the recording for each slide in the PowerPoint presentation. Then, when the video is produced within Camtasia Studio in conjunction with the I would like to create an index option, the Markers appear as hyperlinks. Overall, Markers allow you to provide easy navigation points for your viewer.

See also:





- **Record the PowerPoint Presentation with the Add-In**
- **PowerPoint Add-In Options**
- **Turn the PowerPoint Add-In On or Off**

Record the PowerPoint Presentation with the Add-In

[Click here to see a PowerPoint presentation on this topic.](#)

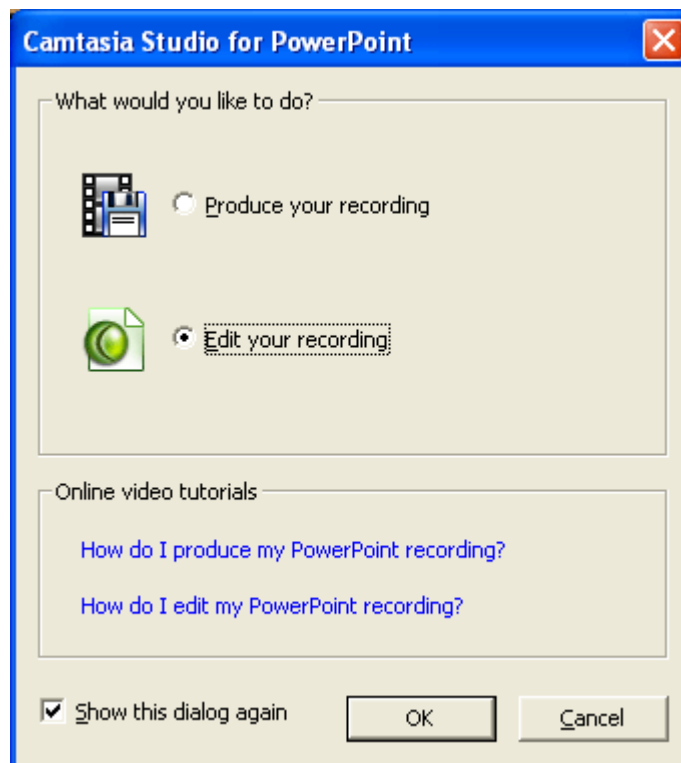
1. Start Camtasia Studio.
2. From the *Welcome* dialog box, click **Start recording a PowerPoint** presentation. The *Open Presentation to Record* dialog box appears.
3. Find the PowerPoint presentation and click **Open**. The PowerPoint presentation appears. The recording toolbar is visible:



4. To record narration or other audio, click **Record Audio** .
5. To record camera video which appears as Picture-in-Picture in the final video, click **Record Camera** .
6. To see the preview of the camera stream as you record, click **Camera Preview** .
7. To begin the recording, click **Record** . If a tip dialog box appears, read the tip and click **Close**. Also, if you are recording the camera, the camera initialization dialog will show momentarily.
8. The slide show is displayed with the actual recording in paused mode.
9. Click the **Click to begin recording** button that is located in the lower right hand corner. The recording begins immediately. Move through the PowerPoint presentation slides as you normally would, speaking into the microphone to record the Voice Narration.
10. When you reach the end of the presentation, press the **Esc** key to end the recording. A prompt asking to stop recording or continue appears. Click **Stop recording**.
11. A prompt to save your work as a Camtasia Studio recording file (camrec) appears. This is used to make changes to the video at a later time if desired. Name this project and click **Save**.

What would you like to do?

The *Post Save Options* dialog box appears giving you two options for working with the PowerPoint recording.



Produce your recording

To produce the recording in another shareable video file format, continue with **Produce and Share the Final Video**.


Edit your recording

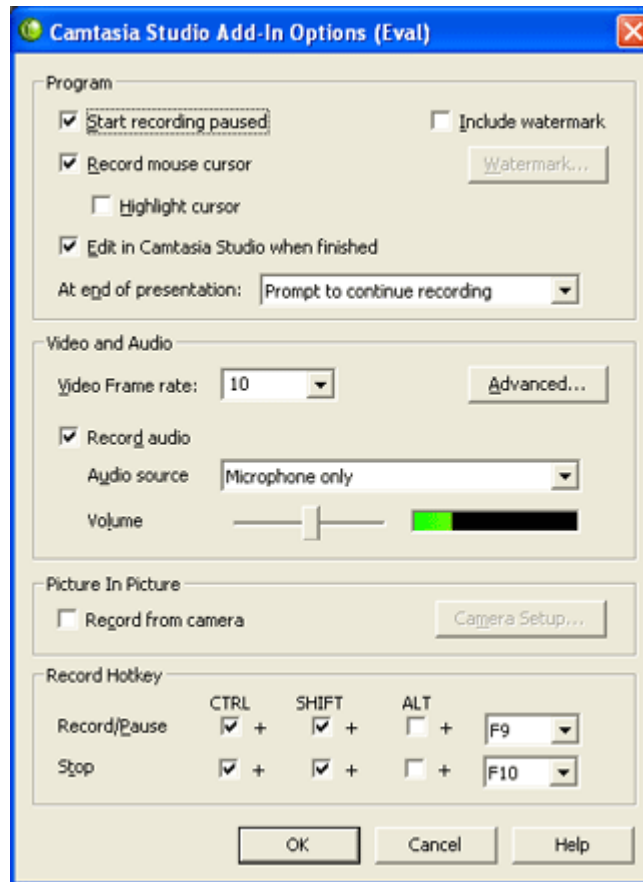
To edit the recording or add enhancements, continue with **Camtasia Studio Interface Overview**, **Basic Timeline Edits**, or **Basic Audio Edits**.

- If you already have a project open with Camtasia Studio with clips on the Timeline, the recording is added to the Clip Bin. Drag the recording from the Clip Bin and drop in on the location on the Timeline.
- If you do not have Camtasia Studio open or a project open on the Timeline, then the recording is placed in the Clip Bin and on the Timeline.

PowerPoint Add-In Options

The Camtasia Studio *Add-In Options* dialog box is used to set recording preferences and options.

Within PowerPoint, click **Options**  on the add-In toolbar. The *Add-In Options* dialog box appears.




See also:

- **PowerPoint Add-In Options**
- **PowerPoint Add-In Watermark Options**
- **Advanced Video and Audio Setup**

PowerPoint Add-In Options

This table describes each of the setup options.

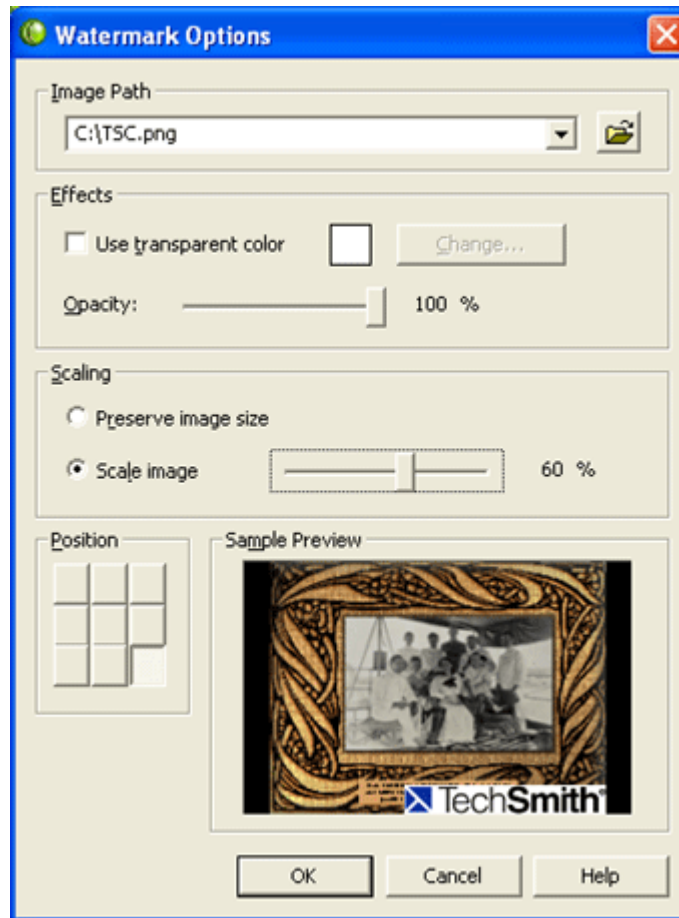
Player Option	Description
Start recording paused	<p>Start recording in paused mode. When you click the Record button and you are in Start Paused mode, this dialog box appears:</p>  <p>At this time, make any last adjustments to the microphone audio volume using the slider to adjust volume up or down. When you are ready to begin recording, click the Click to begin recording button.</p>
Record mouse cursor	Include the cursor in the recording.
Highlight Cursor	Record the cursor with a translucent yellow highlight.
Include watermark	Include a watermark in this recording. Disabled by default.
Watermark Options	Once you enable the Include watermark option, the Options button becomes enabled. The <i>Watermark</i> dialog box appears. Choose the options for the watermark. See also: PowerPoint Add-In Watermark Options .
Edit in Camtasia Studio when finished	<p>Open Camtasia Studio when the recording ends. The presentation is placed on the Timeline and in the Clip Bin.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Camtasia Studio Interface Overview • Basic Timeline Edits • Add Special Effects and Enhancements • Produce and Share the Final Video
At end of presentation	<p>Choose the option to determine what will happen once the end of the presentation is reached while recording:</p> <p>Continue recording: The recording continues until you manually stop it.</p> <p>Prompt to continue recording: A dialog box appears asking to continue recording. Click Yes.</p> <p>Stop recording: The recording will automatically stop.</p>
Video Frame rate	Select the frame rate in frames per second from the dropdown list. While more frames per second usually produce smoother videos, the resulting video file is proportionally larger and more system resources are required to record the video.
Advanced	<p>Shows the <i>Advanced Video and Audio Setup</i> dialog box used to change the video and audio codecs and set advanced options.</p> <p>Note: If you are not familiar with using these settings then do not change them. For most recordings, the default settings are sufficient.</p> <p>See also: Advanced Video and Audio Setup.</p>
Record audio	Records audio. The Audio Source option becomes enabled.

Player Option	Description
Audio Source	<p>Choose the type of audio you wish to record. In order for audio to be recorded, the Record audio option must first be enabled.</p> <p>Use the dropdown to choose to the source.</p> <p>Choose from:</p> <p>Computer speakers and microphone</p> <p>Microphone only</p> <p>Computer speakers only</p>
Volume	<p>Increase or decrease the volume level for the different sound files on the recording.</p>
Record from camera (Picture-in-Picture)	<p>Enable the Record from camera option to include picture-in-picture camera video in the PowerPoint recording.</p> <p>Click the Camera Setup button to access the camera's Audio and Video options.</p> <p>Note: These screens are populated by your camera device. Consult your camera's documentation for information on these options.</p>
Record/Pause Hotkey	<p>A hotkey is used to use keystrokes to start and stop recording.</p> <p>To change the hotkey, place a checkmark in one or more boxes below <CTRL>, <SHIFT>, or <ALT> if you want to include them in the hotkey combination for the selected action.</p> <p>Also, if desired, choose a number from the dropdown menu to include in the hotkey.</p>
OK	<p>Click OK to save changes and exit back to the PowerPoint presentation.</p>


PowerPoint Add-In Watermark Options

Using a watermark is a helpful way to stamp ownership on the intellectual property that the recording represents. As input, you can use graphic files in BMP, GIF, PNG, or .JPEG format.

Additionally, the watermark feature now supports 32-bit PNG files with per-pixel transparency information. With per-pixel transparency, the watermark is made with smooth edges and drop shadows that gradually fade into the background. These image files can be authored with any image editing tool that supports 32-bit PNG output, such as Adobe Photoshop(c) or Adobe Fireworks(c).



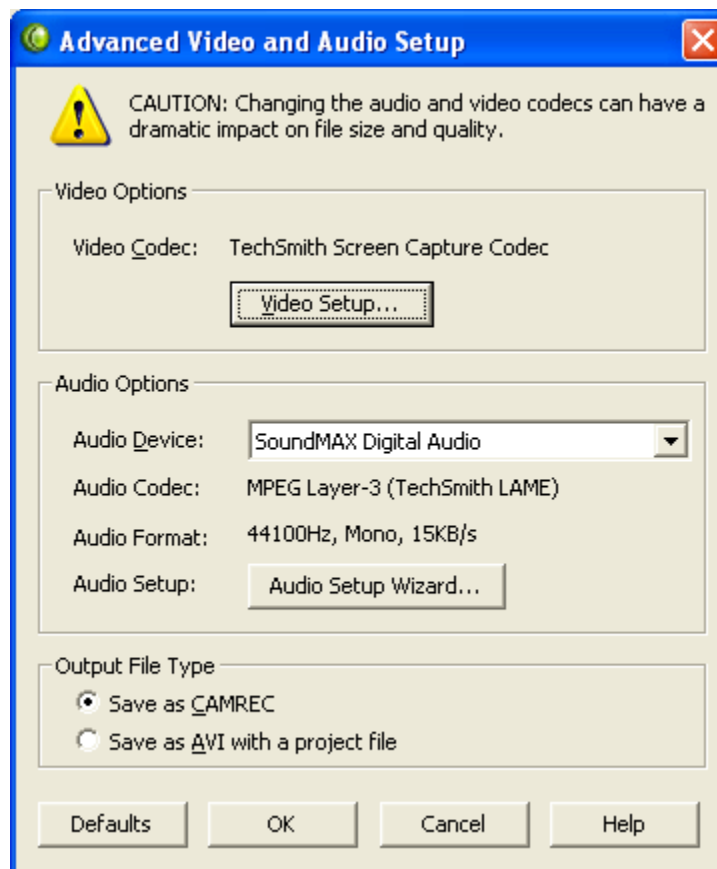
This table describes each of the *Watermark Options*.

Watermark Option	Description & Use
Image Path	Select an image to use as the watermark. Click Browse  . Select the image and click Open .
Use Transparent Color	Make part of the watermark image transparent. When selected, the areas of the watermark image that match the transparent color are hidden so that the video shows through the watermark.
Change	Select the Transparent Color to be used. The transparent color you select must match the area(s) that you want to be transparent in the watermark image. Use the Preview to verify that the transparent effect works. The preview will not show it as being transparent until the right color is selected. In order to make the background transparent, white must be selected in the <i>Color</i> dialog box.

Watermark Option	Description & Use
Opacity	Opacity is the attribute that allows the watermark to be solid (showing none of the video behind it) or to have varying degrees of transparency (the ability to see part of the video through the image). To adjust the amount of opacity that is applied to the watermark, grab the slider bar and move up toward more opaque (solid) or down toward less opaque (transparent).
Preserve Image Size	Inserts the watermark graphic at its full size and will not apply any scaling to the graphic.
Image Scale	Changes how big the watermark image appears. 100% means the watermark image is at its full size.
Positioning Cluster	Use the nine-button positioning cluster to select the position of the watermark within the video frame.

Advanced Video and Audio Setup

The *Advanced Video and Audio Setup* dialog box is used to change the video and audio codecs and set other advanced options described below.



Note: If you are not familiar with using these settings then do not change them. The default settings are good for most recordings.

Option	Description & Use
Video Codec	A read-only field. Reflects the codec that is selected in the <i>Video Compression Setup</i> dialog box. To access, click the Codec setup button. See also: Codec Setup (Video Compression) .
Video Codec button	The Codec setup button gives you access to the <i>Video Compression Setup</i> dialog box used to set video options such as the compressor or compression quality. See also: Codec Setup

Option	Description & Use
	(Video Compression).
Audio Device	The correct soundcard device should be selected by default. If it is not, use the dropdown menu to select the soundcard.
Audio Codec	A read-only field that reflects the codec selected within the <i>Audio Format</i> dialog box. See also: Audio Format .
Audio setup wizard	The Audio setup wizard gives you even more options for adjusting the audio. See also: Tune Volume Input Levels, Audio Settings, and Audio Format .
Save as CAMREC	<p>By default, a .camrec file is saved. A CAMREC video file is a proprietary TechSmith file format used to store screen and camera recording plus some meta data about the various streams in a single package</p> <p>Within Camtasia Studio, you use CAMREC files like any other video file, with the exception that they cannot be placed on the PIP track.</p> <p>It is important to note that you cannot view or play CAMREC files outside of Camtasia Studio. To share a recording, bring the CAMREC file into Camtasia Studio and produce it into a sharable video file format. Or, quickly extract the videos out of the CAMREC file. See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Camtasia Studio's CAMREC Files • Record an AVI – Not a CAMREC • Extract an AVI and WMV from a CAMREC Recording
Save as AVI with a project file	Record an AVI rather than a CAMREC recording. A project file is also saved. This allows you to create an AVI video that you can share right away and create a project file that you can later edit, enhance, and produce in a different video file format. See also: Camtasia Studio's CAMREC Files .
Defaults	To restore default settings, click the Defaults button.
OK	Click OK to save the selections and exit back to the <i>Add-In Options</i> dialog box.

Turn the PowerPoint Add-In On or Off

During the normal Camtasia Studio installation process, a dialog box appears asking you to enable the Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Add-In. The add-in consists of a small recording toolbar that is installed in PowerPoint.



The add-in is turned on by default. Remove the checkmark to turn the add-in off.

If you choose to not turn on the add-in, the add-in files are still placed on your PC during the Camtasia Studio install process. When turned off during installation, these very small files remain inactive until they are turned on, either by selecting the add-in specific options during a subsequent Camtasia Studio install process or through the add-in options found within Camtasia Studio's **Tools > Options** menu.

See also:

- **Turn On the PowerPoint Add-In Within Camtasia Studio**
- **Turn Off the PowerPoint Add-In Within Camtasia Studio**

Turn On the PowerPoint Add-In Within Camtasia Studio

The PowerPoint Add-In can be turned on at any time from within Camtasia Studio.

1. Choose **Tools** menu > **Options** > **PowerPoint** tab.
2. Check the **Enable PowerPoint Add-in** option.
3. Click **OK** to save the changes.

Turn Off the PowerPoint Add-In Within Camtasia Studio

The PowerPoint Add-In can be turned off at any time from within Camtasia Studio.

1. Choose **Tools** menu > **Options** > **PowerPoint** tab.
2. Remove the check from the **Enable PowerPoint Add-in** option.
3. Click **OK** to save changes.

How Camtasia Studio's Applications Work Together

Camtasia Studio is actually a suite of applications for recording, editing and publishing rich screen video presentations.

Although these applications are integrated with Camtasia Studio, you can also launch and use any of them separately, either from the **Tools** menu within Camtasia Studio or from the Windows Start menu: **Start > All Programs > Camtasia Studio > Applications**.

There are four main processes that need to be performed in order to make a video that is ready to share with others. These are:

- **Record**
- **Edit**
- **Produce**
- **Share**

Click a topic below to read a short overview of each of Camtasia Studio's component applications.

Camtasia Studio

Camtasia Studio's main interface is used to record the screen and import video, audio and images into a video project. You can then:

- Organize the media on the Timeline.
- Edit the audio and video tracks.
- Add Callouts, Transitions, zoom, captions, zoom and pan effects, and more.
- Produce the video in a variety of common file types.

See also:

- **Record the Screen with the Recording Wizard**
- **Camtasia Studio Interface Overview**
- **Basic Timeline Edits**
- **Basic Audio Edits**
- **Add Special Effects and Enhancements**

Camtasia Recorder

Camtasia Recorder is used to record the screen and capture cursor movements, menu selections, pop-up windows, layered windows, typing, and everything else you see on the screen. With Recorder, you can also:

- Apply real-time effects like cursor and object highlighting, graphic and image annotations, watermarks, time stamps, captioning and audible mouse clicks.
- Move in for a closer look with zoom and pan effects.
- Use ScreenDraw, included in Recorder, to draw on the desktop while you record a video.
- Use ScreenPad, Recorder's annotation feature, to add Callouts, logos and graphics as you record the video.

See also:

- **Record the Screen with the Recording Wizard**
- **Recorder Basics**
- **Add Annotation Effects While Recording**
- **Add Cursor & Highlight Effects While Recording**
- **Recorder Capture Modes**

Camtasia Audio Editor

Camtasia Audio Editor is used to add voice annotations and sound effects to explain or enhance the video production. With Audio Editor, you can also:

- Record audio for an image file.
- Create a plain audio file.
- Add to, modify, or delete an existing video soundtrack.
- Extend the length of a video or image to incorporate an audio track of any length.

See also: **Audio Editor**.

Camtasia MenuMaker

Camtasia MenuMaker is used to create an attractive menu from which to launch document files, graphic files, and multimedia files - a perfect way to distribute videos and other files to customers, students, workgroups, and more.

See also:

- **MenuMaker**
- **Create a MenuMaker Project**
- **MenuMaker Options & Properties**

Camtasia Theater

Camtasia Theater is used to create an attractive and interactive menu from which to specifically launch the Camtasia Studio-made Flash (.swf) files on the Web or to distribute them on CD-ROM. Theater adds DVD-like navigation to the videos in Flash format. Using Theater's menu, your users can quickly navigate between multiple movies or view them all in a pre-defined sequence.

See also:

- **Theater**
- **Create a Theater Flash Menu**

Camtasia Player

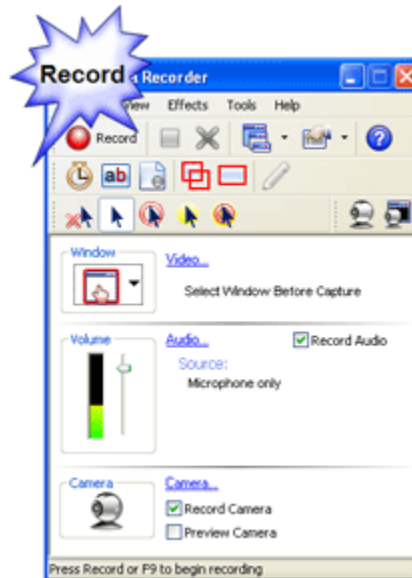
Camtasia Player is a simple, standalone video player, optimized for playing screen recordings. It plays videos at 100% of their original size so that they remain readable.

Player only plays AVI video files and has built-in support for the TechSmith Screen Capture Codec (TSCC).

See also: **Player**.

Record

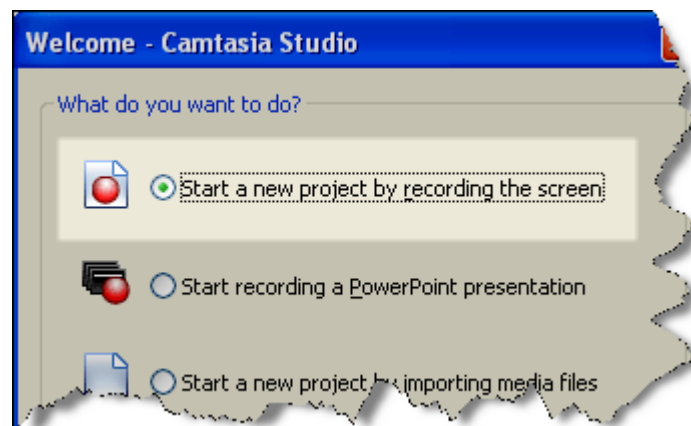
The first step in creating a new video project is to make a screen recording. Camtasia Recorder is a simple but powerful screen-recording component that is used to capture cursor movements, menu selections, pop-up windows, layered windows, typing, and anything else you see on the screen.



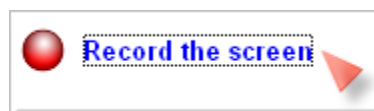
In addition to straight screen recording, Recorder's advanced features allow you to draw, annotate, and add effects during recording. Enhance the recordings with cursor and object highlighting, graphic and image annotations, watermarks, time stamps, captioning and audible mouse clicks.

Make the First Recording

The easy to use Recording Wizard launches automatically when you choose the **Start a new project by recording the screen** option from within the *Camtasia Studio Welcome* dialog box:



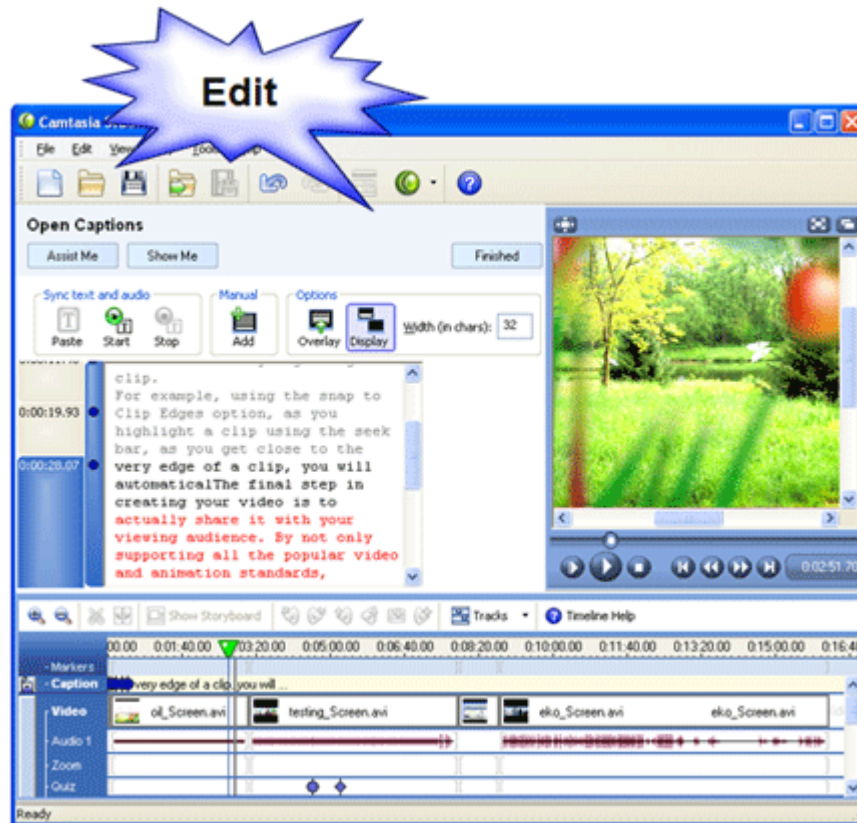
You can also open the Recording Wizard from Camtasia Studio's Task List:



Step through the wizard to create the first recording. When you have completed the recording, you can produce the video right away or open it within Camtasia Studio Timeline where you can edit it or insert special effects and enhancements. See also: **Record the Screen with the Recording Wizard**.

Edit

The editing features are used to make changes to the video by cutting unwanted frames or adding embellishments such as **Title Clips**, **Transitions**, **Callouts**, **Flash Quiz & Surveys**, and **Captions**.



You can combine various multimedia elements such as video clips, still images, and audio tracks. Join these clips in any number and order that you desire.

- The Timeline is the primary working area as most of the editing work is done there.
- To put a clip on the Timeline for editing, drag it from the Clip Bin down to the Timeline and drop it there.
- When editing, undo or redo the editing until you are completely satisfied with the video

See also:

- **Camtasia Studio Interface Overview**
- **Import Media**
- **Basic Timeline Edits**
- **Basic Audio Edits**
- **Add Special Effects and Enhancements**

Produce

When you have set the timing and sequence of the video clips, still images, Callouts, Quizzes, and Voice Narration on the Timeline, you are ready to produce the final video into a distributable and sharable format. This process, called production or rendering, assembles all of the audio, video, images, and special effects into one video file, based on the sequence you have established on the Timeline.

To produce the video, within the Task List in Camtasia Studio, click the **Produce video as** link. The Production Wizard *Welcome* dialog box appears.



Overall, there are three different ways to produce the video:

The easy-to-use **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard** takes you through the video production process based on the distribution method that you choose. Simply answer a few questions about the Timeline content and distribution channel and you are set to go. It is highly recommended that you produce the first few videos using this production wizard.

Production Presets contains a set of saved production instructions including the Video File Format, Encoding Options, and Video Size options. Setting up a Production Preset makes the production of videos faster and easier since choosing a preset bypasses most of the Production Wizard process.

This **Custom Production Wizard** gives more flexibility over the final video file format as well as the ability to customize frame rates, video and audio codecs, etc. For more information on each file type, see **Tell Me More about this File Type**.

Share

The final step in creating the video is to actually share it with your viewing audience.



By not only supporting all the popular video standards such as iPod® and Flash, Camtasia Studio also allows you to reach a broad audience by giving you many different ways to distribute the videos including iPod, CD-ROM, Web, DVD, e-mail, and more.

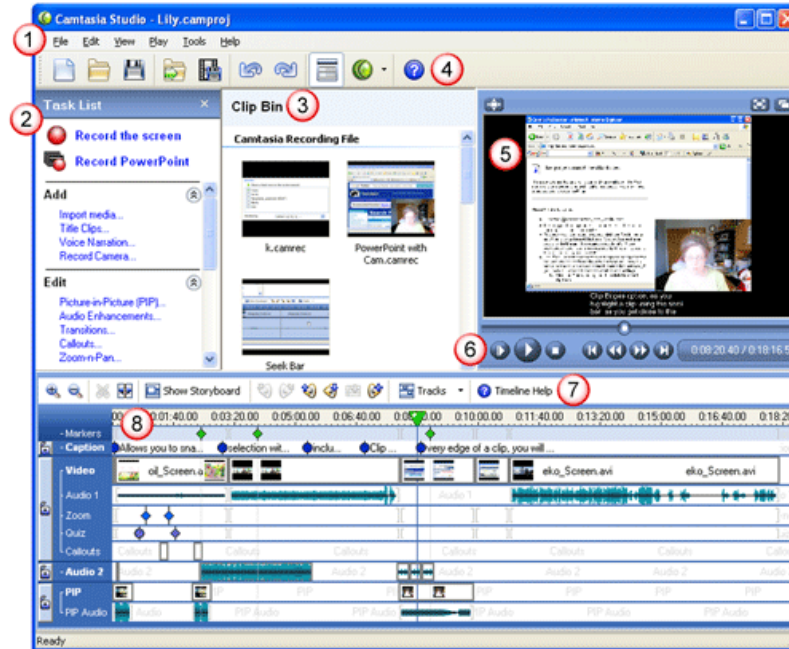
And, since the video was created as a project file, you can reproduce the video over and over again using different file formats that lend themselves to a particular distribution channel.


- **Publish a Video for Web Distribution**
Theater for Camtasia Studio adds DVD-like navigation to the screen videos in Flash format. Using Theater's menu, your users can quickly navigate between multiple Flash movies or view them all in a pre-defined sequence. Theater presentations can be viewed online and on CD-ROM. See also: **Web Distribution Production Option** and **Create a Theater Flash Menu**.
- **Create an Interactive CD Menu using Camtasia MenuMaker**
Camtasia MenuMaker is used to create an attractive menu from which to launch the video, document, graphic, and other multimedia files - a perfect way to distribute information to customers, students, workgroups, and more. See also: **Create a MenuMaker Project**.
- **Create a Pack and Show Self Executing File**
Pack and Show creates a Windows-executable file that your viewers can double-click to automatically unpack the file, install the TSCC codec and Camtasia Player and view the video. No special setup or installation is needed. See also: **Package a Video as a Pack and Show Executable File**.
- **Send the Video as an E-mail Attachment**
Use the e-mail production option within the **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard** to produce the video in an e-mail friendly format. At the end of production process, Camtasia Studio opens a new e-mail for you with the video contained as an attachment. See also: **E-Mail Distribution Production Option**.
- **Write to a CD- ROM**
Use the CD production option within the **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard** to produce the video in an CD-ready format. Include an auto-run file so the video will play as soon as it is put in the CD tray on the viewer's PC. See also: **CD Distribution Production Option**.
- **Create a DVD-Ready Video File**
Use the DVD production option within the **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard** to produce the video in a DVD-ready AVI format. This means that Camtasia Studio will properly size and encode the video with the highest quality options for use with most 3rd party DVD authoring software applications. Just import the final AVI video into the DVD project and you are ready to go. See also: **DVD-ready Distribution Production Option**.

Camtasia Studio Interface Overview

When you first begin to work within Camtasia Studio, you are in Timeline or main view. There are several different components that reside within the main view. These include the Task List, Task Area, Preview Area, etc.

Before you begin to use Camtasia Studio, take a few minutes to familiarize yourself with the Timeline view and the components contained therein.













1	Menu Bar. Access all dropdown menus from the menu bar.
2	Task List pane. Begin most tasks by selecting an option within this pane. To access any task, click on a task with the mouse cursor. See The Task List and the Task Area.
3	Clip Bin. Media files are stored here for easy access. Drag a clip from the Clip Bin to the Timeline to include it in the video. All clips within the Clip Bin are saved when the project you are working on is saved. See also: The Clip Bin.
4	Main Toolbar. Access several commonly used options from here. This is a quicker method than locating the same option within the dropdown menus. See also: Main Toolbar.
5	Preview Area. Double-click on a clip in the Clip Bin or Timeline to preview it.
6	Playback Controls. Use the controls to move throughout the Timeline. Grab the scrubber control  within the Preview Area and drag it to a particular location in the video.
7	Timeline Toolbar. Used for adding Transitions, splitting the video, making cuts, adding audio tracks, and adjusting volume. See Timeline Toolbar.
8	Timeline. Media files (clips) are placed on the Timeline for inclusion in the video. See Import Media.

Main Toolbar

Several of the most-used options have been added to the Camtasia Studio main toolbar.



To aid in the navigation around the toolbar, each time the cursor touches a button, a tooltip will appear. The tooltip gives you the name of the tool.

Button	Tool Name	Description & Use
	New Project	Begin a new Camtasia Studio project. If you are currently working on a project and you have not saved, a prompt appears to save.
	Open Project	Open an existing project. Find the project to open. Click Open .
	Save Project	Save the work you have in the current project, including all effects, Transitions, and project settings. Note: Does not create or save an AVI file. This is accomplished with Produce Video As. See also: Produce and Share the Final Video .
	Import Media Files	Show the <i>Open</i> dialog box used to choose the media files to import. Find the media files to use in the video production project. See also: Import Media .
	Produce Video As	Show the <i>Video Production Wizard</i> used to create the video from the project. Choose the production options to create the video. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Produce and Share the Final Video • Recommend my Production Settings Wizard • Production Presets • Tell Me More about this File Type • Custom Production Wizard
	Undo	Will undo the last action in succession. This is an unlimited undo.
	Redo	Will redo the last action in that was undone. This is an unlimited redo.
	View Task List	Show or hides the Task List.
	Tools	Give access the other Camtasia Studio applications. Choose the application from the list. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recorder • MenuMaker • Theater
	Help	Opens the Camtasia Studio online help.

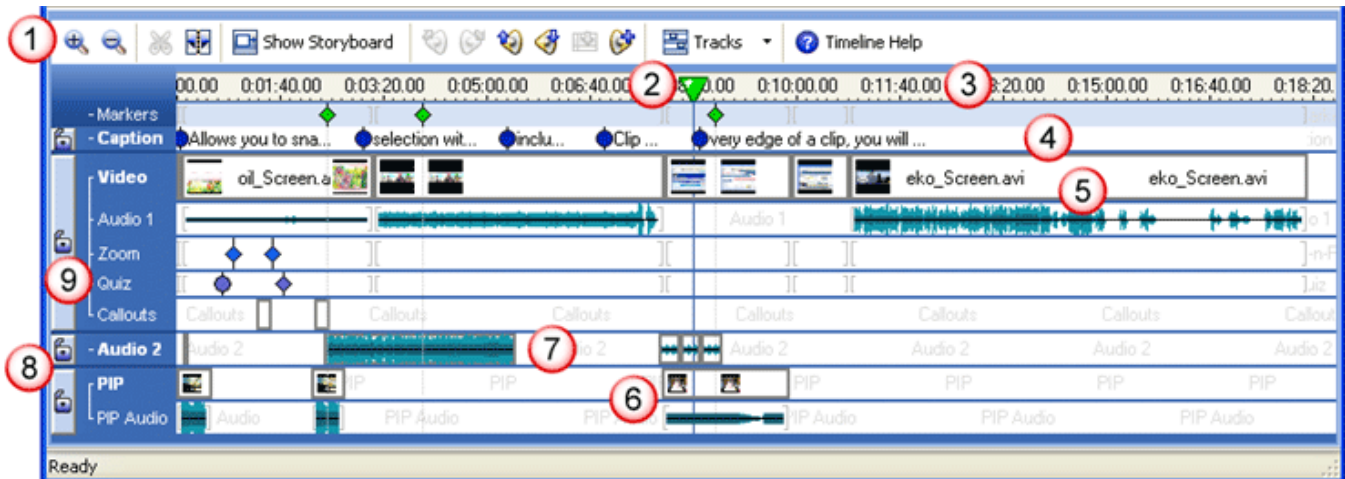
Timeline View

The Timeline view is the primary working view since most of the editing work is done here. Use the Timeline to assemble video recordings that you may have made using Camtasia Recorder or from some other source as well as other forms of media such as still images and audio files.

Collectively, the media files placed on the Timeline are called **Clips**. On the Timeline, the timing of each clip is controlled, clips are added or removed, frames are edited, sound is added, and much more. Quizzes, Callouts, and Zoom effects can also be added to the video. These special effects and enhancements are called **Elements** and are represented on the Timeline as different colored icons.

When Camtasia Studio is first started, the Timeline is empty. To add clips to the Timeline, drag a clip from the Clip Bin and drop in on the Timeline.






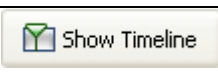






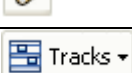
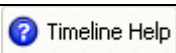
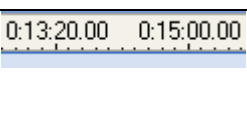
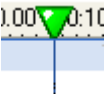
Below is an overview of the different parts of the Timeline as well as a look at the clips and elements as they appear on the Timeline.



1	Timeline Toolbar. These tools are used to clip or split the video, adjust the sound, zoom in or out on the clip for a better view, or to see additional tracks.
2	Seek Bar. The seek bar moves along as the content of the Timeline is being played. Wherever the seek bar is located on the Timeline, that is the area that has focus within the Preview Area. Drag the seek bar to select portions of the video to edit. The selection is highlighted in blue.
3	Time Reference Status Area. Shows the time that the seek bar is referencing within the video. Use this area to keep track of the overall time of the total video.
4	Caption Track. Each Caption that you create is placed on the Timeline. A small portion of the caption appears. Double-click on a Caption to access the <i>Caption Properties</i> task page.
5	Video and Audio 1 Track. Shows the main video(s) clips and any audio associated with those clips. All audio is displayed as a wave form.
6	PIP Video and Audio Track. Shows the PIP video(s) clips and any audio associated with those clips. All audio is displayed as a wave form. Double-click on a PIP clip to access the <i>PIP Properties</i> task page.
7	Audio 2 Track. All additional audio that is added to the Timeline is displayed on the Audio 2 track. All audio is displayed as a wave form.
8	Lock Icons. To the left of each track are tiny icons used to lock a track. Locking a track prevents the editing or changing of the clips or elements on that track.
9	Special Effects & Enhancement tracks. Zoom and Pan keyframes, Callouts, Quizzes, etc. will appear on their own tracks. These elements are attached to the main video track. Therefore, if you move a clip on the Video track, these elements will remain with that clip in their correct location.

Timeline Toolbar

This table describes each of the Timeline Editing tools along with its description and use.

Button	Tool Name	Description & Use
	Zoom In	Zoom in on the Timeline showing a closer look at the video.
	Zoom Out	Zoom out on the Timeline. When fully zoomed out, the entire video is seen on the Timeline.
	Cut Selection	Delete the selection from the video. See also: Make a Cut on the Timeline.
	Split Video	Split the video at the point of the selection seek bar. See also: Make a Split on the Timeline.
	Show Storyboard	This is a toggle button. When in Timeline view, it shows the Show Storyboard button. See also: Storyboard View
	Show Timeline	This is a toggle button. When in Storyboard view, it shows the Show Timeline button. See also: Timeline View.
	Fade In	Fade in the volume of the clip on the audio track. See also: Fade In Audio.
	Fade Out	Fade out the volume of the audio track. See also: Fade Out Audio.
	Volume Up	Increase the volume of the audio track. See also: Increase the Volume Up.
	Volume Down	Decrease the volume of the audio track. See also: Decrease the Volume Down.
	Replace with Silence	Replace the audio selection with silence. See also: Replace Audio with Silence.
	Audio Enhancements	Open the <i>Audio Enhancements</i> task page. See also: Audio Enhancements.
	Tracks	Turn the Timeline tracks on or off. Important note: When applying edits to the clips on the Timeline, if the tracks are turned off the edits will still be applied to the clips or elements on the track. It is best to have all tracks in view when making edits. Click the down arrow next to the Tracks button. From the flyout menu, choose the track to turn on or off. See also: Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track.
	Timeline Help	Access the help system for assistance on using the Timeline features.
	Time Increments	Show the time on the Timeline in various increments depending upon the zoom level. As the Zoom In and Zoom Out buttons are used, the Timeline will reflect the new time increments. This is read-only information.
	Seek Bar	The seek bar moves along as the contents of the Timeline are being played. Wherever the seek bar is located on the Timeline, that is the area that has focus. You can also drag the seek bar to select portions of the video to edit. The portion of the clip that is selected for editing is highlighted in blue.

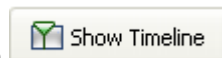
Storyboard View

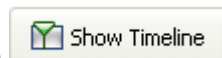
In the Storyboard view, the Storyboard is prominently displayed at the bottom of the screen. And, just as with the Timeline, Camtasia Studio uses the Storyboard to assemble videos that you may have made using Camtasia Recorder or from some other source, as well as other forms of media such as still images. Collectively, the items placed on the Storyboard are called clips.

Overall, the Storyboard view is primarily used by those who wish to use unedited clips when creating a produced video. When creating a video using unedited clips, drag the clips from the Clip Bin to the Storyboard, add Transitions if desired, and then Produce the video.

It is important to note that you cannot edit the clips while in Storyboard view. You must be in Timeline view in order to edit the clips in any way.

Below, find an overview of the different components of the Storyboard. After loading a clip from the Clip Bin into the Storyboard, it changes to reflect the appearance of the clip. The first frame of the video and still images appear as a thumbnail image.



On the toolbar, there is a toggle button . When in Storyboard view, it says **Show Timeline**. Click to move to Timeline view.

Note: If the clip has audio, then the audio track will not be seen when in Storyboard view. You must switch to Timeline view in order to see the audio tracks or to edit the video.



①	When clips are viewed within the Storyboard, the first frame of a video clip or the actual thumbnail of a still image appears.
②	This is the toggle button that is used to switch between Timeline and Storyboard view. See also: Timeline View .
③	Opens the <i>Audio Enhancements</i> task page. See also: Audio Enhancements .
④	Accesses the help system.
⑤	When Transitions are included in the video, they are displayed between the clips as a graphic representation of the Transitions action. See also: Transitions .

The Clip Bin

The Clip Bin holds all of the video, audio, and image clips that you import into the project. To put a clip on the Timeline for editing, drag it from the Clip Bin down to the Timeline and drop it there.

It is important to note that:

- Only the clips that are on the Storyboard or Timeline are included in the production of the video. If you have viewed a clip that is in the Clip Bin in the Preview Area, that file will **not be** included in the video production unless you drag it to either the Storyboard or Timeline.
- Clips that are in the Clip Bin are not affected by any edits that occur on the Timeline. For example, consider a clip that is on the Timeline that is split in two: this split will not be reflected within the original clip residing in the Clip Bin.
- Editing clips on the Timeline does not affect the original files. Editing clips within Camtasia Studio is a nondestructive process in that none of the original media files are altered in any way.

Identifying each Kind of Clip in the Clip Bin

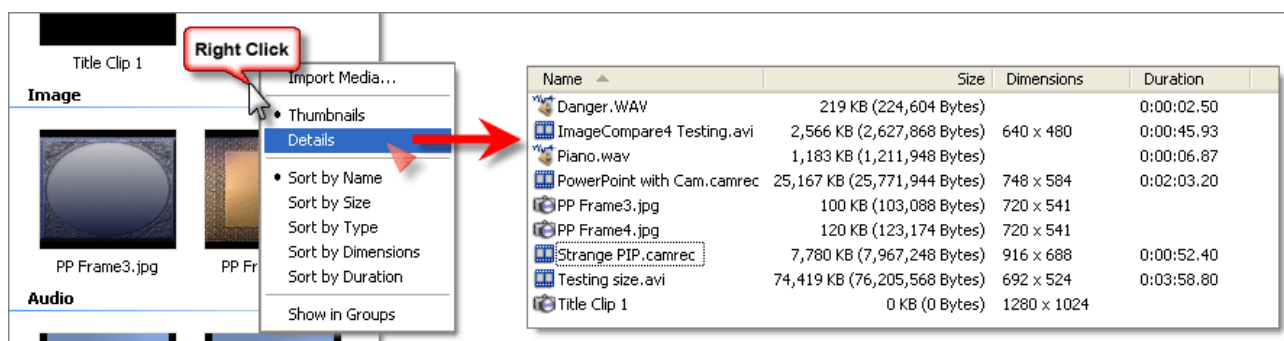
- The thumbnail image that appears for all kinds of video clips is the first frame of the actual clip.
- Audio clips are represented by a standard audio icon.
- Title clips and all other image file clips show a thumbnail of the actual image.

Changing the View of the Clip Bin

There are several different views that you can use to organize the clips. By default, the Clip Bin view is **Thumbnails shown in Groups**. A pictorial representation of the media clip organized in like or similar groups. So, all the video clips are grouped together, all the audio clips grouped together, etc.

Right-click on any background white space and choose the view or sorting order from the context menu. From this context menu, you can also choose to:

- Import other media files into the Clip Bin.
- Shows either thumbnails or details of each clip.
- Sort the clips by name, size, type, dimensions, or duration.
- Show thumbnails in media category groups.



See also:

Camtasia Studio Welcome Options

The Task List and the Task Area

The Preview Playback Area

Clips & Elements on the Timeline

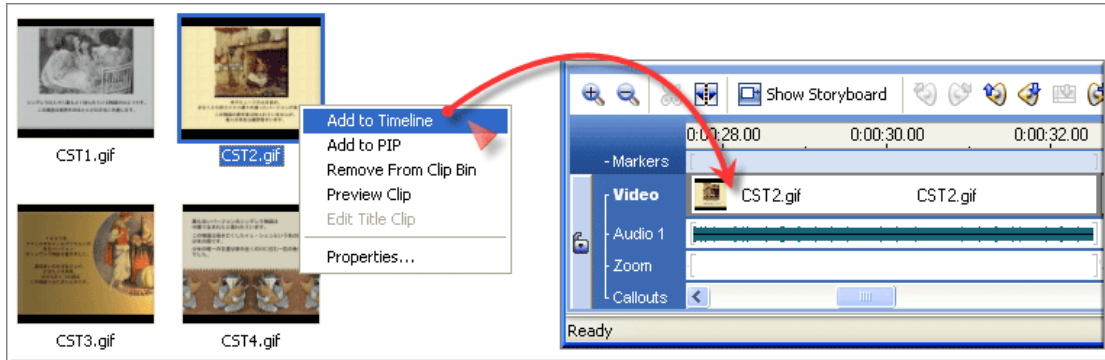
Timeline Toolbar

Adding Clips that are in the Clip Bin to the Timeline

Collectively, the media files placed on the Timeline are called clips.

It is important to note that only the clips that are on the Storyboard or Timeline are included in the production of the video. If you have viewed a clip that is in the Clip Bin in the Preview Area, that file will **not be** included in the video production unless you drag it to either the Storyboard or Timeline.

Any clips that are in the Clip Bin are ready to be used in the video project. Drag the clip to the Timeline and drop it there. You can add as many clips as desired to the Timeline. You can also add repeated instances of a clip to the Timeline.



See also:

Camtasia Studio Welcome Options

The Task List and the Task Area

The Preview Playback Area

Clips & Elements on the Timeline


Timeline Toolbar

Extract an AVI and WMV from a CAMREC Recording

You can extract the screen and camera recording files from within the CAMREC file using the **Extract Camrec Contents** option.

The AVI (screen recording) and WMV (camera recording) files are saved to a directory that you choose.

To extract the AVI and WMV files:

1. Right-click on the CAMREC file in the Clip Bin.
 2. From the context menu, choose **Extract Camrec Contents**.
- 
- 3.
 4. A *Browse for Folder* dialog box appears.
 5. Choose the destination and click **OK**. The files are extracted to that folder.

See also:

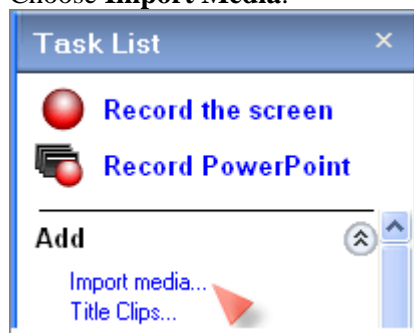
Camtasia Studio's CAMREC Files

Record an AVI – Not a CAMREC

Import Media

Import media files into the Camtasia Studio Clip Bin. Once a file is in the Clip Bin, it is called a clip.

1. Choose **Import Media**.

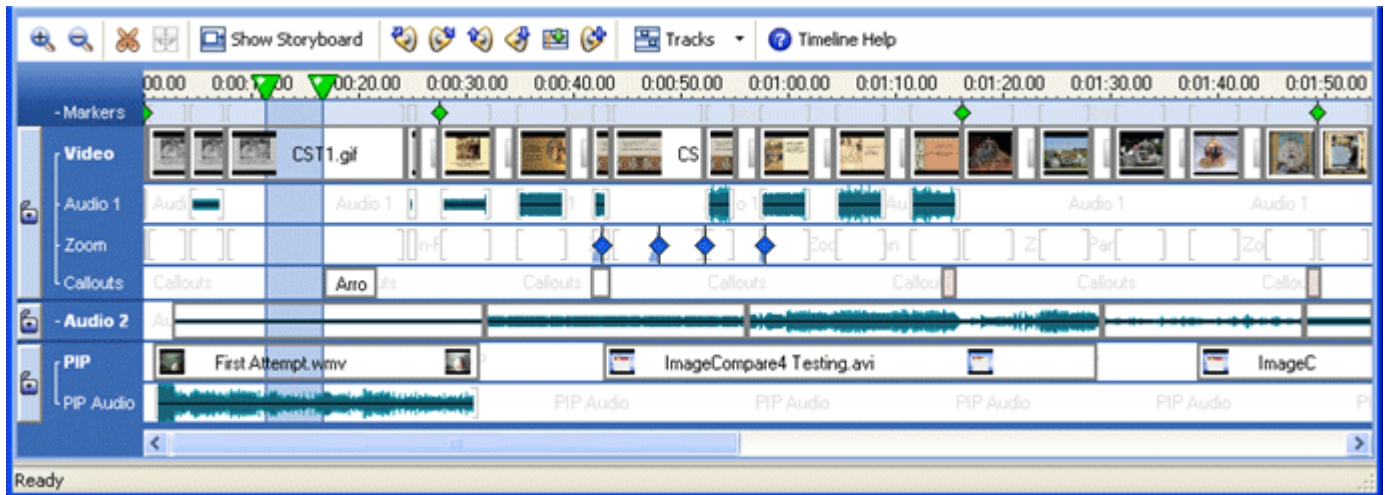


2. The *Open* dialog box appears. Find the folder containing the file(s).
3. (Optional) Change the existing option within the **Files of type** field to **All media files** to import all kinds of media at once, rather than by one type at a time.
4. Use the cursor to select the files. To choose more than one, press and hold down the **Control** key and select multiple files.
5. Once you have selected the file(s), click **Open**.
6. The clips are displayed within the *Clip Bin* and are ready to be used in the video project.
7. To add a clip to the Timeline, drag the clip to the Timeline and drop it there. You can add as many clips as desired to the Timeline. You can also add repeated instances of a clip to the Timeline.

Clips & Elements on the Timeline

Once you begin to add media clips and elements to the Timeline, the Timeline is updated to include a pictorial representation of each of these.


This graphic shows what a typical Timeline might look like once you begin to add clips and make edits to them.










It is important to note that each clip or element that is added to the Timeline has its own specific look or color coded icon.







Clip & Element Content Menu Options




The table below shows each of these and gives a description of the options that are available through double-clicking or right-clicking on the clip or element.


Icon	Clip/Element	Double-click Options	Right-click Context Menu Options
	Marker Shows a green diamond.	Double-click on a Marker icon on the Timeline to access the <i>Marker Name</i> dialog box. Use the <i>Marker Name</i> dialog box to enter a name for a Marker. The name that you enter here appears within the interactive Index in the produced video. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add a Marker • Delete an Element from the Timeline 	Right-click on a Marker to bring up the context menu of available options. Choose from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set Marker Name Accesses the <i>Marker Name</i> dialog box. Move to this Marker Move the seek bar to this Marker's location. Delete from Timeline Deletes the Marker.

Icon	Clip/Element	Double-click Options	Right-click Context Menu Options
	<p>Video Clip Shows the first frame of the video clip.</p>	<p>No options available.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make a Split on the Timeline • Make a Cut on the Timeline • Extend the Frame of a Video Clip • Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip • Delete an Element from the Timeline 	<p>Right-click on a video clip to bring up the context menu of available options. Choose from:</p> <p> Split Splits the video at the point of the selection seek bar.</p> <p> Cut Selection Delete the selection from the video.</p> <p>Extend Frame Extend the duration of a frame. The <i>Extend Frame</i> dialog box appears. Select the duration for the frame in seconds by using the arrow buttons.</p> <p>Clip Speed Speed up or slow down the playback time for a clip in the rendered movie. See also: Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip.</p> <p>Image Duration Increase or decrease the playback time for a clip in the rendered movie. Use the arrow buttons to change the duration to the time in seconds.</p> <p>Delete from Timeline Delete the clip from the Timeline.</p>
	<p>Transition Shows a pictorial representation of the Transitions being used.</p>	<p>No options available. See also: Transitions.</p>	<p>Right-click on a Transition to bring up the context menu of available options. Choose from:</p> <p>Transition Times Choose the time (1-5 seconds) that you want the Transition to play.</p> <p>Delete from Timeline Deletes the Transition from the Timeline.</p>

Icon	Clip/Element	Double-click Options	Right-click Context Menu Options
	<p>Image Clip Shows a pictorial representation of the image being used.</p>	<p>No options available. See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make a Split on the Timeline • Make a Cut on the Timeline • Extend the Frame of a Video Clip • Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip • Delete an Element from the Timeline 	<p>Right-click on an image clip to bring up the context menu of available options. Choose from:</p> <p> Split Splits the video at the point of the selection seek bar.</p> <p> Cut Selection Deletes the selection from the video.</p> <p>Extend Frame Extend the duration of a frame. The <i>Extend Frame</i> dialog box appears. Select the duration for the frame in seconds by using the arrow buttons.</p> <p>Clip Speed Speed up or slow down the playback time for a clip in the rendered movie. See also: Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip.</p> <p>Image Duration Increase or decrease the playback time for a clip in the rendered movie. Use the arrow buttons to change the duration to the time in seconds.</p> <p>Delete from Timeline Delete the clip from the Timeline.</p>

Icon	Clip/Element	Double-click Options	Right-click Context Menu Options
	<p>Title Clip Shows a pictorial representation of the Title Clip being used.</p>	<p>Open the <i>Title Clips</i> task page for editing. Make any desired edits to this clip and click OK. Important Note: Any edits that are made to a Title Clip that is on the Timeline are not updated to the Title Clip in the Clip Bin. Instead, the Title Clip in the Clip Bin is set to “empty” where all of the text is removed from it. See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make a Split on the Timeline • Make a Cut on the Timeline • Extend the Frame of a Video Clip • Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip • Delete an Element from the Timeline 	<p>Right-click on a Title Clip to bring up the context menu of available options. Choose from:</p> <p> Split Splits the video at the point of the selection seek bar.</p> <p> Cut Selection Deletes the selection from the video.</p> <p>Extend Frame Extend the duration of a frame. The <i>Extend Frame</i> dialog box appears. Select the duration for the frame in seconds by using the arrow buttons.</p> <p>Clip Speed Speed up or slow down the playback time for a clip in the rendered movie. See also: Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip.</p> <p>Image Duration Increase or decrease the playback time for a clip in the rendered movie. Use the arrow buttons to change the duration to the time in seconds.</p> <p>Delete from Timeline Delete the clip from the Timeline.</p>
	<p>Audio Shows a wave form.</p>	<p>No options available. See also: Basic Audio Edits.</p>	<p>Right-click on an audio clip to bring up the context menu of available options. Choose from:</p> <p>Delete from Timeline Deletes the audio clip from the Timeline.</p>
	<p>Zoom Key Frame Shows a blue diamond as well as a shaded area to depict the zoom speed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No shaded area equals Instant speed. • Small shaded area equals Fast speed. • Large shaded area equals Slow speed. 	<p>Open the <i>Zoom-n-Pan Properties</i> task page. Make any edits and click OK. Click Finished to exit. The Zoom-n-Pan key frame is updated on the Timeline. See also: Zoom-n-Pan.</p>	<p>Right-click on a Zoom key frame to bring up the context menu of available options. Choose from:</p> <p>Modify Opens the <i>Zoom-n-Pan Properties</i> task page. Make any edits and click OK. Click Finished to exit. The Zoom-n-Pan key frame is updated on the Timeline.</p> <p>Delete from Timeline Deletes the Zoom key frame from the Timeline.</p>
	<p>Flash Quiz Shows a purple diamond.</p>	<p>Open the <i>Flash Quiz Manager</i> task page. Make any edits and click OK. Click Finished to exit. The Quiz is updated on the Timeline. See also: Flash Quiz & Survey.</p>	<p>Right-click on a Flash Quiz to bring up the context menu of available options. Choose from:</p> <p>Delete from Timeline Deletes the Quiz from the Timeline.</p>

Icon	Clip/Element	Double-click Options	Right-click Context Menu Options
	<p>Caption Shows a blue circle in a yellow background along with part of the actual text from the caption.</p>	<p>Open the <i>Callout Properties</i> task page. Make any edits and click OK. Click Finished to exit. The Callout is updated on the Timeline. See also: Captions.</p>	<p>Right-click on a Callout to bring up the context menu of available options. Choose from: Delete caption and text Deletes the current Caption Point and the text. Delete caption point only Deletes the current Caption Point and leaves the text in the scripting text box. Delete all captions and text Deletes all of the Caption Points as well as all of the text in the scripting text box. See also: Captions.</p>
	<p>Callout Shows a box with a shaded area to depict the fade in / fade out attributes.</p>	<p>Open the <i>Callout Properties</i> task page. Make any edits and click OK. Click Finished to exit. The Callout is updated on the Timeline. See also: Callouts.</p>	<p>Right-click on a Callout to bring up the context menu of available options. Choose from: Modify Opens the <i>Callout Properties</i> task page. Make any edits and click OK. Click Finished to exit. The Callout is updated on the Timeline. Paste Callout Pastes a Callout at the point of the selection seek bar. Copy Callout Copies the Callout that was clicked on. Move to New Line Moves the Callout to a new Callout track. Delete from Timeline Deletes the Zoom key frame from the Timeline.</p>
	<p>Callout Track</p>	<p>Each time you create a Callout that is located on the same frame, a new Callout track is created. The right-click context menu located on the actual Callout track is used to manage those tracks.</p>	<p>Right-click on a Callout track to bring up the context menu of available options. Choose from: Paste Callout Pastes a Callout at the point of the selection seek bar. Create New Line Creates a new line for the Callouts. To move a Callout to the new line, grab the Callout and drag it up or down. Remove Empty Lines Removes all of the Callout tracks that are not being used. Consolidate Lines Consolidates all of the Callout tracks so unnecessary tracks are removed from the Timeline.</p>

Icon	Clip/Element	Double-click Options	Right-click Context Menu Options
	<p>PIP (Picture-in-Picture) Shows a pictorial representation of the clip being used.</p>	<p>Open the <i>Modify PIP</i> task page. Make any edits and click OK. Click Finished to exit. The PIP is updated on the Timeline. See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Record Camera: Add a Picture-in-Picture Recording • Picture-in-Picture Properties Options 	<p>Right-click on a PIP clip to bring up the context menu of available options. Choose from:</p> <p>Modify Opens the <i>Modify PIP</i> task page. Make any edits and click OK. Click Finished to exit. The PIP is updated on the Timeline.</p> <p>Delete from Timeline Deletes the PIP from the Timeline.</p>

The Task List and the Task Area

Camtasia Studio has a hyperlinked **Task List** for choosing feature, media, and production options. There is also a **Task Area** where the options or properties screens are displayed for the feature that was selected in the Task List.

The Task List is used for:

- Selecting specific tasks or processes via hyperlinks.
- Importing media files which will reside in the Clip Bin.
- Getting help on some of the most commonly used features of Camtasia Studio.

The Task Area is used to:

- Add, store, and preview the media clips when in Clip Bin view. Drag clips down to the Timeline for placement within the video.
- Select options and set properties for the task that was selected in the Task List.



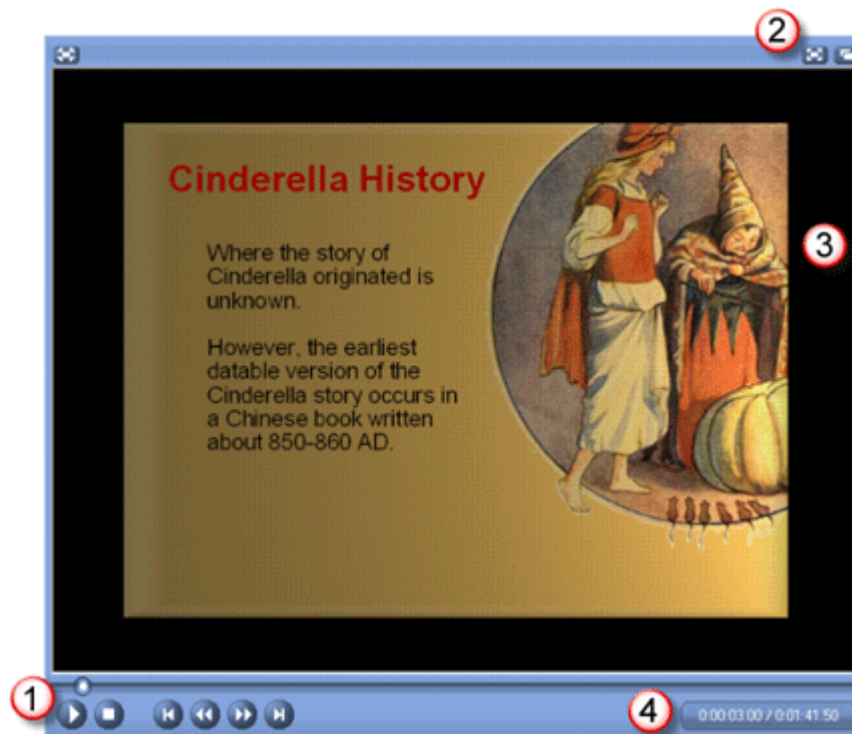
1	Task List pane. Click on a task's hyperlink. The Task Area will open populated with the available options or properties.
2	Task Area . This area changes depending on the option selected in the Task List. Either drag clips to the Timeline or select the necessary options or properties relating to the task that was selected in the Task List.
3	Clip Bin view. Media files are stored here for easy access. Double-click on a clip in the Clip Bin to preview it in the Preview Area. Drag a clip from the Clip Bin down to the Timeline to include it in the current video. All clips within the Clip Bin are saved when the project you are working on is saved. See also: The Clip Bin .
4	Properties and Options area. When a link is selected in the Task List, the options for that feature show in this space called the Task Area. Make the selections and click Finish . See also: Add Special Effects and Enhancements .
5	Transitions view. When Transitions are selected in the Task List, the work area appears here. The Storyboard also appears. Drag the Transition down to the Storyboard. Click Finish . See also: Transitions .

The Preview Playback Area

The Preview Area is a very important and integral part of the Camtasia Studio interface.

- As clips are placed within the Clip Bin, they can be previewed within the Preview Area before they are placed on the Timeline or Storyboard.
- As you move throughout the video on the Timeline, the Preview Area will keep pace with the seek bar, allowing the current frame to always be displayed.
- As you add **Voice Narration**, the clips on the Timeline play in the Preview Area allowing you to narrate in real time to ensure perfectly synched audio.
- When adding Callouts, make any adjustments in the Preview Area.
- When modifying a PIP clip, make the size and location adjustments in the Preview Area.










Use the Playback Control toolbar to move throughout the clips in the Clip Bin or the video on the Timeline or Storyboard.



①	These are the Playback Controls . Use the controls to move throughout the clips on the Timeline or Storyboard.
②	These controls allow you to toggle the Preview Area to Full Screen or Undocked Mode .
③	This is the Preview Area. All videos, still images, and audio clips show in this area when selected within the Clip Bin or on the Timeline or Storyboard. When in Timeline view, as the clip plays within the Preview Area, the seek bar on the Timeline will keep pace with the playback of the clip.
④	This is the Time Status bar. This lets you know exactly where the seek bar is on the Timeline in the context of the entire video laid out on the Timeline.

Playback Control Toolbar Description Table

This table describes each of the options found on the Playback Controls toolbar along with its use.

Button	Tool Name	Description & Use
	Play	Play the video. When the video begins to play, this button toggles to Pause .
	Pause	Pause video.
	Stop	Stop the video from playing. Click the Stop button to stop the clip or video. When stopped, it will rewind to the beginning.
	Previous Clip	Move the seek bar to the beginning of the previous clip on the Timeline.
	Step Backward	Rewind the video frame by frame.
	Step Forward	Forward the video frame by frame.
	Next Clip	Move the seek bar to the beginning of the next clip on the Timeline.
	Time Status Bar	Indicate the position of the seek bar within the overall video on the Timeline. This is a read only field that changes as the seek bar moves through the clip or the video.
	Scrubber	Indicate the playback progress of the video. Drag the scrubber to any desired place in the video. Drag the scrubber to the place in the video. As the scrubber is dragged, the clip or video will play.

See also:

Camtasia Studio Welcome Options

The Task List and the Task Area

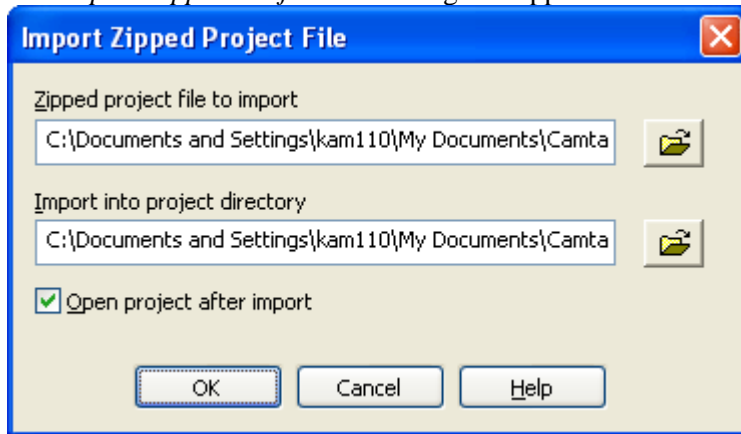
Clips & Elements on the Timeline



Timeline Toolbar

Import a Camtasia Studio Project

Import a Camtasia Studio project file that was zipped using the Camtasia Studio Export Project as Zip option. When a zipped project is imported, Camtasia Studio will unzip it into a folder that you choose.

1. Choose **File > Import Zipped Project**.
2. The *Import Zipped Project File* dialog box appears.



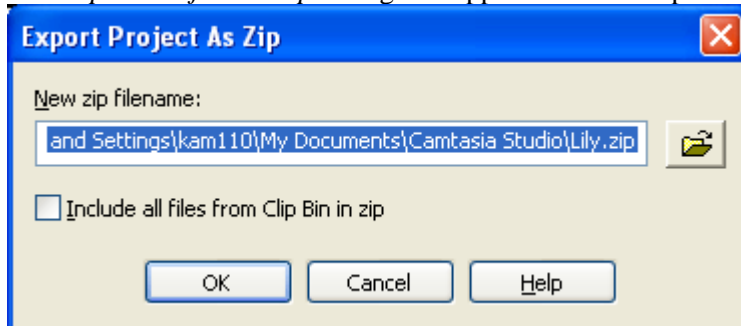
3. In the **Zipped project file to import** field, click **Browse**  to select a path of the location where the zip file that you want to import resides. The *Open* dialog box appears. Find the zip file. Click **Open**.
4. In the **Import into project directory** field, click **Browse** , to select a path of the location where this file is saved. The *Browse for a Folder* dialog box appears. Find the folder where this zip file is saved or make a new folder using the **Make New Folder** button. Click **OK**.
5. If desired, enable the **Open project after import** option during the import to open the project in Camtasia Studio right away.
6. Click **OK**.


To export a project into a zip file, from within Camtasia Studio, choose File > **Export Project as Zip**. See also: **Export a Camtasia Studio Project**.

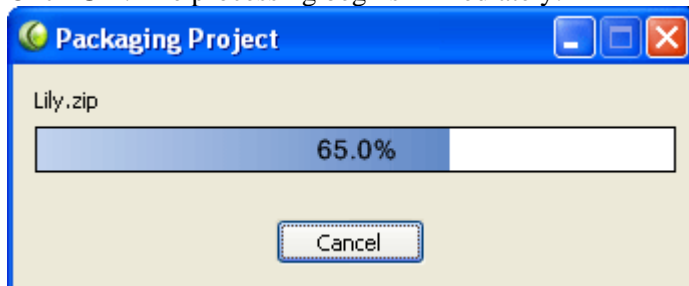
Export a Camtasia Studio Project

Pack the current Camtasia Studio project into a zip file. Zipping the project is an easy way to back up the project. It is also the best way to share or move the project file from one location to another.

1. Make sure the project is open with Camtasia Studio.
2. Choose **File > Export Project as Zip**.
3. The *Export Project as Zip* dialog box appears. Enter the path and file name for this zip file.



4. In the **New zip file name field**, click **Browse** , to select the path of the location where this file will be saved. The *Save As* dialog box appears. Browse for the path.
5. In this same dialog box, enter the name of this zip file in the **File name** field if different than the default.
6. Click **Save**.
7. Enable the **Include all files from Clip Bin in zip** option to include a copy of all the files currently in the Clip Bin within this zip file. If not enabled, then only the project information and clips/elements on the Timeline line are included in the zip file.
8. Click **OK**. The processing begins immediately:



To open a zipped project file, from within Camtasia Studio, choose **File > Import Zipped Project**. See also: **Import a Camtasia Studio Project**.

View Timeline Preview in Full Screen Mode

The **Camtasia Studio > View menu > Full Screen** option shows the clips on the Timeline in full screen mode rather than in the smaller Preview Area window. When in full screen mode, Camtasia Studio screen components such as the Task Area, Timeline, Task List, etc will not be in view.

Enlarging the video to fit the screen may distort the view of the video. This distortion only affects the preview view, **not** the final produced video.

Once in full screen mode, press <Esc> at any time to exit back to the main view.

Full Screen Play Controls

When you are in Full Screen mode, there are no visual playback controls. You must control the playing with keyboard shortcuts.

Choose from these keyboard shortcuts to control the playback while in Full Screen mode:

Play/Pause	Ctrl+Space
Stop	Ctrl+Alt+Space
Beginning	Ctrl+Home
End	Ctrl+End
Previous Clip	Ctrl+Alt+Left Arrow
Next Clip	Ctrl+Alt+Right Arrow
Step Backward	Ctrl+Left Arrow
Step Forward	Ctrl+Right Arrow

Press <Esc> at any time to exit back to the main view.

Basic Timeline Edits

The Timeline is used to make basic edits to the video and image clips. These basic edits allow you to remove unwanted mistakes in the recording, shorten or lengthen clips to accommodate audio, etc.

It is important to note that original files or clips that are in the Clip Bin are not affected by any edits that occur on the Timeline.

Here are some simple tips to keep in mind when editing the clips:



- When editing, you can undo/redo the editing until you are completely satisfied with the video.
- Automatically resize a clip on the Timeline by dragging either end of a clip to make the clip shorter. Once a clip is sized smaller, drag the end of the clip once again to make it longer.

See also:

- **Use the Timeline to Search the Video**
- **Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track**
- **Make a Timeline Selection**
- **Make a Cut on the Timeline**
- **Make a Split on the Timeline**
- **Add a Marker**
- **Drag a Clip or Element to a New Location**
- **Remove a Clip from the Timeline**
- **Delete an Element from the Timeline**
- **Extend the Frame of a Video Clip**
- **Mark-In or Mark-Out a Clip or Element**
- **Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip**
- **Save the Current Frame as an Image**

Use the Timeline to Search the Video

Searching for specific frames within the video is done several ways:

- Play the video in the Preview Area using the **Play** button  on the Playback Controls toolbar. Click the **Pause** button  to pause the video at the appropriate frame. The Timeline is updated with the current setting.
- Click on the “scrubber” bar within the Preview Area and drag to a particular location in the video. Both the Preview Area and the Timeline are updated with the selected frame.



- Use the arrow keys on the keyboard to move the seek bar through the Timeline to the location. The Preview Area is updated as you move along the Timeline.
- Click at any video location on the Timeline. The selection seek bar is moved to that location. That frame’s time reference is displayed as a tooltip as well. As you click on the Timeline, the Preview Area is updated with the selected frame.

See also:

Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track

Make a Timeline Selection

Make a Cut on the Timeline

Make a Split on the Timeline

Add a Marker

Drag a Clip or Element to a New Location


Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track

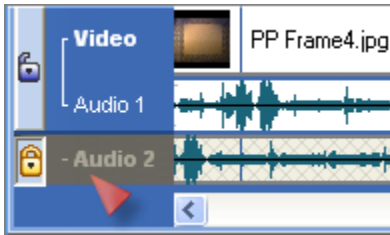
When applying edits to a Timeline selection, the edits are applied to all clips and elements located across all tracks, unless specific tracks are locked for editing.

Example


There is more than one audio track on the Timeline. When a selection is made on the Timeline, **all** of the audio tracks within that selection are affected by the volume up edits that are going to be applied.

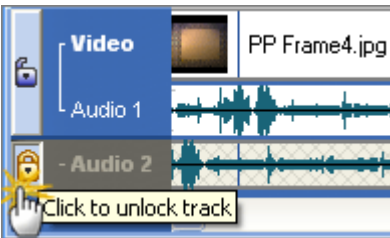
To Lock a Track

Click the **Unlock** icon  on the Timeline track that you want to lock. The track becomes locked as seen in this graphic.



To Unlock a Track

Click the **Locked**  icon on the Timeline track that you want to unlock. The locked track becomes unlocked as seen in this graphic.



See also:

Use the Timeline to Search the Video

Make a Timeline Selection

Make a Cut on the Timeline

Make a Split on the Timeline

Add a Marker

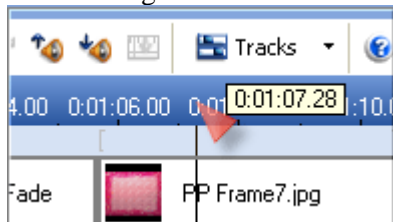
Drag a Clip or Element to a New Location

Make a Timeline Selection

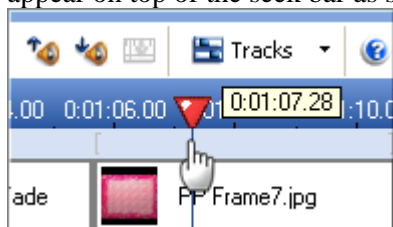
Before you can make most edits to a clip(s) on the Timeline, you must make a selection of the area that you want to edit.

To create a selection to edit:

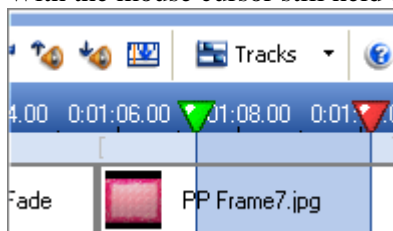
1. Hover the cursor over the top of the Timeline where the time increments are found. Notice that the seek bar moves along the Timeline with the cursor.



2. Click down and hold the mouse cursor at the point where you want to begin the selection. A red arrow will appear on top of the seek bar as seen in the image below.



3. With the mouse cursor still held down, drag the seek bar across the Timeline.



4. Once the selection is made, release the mouse button. The selection will remain on the Timeline.

See also:

Use the Timeline to Search the Video

Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track

Make a Cut on the Timeline

Make a Split on the Timeline


Add a Marker

Save the Current Frame as an Image

Make a Cut on the Timeline

Cutting deletes unwanted portions of the clip(s) from the Timeline.

Note: When making a selection to cut, **all** clips and elements included in the selection are cut unless you lock the specific tracks that contain clips or elements that you do not want to cut. See also: **Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track**.

1. Lock any track(s) that contain clips and elements that you do not want to cut.
2. Select the range of time to be cut by clicking and dragging the seek bar on the Timeline. The selection is distinguished by a blue highlight.
3. Click **Cut Selection** .

The selected portion of the Timeline is removed. The Timeline duration is updated and playback of the Timeline in the Preview Area will immediately reflect the cut(s) that were made.

Note: When cutting a clip, you are not altering the original video in any way nor is the clip in the Clip Bin affected.

See also:

Use the Timeline to Search the Video

Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track

Make a Timeline Selection


Make a Split on the Timeline

Drag a Clip or Element to a New Location

Save the Current Frame as an Image

Make a Split on the Timeline

Splitting a clip divides one clip into two smaller clips making it easy to insert Transitions or graphics between scenes. All clips and elements located at the position of the seek bar are split unless you lock the tracks that contain clips or elements that you do not want to split. See also: **Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track**.

1. Lock any tracks that contain clips and elements that you do not want to split.
2. Position the seek bar at the point where you want to make the split.
3. Click **Split** .

Tips

- Images and Title Clips can be split.
- Callouts and Transitions **cannot** be split. If attempting to split at a position that contains either a Callout or Transition, an error message appears.

See also:

Use the Timeline to Search the Video

Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track

Make a Timeline Selection

Make a Cut on the Timeline

Add a Marker

Drag a Clip or Element to a New Location

Add a Marker

Markers provide easy navigation points for your viewer. When the video is produced in conjunction with the Table of Contents option, the Markers appear as interactive hyperlinks.

- Once you have inserted a Marker on the Timeline, you can give it a meaningful name that appears within the interactive table of contents in the produced video.
- Marker names are displayed on the Timeline when the mouse hovers over the marker element.

1. On the Timeline, place the selection seek bar on the frame where you want to add a Marker.
2. Choose **Edit > Add Marker** or press <CTRL + M>.
3. The *Marker Name* dialog box appears. Enter a name and click **OK**.
4. A Marker element is inserted on the Timeline within the Markers track.
5. Double-click on a Marker element on the Timeline to access the *Marker Name* dialog box once again.

See also:

Use the Timeline to Search the Video

Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track

Make a Timeline Selection

Make a Cut on the Timeline

Make a Split on the Timeline

Drag a Clip or Element to a New Location

Drag a Clip or Element to a New Location

Dragging a clip or element on the Timeline moves the clip or element to a new location on the same track.

Note: Zoom-n-Pan key frames cannot be moved on the Timeline. They must be modified in the *Zoom-n-Pan* task page. See **Zoom-n-Pan Properties Options**.

When dragging a video clip, it cannot be dragged to any arbitrary time on the Timeline. Instead, all clips must form a contiguous formation along the Timeline without any gaps.

When dragging an element, you can drag across clips but you cannot drag past the last video clip on the Timeline.

1. Click down and hold on the clip or element that you want to move.
2. Drag the clip or element along the track to the new location.
3. Release the mouse.

See also:

Use the Timeline to Search the Video

Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track

Make a Timeline Selection

Make a Cut on the Timeline

Make a Split on the Timeline

Add a Marker

Remove a Clip from the Timeline

Remove a Clip from the Timeline

Removing a video or audio clip from the Timeline removes that instance of the clip. The clip will still reside in the Clip Bin.

To remove a video or audio clip from the Timeline:

1. Click on the clip that is to be removed to select it. A black border encases the clip.
2. Click the <Delete> key on the keyboard or right-click on the clip and choose **Remove from Timeline** from the context menu.

Note: When removing a clip on the Timeline, you are not altering the original video in any way nor is the clip in the Clip Bin affected.

See also:

Add a Marker

Drag a Clip or Element to a New Location

Delete an Element from the Timeline

Extend the Frame of a Video Clip


Mark-In or Mark-Out a Clip or Element

Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip

Save the Current Frame as an Image

Delete an Element from the Timeline

Deleting an element such as a Callout or a Quiz from the Timeline permanently deletes that element from the Timeline.

Note: Select **Undo**  to restore an element that is deleted from the Timeline. However, if you go on to make other edits or additions to the Timeline, and then choose to restore an element using Undo, those edits or additions are lost during the undo process.

1. Click on the element that is to be permanently deleted to select it.
2. Click the <Delete> key on the keyboard or right-click on the element and choose **Delete from Timeline** from the context menu.

Note: Single click on a Zoom-n-Pan key frame to open the *Zoom-in-Pan* task page. Select the **Remove selected Zoom-n-Pan keyframe** from within the list box on the *Zoom-in-Pan* task page. See also: **Zoom-n-Pan Properties Options**.
Or, right-click on the key frame and choose **Delete from Timeline** from the context menu.

See also:

Drag a Clip or Element to a New Location

Remove a Clip from the Timeline

Extend the Frame of a Video Clip

Mark-In or Mark-Out a Clip or Element

Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip

Save the Current Frame as an Image

Extend the Frame of a Video Clip

Extending a frame extends the time that one frame is displayed. This is useful when you want to add additional narration to a particular area or you need to extend the frame at the end of the video to match the length of an audio track.

When extending a frame at the very beginning or end of a clip, a new clip is created that contains just that one frame. Once created, that clip is placed on the Timeline for you in the correct sequence.

If you extend a frame within a clip, then two new clips are created: one that contains the extended frame, and another one that contains the rest of the original clip that came after the extended frame.

1. On the Timeline, place the seek bar on the frame that you want to extend.
2. Right-click on the clip and choose **Extend Frame** from the menu.
3. The *Extend Frame* dialog box appears.
4. Select the duration for the frame in seconds by using the arrow buttons.
5. Click **OK** to save changes and exit this dialog box.
6. The Timeline is updated with the new time.

See also:

Add a Marker

Drag a Clip or Element to a New Location

Remove a Clip from the Timeline

Delete an Element from the Timeline

Mark-In or Mark-Out a Clip or Element

Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip

Save the Current Frame as an Image

Mark-In or Mark-Out a Clip or Element

Marking a clip in or out will remove time from either the beginning or end of the clip.

Marking a clip in or out does not cut the clip on the Timeline like the **Cut Selection** tool does. Instead, it hides the portion of the clip that you no longer want to use. So, at a later time, if you decide that you want to use a hidden portion of the clip, just drag the clip out to expose the part that you need.

1. Hover the cursor over the beginning or end of the clip or element that you want to adjust.
2. A handle will appear.
3. Click down on the handle and drag.



See also:

Drag a Clip or Element to a New Location

Remove a Clip from the Timeline

Delete an Element from the Timeline

Extend the Frame of a Video Clip

Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip

Save the Current Frame as an Image

Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip

Adjusting the clip speed of a video clip speeds up or slows down the playback time for an entire clip.

Note: If you have a clip that has accompanying audio, it is not recommended that you change the Clip Speed as this will cause the audio to get out of sync with the video.

Note: The new Clip Speed is only visible after the video is produced.

- On the Timeline, place the seek bar on the clip that you want to adjust.
- Right-click on the clip and choose **Clip Speed** from the menu.
- The *Clip Speed* dialog box appears. Enter the percentage of the original clip speed to either speed up or slow down playback.
- Click **OK**.

Clip Speed Options Description Table

This table describes each of the *Clip Speed* dialog box options.

Clip Speed Option	Description
% of original clip speed	Enter the percentage of the original clip speed to either speed up or slow down playback. The new duration for the clip in the rendered movie is displayed in the New Clip Duration field.
Original Clip Duration	Shows the clip's original duration. This is a read-only field.
New Clip Duration	Shows the clip's new duration. This is a read-only field.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

See also:

Drag a Clip or Element to a New Location

Remove a Clip from the Timeline

Delete an Element from the Timeline

Extend the Frame of a Video Clip

Mark-In or Mark-Out a Clip or Element

Save the Current Frame as an Image

Save the Current Frame as an Image

Saves the current frame displayed in the Preview Window as a BMP, GIF, JPEG, or PNG file. If you have created a Title Clip that you want to use over and over again, save the Title Clip as a BMP file and insert it into other videos using the **File > Import Media** option.

1. On the Timeline, move to the frame you want to save.
2. Choose **File > Save Frame As**. The *Save Video Frame As* dialog box appears.
3. Find the folder to save the graphic file to.
4. In the **File name** field, give this image a name if different than the default name.
5. In the **Save as type** field, select the file type from the dropdown menu.
6. Click **Save**.

See also:

Drag a Clip or Element to a New Location

Remove a Clip from the Timeline

Delete an Element from the Timeline

Extend the Frame of a Video Clip

Mark-In or Mark-Out a Clip or Element

Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip

Basic Audio Edits

The Timeline is used to make basic edits to audio clips. These basic edits allow you to audio in or out, adjust the volume of all clips up or down, etc.

It is important to note that original files or clips that are in the Clip Bin are not affected by any edits that occur on the Timeline.



And, when editing, you can undo/redo the editing until you are completely satisfied with the video.

See also:

- **Adjust the Volume for the Entire Timeline**
- **Fade In Audio**
- **Fade Out Audio**
- **Increase the Volume Up**
- **Decrease the Volume Down**
- **Replace Audio with Silence**
- **Save Audio Track as an MP3 or WAV File**

Adjust the Volume for the Entire Timeline

To adjust the volume for the **entire** Timeline:

1. Click **Audio Up**  or **Audio Down** . The audio wave form for the entire Timeline is adjusted.
2. Continue to click the audio button until the desired volume is achieved.

See also:

Fade In Audio

Fade Out Audio

Increase the Volume Up


Decrease the Volume Down

Replace Audio with Silence

Save Audio Track as an MP3 or WAV File

Fade In Audio

To fade in the volume of a clip's audio track:

1. Use the seek bar to highlight the section that you want to fade in.
2. Click **Fade In** . The audio wave form is adjusted.
3. Continue to click the **Fade In** button until the volume is achieved.

To ensure that only the desired audio track is affected, see **Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track**.

See also:

Adjust the Volume for the Entire Timeline

Fade Out Audio

Increase the Volume Up


Decrease the Volume Down

Replace Audio with Silence

Save Audio Track as an MP3 or WAV File

Fade Out Audio

To fade out the volume of a clip's audio track:

1. Use the seek bar to highlight the section that you want to fade out.
2. Click **Fade Out** . The audio wave form is adjusted.

To ensure that only the desired audio track is affected, see **Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track**.

See also:

Adjust the Volume for the Entire Timeline

Fade In Audio

Increase the Volume Up


Decrease the Volume Down

Replace Audio with Silence

Save Audio Track as an MP3 or WAV File

Increase the Volume Up

To increase the volume of a clip's audio track:

1. Use the seek bar to highlight the section that you want to increase.
2. Click **Volume Up** . The audio wave form is adjusted.

To ensure that only the desired audio track is affected, see **Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track**.

Note: To increase the volume for the entire Timeline, click the **Volume Up** button without first making a selection.

See also:

Adjust the Volume for the Entire Timeline

Fade In Audio

Fade Out Audio


Decrease the Volume Down

Replace Audio with Silence

Save Audio Track as an MP3 or WAV File

Decrease the Volume Down

To decrease the volume of a clip's audio track:

1. Use the seek bar to highlight the section that you want to decrease.
2. Click **Volume Down** . The audio wave form is adjusted.

To ensure that only the desired audio track is affected, see **Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track**.

Note: To decrease the volume for the entire Timeline, click the **Volume Down** button without first making a selection.

See also:

Adjust the Volume for the Entire Timeline

Fade In Audio

Fade Out Audio


Increase the Volume Up

Replace Audio with Silence

Save Audio Track as an MP3 or WAV File

Replace Audio with Silence

The Replace with Silence option sets the volume of the audio selection to zero. Unlike the delete or cut option, will not remove any of the existing waveform.

1. Make a selection on the Timeline.
2. Click **Replace with Silence** .
3. The audio is replaced with silence.

To ensure that only the desired audio track is affected, see **Lock and Unlock a Timeline Track**.

Note: To replace the volume for the entire Timeline with silence, click the **Replace with Silence** button without first making a selection.

See also:

Adjust the Volume for the Entire Timeline

Fade In Audio

Fade Out Audio

Increase the Volume Up

Decrease the Volume Down

Save Audio Track as an MP3 or WAV File

Save Audio Track as an MP3 or WAV File

Save all of the audio in the project as one separate but combined audio file. Everything you hear on all of the tracks when you play the contents of the Timeline is what is saved.

Use this feature to make a backup copy of the audio track or, use the sound track in a different application.

1. Choose **File > Save Audio As**.
2. Choose either **MP3** or **WAV**.
3. The *Save Audio As* dialog appears. Select the location to save the audio track to and choose a name for the audio file.
4. Click **Save**.

See also:

Adjust the Volume for the Entire Timeline

Fade In Audio

Fade Out Audio

Increase the Volume Up

Decrease the Volume Down

Replace Audio with Silence

Add Special Effects and Enhancements

Camtasia Studio has a wide array of enhancements and special effects to help you create professional looking videos in just minutes.

Screen Recording Enhancements

- **Record Camera: Add a Picture-in-Picture Recording**
- **Voice Narration**
- **Modify a Picture-in-Picture Recording**
- **Audio Enhancements**

Professional Quality Effects

- **Title Clips**
- **Transitions**
- **Callouts**
- **Zoom-n-Pan Keyframes**
- **Flash Quiz & Surveys**
- **Captions**

Title Clips

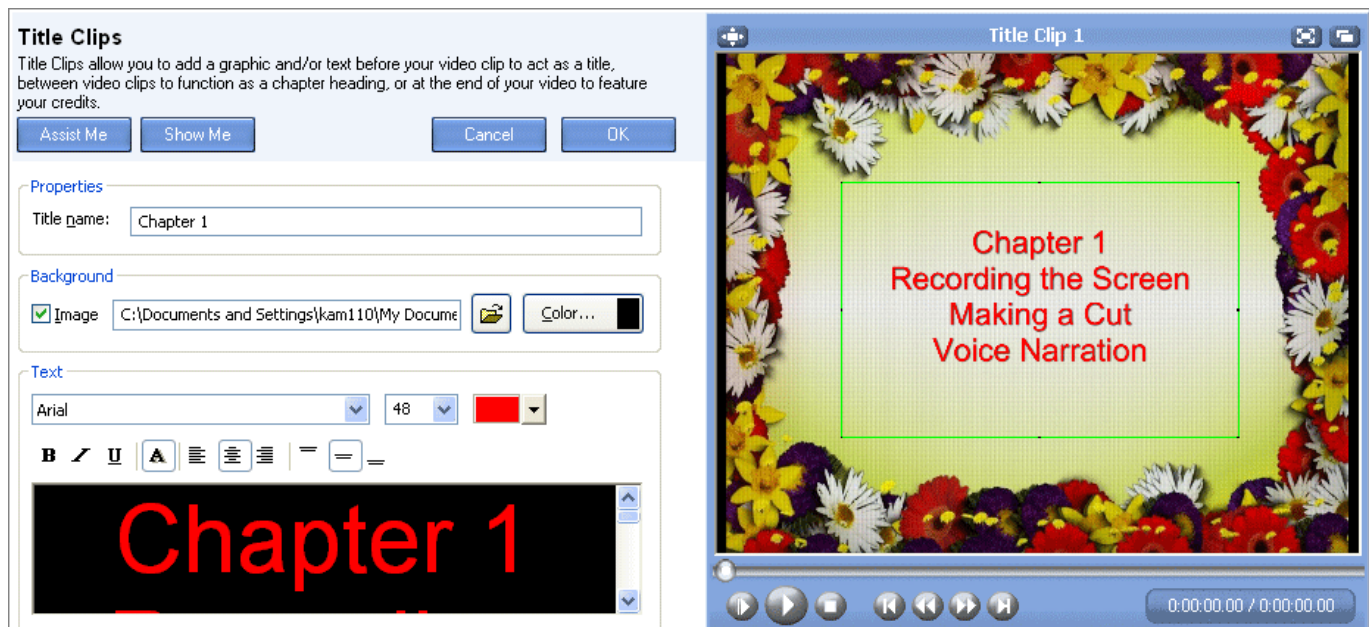
Note: In order to add a Title Clip, you must first have a project opened within Camtasia Studio with clips already on the Timeline.

The Title Clips feature is used to add a graphic and/or text:

- Before a clip on the Timeline to act as a title.
- Between clips on the Timeline to function as a chapter heading.
- At the end of the video to feature your credits or other important information.

Title Clips can be saved and exported as image files allowing them to be imported into other video projects. See **Save the Current Frame as an Image**.


To create a Title Clip, choose the **Title Clips** link in the Task Pane. The *Title Clips* task page appears. See also: **Create a Title Clip**.



Fast Facts about Title Clips

- Only available while in Timeline view.
- You can add as many Title Clips to a video as desired.
- Once a Title Clip is created, you can edit it or delete it.
- Title Clips are essentially editable images that you create using the Title Clip options.
- Once a Title Clip is created, it is placed in the Clip Bin. From there, drag it down to the Timeline in order for it to be included in the produced video.
- Title Clips are placed on the main Video track.
- Title Clips are editable from within the Clip Bin. To edit a Title Clip that is in the Clip Bin, right-click on it. From the context menu, choose **Edit Title Clip**. It is important to know that edits made to Title Clips within the Clip Bin **do not** get updated to any instances of that Title Clip that are already on the Timeline.
- Title Clips are editable from within the Timeline. To edit a Title Clip that is on the Timeline, double-click on it. The *Title Clips* task page appears. Make the edits, and click **OK**. The Title Clip on the Timeline is updated. It is important to know that edits made to Title Clips on the Timeline **do not** get updated to any instance of that Title Clip that is in the Clip Bin.

Create a Title Clip

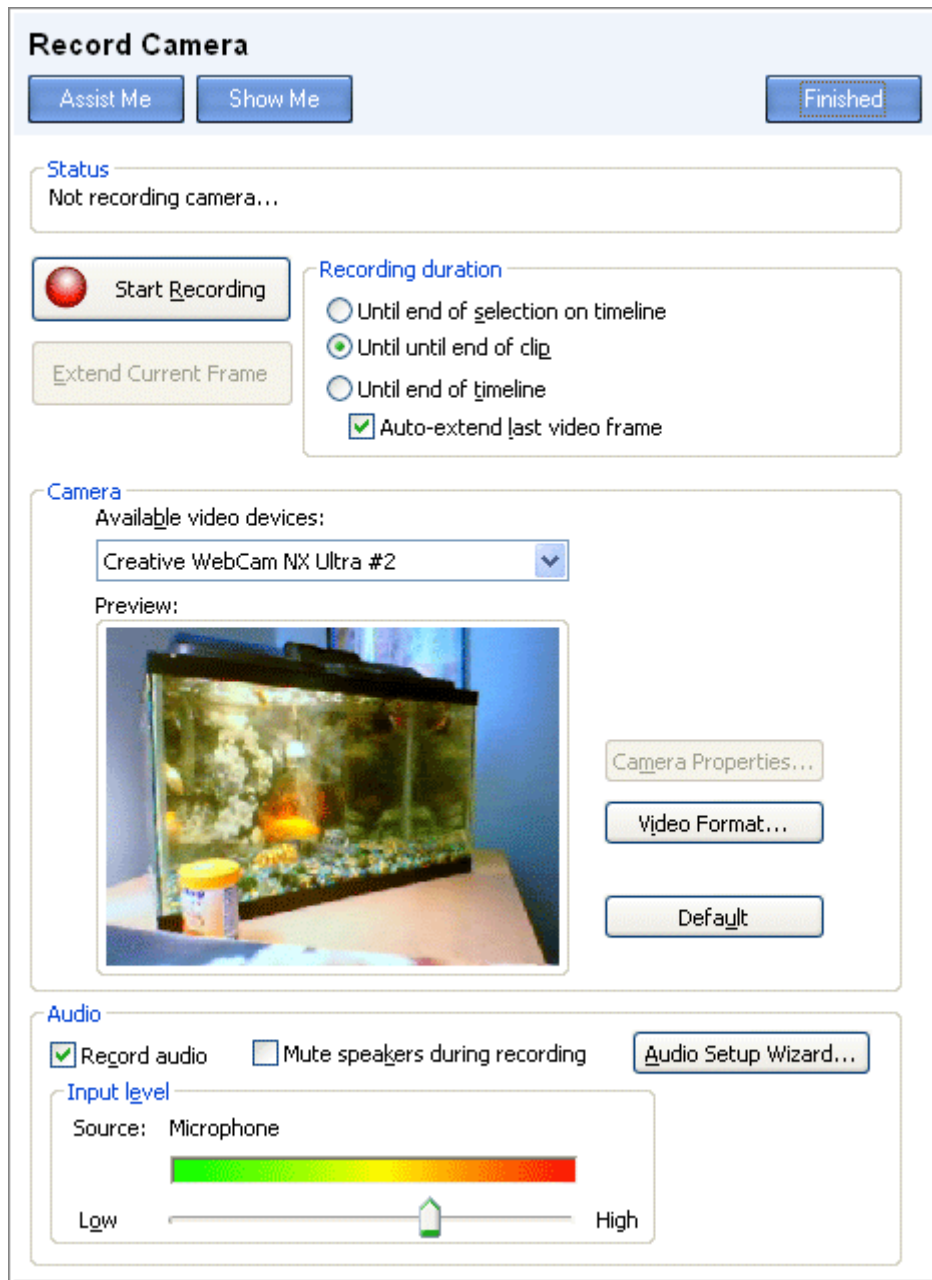
1. Click **Title Clips** in the Task List. The *Title Clips Properties* task page appears. As you create the Title Clip, the Preview Area is updated with the changes.
2. Within the **Title Name** field give this Title Clip a name. This name will not show within the video.
3. To use an existing image as the background for this Title Clip, Click **Browse**  located in the Background group box. Find any BMP, GIF, JPG, or PNG image file. Click **Open** to update the image file to the *Title Clips* task page.
4. Click the **Color** button to change the color of the background.
5. In the Text group box, change any of the font attributes.
6. In the Text box, enter the text that you want displayed in the Title Clip.
7. When you have the Title Clip just like you want it, click **OK**.
8. The Clip Bin view appears. The Title Clip is located under the Title Clip group. To include this Title Clip in the produced video, drag it to the Timeline.

Record Camera: Add a Picture-in-Picture Recording

Note: It is necessary that you have a working camera set up **before** you can record the camera video (Webcam).

The Record Picture-in-Picture options capture video from the webcam and synchronize it with the screen recording. Your viewers will see both the presentation and the presenter allowing in a video that is both interesting and professional-looking.

To create a camera recording, choose the **Record Camera** link in the Task Pane. The *Record Camera* task page appears. See also: **Record a Picture-in-Picture (PIP) Video Clip**.





Fast Facts about Picture-in-Picture

- Only available while in Timeline view.
- Once the camera recording is created, a separate PIP clip is saved. This clip can be edited at a later time using the PIP editing options. See **Picture-in-Picture Properties Options**.
- As you record the camera recording, the Timeline video clip(s) will play along in the Preview Area, ensuring perfect synchronization between the camera recording, audio, and video.

See also:

Picture-in-Picture Properties Options

Record a Picture-in-Picture (PIP) Video Clip

1. Within Camtasia Studio, place the seek bar at the location on the Timeline where the picture-in-picture recording is to begin. Or, use the seek bar to highlight a section of the Timeline to record picture-in-picture for.
2. Click **Record Camera** in the Task List. The *Record Picture-in-Picture (PIP) Options* task page appears.
3. At this time, the camera should be displayed in the **Camera devices** field. Additionally, you should see a live preview of the camera.
4. Choose the “stop recording” criteria.
5. If desired, enable the **Record audio** option to record audio with this PIP recording.
Note: You might need to scroll down the task page to see the Audio options.
6. Choose whether to **mute the speakers during recording**. This is an important option to consider since the clip(s) being recorded with picture-in-picture might already have audio. If that audio is playing while you are recording, then the microphone will pick up that sound as well. If you need help with the audio, choose the **Audio** link. See also: **Audio Settings**.
7. Click **Start Recording** at the top of the task page . Begin recording the camera video using the playback in the Preview Area as the guide for proper synching with the screen recording. When the stop recording criteria that you chose in Step 4 is met, the recording process will automatically stop.
8. A prompt to save this recording appears. Name the clip and click **Save**.
9. Click **Finished** . This clip is added to the to the Clip Bin and to the Timeline’s PIP track beginning at the position of the seek bar.

For a more detailed look at each of the options found in this page, see **Picture-in-Picture Properties Options**.

PIP Preview

Once you have created the picture-in-picture camera recording(s) and exit the *Record Picture-in-Picture* task page, you may be prompted to select a way to preview the PIP recordings. See **PIP Preview**.

See also:

Record a Picture-in-Picture (PIP) Video Clip



Picture-in-Picture Properties Options

Modify an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip

Picture-in-Picture Properties Options

This table describes each of the options found in the *Picture-in-Picture* task page along with its use.

Note: For instructions for creating a PIP camera recording, see **Record a Picture-in-Picture (PIP) Video Clip**.

Option	Description & Use
Status	Gives a status concerning the actual recording. This is a read-only field intended to give you visual feedback on what is happening during the recording of the camera.
Start Recording	Begins the camera recording process. Click the Start Recording button.
Stop Recording	Ends the Voice Narration process. Click the Stop Recording button. The <i>Save</i> dialog box appears. Give this recording a name and click Save .
Extend Current Frame	<p>Extends the current frame so adequate Voice Narration may be recorded. This is useful when the video includes a frame that is only shown for a short time while the Voice Narration needs to focus on that frame for a longer duration. While recording, click the Extend Current Frame button.</p>  <p>The button will turn to Resume Video Playback.</p>  <p>See also: Extend Current Frame.</p>
Until end of selection on timeline	Ends the recording process when the seek bar comes to the end of the selection highlighted on the Timeline. Enable before clicking the Start Recording button.
Until end of clip	Ends the recording process when the seek bar comes to the end of the current clip. Enable before clicking the Start Recording button.
Until end of Timeline	Ends the recording process when the seek bar comes to the end of the entire Timeline. Enable before clicking the Start Recording button.
Auto extend last video frame	Extends the last frame on the timeline until recording is stopped. Enable before clicking the Start Recording button.
Available video devices	A list of cameras that you can record from. Choose the camera device from the dropdown menu. A preview appears within the Preview window.
Camera Properties	Populated by your camera device. Consult your camera's documentation for information on these options
Video Format	Populated by your camera device. Consult your camera's documentation for information on these options
Default	Resets the camera settings to their original settings. Click the Default button.
Record Audio	Includes sound in the camera recording. Enable to include sound with the camera recording.
Mute speakers during recording	Mutes the speakers as you record. This is an important option to consider since the clip(s) being recorded with picture-in-picture might already have audio. If the audio is playing while you are recording, then the microphone will pick up that sound as well. Enable before clicking the Start Recording button.
Audio Setup Wizard	The Audio Setup Wizard button gives you access to the audio wizard. In this two page wizard you can set record and playback rate options. See also: Audio Format .

Option	Description & Use
Input level	<p>Control the level of sound during recording.</p> <p>Raise the bar to increase the input level. Lower the bar to decrease the input level.</p> <p>The best settings for the recording level will vary from one system to another and from one recording device to another.</p> <p>For starters, test the setup before using it for the actual recording. A good starting point for a speaking voice would be to keep the microphone spectrum in the yellow or orange range.</p>
Finished	Save the changes and exit the task page.

Voice Narration

Note: It is necessary that you have a working microphone set up **before** you can record Voice Narration.

Voice Narration is used to insert narration into the video using the playback of the clips on the Timeline as your guide. When using Voice Narration, the video plays along within the Preview Area while you are recording your voice.

Once the recording of the narration is complete, the Voice Narration audio clip that you have created is saved as a file and inserted into the Timeline at the correct position to correspond to the clip or clips that you were narrating.

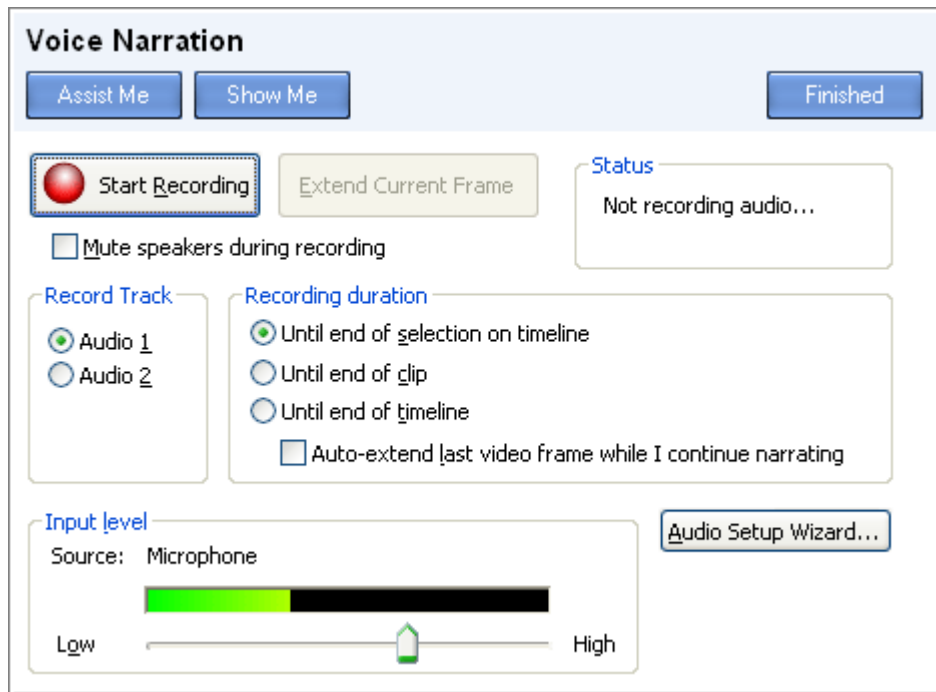
Typically, if you want to narrate the entire video, it is best to wait and do the narration last after all of the clips have been added and edited.

Tips for Successful Voice Recording

- During recording, it is best to read with an unhurried, natural, and steady voice.
- While you are recording, the volume sensor shows a colored spectrum of your voice. It is best to record at a steady level where the level is somewhere near the middle and where the colors are in the high yellow to orange spectrum. If you are recording in the red spectrum, some clipping may occur.

To Create a Voice Narration Recording

To create a Voice Narration recording, choose the **Voice Narration** link in the Task Pane. The *Voice Narration* task page appears. See also: **Voice Narration**.



See also:


Voice Narration

Voice Narration Options

Voice Narration

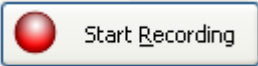
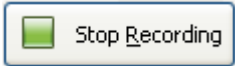
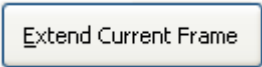

Note: In order to add Voice Narration, you must first have a project opened within Camtasia Studio with clips already on the *Timeline*.

Note: Each of the options are described in detail in the topic entitled **Voice Narration Options**.

1. Within Camtasia Studio, place the seek bar at the location on the Timeline where the Voice Narration is to begin. Or, use the seek bar to highlight a section of the Timeline to narrate.
2. Click the **Voice Narration** link in the Task List. The *Voice Narration Properties* task page appears.
3. Choose whether to **mute the speakers during recording**.
This is an important option to consider since the clip(s) being recorded with Voice Narration might already have audio. If that audio is playing while you are recording, then the microphone will pick up that sound as well.
4. Choose to record to **Audio Track 1** or **Audio Track 2**.
If there is currently audio connected with the clip(s) on Video Track 1 any voice narration that you record will overwrite the existing audio.
5. Choose the recording duration criteria. If the seek bar was used to highlight a section of the Timeline to narrate, choose **Until end of selection on timeline**.
6. Click **Start Recording**. Begin narrating the clip(s) using the playback in the Preview Area as your guide. When the stop recording criteria that you chose is met, the recording process will automatically stop.
7. A prompt to save this recording appears. Once you name the audio clip, click **Save**.
8. Click **Finished** . If you have recorded for Track 2, this clip is added to the Timeline and to the Clip Bin. Narration recorded for Track 1 **will not** be inserted into the Clip Bin. It will, however, be seamlessly inserted into the Timeline.

Voice Narration Options

This table describes each of the options found in the *Voice Narration* task page along with its use.


Option	Description & Use
Start Recording	Begins the Voice Narration recording.  Click Start Recording . The video clips on the Timeline begins to play in the Preview Area. Begin speaking into the microphone.
Stop Recording	Ends the Voice Narration recording.  Click Stop Recording . The <i>Save</i> dialog box appears. Give this file a name and click Save .
Status	Gives a status concerning the actual recording. This is a read-only field intended to give you visual feedback on what is happening during the recording of the camera.
Extend Current Frame	Extends the current frame so adequate Voice Narration may be recorded. This is useful when the video includes a frame that is only shown for a short time while the Voice Narration needs to focus on that frame for a longer duration.  While recording, click Extend Current Frame . The button will turn to Resume Video Playback .  See also: Extend Current Frame .

Option	Description & Use
Audio 1	Record Voice Narration for Track 1. Enable before clicking the Start Recording button. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If there is currently audio connected with the clip(s) on Video Track 1 any Voice Narration that you record will overwrite the existing audio. • Narration recorded for Track 1 will not be inserted into the Clip Bin. It will, however, be seamlessly inserted into the Timeline.
Audio 2	Record Voice Narration for Track 2. Enable before clicking the Start Recording button. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Voice Narration that you record will play in conjunction with audio that exists on Track 1. • Voice Narration recorded for Track 2 is added to the Timeline and to the Clip Bin.
Until end of selection on timeline	Automatically ends the recording when the seek bar comes to the end of the selection highlighted on the Timeline. Enable before clicking the Start Recording button.
Until end of clip	Automatically ends the recording when the seek bar comes to the end of the current clip. Enable before clicking the Start Recording button.
Until end of timeline	Automatically ends the recording when the seek bar comes to the end of the entire Timeline. Enable before clicking the Start Recording button.
Auto-extend last video frame while I continue narrating	Extends the last frame on the timeline until recording is stopped. Enable before clicking the Start Recording button.
Mute speakers during recording	Mutes the speakers as you record. This is an important option to consider since the clip(s) being recorded with Voice Narration might already have audio. If the audio is playing while you are recording, then the microphone will pick up that sound as well. Enable before clicking the Start Recording button.
Audio device	Choose the correct device from the dropdown menu.
Audio input source	Choose the correct device from the dropdown menu.
Input level	Control the level of sound during recording. Raise the bar to increase the input level. Lower the bar to decrease the input level. The best settings for the recording level will vary from one system to another and from one recording device to another. For starters, test the setup before using it for the actual recording. A good starting point for a speaking voice would be to keep the microphone spectrum in the yellow or orange range.
Audio Setup Wizard	The Audio Setup Wizard button gives you access to the audio wizard. In this two page wizard you can set record and playback rate options. See also: Audio Format .
Finished	Save the changes and exit the task page.

Extend Current Frame

The **Extend Current Frame** option located within the *Voice Narration* task page or the *Record Camera* task page extends or pauses the current frame so adequate Voice Narration/camera recording may be recorded. This is useful when the video includes a frame that is only shown for a short time while the Voice Narration needs to focus on that frame for a longer duration.

When extending a frame this way, the original clip is split and a new clip with only one frame is added to the Timeline. The Voice Narration is added to the Timeline as one continuous audio clip.

1. Within Camtasia Studio, place the seek bar at the location on the Timeline where the Voice Narration/camera recording is to begin. Or, use the seek bar to highlight a section of the Timeline to narrate or record.
2. Click the **Voice Narration/Record Camera** link in the Task List. The appropriate properties task page appears.
3. Choose all other desired options. See also: **Voice Narration Options** and **Picture-in-Picture Properties Options**
4. Click the **Start Recording** button. Begin narrating the clip(s) or recording the camera using the playback in the Preview Area as your guide.
5. When the frame appears that you want to pause or extend, click the **Extend Current Frame** button continue to add the Voice Narration or continue recording the camera.
6. Once you have added the narration or recording, click the **Resume** button. Regular recording begins.
7. When the stop recording criteria that you chose is met, the recording process will automatically stop.
8. A prompt to save this recording appears. Once you name the clip, click **Save**.
9. Click **Finished** . A new video clip with just the one extended frame is added to the Timeline. If you have recorded for Track 2, the audio clip is added to the Timeline and to the Clip Bin. Narration recorded for Track 1 will not be inserted into the Clip Bin. It will, however, be seamlessly inserted into the Timeline.

Modify a Picture-in-Picture Recording

The *Picture-in-Picture (PIP)* options allow you to change the properties of a PIP clip on the Timeline PIP track. Within the manager portion of the task page, you can also remove one or all of the clips on the PIP track.

When choosing to modify the PIP recording properties, the available options will depend upon the *PIP Preview* option being used.

These modification options are available when the PIP is being viewed in **Embedded** mode:

- Position
- Size
- Opacity
- Border
- Drop Shadow
- Fading
- Show/Hide properties

These modification options are available when the PIP is being viewed in **Side-by-Side** mode:

- Fading
- Show/Hide properties

To create a modify a picture-in-picture clip, choose the **Picture-in-Picture (PIP)** link in the Task Pane. The Picture-in-Picture (PIP) manager page appears. Choose a clip from the list and click the **Modify selected PIP clip** link. The *Modify selected PIP* task page appears. See also: **Make Changes to a PIP Clip**.

Modify Picture-in-Picture (PIP)

When producing your video using a Flash Side-by-Side template for the PIP, only the Show/Hide and Fade In/Out options will be applied to the completed video. Other properties that you choose here are only applied to the PIP when using a template other than Flash Side-by-Side.

Properties

Opacity: 100 %

Include border Width: X:

Fade PIP video in and out Height: Y:

Drop shadow Shadow direction:

Show/Hide PIP video

To hide a section of the PIP video while allowing the audio to continue to play, first drag the seek bar to make a selection on the Timeline. Next, click on the Hide PIP button. The hidden portion of the PIP will be grayed out on the Timeline.

To show a hidden section of the PIP video, drag the seek bar over the desired hidden area on the Timeline. Next, click on the Show PIP button. The hidden portion of the PIP will no longer be grayed out on the Timeline.

Make Changes to a PIP Clip

To make changes to an **embedded PIP clip**, continue with **Modify an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip**.

To make changes to a **side-by-side PIP clip**, continue with **Modify a Side-by-Side Picture-in-Picture**.

Note: If you choose to produce using a Flash template that does not include the embedded PIP option, then several of the options that you choose here are ignored during the actual production process. The options that are **not** ignored are **Fade PIP Video in and out** and **Show/Hide PIP Video**. For more on this topic, see **Flash Templates** and **Flash Template Examples**.

Accessing the Modify PIP Options Directly From the Timeline

The **Modify selected PIP clip** and **Remove selected PIP clip** options are also available directly from the Timeline:

- To open the *Modify Picture-in-Picture (PIP)* task page, double-click on a clip on the PIP track.
- Right-click on the clip on the PIP track and choose **Modify PIP** from the context menu.
- Right-click on the clip on the PIP track and choose **Remove from Timeline** from the context menu.

See also:

Modify an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip

Modify a Side-by-Side Picture-in-Picture

Clips & Elements on the Timeline

PIP Preview

Modify a Side-by-Side Picture-in-Picture Clip

Note: In order to access the *Picture-in-Picture (PIP)* task page, you must first have a project opened within Camtasia Studio with clips already on the *Timeline's* PIP track.

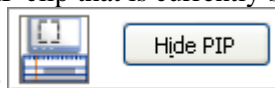
1. On the Timeline, double-click on the PIP clip that you want to modify.
2. The *Modify Picture-in-Picture (PIP)* task page appears.
3. Make the modifications and click **OK**. Each option is described in detail below.
4. The *Picture-in-Picture (PIP)* task page returns.

5. Click **Finished** .

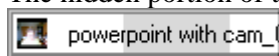
To Show or Hide the PIP Clip

To hide a section of the PIP clip while allowing the audio to continue to play:

1. While in the *Modify Picture-in-Picture* task page, drag the seek bar to make a selection on the *Timeline*. You must drag over the PIP clip that is currently selected and visible in the *Preview Area*.



2. Next, click **Hide PIP**.
3. The hidden portion of the PIP clip is denoted on the *Timeline* with a gray color.



To Show a Hidden Section of the PIP Clip

1. While in the *Modify Picture-in-Picture* task page, drag the seek bar over the hidden area on the *Timeline*. You must drag over the PIP clip that is currently selected and visible in the *Preview Area*.



2. Next, click **Show PIP**. The hidden portion of the PIP will no longer be grayed out on the *Timeline*.

Fade PIP Clip In and Out

Slightly fades the PIP clip in and out during playback. This gives the PIP a smoother transition in to or out of the main video.

1. While in the *Modify Picture-in-Picture* task page, enable the **Fade PIP video in and out** option.



2. Uncheck to stop using the **Fade PIP video in and out** for this clip. The effect will not be visible in the playback until you exit the *Picture-in-Picture* task page.

See also:



Modify a Picture-in-Picture

Modify an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip

Clips & Elements on the Timeline

PIP Preview

Modify an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip

1. On the *Timeline*, double-click on the PIP clip that you want to modify.
2. The *Modify Picture-in-Picture (PIP)* task page appears.
3. Make the modifications and click **OK** . The modifications are updated to the *Preview Area*. See **Picture-in-Picture Properties Options** for a complete description of each option.
4. The *Picture-in-Picture (PIP)* task page returns.
5. Click **Finished** .

See with **Picture-in-Picture Properties Options** for a complete description of each option.

See also:

Modify a Picture-in-Picture

Modify a Side-by-Side Picture-in-Picture

Clips & Elements on the Timeline

PIP Preview

Picture-in-Picture Properties

Picture-in-Picture Use these options to modify a *Picture-in-Picture* clip.

Option	Description & Use
Size	Resize the PIP clip within the main video. Within the <i>Preview Area</i> , grab a corner of the PIP clip and drag it to the size.
Position	Move the PIP clip to a different location within the main video. Within the <i>Preview Area</i> , place the cursor over the center portion of the PIP clip. Click down and hold, then, drag the PIP clip to the desired location.
Opacity	Change the opacity of the PIP clip. Changing the opacity to a number that is less than 100 percent allows part of the main video to show through the PIP. Drag the slider bar to the opacity percentage. The <i>Preview Area</i> will update the look. Continue to change the opacity until you achieve the desired results.
Include Border	Include a border around the PIP clip. Enable the Include border option. Click the Color button. Choose the color from the palette and click OK .
Drop shadow	Include a drop shadow around the PIP clip. Enable the Drop shadow option.
Shadow direction	Choose the direction of the drop shadow. From the dropdown menu, choose the direction.
Fade PIP video in and out	Slightly fade the PIP clip in and out. This gives the PIP a smoother transition into or out of the main video. Enable the Fade PIP video in and out option.
Show/Hide PIP video	Hide part of the PIP clip. When the PIP clip is hidden, only the underlying main video clip is visible. On the <i>Timeline</i> , use the seek bar to make a selection across a PIP clip. The Hide PIP and Show PIP options become enabled. Click the Hide PIP button to hide the PIP clip. The hidden portion of the PIP clip is denoted on the <i>Timeline</i> with a gray color. To see the PIP clip once again, highlight the gray portion of the PIP and click the Show PIP button.

See also:

Modify a Picture-in-Picture

Modify a Side-by-Side Picture-in-Picture

Modify an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip

Clips & Elements on the Timeline

PIP Preview

Manage PIP Clips

To access these options, click the *Picture-in-Picture (PIP)* link under **Edit** in the *Task List*. The *Picture-in-Picture* task page appears. Choose these options.

Option Link	Description & Use
Modify selected PIP clip	To modify the properties of a PIP clip, first highlight the PIP clip that you want to edit within the list and click this link. The <i>Callout Picture-in-Picture</i> dialog box appears. See also: Modify a Picture-in-Picture .
Remove selected PIP clip	To remove a PIP clip from the <i>Timeline</i> , first highlight the PIP clip that you want to remove within the list and click this link. Click Yes in the confirmation dialog box. The clip is removed from the list and the <i>Timeline</i> .
Remove all PIP clips	To remove all PIP clips from the <i>Timeline</i> , click this link. Click Yes in the confirmation dialog box. The clips are removed from the list and the <i>Timeline</i> .
Finished	Save the changes and exit the task page.

PIP Preview

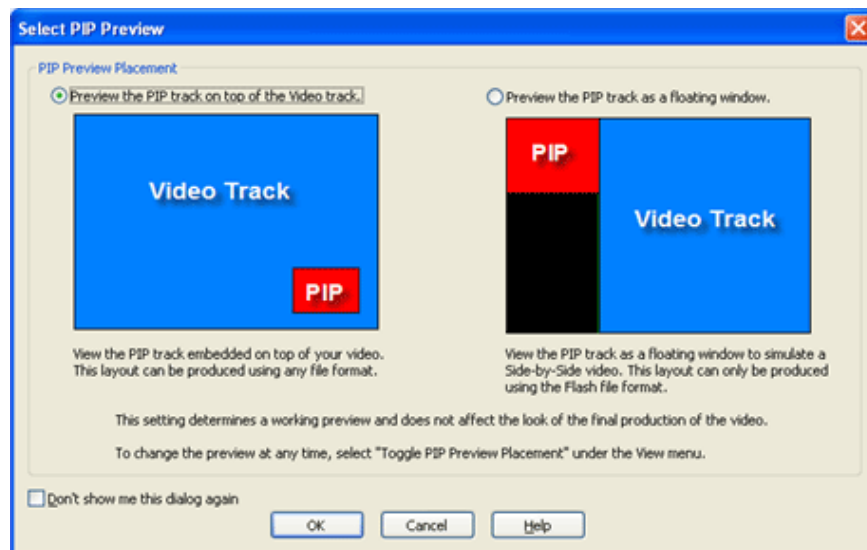
The *Select PIP Preview* screen asks you how to show the clip(s) on the PIP track as you work within Camtasia Studio. The *Select PIP Preview* dialog box appears only one time for each project that you work on.

It is very important to note that while choosing a PIP Preview option is not a production option, it does determine the settings that are available for PIP editing. When choosing which option to use for previewing, keep these tips in mind:

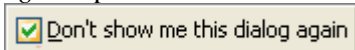
- If you are going to produce the final video as a Flash Side-by-Side video, it is best to choose the **Preview the PIP track as a floating window** option.
- If you are going to produce the final video as a Flash Embedded video, it is best to choose the **Preview the PIP track on top of the Video track** option.
- If you are going to produce the final video in a file format other than Flash, choose the **Preview the PIP track on top of the Video track**.

The *Select PIP Preview* dialog box appears whenever one of these occur for the first time:

- Edit the video within Camtasia Studio after creating a PowerPoint recording that contains camera video.
- Edit the video within Camtasia Studio after creating a screen recording that contains camera video.
- Open a project within Camtasia Studio that contains any clip that is on the PIP track.
- Place a .camrec file that contains camera video on the Timeline.
- Place a video directly on the PIP track.
- Create a camera recording from within Camtasia Studio's Picture-in-Picture (PIP) option.



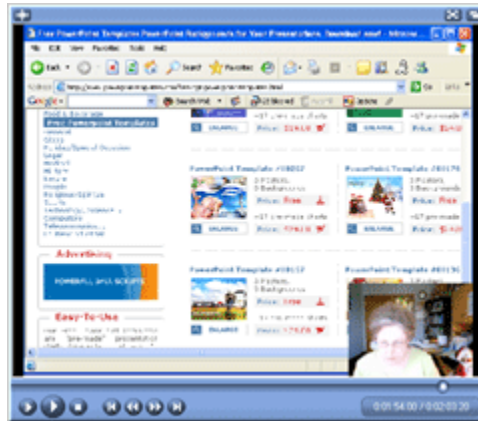
Note: If you do not wish to see this dialog during the next new project, enable the *Don't show me this dialog again* option.



In the future, new projects will default to previewing in whichever manner you choose here.

Preview the PIP track on top of the Video track (embedded)

View the PIP track embedded onto the top of the video track. The PIP is placed in the lower right hand corner of the video as seen in the image below.



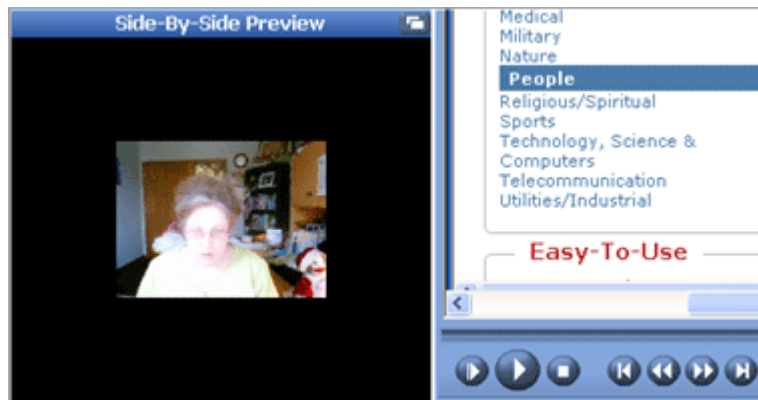
Once you have made the PIP previewing selection, click **OK**.

To access the properties for modifying the look of the Embedded PIP video, double-click on the PIP clip on the Timeline or choose the **Picture-in-Picture (PIP)** option in the Task List. See also: **Modify an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip**.

Preview the PIP track as a floating window

View the PIP track as a floating window that is separate from the video being displayed within the Preview Area. This gives you an idea of how the video might look when produced using the Flash Side-by-Side template option.

With this view, the PIP clip is placed in a separate Side-by-Side Preview window at the bottom of the Clip Bin as seen in the image below.



To undock this window and move it to a new location on the screen, click the undock button in the upper right hand corner of the window:



To redock the window, click the **Close** button in the upper right hand corner of the window:



To access the properties for modifying the look of the Side-by-Side PIP video, double-click on the PIP clip on the Timeline or choose the **Picture-in-Picture (PIP)** option in the Task List. See also: **Modify a Side-by-Side Picture-in-Picture Clip**.

Change the Preview of the PIP Recording

No matter what view you chose to preview the PIP with, you can easily switch views.

While in *Timeline* view, choose **View > Toggle PIP Preview Placement**. The preview will change.

See also:

Modify a Picture-in-Picture

Modify a Side-by-Side Picture-in-Picture

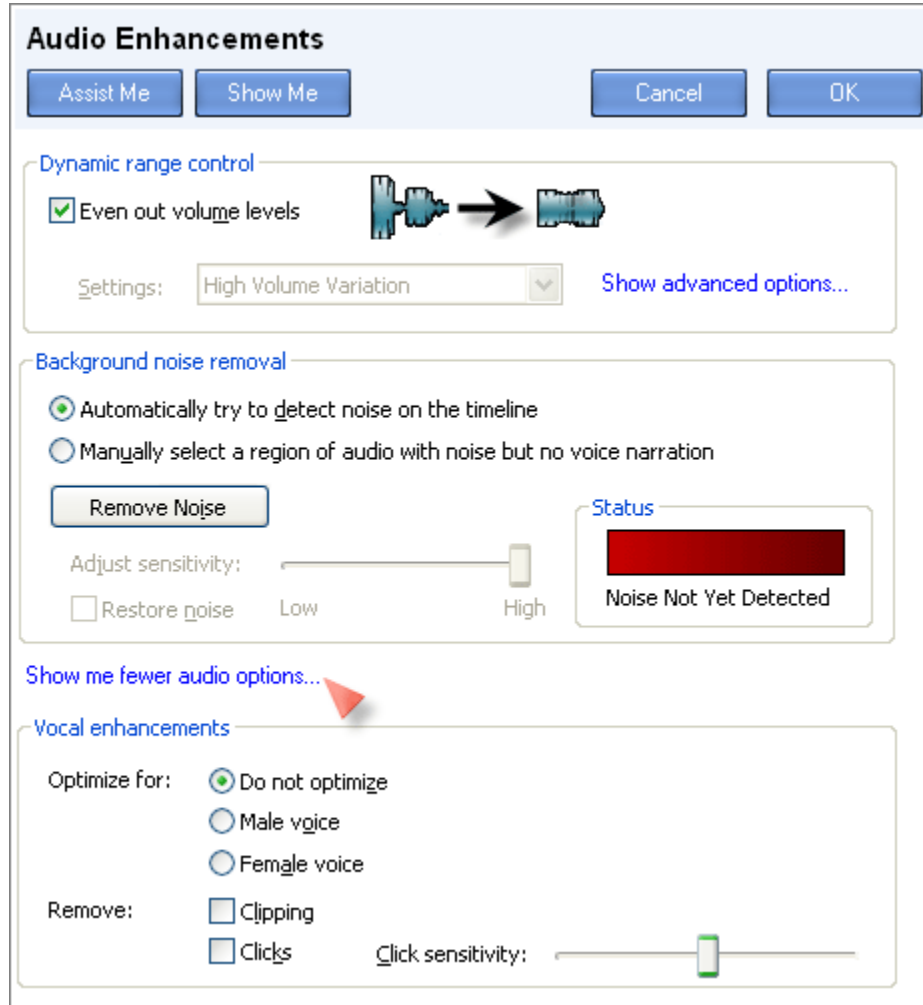
Modify an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip


Clips & Elements on the Timeline

Audio Enhancements

Note: In order to add audio enhancements, you must first have a project opened within Camtasia Studio with clips already on the Timeline.

The Audio Enhancements allow you to enhance the audio track(s) by evening out volume levels and removing noise. There are also several advanced audio options to choose from.

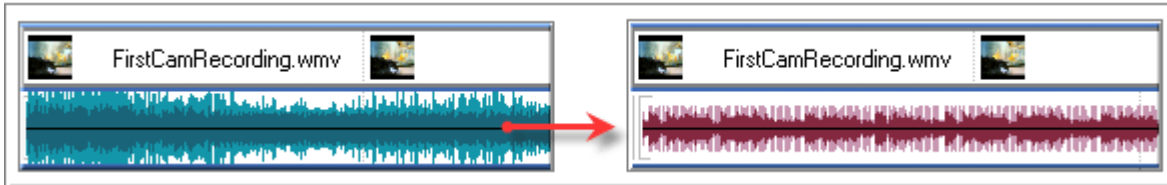


- To access the *Audio Enhancements* properties page at anytime, click the **Audio Enhancements**  tool on the Timeline.
- To apply Audio Enhancements, continue with **Apply Audio Enhancements**.
- For more information on each of the options found in this task page, including the advanced options, see **Audio Enhancement Options**.

Visual Cues When Audio Enhancements Are Turned On

The Audio Enhancements are toggle options that when turned on are applied to the **entire Timeline** – not just a selection of the Timeline or individual audio clip on the Timeline. Therefore, it is best to wait until you have all of the Timeline editing completed **before** applying the Audio Enhancements.


- When the **Even out volume levels** option is “on”, immediate improvement in the variation of the waveform sound levels occur.
- When the **Noise Reduction** option is “on”, the color of the audio waveform will change from teal to burgundy.

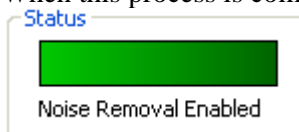


Apply Audio Enhancements

Important!


Before you begin working with Audio Enhancements, read this important information: **Visual Cues When Audio Enhancements Are Turned On.**


1. Make sure that you have completed all of the edits on the Timeline.
2. Choose the Audio Enhancements option in the Task List or, click the **Audio Enhancements**  tool on the Timeline. The *Audio Enhancements* task page appears.
3. Check the **Even out volume levels** option.
4. Select the **Settings** that best describe the levels of audio variation that you have on the Timeline. The volume leveling will occur immediately.
Click **Play** in the Preview Area to hear how the new audio sounds. While the video is playing, check and uncheck the **Even out volume levels** option to hear a comparison of the before and after audio quality.
5. Enable the **Automatically try to detect noise on the timeline** option.
6. Click the **Start Training Audio** button. This process detects noise in the audio using a selection where there should be silence. A selection on the Timeline will automatically be made and the training begins. Once the training is complete, the noise removal will take place.
7. When this process is complete, the status level turns green and says **Noise Removal Complete**.



The audio waveform on the Timeline will change color.

Click **Play** in the Preview Area to hear how the new audio sounds. While the video is playing, check and uncheck the **Restore Noise** option to hear a comparison of the before and after audio quality.

8. When you are satisfied with the audio enhancements, click **OK** . The Timeline view returns. If you are **not** satisfied with the quality of the audio, you may want to try the manual method of removing noise. See also: **Manually select a region**.

To remove the Audio Enhancements, click the **Audio Enhancements**  tool on the Timeline. Uncheck the **Even out volume levels** option or check the **Restore Noise** option.

For more information on each of the options found in this task page, including the advanced options, see **Audio Enhancement Options**.

Audio Enhancement Options

This table describes each of the options found in the *Audio Enhancements* task page along with its use.

Option	Description & Use
Even out volume levels	<p>Adjusts the volume of the audio clips to a standard level. This is useful since recording levels between audio clips can vary greatly.</p> <p>When the Even out volume levels option is turned on, the audio waveform will immediately show signs of being improved.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Click Play in the Preview Area to test how the enhancements sound. • While the video is playing, check and uncheck to hear a comparison of the before and after audio quality. • Change the Settings option if desired.
Settings	<p>Choose the setting that most closely matches the volume variation that you have on the Timeline.</p> <p>Choose from high, medium, or low levels. Typically, using one of these standard presets is sufficient and will greatly improve the audio quality.</p> <p>However, for advanced users who might want to choose specific settings, choose the Custom Settings option. Manually set the Ratio, Threshold, and Gain.</p>
Automatically try to detect noise on the timeline	<p>The Training process detects noise within the audio at a location where silence exists. Camtasia Studio will automatically look for the best area on the Timeline in which to train for noise reduction.</p> <p>This works best when you have a single audio clip on the Timeline or, all of the audio clips contain similar kinds of noise.</p> <p>Once you have made the selection, click the Start Training button. The training and noise reduction process begins immediately. The status area will let you know when the process is complete.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Click the Play button in the Preview Area to hear how the new audio sounds. • While the video is playing, check and uncheck the Restore Noise option to heart a comparison of the before and after audio quality.
Manually select a region of audio with noise but no voice narration	<p>Manually select a region on the Timeline's audio waveform to train for noise reduction. This should be a location where silence should exist. You need only make a small selection – less than one second.</p> <p>If no true silence exists, you might have to train over an area that has some speaking in it. In this case, if necessary, use the Adjust Sensitivity option to fine tune the noise reduction. See also: Adjust Sensitivity.</p> <p>Once you have made the selection, click the Start Training button. The training and noise reduction process begins immediately. The status area will let you know when the process is complete.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Click the Play button in the Preview Area to hear how the new audio sounds. • While the video is playing, check and uncheck the Restore Noise option to hear a comparison of the before and after audio quality. • When you are satisfied with the audio enhancements, click OK.

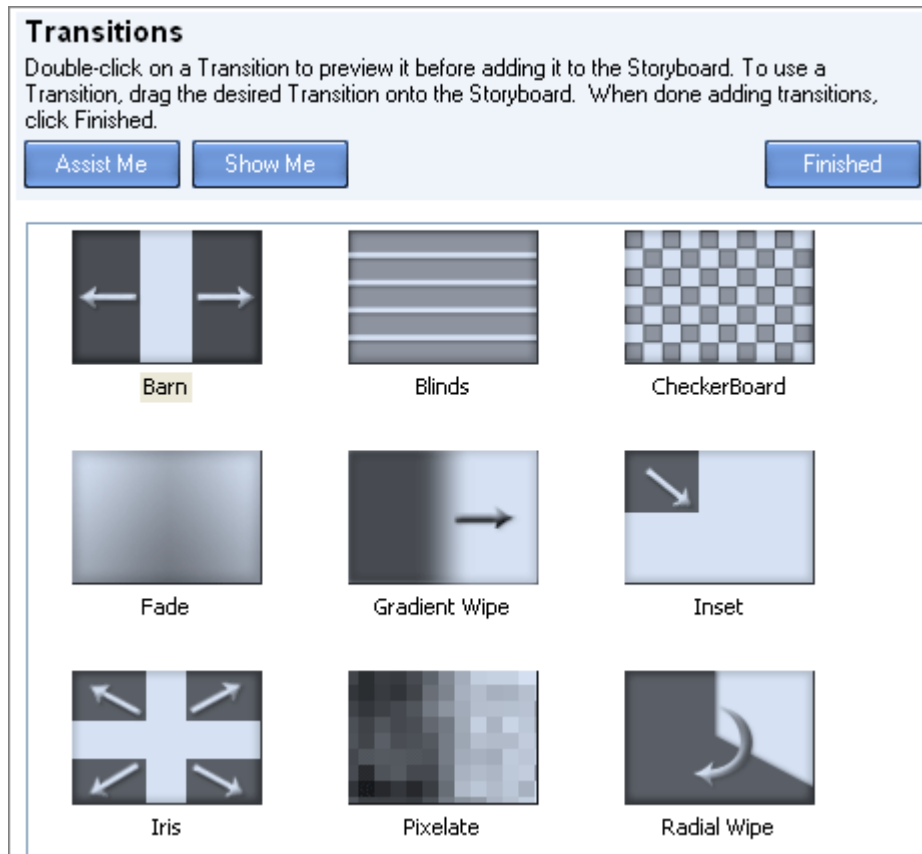
Option	Description & Use
Start Training Audio	<p>Click the Start Training button to begin the actual Training and Noise Reduction processes. These will happen one right after the other. The status area will let you know when the process is complete.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Click the Play button in the Preview Area to hear how the new audio sounds. • While the video is playing, check and uncheck the Restore Noise option to hear a comparison of the before and after audio quality. • As the video plays, use the Adjust Sensitivity lever to fine tune the noise reduction enhancements.
Adjust Sensitivity	<p>The Adjust Sensitivity slider option is used after the Training and Noise Reduction processes have been completed. Use if the noise reduction process caused the audio to degrade in quality. This might happen if the training occurred over a selection that did not contain true silence.</p> <p>In this case, use the slider to reduce the sensitivity and thereby restore some of the audio quality.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Click the Play button in the Preview Area to hear how the audio sounds. As the video plays, use the Adjust Sensitivity lever to fine tune the noise reduction enhancements.
Restore noise	<p>Toggles the Noise Removal option on or off for the entire Timeline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When unchecked or “on”, the waveform turns to a burgundy color. • When checked or turned “off”, the audio is reinstated to its present condition before the noise removal was applied. The audio waveform returns back to the teal color.
Optimize for (Show me more audio options link)	<p>Can help remove both sibilance (hissing noise from “s” sounds) and plosives (popping noise from “p” sounds). Also, loud bass sounds that occur when a microphone is held too close while speaking can be minimized.</p> <p>Do not optimize: No optimization Male voice: Enhancement optimized for the male voiceovers. Female voice: Enhancement optimized for the female voiceovers.</p>
Remove (Show me more audio options link)	<p>Attempts to lesson distortion caused by the following:</p> <p>Clipping: This occurs when the audio volume is too loud and the peaks of the recorded audio are cut off while recording. This results in an audible distortion of the sound.</p> <p>Clicks: This occurs when artifacts that sound like clicks are recorded into an audio file. These may come from any number of sources.</p>
Click Sensitivity (Show me more audio options link)	<p>Use the slider to set the threshold of how sensitive the filter is as it removes clicks.</p>
Ratio (Advanced options link)	<p>Sets the compression slope, which determines how the output signal will change in relation to the input signal once the input signal exceeds the threshold.</p>
Threshold (Advanced options link)	<p>Sets the level above which signals are compressed or limited. Raising the threshold clamps signals at a higher level, reducing the amount of compression or limiting.</p>
Gain (Advanced options link)	<p>The process of reducing dynamics lowers the signal's overall level. The gain control compensates by adding increasing output gain, or signal level.</p>
OK	<p>Save changes.</p>
Cancel	<p>Exit without making any changes.</p>

Transitions



Transitions are useful for creating a smooth flow between clips on the Timeline or Storyboard.

- Transitions can only be inserted while you are in Storyboard view.
- The default duration time for Transitions is three seconds. The duration is customized using **Tools > Options > Transitions**.
- Transitions can only be placed between clips. You cannot begin or end a video with a Transitions.

See also: **Add Transitions to the Timeline**.



Add Transitions to the Timeline

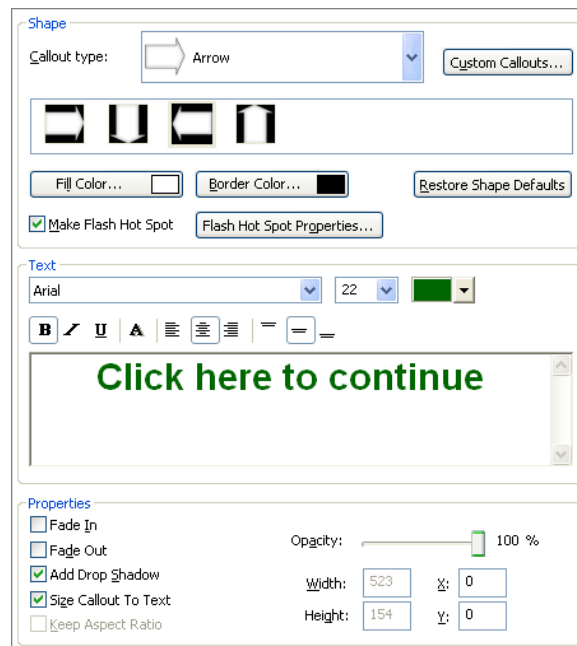
1. Within the Task List, click **Transitions**. The Transition options appear in the Task Area. Note that once you choose Transitions, the Storyboard view automatically appears.
2. The Transition effects are on the left hand side of the screen. Double-click on a Transition effect to see it play in the Preview Area. You can also highlight a Transition and click the **Play** button  to see the Transition effect.
3. Test several Transitions to see how they look. Once you decide on a Transition that you like, drag it to the Storyboard in the desired location. Once placed on the Storyboard, an image depicting the Transition's effect appear in the placeholder.
4. Continue to add Transitions until each of the placeholders are filled. These can all be the same Transition or different ones.
5. Click **Finished** .

Callouts

A Callout is a graphic that you can add to the Timeline so when the video is produced, the image appears within the video. Callouts are used to “call out” or draw attention to an important object or process being shown on the screen. Or, combined with text, they can give additional tutorial or instructional information.

Turning a Callout into a Flash Hot Spot adds interactivity to a Callout when it is produced as a Flash movie. Adding interactivity is very nice for making chapters in the video that the viewer can easily jump to, or, for taking the viewer to a Website after they have finished watching the video.

To add a Callout to the Timeline, click **Callouts** in the Task List. Within the *Callouts Manager* task page, click the **Add Callout** link. The *Callout Properties* task page appears. See also: **Add a Callout**.



Fast Facts about Callouts

- Only available while in Timeline view.
- Callouts come in a variety of different shapes and styles.
- Callouts are totally customizable, allowing you to change the color, font, opacity, size, text, and more.
- You can **Create a New Custom Callout** by importing your own graphics.
- Callouts are editable after they have been added to the video.
- Automatically adjust the position of a Callout on the Timeline by dragging it to a new location within the clip.
- On the Timeline, within a clip, automatically adjust the duration of a Callout by dragging either end of it to make the duration shorter or longer.
- **Include a Flash Hot Spot in a Callout** to add interactivity.

See also:

Blur a Portion of the Screen

Callout Properties Options

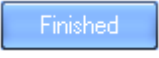
Create a New Custom Callout

Include a Flash Hot Spot in a Callout

Manage Callouts

Add a Callout

Note: In order to add a Callout, you must first have a project opened within Camtasia Studio with clips already on the Timeline.

1. While in the *Callout Properties* task page, on the Timeline, position the seek bar where the Callout is inserted.
2. From the **Callout Type** dropdown menu, choose the **Callout type**. The available styles show in thumbnail view underneath the Callout Type field. Use the mouse to select a style. The Callout will now be visible in the Preview Area.
3. Within the **Fill Color** field, choose the color.
4. Within the **Border Color** field, choose the color.
5. In the **Text** fields, select the font, font size, and other font attributes.
6. Within the **Text** box, enter the text. The text will update to the Preview Area so you can see how the Callout looks.
7. Choose all other **Callout Properties Options** using the check boxes at the bottom of the task page.
8. On the Preview Area, click and drag the Callout to move it or to resize it.
9. When you have the Callout just like you want it, click **OK** at the top of the screen.
10. Notice that the Callout is added to the manager box on the *Callouts* task page. At this time, you can rename the Callout, copy it, or add another one.
11. Click **Finished** .

See also:

Blur a Portion of the Screen

Callout Properties Options

Create a New Custom Callout

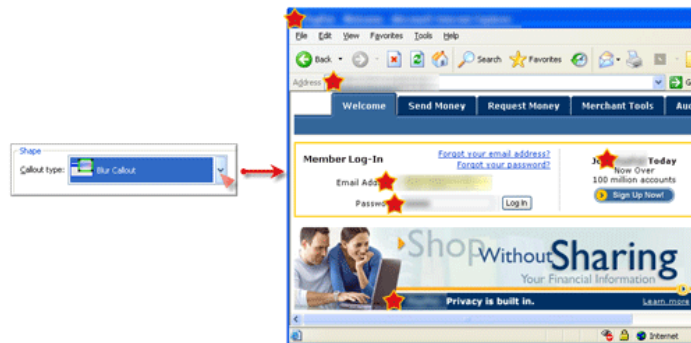
Include a Flash Hot Spot in a Callout

Manage Callouts

Blur a Portion of the Screen

You can blur a portion of the screen by adding a blur Callout. This professionally masks or hides confidential or sensitive information that might be seen in the screen recording. This image shows how the blur option might be effectively used.

Overall, you add a blur in the same way that you add a Callout. When selecting the shape, choose **Blur Callout**.



For each area of the screen that you want to mask, just add another Blur Callout. The image seen here has six Blur Callouts added.

Note: Each time you add a Blur Callout, it placed over the top of the existing Blur Callout. Just drag it to the location and resize.

See also:

Add a Callout

Callout Properties Options

Create a New Custom Callout

Include a Flash Hot Spot in a Callout

Manage Callouts

Callout Properties Options

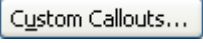
This table describes each of the options found in the *Callout Properties* screen along with its use. Use the options to add a new *Callout* or to modify an existing *Callout*.

Option	Description & Use
Callout Type	Choose which kind of <i>Callout</i> to use. Click the Callout Type arrow to reveal the dropdown menu. Use the mouse to select the type.
Fill Color	Change the color of the inside of the <i>Callout</i> . Click the Fill Color button to show the palette. Use the mouse to select the color. Click OK .
Border Color	Change the color of the border surrounding the <i>Callout</i> . Click the Border Color button to show the palette. Use the mouse to select the color. Click OK .
Restore Shape Defaults	Change the attributes of the <i>Callouts</i> back their original settings. Click the Restore Shape Defaults button. The defaults are reset for the current shape only.
Make Flash Hot Spot	Adds interactivity to <i>Callouts</i> in produced Flash movies. Enable the Make Flash Hot Spot option. The Flash Hot Spot Properties button becomes enabled. Click and select the options. See also: Include a Flash Hot Spot in a Callout .
Font	Choose the font type from the dropdown menu.
Font Size	Choose the font size from the dropdown menu.
Font Attributes	Choose the font attributes such as bold, italic, or underline. Also, choose the font color and apply a drop shadow if desired.
Font Alignment	Choose the alignment of the font within the <i>Callout</i> . Choose from left, middle, or right justified.
Text Box	Type the actual text to go into the <i>Callout</i> in the Text box. As you type, the Preview Area will continually update as you work.
Fade In	Allows <i>Callout</i> to gently fade into the video rather than suddenly displaying.
Fade Out	Allows <i>Callout</i> to gently fade into the video rather than suddenly disappearing.
Add Drop Shadow	This toggles turns the drop shadow on or off for the <i>Callout</i> .
Size Callout to text	Allows <i>Callout</i> to be automatically sized as text is added. When enabled, the <i>Callout</i> cannot be manually resized. If the <i>Callout</i> has already been manually resized and text is added to it, if enabled, the <i>Callout</i> will automatically resize to incorporate the best fit based on the size of the text. Disable to be able to manually resize the <i>Callout</i> .
Keep Aspect Ratio	Keeps the aspect ratio of the <i>Callout</i> as it is sized. Disable to resize the <i>Callout</i> from any direction.
Opacity	Determines the opacity level of the <i>Callout</i> . Slide the bar to increase or decrease the level of opacity.
Shape Size Width Height X, Y	Contain the size and placement coordinates of the <i>Callout</i> . To size the <i>Callout</i> , in the Properties Area underneath the options, grab a handle on the green box and drag until it is the correct size. Move the <i>Callout</i> by grabbing the green box and dragging the <i>Callout</i> to a new location. The Preview Area will continually update as you work.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Create a New Custom Callout

Note: In order to add a *Callout*, you must first have a project opened within Camtasia Studio with clips already on the *Timeline*.

You can create your own *Callout* using BMP, GIF, PNG, or JPEG graphic files. See **Custom Callout Manager Options** for a description of each of the options found in this dialog box.

1. To add a Custom Callout to the Timeline, click **Callouts** within the Task List. The *Callouts Manager* task page appears.
2. Click the **Add Callout** link. The *Callout Properties* task page appears.
3. Click **Custom Callouts** . The *Custom Callout Manager* dialog box appears.
4. Click the **New Custom Callout** button and browse to find the image. Once found, click **Open** to update the image to the *Custom Callout List* box.
5. In the **Description** field in the middle of the dialog box, enter a description for this Callout.
6. If you have a symmetrical image, enable the **Vector grow properties** option at the bottom of this screen.
7. Click **OK**.
8. The new Callout is updated to the last position in the **Callout Type** dropdown list, available for use whenever the *Callouts Properties* task page is opened.

Custom Callout Manager Options

Option Link	Description & Use
New Custom Callout	Used to create a Callout out of an image file. Click to open the <i>Select Image File</i> dialog box. Find the image file and click Open .
Remove Selected Callout	Highlight an image within the list and click the Remove Selected Text button. The image is removed from the list, no longer available for use as a custom Callout.
Graphic File	A read-only file that reflects the path of the selected image file.
Image Dimensions	A read-only file that reflects the dimensions of the selected image file.
Text Indent	Enter the number of pixels you want to use as the border within the Callout when text is placed within it. Enter a number, in pixels, for each side of the Callout.
Vector Grow	Vector grow properties allow the graphic to remain smooth and intact while sizing with no loss in image quality.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

See also:

Add a Callout

Blur a Portion of the Screen

Callout Properties Options

Include a Flash Hot Spot in a Callout


Manage Callouts

Include a Flash Hot Spot in a Callout

Note: In order to add a Callout with a Flash Hot Spot, you must first have a project opened within Camtasia Studio with clips already on the Timeline.

The Flash Hot Spot option adds Flash interactivity to a Callout within a produced Flash movie.

Adding interactivity to the Callout is a nice way to make chapters in the video that the viewer can easily jump to, or, for taking the viewer to a Website after they have finished watching the video.

- It is best to wait until you have completed all of the edits before adding the Callouts with a Flash Hot Spot.
 - When the produced video that contains a Callout with a Flash Hot Spot is playing and the Callout with Hot Spot is encountered that has a Pause at end of Callout attribute applied to it, the video will stop. It is then that the viewer must take some action.
 - Callouts with a Hot Spot are only available for use with Flash output. No other video file format can use this feature.
1. To add a Flash Hotspot to a Callout, click **Callouts** within the Task List. The *Callouts Manager* task page appears.
 2. Click the **Add Callout** link. The *Callout Properties* task page appears.
 3. While in the *Callout Properties* task page, on the Timeline, position the seek bar where the Callout is inserted.
 4. Enable the **Make Flash Hot Spot** option.
 5. Click the **Flash Hot Spot Properties** button. The *Flash Hot Spot Properties* dialog box appears. Make your selections and click **OK**.
 6. Choose the rest of the Callout options. See also: **Add a Callout**.
 7. When you have the Callout just like you want it, click **OK**.
 8. Notice that the Callout is added to the manager box on the *Callouts* task page. At this time, you can rename the Callout, copy it, or add another one.
 9. Click **Finished** .

Flash Hot Spot Properties Options

Option	Description & Use
Pause at end of Callout	Causes the video to pause at the end of the Callout when the movie is playing. At this time, the viewer must take some action in order to continue viewing the movie.
Click to Continue	This action requires that the viewer click the Callout with Hot Spot on the screen to continue watching the video.
Go to frame at time	This action requires that the viewer be taken to a specific frame within the video. Enable the Go to frame at time option. Enter the frame reference that the viewer will go to when the end of the Callout with Hot Spot is reached or clicked on.
Go to Marker	This action requires that the viewer be taken to a specific Marker within the video. Enable the Go to marker option. Use the dropdown list to select the Marker that the viewer will go to when the end of the Callout with Hot Spot is reached or clicked on.
Jump to URL	This action requires that the viewer be jumped to a particular URL address. Enable the Jump to URL option. Enter the URL reference that the viewer will go to when the end of the Callout with Hot Spot is reached or clicked on.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Manage Callouts

Note: In order to add a Callout, you must first have a project opened within Camtasia Studio with clips already on the Timeline.

To add a Callout, modify an existing Callout, or delete Callout(s), click the **Callouts** link in the Task List or choose **Edit > Callouts**.

The *Callouts Options* dialog box appears. Click the **Callout** link, choosing from these options.

Option Link	Description & Use
Add Callout	Click this link. The <i>Callout Properties</i> dialog box appears. See also: Add a Callout .
Modify Selected Callout	To modify or edit an existing Callout, first highlight the Callout that you want to edit within the <i>Callout List Box</i> and click this link. The <i>Callout Properties</i> dialog box appears. See also: Add a Callout .
Copy Selected Callout	Copies an existing Callout that can then be pasted elsewhere on the Timeline. To copy a Callout, first highlight the Callout in the <i>Callout List Box</i> . Next, click the Copy selected Callout link.
Paste Callout	Once a Callout is copied, you can then paste it elsewhere on the Timeline. To paste a Callout, move to the location on the Timeline. Place the seek bar where you want the Callout to be. Click the Paste Callout link. The Callout is added to the Timeline. Notice also that the Callout is added to the Callout List Box with the same name as the original with a version number appended to it. This lets you know at a glance which Callouts are copies.
Delete Selected Callout	To remove a particular Callout from the video, first highlight the Callout within the Callout List Box and click this link. The Callout is removed from the list and the Timeline.
Delete all Callouts	To remove all Callouts from the video, click this link. All of the Callouts are removed from the list and the Timeline.
Finished	Save the changes and exit the task page.

See also:

Add a Callout

Blur a Portion of the Screen

Callout Properties Options

Create a New Custom Callout

Include a Flash Hot Spot in a Callout

Zoom-n-Pan

Zoom-n-Pan is used to zoom in and out on certain areas of the video, calling attention to and allowing your audience to see important screen movements or actions that they might not see otherwise.

The Zoom-n-Pan option works by inserting key frames that tell Camtasia Studio when to zoom in and when to zoom out. Key frames are markers that you place on the desired frames in the video clips. Typically, key frames are used in pairs, one key frame to zoom in and one to zoom back out.

Note: If only one key frame is used and it is set to zoom in, the rest of the video will playback at the key frame's set magnification until the end since there is no key frame giving Camtasia Studio direction to zoom back out.

Note: In order to add a Zoom-n-Pan key frame, you must first have a project opened within Camtasia Studio with clips already on the Timeline.

To add Zoom-n-Pan keyframes to the Timeline, click **Zoom-n-Pan** in the Task List. Within the *Zoom-n-Pan Manager* task page, click the **Add Zoom-n-Pan key frame** link. The *Zoom-n-Pan Properties* task page appears. See also: **Add Zoom in and Zoom Out Key Frames**.

Fast Facts about Zoom-n-Pan Key Frames

- Only available while in Timeline view.
- When setting up the key frames, you can choose the location of the magnification, the amount of magnification to apply, and the zoom speed.
- You can add as many key frames to a video as desired. These do not need to be entered all at once but can be added as you add clips to the Timeline.
- Once a key frame is created, you can edit it or delete it.
- If you choose, you can delete all key frames at one time using the Zoom-n-Pan edit options.
- Once a key frame is inserted, it is displayed on the Timeline on the Zoom-n-Pan track.


See also:

Zoom-n-Pan Properties Options

Manage Zoom-n-Pan Keyframes.

Add Zoom in and Zoom Out Key Frames

To add a Zoom-n-Pan key frame to the Timeline, click **Zoom-n-Pan** in the Task List. Within the *Zoom-n-Pan Manager* task page, click the **Add Zoom-n-Pan Key Frame** link. The *Zoom-n-Pan Properties* task page appears. Follow these step-by-step instructions to create a key frame that will zoom in and one that will zoom out.

1. While in the *Zoom-n-Pan Properties* task page, on the Timeline, position the seek bar where the Zoom in key frame will be inserted.
2. Within the **Size** group box, choose the size that you want to zoom to. Overall, this is the size of the rectangle that is zoomed on. For more help with each of these options, see **Zoom-n-Pan Properties Options**.
3. Alternatively, look under these options for a preview area. That area has a green box in it. Use this box to size the Zoom in key frame. Use the regular Preview Area to see how the video will look when zoomed in on.
4. Within the **Zoom speed group** box, choose the speed that you want to zoom in with.
5. To move the Zoom in key frame to the desired location on the video, look under these options for a preview area. That area has a green box in it. Drag this box to move the Zoom in key frame to the correct position. Use the regular Preview Area to see how the video will look when zoomed in on.
6. When you have the Zoom in key frame just like you want it, click **OK** at the top of the screen.
7. Notice that the Zoom-n-Pan key frame is added to the list box on the *Zoom-n-Pan Manager* task page. At this time, you can rename the Zoom in key frame if desired.
8. The *Zoom-n-Pan Manager* task page remains open. On the Timeline, position the seek bar where the Zoom out key frame will be inserted.
9. Click the **Add Zoom-n-Pan Key Frame** link. The *Zoom-n-Pan Properties* task page appears.
10. While in the *Zoom-n-Pan Properties* task page, within the **Size** group box, choose the **Show entire video** option. For more help with each of these options, see **Zoom-n-Pan Properties Options**.
11. Click **OK**.
12. Click **Finished** .

Play the video in the Preview Area to see how the Zoom-n-Pan key frames look. Double-click on a key frame on the Timeline to modify it if necessary.

Zoom-n-Pan Properties Options.

Zoom-n-Pan Properties Options

This table describes each of the options found in the *Zoom-n-Pan Properties* task page along with its use. Use the options to add a new Zoom-n-Pan key frame or to modify an existing Zoom-n-Pan key frame.

To access the *Zoom-n-Pan Properties* dialog box, click **Zoom-n-Pan** in the Task List. Within the *Zoom-n-Pan* task page, click the **Add Zoom-n-Pan Key Frame** link. The *Zoom-n-Pan Properties* task page appears.

Option	Description & Use
Show Entire Video	This key frame “tells” Camtasia Studio to show the entire video.
Standard Zoom Size	This key frame “tells” Camtasia Studio to zoom in on the area of the video defined by the zoom box. Choose from several predefined zoom boxes. From the dropdown menu, choose the size. Move the green zoom rectangle to the desired place in the Properties Area below the options. The Preview Area will continually update as you work.
Custom Zoom Size	This key frame will “tell” Camtasia Studio to zoom in on the area of the video that was custom defined. Either enter the known values in the Width and Height fields or, grab a handle on the green rectangle in the Properties Area and drag to the desired size. The Preview Area will continually update as you work and the Width and Height fields will also update to match the selection.
Keep Aspect Ratio	Keeps the aspect ratio of the Zoom-n-Pan key frame as it is sized. This prevents the

Option	Description & Use
	area that is being zoomed-in on from being distorted. Enable to keep the aspect ratio during sizing. Disable to resize the Zoom-n-Pan key frame from any direction.
Position	These fields contain the placement coordinates of the Zoom-n-Pan key frame. Either enter the known values of the position of the Zoom-n-Pan key frame or, within the Properties Area, move the Zoom-n-Pan key frame by grabbing the green box and dragging the Zoom-n-Pan key frame to a new location. The Preview Area will continually update as you work and the X Coordinate and Y Coordinate fields will also update to match the selection.
Zoom Speed	Sets the speed for the zooming. Choose either Slow , Fast , or Instant .
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Manage Zoom-n-Pan Keyframes

This table describes each of the options found in the *Zoom-n-Pan* task page along with its use. Use the options to add a new Zoom-n-Pan key frame or to modify an existing Zoom-n-Pan key frame.

Option Link	Description & Use
Add Zoom-n-Pan key frame	Click this link to add a new Zoom-n-Pan key frame to the video. The <i>Zoom-n-Pan Properties</i> dialog box appears. See also: Zoom-n-Pan Properties Options .
Modify Zoom-n-Pan key frame	To modify or edit an existing Zoom-n-Pan key frame, first highlight the Zoom-n-Pan key frame that you want to edit within the Zoom-n-Pan key frame List Box and click this link. The <i>Zoom-n-Pan Properties</i> dialog box appears. See also: Zoom-n-Pan Properties Options .
Remove Selected Zoom-n-Pan key frame	To remove a particular Zoom-n-Pan key frame from the video, first highlight it within the Zoom-n-Pan key frame List Box and click this link. The Zoom-n-Pan key frame is removed from the list and the Timeline.
Remove all Zoom-n-Pan key frame	To remove all Zoom-n-Pan key frames from the video, click this link. All of the Zoom-n-Pan key frames are removed from the list and the Timeline.
Show zoom rectangles	Enable to always view the Zoom-n-Pan key frames in the Preview Area when the video is being played.
Finished	Save the changes and exit the task page.

Flash Quiz & Survey

The Flash Quiz and Survey feature inserts a Quiz and/or Survey into the project which appear when the project is produced as a Flash movie file. Each movie can have multiple Quizzes and Surveys and each Quiz or Survey can have multiple questions. During the production process, you can choose to add a packaged eLearning lesson using SCORM-compliant output that is available for use with most LMS applications.

Note: Flash Quizzes and Surveys are only available for use with Flash output. No other output format can use this feature.

Note: In order to add a Flash Quiz or Survey, you must first have a project opened within Camtasia Studio with clips already on the Timeline.

Fast Facts about Flash Quizzes and Surveys


- Only available while in Timeline view.
- You can add as many Flash Quizzes and Surveys to a video as desired.
- You can add as many questions to a Quiz/Survey as desired.
- Once a Quiz/Survey or question is created, you can edit it or delete it.
- Once a Quiz/Survey is created, it is placed on the Timeline.
- Quizzes and Surveys are placed on the Quiz track.
- Quizzes and Surveys are editable from within the Timeline. To edit a Quiz or Survey that is on the Timeline, double-click on it. The *Flash Quiz and Survey Manager* task page appears. Make edits and click **OK**. The Quiz/Survey on the Timeline is updated.
- SCORM-compliant output is available during the production process.

See also:

- **Add a Quiz**
- **Add a Survey**
- **Quiz Appearance and Feedback**

Add a Quiz

Adding a Quiz to the Timeline is one of the last things that should be done just prior to producing the movie.

1. Move the seek bar to the place on the Timeline where you want the Quiz to appear.
2. Click **Flash Quiz and Survey** in the Task List. Within the *Flash Quiz and Survey Manager* task page, click the **Add Quiz** link. The **Quiz Appearance and Feedback** appears.
3. Type the name of this Quiz in the **Quiz Name** field.
4. Choose all other options if different than the defaults.
5. Once you have selected all of the Quiz properties, click **OK**.
6. The *Question Type* dialog box appears. Choose from **Multiple Choice** or **Fill in the Blank**. Short Answer (not scored) is usually used for Surveys. Click **OK**.
7. The *Question* task page appears. Enter a question. If this is a multiple choice question, enter the answers. See also: **Multiple Choice** or **Fill in the Blank**.
8. To add another question, choose **Save this and add another question**.
9. When you are done adding the question, choose **Save this and return to the manager**.
10. Click **Finished** .

Quiz Appearance and Feedback

Path: Camtasia Studio > Flash Quiz and Survey link > Flash Quiz and Survey Manager > Add Quiz.

The **default** appearance of each question in a Quiz is determined by the options selected within this dialog box.

To change the properties for just one question in a Quiz, change them within the *Question Properties* dialog box. See also: **Question Properties**.

Option	Description & Use
Quiz name	Enter the name of this Quiz.
Answer numbering	From the dropdown list, choose how the questions are numbered. (Multiple Choice questions only)
Include these questions in quiz score	The questions are included when scoring is done after the viewer takes this Quiz.
Display feedback when questions are answered	The quiz-taker will see feedback once they answer the questions. The response will appear and fade out when the question is answered.
If correct, display	Tells viewers that their answer was correct. In this field, enter the text to show, if different than the default.
If incorrect, display	Tells viewers that their answer was incorrect. In this field, enter the text to show, if different than the default.
If incorrect:	Choose the action that occurs if an incorrect answer is given for this question. Choose from: Continue: Allows the quiz-taker to continue on to the next question. Or, if they are on the last question, the video will continue. Jump to time: Takes the quiz-taker back to a specific location on the Timeline. Once selected, the time field will show. Enter the time.
Cancel	Discards the edits and returns you to the <i>Flash Quiz Manager</i> task page without making any changes to the <i>Quiz Properties</i> .
OK	Saves the edits and returns you to the <i>Flash Quiz Manager</i> task page.

How to Report Quiz Results


The Survey reporting options are selected during the actual production process. When producing, use the *Custom Production Wizard*. The reporting options are found in the wizard's **Video Options**.

This screen gives access to the *Quiz and Survey Reporting Options* dialog box used to choose whether or not to have reporting for the Quiz on the Timeline. If you choose to report, you can modify the report settings here.

You can also fill out the SCORM manifest. This is a mandatory XML file that describes the components of a content package. The **Manifest Options** is used to define several options for the Manifest such as course name, course description, lesson name, and more.

Add a Survey

Adding a Survey to the Timeline is one of the last things that should be done just prior to producing the movie.

1. Move the seek bar to the place on the Timeline where you want the Quiz to appear.
2. Click **Flash Quiz and Survey** in the Task List. Within the *Flash Quiz and Survey Manager* task page, click the **Add Survey** link. The *Survey Appearance and Feedback* dialog box appears.
3. Type the name of this Survey in the **Survey Name** field.
4. Choose all other options if different than the defaults.
5. Once you have selected all of the Quiz properties, click **OK**.
6. The *Question Type* dialog box appears. Choose **Fill in the Blank**, **Multiple Choice** or **Short Answer Question**. Click **OK**.
7. The *Question* task page appears. Enter a question. If this is a multiple choice question, enter the answers. See also: **Multiple Choice** or **Short Answer Question**.
8. To add another question, choose **Save this and add another question**.
9. When you are done adding the question, choose **Save this and return to the manager**.
10. Click **Finished** .

Survey Appearance and Feedback

Path: Camtasia Studio > Flash Quiz and Survey link > Flash Quiz and Survey Manager > Add Survey.

The **default** appearance of each question in a Survey is determined by the options selected within this dialog box.

To change the properties for just one question in a Survey, change them within the *Question Properties* dialog box. See also: **Question Properties**.

Options for both the Quiz and Survey questions are discussed in the table below.

Option	Description & Use
Survey name	Enter the name of this Survey.
Answer numbering	Choose how to number the questions.
Display feedback when questions are answered	The survey-taker will see feedback once they answer the question.
Feedback	Enter the text to show when the survey-taker submits a question.
Cancel	Discards the edits and returns you to the <i>Flash Quiz & Survey Manager</i> task page without making any changes to the <i>Survey Properties</i> .
OK	Saves the edits and returns you to the <i>Flash Quiz & Survey Manager</i> task page.

How to Report Survey Results

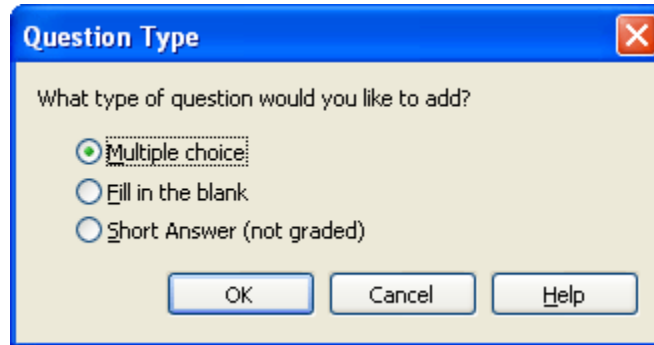
Choose the Survey reporting options during the production process. When producing, use the *Custom Production Wizard*. The reporting options are found in the wizard's *Video Options* dialog box.

Here you gain access to the *Quiz and Survey Reporting Options* dialog box used to choose whether or not to have reporting for the Survey on the Timeline. If you choose to report, you can modify the report settings here.

You can also fill out the SCORM manifest. This is a mandatory XML file that describes the components of a content package. The **Manifest Options** is used to define options for the Manifest such as course name, course description, lesson name, and more.

Question Type

Within this dialog box, choose the type of question you want to create.



Multiple Choice

Requires the quiz or survey-taker to select one answer from amongst a given list of alternative answers.

Fill in the Blank

Requires the quiz or survey-taker to enter a short answer response to the question.

Short Answer Question

Requires the quiz or survey-taker to enter a short answer response to the question being asked. This question is most used for Surveys.

Make a selection and click **OK**.

Multiple Choice

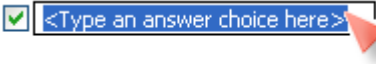
Use these options to create a multiple choice question. A Multiple Choice Question is one that requires the quiz-taker to select one answer from a given list of alternative answers.

Example

Which color is **not** a Subtractive Primary Color?

- Magenta
- Yellow
- Red
- Cyan

Multiple Choice Question Options

Option	Description & Use
Quiz name	The name of the Quiz is found here. This is a read-only field.
Question	Type the question.
Answers	<p>To enter an answer, click the first line in the <i>Answer</i> group box. The box will turn blue. Type the text.</p> <p> <Type an answer choice here></p> <p>Click <Enter> on the keyboard to enter another answer option. Continue in this manner until all of the answer options have been entered.</p>
Place a check mark next to the correct answer	Once all of the answers are completed, place a check mark next to the correct answer.
Add	Click the Add button to add another answer to this Quiz. Use rather than pressing the <Enter> key on the keyboard.
Delete	Click an answer in the Answer group box to highlight it and click the Delete button. The answer is deleted immediately. No confirmation dialog box is displayed.
Move Up	Changes the placement of an answer in the Answer group box. Click an answer to highlight it and click the Move Up button. The answer will move up in the list. Continue moving up until the location is reached.
Move Down	Changes the placement of an answer in the Answer group box. Click an answer to highlight it and click the Move Down button. The answer will move up in the list. Continue moving down until the location is reached.
Edit	<p>Opens the <i>Edit Answer Details</i> dialog box used to change the answer and response the quiz-taker receives when they answer this question. You can also give a detailed response to any question.</p> <p>To access the <i>Edit Answer</i> dialog box, click an answer to highlight it and click the Edit button. Or, double-click on the response in the Answers list box. See also: Edit Answer Details.</p>
Appearance and Feedback	<p>Opens the <i>Question Properties</i> dialog box used to make changes to the look of this particular question.</p> <p>See also: Question Properties.</p>
Preview	Click the Preview the Question button to see how the question will look and behave. Close the Preview Window when you have completed the preview.
Save this and add another question	Add another question.
Save this and return to the manager	When you are done adding question, save the changes and exit back to the <i>Flash Quiz and Survey Manager</i> .
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Fill in the Blank

Use these options to create a fill in the blank question.

A *Fill in the Blank* question is a question or statement that requires the quiz-taker to enter a short answer response to fill in the missing portion of the sentence.

Important tips for creating effective *Fill in the Blank* questions:

- Provide acceptable answer terms that allow for common spelling errors, possible abbreviations, or partial answers.
- Avoid using nicknames.
- Avoid using lists.
- Keep answers limited to one or two words to avoid mismatched answers due to extra spaces or the order of the answer terms.
- Answers are not case sensitive. For example, TechSmith could be entered as techsmith or techSmith or any other combination of upper and lower case letters.
- Have only one blank per question.

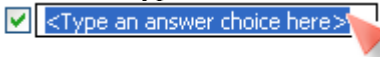
Example

The creator of SnagIt and Camtasia Studio, two popular computer software applications, is _____.

List of acceptable answers might be:

- TechSmith Corporation
- TechSmith
- TSC
- Tech Smith
- Tecsmith
- tecksmith

Fill in the Blank Question Options

Option	Description & Use
Quiz or Survey name	The name of the Quiz or Survey is found here. This is a read-only field.
Question	Type the question.
Answers (Quiz Only)	To enter an answer, click the first line in the Answer group box. The box will turn blue. Type the text.  Click <Enter> on the keyboard to enter another answer option. Continue in this manner until all of the answer options have been entered.
Add (Quiz Only)	Click the Add button to add another answer to this Quiz. Use rather than pressing the <Enter> key on the keyboard.
Delete (Quiz Only)	Click an answer in the Answer group box to highlight it and click the Delete button. The answer is deleted immediately. No confirmation dialog box is displayed.
Appearance and Feedback	Opens the <i>Question Properties</i> dialog box used to make changes to the look of this particular question. See also: Question Properties .
Preview	Click the Preview the Question button to see how the question will look and behave. Close the Preview Window when you have completed the preview.
Save this and add another question	Add another question.

Option	Description & Use
Save this and return to the manager	When you are done adding question, save the changes and exit back to the <i>Flash Quiz and Survey Manager</i> .
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Short Answer Question

A Short Answer question is a question or statement that requires the quiz or survey-taker to enter a short answer response to the question being asked.

When used in conjunction with a Survey question, this question will not be scored.

Examples

- Enter your first and last name.
- Enter your email address.
- How can we improve our videos?

Short Answer Question Options

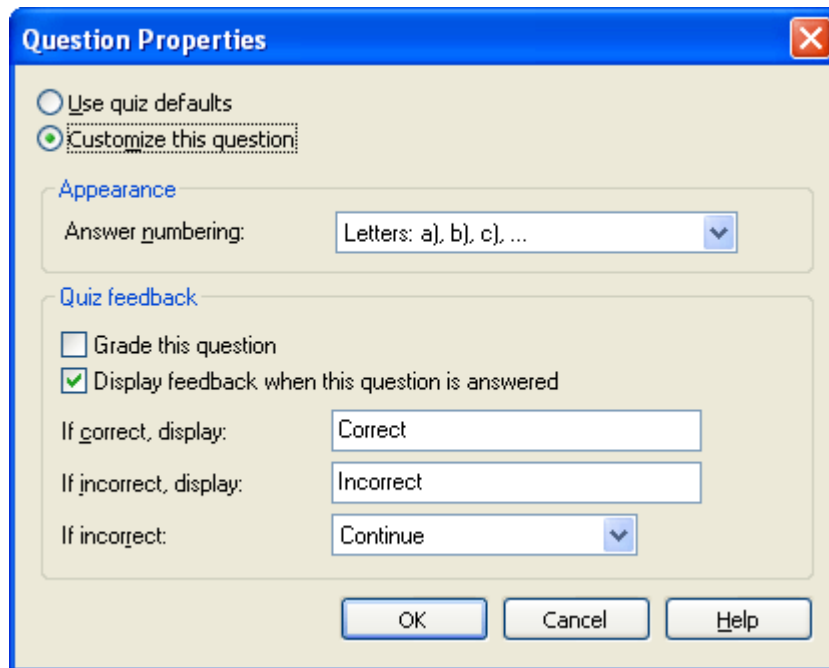
Option	Description & Use
Quiz name	The name of the Quiz is found here. This is a read-only field.
Question	Type the question.
Appearance and Feedback	Opens the <i>Question Properties</i> dialog box used to make changes to the look of this question. See also: Question Properties .
Preview	Click the Preview the Question button to see how the question will look and behave. Close the Preview Window when you have completed the preview.
Save this and add another question	Add another question.
Save this and return to the manager	When you are done adding question, save the changes and exit back to the <i>Flash Quiz and Survey Manager</i> .
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Question Properties

Path: Camtasia Studio > Flash Quiz and Survey link > Flash Quiz and Survey Manager > Add Quiz or Add Survey > OK > Question Type screen > Question task page > Appearance and Feedback button.

This dialog box is used to make changes to the look of one particular question. These changes take place on a question by question basis and will not change the look of every question in a Quiz or Survey.

The **default** appearance of each question is determined by the options selected within the *Quiz Appearance and Feedback* dialog box. See also: **Quiz Appearance and Feedback**.



Options for both the Quiz and Survey questions are discussed in the table below.

Option	Question Type	Description & Use
Use quiz defaults	Quiz	Uses the defaults for the entire Quiz and is selected by default.
Use survey defaults	Survey	Uses the defaults for the entire Survey and is selected by default. See also: Survey Appearance and Feedback .
Customize this question	Quiz Survey	Change the properties for this question. Once selected, the rest of the options in this dialog box become enabled.
Answer numbering	Quiz Survey	Choose how to number the questions. Only for Multiple Choice questions.
Score this question	Quiz	The question is included when scoring is done after the viewer takes this Quiz.
Display feedback when this question is answered	Quiz Survey	The Quiz-taker will see feedback once they answer this question.
Feedback	Survey	Enter the text to show when the survey-taker submits a question.
If correct, display	Quiz	Tells viewers that their answer was correct. Enter the text to show, if different than the default.
If incorrect, display	Quiz	Tells viewers that their answer was incorrect.

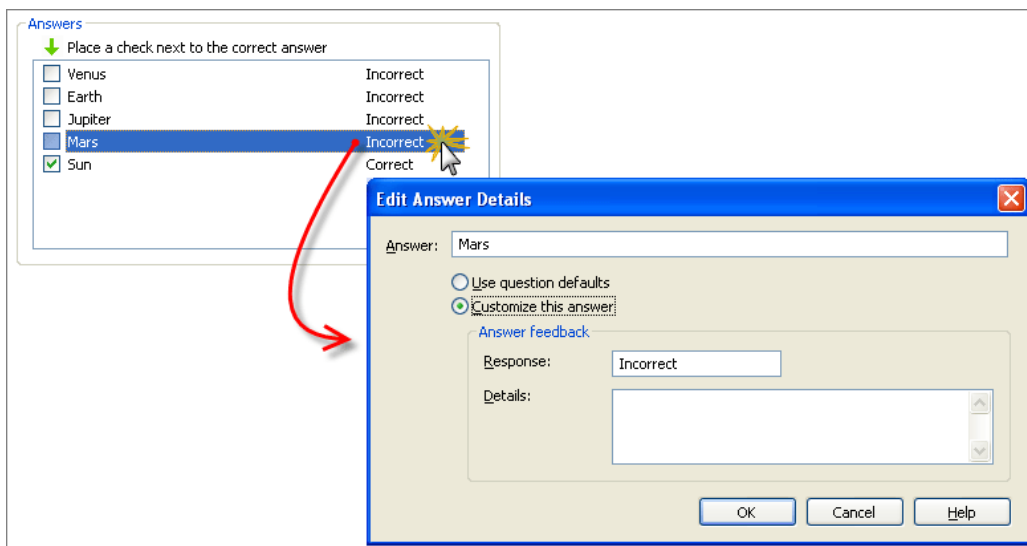
Option	Question Type	Description & Use
		Enter the text to show, if different than the default.
If incorrect:	Quiz	Choose the action that occurs if an incorrect answer is given for this question. Choose from: Continue: Allows the quiz-taker to continue on to the next question. Or, if they are on the last question, the video will continue. Jump to time: Take the quiz-taker back to a specific location on the Timeline. Once selected, the time field will show. Enter the time.
OK	Quiz Survey	Save changes.
Cancel	Quiz Survey	Exit without making any changes.

Edit Answer Details

Path: Camtasia Studio > Flash Quiz and Survey link > Flash Quiz and Survey Manager > Add Quiz or Add Survey > OK > Question Type screen > Question task page > Multiple Choice Question > Double-click on Feedback.

The *Edit Answer* dialog box is used to change Quiz or Survey answers and the response the quiz-taker receives when they answer those questions. You can also choose to give a detailed response to any question.

To access the *Edit Answer* dialog box, click on an answer to highlight it and click the **Edit** button or double-click the response in the Answers list box in the *Question* task page.



Edit Quiz Answer Options

Option	Description & Use
Answer	Used to change the answer. To change the answer, type the new text. The new answer is updated to the <i>Multiple Choice Question</i> task page when this dialog box is closed.
Use question defaults	Enable Use question defaults to set the response to match the value specified in the <i>Quiz Properties</i> dialog box or <i>Question Properties</i> dialog box.
Response	Change the response that quiz-takers will see when they answer this question. To change the response, enable the Customize this answer option. Enter the text in the Response field. The new response is updated to the <i>Multiple Choice Question</i> task page when this dialog box is closed.
Details	Give detailed feedback when a question is answered.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Captions

Note: In order to add Open Captions to the Timeline, you must first have a project opened within Camtasia Studio with clips on the Timeline.

The Open Captions feature creates captions that synchronize the Timeline audio with onscreen caption text.

There are two methods for creating Open Captions: **Sync Text and Audio** and **Manual**.

With the **Sync Text and Audio** option, paste a prepared script into the scripting text box. Using a prepared script saves the text for future use and allows you to spell and grammar check the script for errors before pasting it into the scripting text box. After pasting the text, click **Start**. The Timeline clips will play back in the Preview Area. Using just the mouse, you can then quickly synchronize the caption text to the audio as it plays. For complete instructions, see **Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method**.

With the **Manual Captioning** option, you manually type each caption into the scripting text box and set Caption Points where you want the caption to begin and end. This mode requires a lot of playing and replaying of the Timeline clips in order to hear the audio and simultaneously enter that text into the scripting text box. This mode will not use a spelling or grammar checker to proof the text.

A Quick Look at Creating Captions

1. When adding Captions, text is placed in the scripting text box.
2. The Caption text is updated to the Preview Window.



3. A Caption element is added to the Timeline and a small amount of caption text will show on the Caption track.



Fast Facts about Open Captioning

- Only available while in Timeline view.
- You can add as many Captions to a video as desired.
- Once a Caption is created, you can edit it or delete it.
- Once a Caption is created, it is placed on the Timeline.
- Captions are placed on the Caption track.
- Captions are editable from within the Timeline. To edit a Caption that is on the Timeline, double-click on it. The *Open Captions* task page appears. Make the edits, and click **Finished**. The Caption on the Timeline is updated.
- Captions can only be three lines in length. Within the scripting text box, after three lines, the text turns from black to red. The text turns red to remind you that anything over three lines will not be included in the caption.

- The length of a Caption line is determined by the width option. The larger the width, the smaller the Caption's text in the final produced video.
- Captions show until a new caption is entered. To have areas in the video that do not show a caption, insert a blank caption.

See also:

Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method

Add Captions with the Manual Captions Method

Adjust the Width of the Caption Text

Open Caption Toolbar & Other Options

Sync Text & Audio Dialog Box


Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method

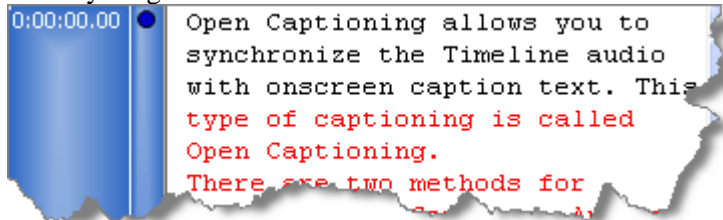
With the **Sync Text and Audio** option, paste a prepared script into the scripting text box. Using a prepared script allows you to save the text for future use and to spell and grammar check the script for errors before pasting it into the scripting text box.


Before you begin creating the *Open Captions*, make sure that you have:

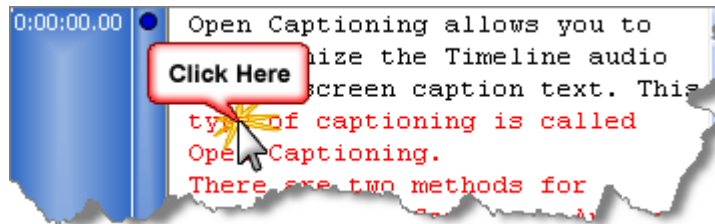
- The *Timeline* all set up with the camera recordings and other clips and have completed all editing.
- Created a script using a word processor such as Microsoft Word and have copied that text to the clipboard.

Once you have the *Timeline* all organized and the script prepared, you are ready to begin.


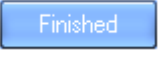
1. Click *Captions* in the *Task List*.
2. The *Camtasia Studio Tip* dialog box appears. In this tip screen, instructions for creating *Automatic Open Captions* appear.
3. Once you have read the tip screen, click **Close**.
4. In the *Open Captions* task page, paste the text and set the caption points.
5. Click the **Paste** button  to paste the script into the scripting text box. This creates the first *Caption Point*. Caption text is now placed on the video within the *Preview Area*. Within the scripting text box, after three lines, the text turns from black to red. The text turns red to remind you that anything over three lines will not be included in the current caption.



6. Click the **Start** button  to begin setting *Caption Points* to sync the script with the audio. The video begins to play back from the beginning of the *Timeline*.
7. To set a new *Caption Point*, just click on any of the words. An easy way to determine where to set the *Caption Points* is to move the mouse over the first red word. Listen to the audio and when it reaches that word, click on it with the left mouse button.



A *Caption Point* is set at that exact location. As a result, three lines of text will turn black and the rest of the text will turn to red indicating where the new caption should begin. As you create the *Captions*, the *Preview Area* and *Timeline* will continually be updated. Continue to set *Caption Points* until all of the text is used.

8. Click the **Stop** button  to end the captioning process.
9. Click **Finished** .

See also:

Add Captions with the Manual Captions Method

Adjust the Width of the Caption Text

Open Caption Toolbar & Other Options

Sync Text & Audio Dialog Box

Add Captions with the Manual Captions Method

With the **Manual Captioning** option, you manually type each caption into the scripting text box and set a caption point where you want the caption to begin. This mode requires a lot of playing and replaying of the *Timeline* clips in order to hear the audio and simultaneously enter that text into the scripting text box. This mode will not use a spelling or grammar checker to proof the text.


Note: *Captions* do not have a duration. Instead, they continue to show until a new *Caption* is entered. To have areas in the video that do not show a caption, insert a blank caption. To insert a blank caption, follow the instructions for creating a *Manual Caption*, however, do not insert any text in that caption.

Before you begin creating the *Manual Captions*, make sure that you have:

- The *Timeline* all set up with the camera recordings and other clips and have completed all editing.
- Become familiar with the audio to be scripted. This may require that you listen to the audio files several times before entering the text in the scripting text box.

Once the *Timeline* is organized and you are familiar with the audio that you want to caption, you are ready to begin.

1. Click *Captions* in the *Task List*.
2. The *Camtasia Studio Tip* dialog box appears. This tip screen contains the instructions for creating *Automatic Open Captions*.
3. Once you have read the tip screen, click **Close**.
4. In the *Open Captions* task page enter the text and set the caption points.
5. Move the seek bar to the beginning of the *Timeline* to begin captioning there. Or, place the seek bar at the point where you want begin captioning.

6. Click **Add** . A *Caption Point* is added to the pane beside the *Caption Text* box.





7. Type the text that you want to appear in the caption. As you type the caption text, the text will appear in the *Preview Window*. Some of the text will also appear in the *Caption* track on the *Timeline*.

Note: Any text that is entered for a *Caption Point* that goes beyond three lines will turn red. This indicates that the caption is too long and the red text will not be included in the video.


To include the red text in a *Caption*, place the text cursor before the first red word and click the **Add** button to create another *Caption Point*. Or, adjust the width of the line higher which will make the text size smaller causing more words to fit on a line.


The suggested option would be to create another *Caption Point* as captions are easiest to read for end users when they include fewer words per line.

See also: **Open Caption Toolbar & Other Options**.

8. Click the **Play** button  in the *Playback* toolbar. When you reach a point in the playback where you want to insert a new *Caption Point*, click **Pause**  in the *Playback* toolbar.
9. Place the cursor at the very end of the text in the *Caption Text* box.



10. Click **Add** . A new *Caption point* is entered. Type the text that you want to appear in the caption.
11. Repeat this process until all of the *Captions* have been entered.

12. Click **Finished** .

See also:

Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method

Adjust the Width of the Caption Text

Open Caption Toolbar & Other Options

Sync Text & Audio Dialog Box

Adjust the Width of the Caption Text

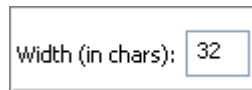
- Note:** Available when creating *Sync Text and Audio* and *Manual* captions. If you plan to adjust the width of the caption text and use the *Sync Text and Audio* option, it is **strongly** recommended that you adjust the width before starting set the caption points.
- Note:** While the option to change the width of the captions is available, it is highly recommended that you do not change the caption width unless it is absolutely necessary. Captions with less characters per line tend to be easier for end-users to read. Creating long lines of small text for the captions will negatively impact the accessibility of the videos.
-

Captions show three lines of text at a time on the screen. However, you can alter the width of characters that are displayed per line of text. This allows more or less text to be seen on each screen.

Changing the width of the text actually increases or decreases the size of the characters. The default setting is 32 characters per line of text which will allow most people to comfortably view the text as the video plays.

- Increasing the **Width** number will *decrease* the size of the text while allowing *more* text to be seen.
- Decreasing the **Width** number will *increase* the size of the text while allowing *less* text to be seen.

You can change the number of characters that are displayed per line by entering a number between 30-100 in the *Width (in chars)* field.



-
- Note:** The number of characters per line will remain constant regardless of what size you choose for the final video during the production process. For example, if during production you make the video smaller than what it is currently, the font size used for the captions will automatically be chosen to fit the specified number of characters per line.
-

See also:

Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method

Add Captions with the Manual Captions Method

Open Caption Toolbar & Other Options

Sync Text & Audio Dialog Box

Overlay Captions on the Video

When the *Caption Overlay* option is turned on, the captions are placed on top of the video. When overlaying the captions, it is important that the video provide an appropriate background for caption viewing. Caption text will always be white with a black border around it. These properties cannot be changed.

In this graphic, the captions have been overlaid on top of a screen recording that also contains an embedded PIP recording. Notice that this screen recording does not provide an appropriate background for caption viewing.



If it is very important that the height of the video be as small as possible, it is recommended that you overlay the captions since overlaying will not affect the height of the video. When captions are placed underneath the video, a black bar will expand the total height of the video.



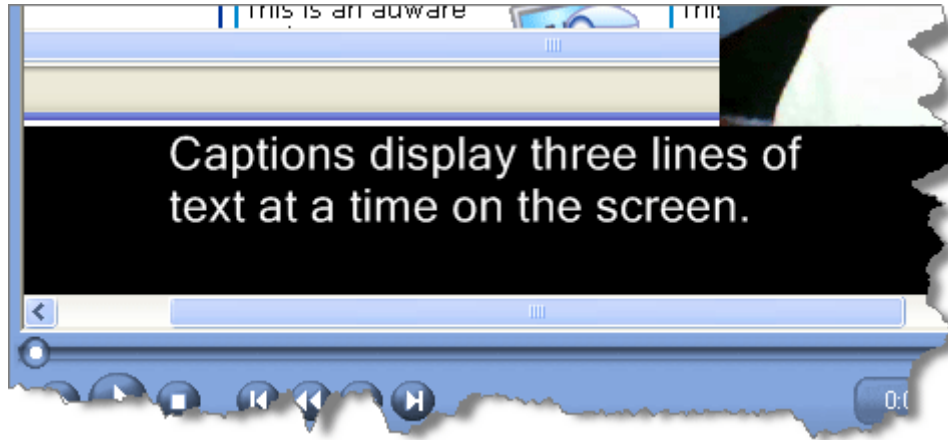
To turn the *Caption Overlay* option on, click **Overlay**. The captions are placed on top of the video.

Note: The **Overlay** button acts as a toggle. To change the view of the *Captions*, click the **Overlay** button once again.

Place Captions Underneath the Video

Note: Captions will not distort the dimensions of the video in any way. If you choose to show captions underneath the video, it will extend the total height of the video while leaving the original video intact.

When the *Caption Overlay* option is turned off, the captions are placed underneath the video. When viewing the captions underneath the video, a black bar is placed under the video to accommodate the captions.



When captions are placed underneath the video, a black bar will expand the total height of the video.

Note: If it is very important that the height of the video be as small as possible, it is recommended that you overlay the captions since overlaying will not affect the height of the video.

So, if the initial video is 640x480, adding captions underneath the video may make the video 640x580. The amount of height that is added to the video is determined by the size of the font.

It is important to note that when adding captions underneath the video, the actual video dimensions are not changed in any way to accommodate the black bar.



To turn the *Caption Overlay* option off, click **Overlay**.

A black bar is added and the captions are placed underneath the video.

Note: The **Overlay** button acts as a toggle. To change the view of the *Captions*, click the **Overlay** button once again.

See also:

Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method

Add Captions with the Manual Captions Method

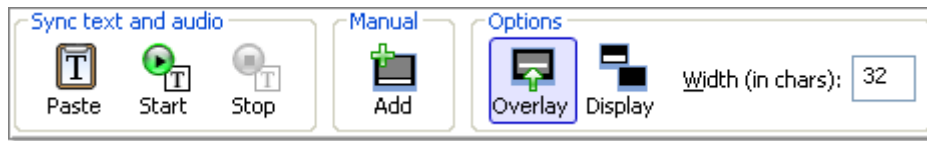
Adjust the Width of the Caption Text



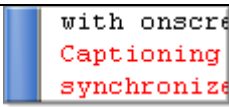
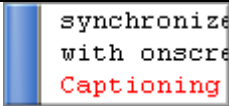

Open Caption Toolbar & Other Options


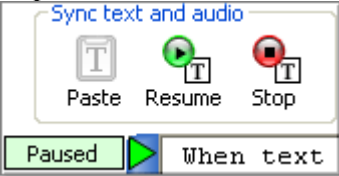




Sync Text & Audio Dialog Box





Open Caption Toolbar & Other Options

This table describes each of the options found in the *Open Captions* toolbar and task page along with its use.



Button	Option	Description & Use
	Paste	For use when creating Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method captions. Click the Paste button  to paste the audio script into the scripting text box. For complete instructions, see Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method .
	Red Text	When text is pasted or typed into the <i>Caption Text</i> box, if the text is longer than three lines, all of the text after the third line is red. This lets you know that the text in red will not be included in the current caption. For complete instructions, see Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method . See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust the Width of the Caption Text • Captions • Add Captions with the Manual Captions Method
	Black Text	When text is pasted or typed into the <i>Caption Text</i> box, if the text is longer than 32 characters in width, all of the text after the 32 nd character is red. Text that is black is included in the current <i>Caption Point</i> . For complete instructions, see Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method . See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust the Width of the Caption Text • Captions • Add Captions with the Manual Captions Method
	Start	For use when creating captions using the Auto Sync method. After the script is pasted in the <i>Caption Text</i> box, click the Start button to begin syncing the audio script with the audio. See also: Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method .

Button	Option	Description & Use
	<p>Pause</p>	<p>For use when creating captions using the Auto Synch method. After the script is pasted in the scripting text box, and the Start button is pressed, it will turn into the Pause button. Use the Pause button to pause the <i>Auto Syncing</i> process. Once you click Pause, the Pause button will turn into the Resume button. Additionally, a Paused marker is placed next to the <i>Caption Point</i>.</p>  <p>When you are done pausing, click the Resume button to begin the <i>Auto Syncing</i> process again. See also: Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method.</p>
	<p>Resume</p>	<p>For use when creating captions using the Auto Synch method. Use the Pause button to pause the <i>Auto Syncing</i> process. The Pause button will turn into the Resume button and a Paused marker is placed next to the <i>Caption Point</i>. When you are done pausing, click the Resume button to begin the <i>Auto Syncing</i> process again. See also: Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method.</p>
	<p>Stop</p>	<p>For use when creating captions using the Auto Synch method. Click the Stop button to stop the <i>Auto Syncing</i> process. Once you stop, the focus in the scripting text box will revert back to the first <i>Caption Point</i>. Click on the Start button. The <i>Sync Text and Audio</i> dialog box appears. Make a choice and click OK. See also: Sync Text & Audio Dialog Box.</p>
	<p>Add Caption</p>	<p>Adds a new <i>Manual Caption</i> point. Click the Add button. A <i>Caption Point</i> is added to the pane beside the scripting text box.</p>  <p>Type the text that you want to appear in the caption. As you type the caption text, the text will appear in the <i>Preview Window</i>. Some of the text will also appear in the <i>Caption</i> track on the <i>Timeline</i>. See also: Add Captions with the Manual Captions Method.</p>
	<p>Blank Caption</p>	<p><i>Captions</i> do not have a duration. Instead, they continue to show until a new <i>Caption</i> is entered. To have areas in the video that do not show a caption, insert a blank caption. Click the Add button. A new <i>Caption</i> point is entered. Do not insert any text in that caption. Continue to add captions or click Finish to exit out of the <i>Open Captions</i> task page. See also: Add Captions with the Manual Captions Method.</p>

Button	Option	Description & Use
 On  Off	Overlay	Captions are displayed in two ways: overlaid on top of the video or located underneath the video. When the <i>Caption Overlay</i> option is turned on, the captions are placed on top of the video. When the <i>Caption Overlay</i> option is turned off, the captions are placed underneath the video
 On  Off	Display	Turns the captions on or off to produce a final video with or without captions. The Display button acts as a toggle. To change click Display .
Width (in chars): <input type="text" value="32"/>	Width (in chars)	Captions show three lines of text at a time on the screen. You can alter the width of characters that are displayed per line of text. This allows more or less text to be seen on each screen. Changing the width of the text actually increases or decreases the size of the characters. The default setting is 32 characters per line of text which will allow most people to comfortably view the text as the video plays. Enter a number from 30-100 in the Width field. See also: Adjust the Width of the Caption Text.

See also:

Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method


Add Captions with the Manual Captions Method


Adjust the Width of the Caption Text

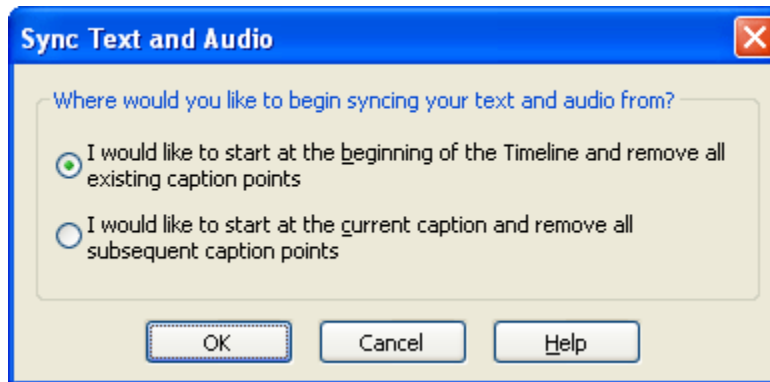
Sync Text & Audio Dialog Box

Sync Text & Audio Dialog Box

Note: Only available when creating captions using the **Auto Sync** method.

During the **Auto Sync** process, when you click **Stop** , the focus in the scripting text box will revert back to the first *Caption Point*.

Click **Start** . The *Sync Text and Audio* dialog box appears:



Determine where you want to begin the **Auto Sync** process. Choose from these options:

I would like to start at the beginning of the Timeline and remove all existing Caption points

Choose this option to start over with the **Auto Sync** process. This will take you back to the beginning of the script and move the seek bar to the beginning of the *Timeline*. Any *Caption Points* that were set are removed.

Once you have made the selection, click **OK**. The **Auto Sync** process begins once again.

Note: Click **Cancel** to exit this dialog box without beginning the *Auto Syncing* process again.

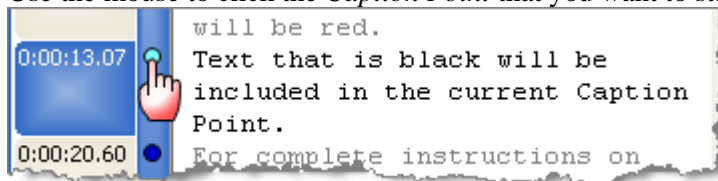
See also: **Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method**.


I would like to start at the current Caption and remove all subsequent Caption points

Starts the **Auto Sync** process at the position of the currently selected *Caption Point*. This will leave all proceeding *Caption Points* intact but will overwrite any *Caption Points* from this point on.

To choose a *Caption Point* other than the one currently selected:

1. Click **Cancel** in this dialog box.
2. Use the mouse to click the *Caption Point* that you want to start at.



3. Click **Start** .
4. The *Sync Text and Audio* dialog box will appear once again. Choose the **I would like to start at the current Caption...** option.

5. Click **OK**.

The **Auto Synch** process begins again.

Note: Click **Cancel** to exit this dialog box without beginning the *Auto Syncing* process again.

See also:

Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method

Add Captions with the Manual Captions Method

Adjust the Width of the Caption Text

Open Caption Toolbar & Other Options

Add Metadata Using the Project Properties

The fields contained within this tabbed dialog box allow you to add information (called metadata) that describes the video and video project. For example, the metadata will allow others to see who created the video, when it was created, and what it is about, etc. It will also allow others to search for the video on the Internet.

It is important to note that metadata entered within these fields is seen by others. Therefore, it is best to use caution when adding metadata that includes personal information.

If the video is uploaded to Screencast.com, there are options for editing or adding to the metadata fields.

See also:

- **Project Information**
- **Author Information**
- **iTunes Information**

Project Properties

Project Information | Author Information | iTunes Information

Title: Camtasia Studio Timeline Training

Subject: Basic Use of the Timeline

Category: Timeline

Date: Monday, July 17, 2006

Format:

Resource Identifier:

Language: English

Source:

Resource Type:

Coverage:

Relation:

Keywords: Camtasia Studio, Timeline, Cut, Edit, Split, Mark In, Mark out, Volume Up, Volume Down

Description:

OK Cancel Help

Project Information

Path: Within Camtasia Studio, make sure the project that you want to add metadata for is open. Choose **File > Project Properties > Project Information** tab.

Enter the information about this video and the Camtasia Studio project in the fields provided. A brief description of each field follows the graphic.

For a more detailed definition of each of these fields, go to the [Dublin Core Metadata Initiative](#) Web site.

Option Name	Description and Use
Title	The name given to the video. This field is populated by default with the project title.
Subject	The topic of the content of the video.
Category	The group associated with this video type.
Date	The date associated with an event in the life cycle of the video. Typically, the date is associated with the creation or availability of the resource. This field is populated by default with the project's production date.
Format	The physical or digital manifestation of the video. Typically, Format may include the media-type (file format) or dimensions of the video.

Option Name	Description and Use
Resource Identifier	An unambiguous reference to the video within a given context. Recommended best practice is to identify the video by means of a string or number conforming to a formal identification system.
Language	A language of the intellectual content of the video. This field is populated by default with the PC system default language.
Source	A Reference to a resource from which the present video is derived. The present resource may be derived from the Source resource in whole or part. Recommended best practice is to reference the resource by means of a string or number conforming to a formal identification system.
Resource Type	The nature or genre of the content of the video.
Coverage	The extent or scope of the content of the video. Coverage will typically include spatial location (a place name or geographic co-ordinates), temporal period (a period label, date, or date range) or jurisdiction (such as a named administrative entity).
Relation	A reference to a related video. Recommended best practice is to reference the video by means of a string or number conforming to a formal identification system.
Keywords	Select keywords from the actual content subject matter, Title, or Description information. If the subject of the video is a person or an organization, use the same form of the name as you would if the person or organization were a Creator or Contributor. In general, choose the most significant and unique words for keywords, avoiding those too general to describe a video.
Description	An unambiguous reference to the video within a given context. Recommended best practice is to identify the video by means of a string or number conforming to a formal identification system.

See also:

Author Information

iTunes Information

Author Information

Path: Within Camtasia Studio, make sure the project that you want to add metadata for is open. Choose **File > Project Properties > Author Information** tab.

Enter the information about the creator of the video in the fields provided. A brief description of each field follows the graphic.

For a more detailed definition of each of these fields, go to the [Dublin Core Metadata Initiative](#) Web site.

Option Name	Description and Use
Creator	An entity primarily responsible for making the content of the video. Examples of a Creator include a person, an organization, or a service. Typically the name of the Creator should be used to indicate the entity.
Contributor	An entity responsible for making contributions to the content of the video. Examples of a Contributor include a person, an organization or a service. Typically, the name of a Contributor should be used to indicate the entity.
Publisher	The entity responsible for making the resource available. Examples of a Publisher include a person, an organization, or a service.
E-mail	The e-mail address associated with this video.
Homepage	The home page URL address associated with this video.
Rights Management	Information about rights held in and over the video. Typically a Rights Management element will contain a rights management statement for the resource, or reference a service providing such information. Rights information often encompasses Intellectual Property Rights (IPR), Copyright, and various Property Rights.
Additional Info	Information about the video that does not belong in any other metadata category.

See also:

Project Information

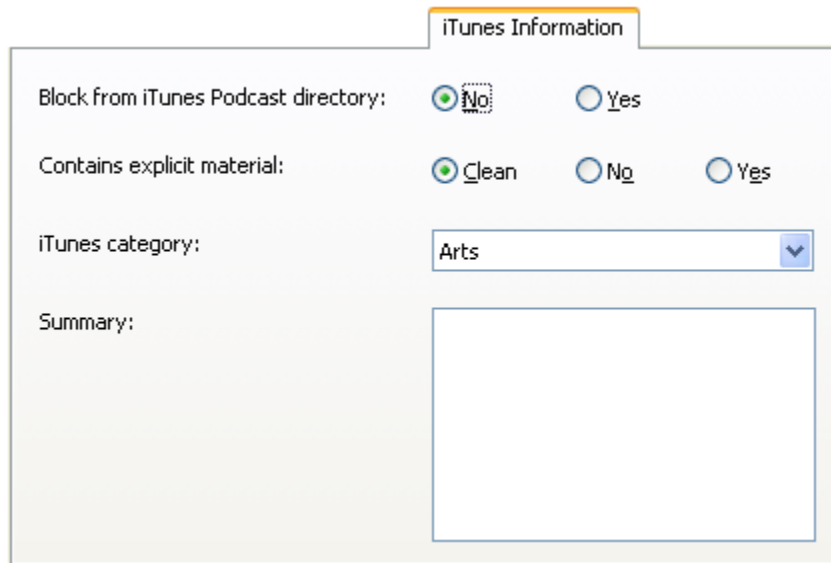
iTunes Information

iTunes Information

Path: Within Camtasia Studio, make sure the project that you want to add metadata for is open. Choose **File > Project Properties > iTunes Information** tab.

Enter the information about the creator of the video in the fields provided. A brief description of each field follows the graphic.

For a more detailed definition of each of these fields and to see where they are displayed within iTunes, see [iTunes RSS Tags](#).



Option Name	Description and Use
Block from iTunes Podcast directory	Click Yes to prevent the entire podcast from appearing in the iTunes Podcast directory.
Contains explicit material	Chose an option that describes the level of explicit content included in the podcast.
iTunes category	Choose an iTunes category from the dropdown list that best describes the podcast.
Summary	The contents of this tag are shown in a separate window that appears when the "circled i" in the Description column is clicked. It also appears on the iTunes page for the podcast.

See also:

Project Information

Author Information

Produce and Share the Final Video

When you have set the timing and sequence of the video clips, still images, Callouts, Quizzes, and Voice Narration on the Timeline, you are ready to produce the final video into a distributable and sharable format. This process, also called rendering, assembles all of the audio, video, and images into one video file, based on the sequence you have established on the Timeline.

However, at some point during the creation of the video you are going to ask this question: **How do I share this video with someone else?**

This is an important question to answer **before** you begin to produce the video since it directly impacts the type of video format this is selected. If you are not sure which file format to use, the **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard** is the best choice for you.

You can also read more about the different video file formats here: **Tell Me More about this File Type**.

There are three ways to produce the video:

Recommend my Production Settings Wizard

This takes you through the video production process based on the distribution method that you choose. Simply answer a few questions about the Timeline content and distribution channel and you are set to go. It is highly recommended that you produce the first few videos using this production wizard.

Production Presets

Choose from a set of saved production instructions including the Video File Format, Encoding Options, and Video Size options.

Using a Production Preset makes the production of videos faster and easier since choosing a preset bypasses most of the Production Wizard process.

Custom Production Wizard

Allows more flexibility over the final video file format as well as the ability to customize frame rates, video and audio codecs, etc. Also used to produce just a small sample of the video to see if you are satisfied with the results of the current custom settings.

See also:

Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline

Batch Produce Several Projects at One Time

Package a Video as a Pack and Show Executable File

Tell Me More about this File Type

Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline

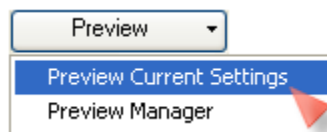
The Production Preview option located within the Custom Production Wizard or when using a Production Preset, is used to set a production option and immediately produce a thirty second clip of the video. This allows you to see how the video will look without having to wait for the entire video to be produced.

The Preview option is available on each page of the Custom Production Wizard and is also available on the last screen of the wizard when using a Production Preset option.

Each time you create a production preview, that clip is saved in the Production Preview Manager. The **Preview Manager** is used to compare file settings, files sizes, etc.

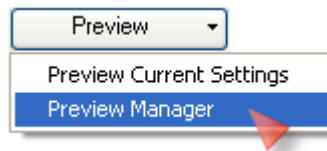
Production Preview

To produce a preview clip, on any Production Wizard page, click the **Preview** button. From the menu, choose **Preview Current Settings**.



Preview Manager

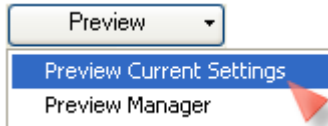
To manage the preview clips, on any Production Wizard page, click the **Preview** button. From the menu, choose **Preview Manager**.



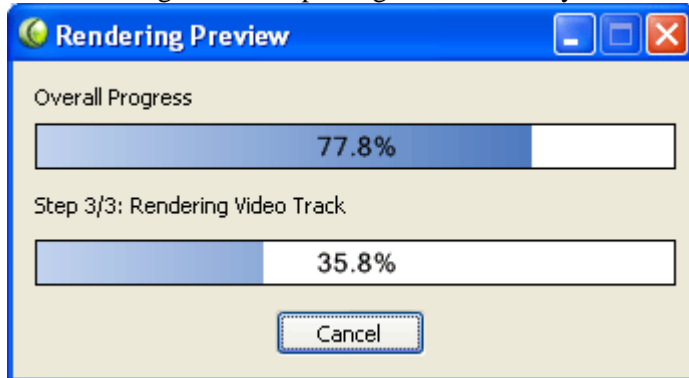
Preview Current Settings

The **Preview** option is used to set a production option and immediately produce a thirty second clip of the video.

1. In the Task List, choose **Produce Video As** or under **File > Produce Video As**. The Production Wizard appears.
2. Choose **Custom production settings**. Click **Next**.
3. Select the video file format from the list. Click **Next**.
4. Step through the rest of the wizard selecting the options along the way. On any screen, click the **Preview** button. From the dropdown menu, choose **Preview Current Settings**:



5. The rendering of the sample begins immediately.



6. Once the rendering is complete, the video preview clip will play back.

What would you like to do now?

Click **Next** to continue with the Production Wizard. At any step of the way, you can produce another preview clip.

Or, you can enter the **Preview Manager** where you can compare and manage other preview clips that you have made.

See also:

Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline

Recommend my Production Settings Wizard

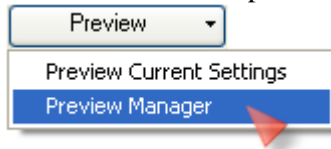
Production Presets

Custom Production Wizard

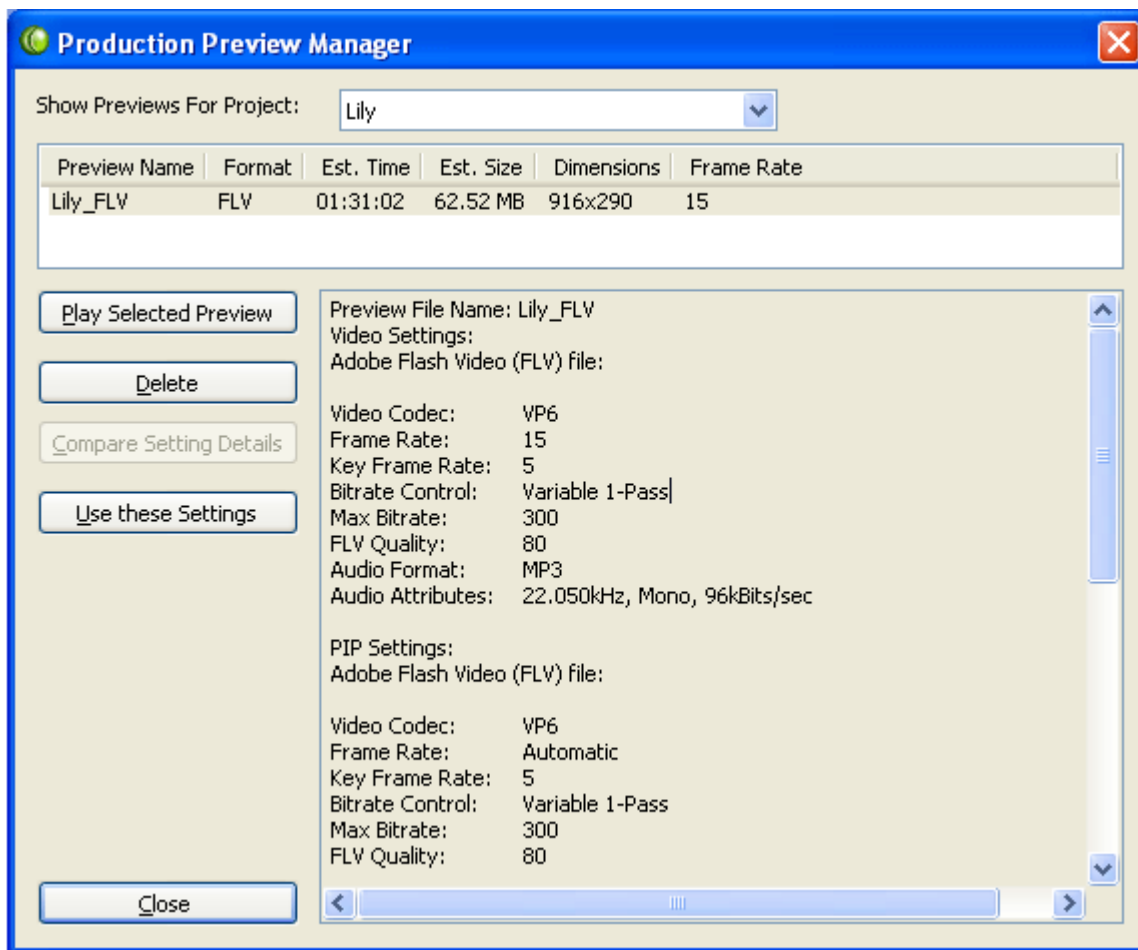
Preview Manager

The **Preview Manager** is used to play, view and compare clip file settings, files sizes, etc. You can also manage the clips by deleting files that are no longer needed.

1. In the Task List, choose **Produce Video As** or under **File > Produce Video As**. The Production Wizard appears.
2. Choose **Custom production settings**. Click **Next**.
3. Select the video file format from the list. Click **Next**.
4. Step through the rest of the wizard selecting the options along the way. On any screen, click the **Preview** button. From the dropdown menu, choose **Preview Manager**:



5. The *Production Preview Manager* dialog box appears. See the table below for a description of each option.



Option Name	Description and Use
Show Previews for Project	Choose the project containing preview clips to view.
Table Column Headings	The column headings can be modified to provide the best sorting criteria. See also: Change the Preview Manager Display Fields .
Play Selected Preview	Plays the selected preview clip.
Delete	Deletes the selected preview clip. A prompt to confirm the deletion appears.
Compare Setting Details	Gives you a side-by-side view of two preview clips.

Option Name	Description and Use
Use these Settings	Produce the video using the settings found in the selected preview clip. A prompt appears asking to confirm the discard of the current production settings in order to use the settings of the selected clip. The Production Wizard's Produce Video page appears to complete the production process.
Close	Closes the <i>Preview Manager</i> dialog box. The Production Wizard appears.

See also:

Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline

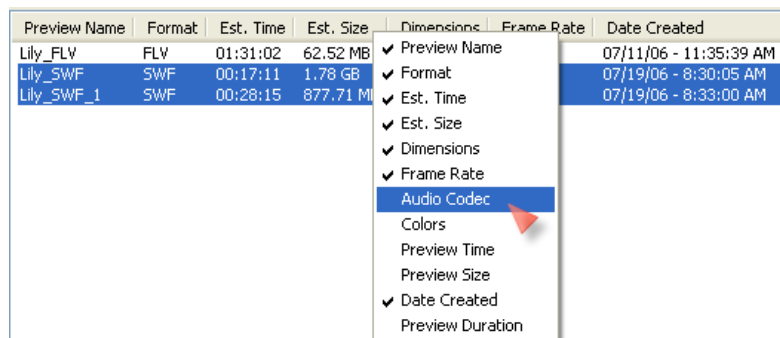
Recommend my Production Settings Wizard

Production Presets

Custom Production Wizard

Change the Preview Manager Display Fields

The column headings along the top of the Preview Manager can be modified to provide the best sorting criteria. To view or hide a column heading, right-click on the heading row. The menu of available columns will appear.



Hide or View Column Headings

Those headings that have a check mark next to them are currently being viewed.

To **hide** a column heading, choose it from the list. It will now be hidden.

To **view** a column, choose it from the list. It will now be in view.

Move Column to New Location

To move a column to a new location, click down on the heading of the column to be moved. Now, drag it to the new location by sliding the heading along the heading row.

See also:

Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline

Recommend my Production Settings Wizard

Production Presets

Custom Production Wizard

Recommend my Production Settings Wizard

Note: This production option is highly recommended for those who are new to using Camtasia Studio.

The easy-to-use **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard** takes you through the video production process based on the distribution method that you choose. Simply answer a few questions about the Timeline content and distribution channel and you are set to go. It is highly recommended that you produce the first few videos using this production wizard.

To produce the video, within the Task List in Camtasia Studio:

1. Click the **Produce video as..** link. The *Production Wizard Welcome* dialog box appears. If you would prefer not to see this screen each time you produce, enable the Do not show the Welcome page again option.
2. Click **Next**. The *How would you like to produce your video?* dialog box appears.
3. Choose **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard**.



4. Click **Next**. Continue with **How will you distribute your video?**

How will you distribute your video?

Within this screen, select the option that best describes the distribution method.

Production Wizard

How will you distribute your video?
Select the option which best describes your distribution method. For example, if you will be distributing your video over an intranet, select the Web option.

Web
My audience will view my video within a Web browser.

E-mail
My video will be sent as an E-mail attachment.

CD
I will copy my video to a CD.

DVD-ready
I will create a DVD from my video using my DVD authoring software.

Hard drive or other
My video will be saved to my hard drive or a network drive.

iPod or iTunes
My video will be played back in iTunes or on a video capable iPod.

Additional output options

Create MP3 File 44.100kHz, Stereo, 96kBits/sec

Create iPod File Medium

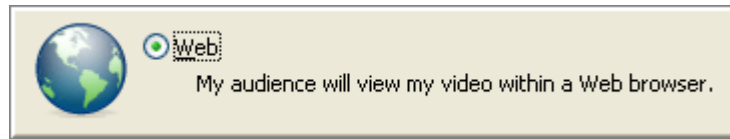
< Back Next > Cancel Help

Continue with the distribution method that was selected:

- **Web Distribution Production Option**
- **E-Mail Distribution Production Option**
- **CD Distribution Production Option**
- **DVD-ready Distribution Production Option**
- **Hard Drive or Other Distribution Production Option**
- **iPod or iTunes**

Web Distribution Production Option

Use the Web production option to produce the video in a Flash, Web-ready format. The output includes all of the files you or the Web administrator will need to upload the video for viewing in a Web browser.

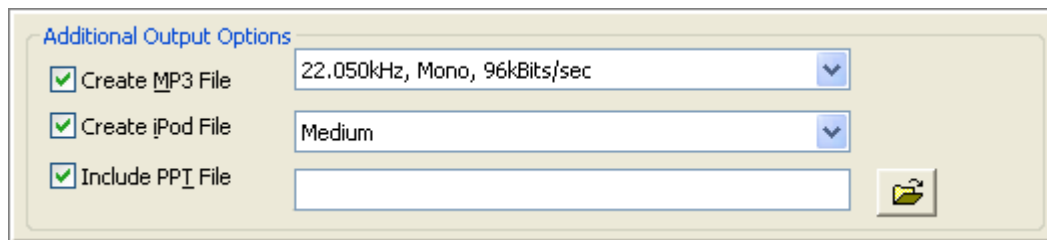


Since most Flash files are played in a Web browser, the production process creates a simple HTML file of the same name that references the produced Flash file. To properly play the movie file, launch the HTML file in a Web browser.

Keep these in mind when working with Flash movies:

- After production, to properly view the Flash movie file, double-click on the corresponding HTML file. This will play the Flash movie inside the Web browser with the appropriate width and height.
- Since the HTML file references the Flash movie file, if the Flash file is renamed or moved to a different directory, then you must edit the corresponding HTML file to reflect this change.


Additional Output Options



These options, found in the first screens of either the **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard** or the **Custom Production Wizard**, allow you to:

1. Simultaneously produce an MP3 audio file of all of the audio on the Timeline.
2. Produce an iPod-ready video.
3. Upload the original PowerPoint presentation so the viewers can download it from the Web.

When production of the video is complete, the video is accessed from a link on a web page. These ancillary files are available for download through links at the bottom of the page.

1. To create an MP3 file, check the **Create MP3 File** option. The **Options** dropdown menu appears. If necessary, select a different output option.
2. To create an iPod-ready video file, check the **Create iPod File** option. The **Options** dropdown menu appears. If necessary, select a different output option.
3. To include the original PowerPoint presentation for download, check the **Include PPT file** option. Click the **Browse** button  and look for the PowerPoint presentation. Click **OK**.

Continue with Production Wizard

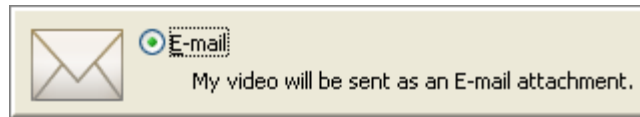
To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **What Type of Content does your Timeline Include**.

Preview Option

For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

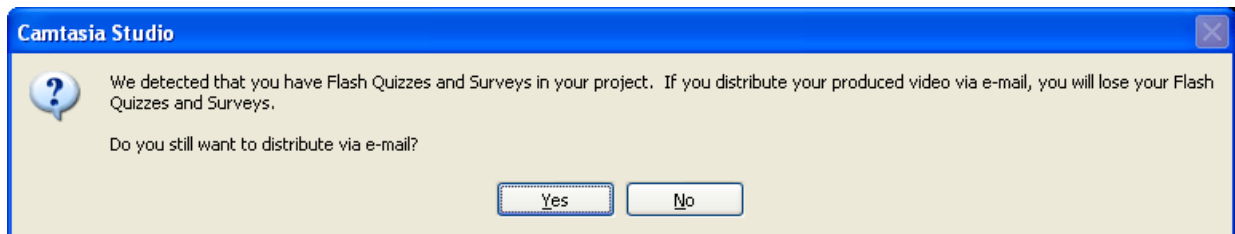
E-Mail Distribution Production Option

Use the e-mail production option to produce the video in an e-mail friendly format.



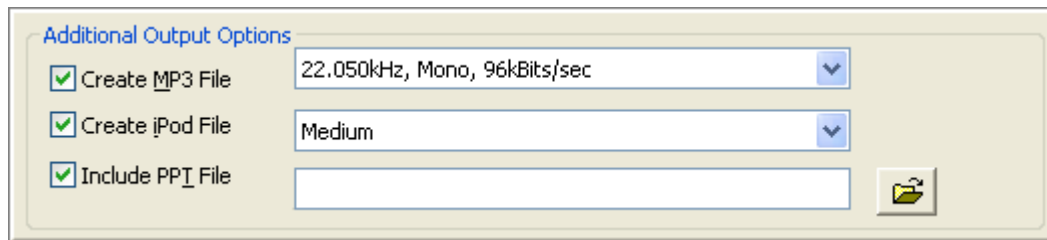
At the end of production process, Camtasia Studio opens a new e-mail for you with the video contained as an attachment.

If there are Flash elements on the Timeline such as a Quiz or Survey, a warning dialog box appears.



The video file format that is best for e-mail output is not SWF. In order to activate the Flash elements, you must produce as SWF. If you continue to produce for this file format, the Flash elements will not be included in the final video.


Additional Output Options



These options, found in the first screens of either the **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard** or the **Custom Production Wizard**, allow you to:

1. Simultaneously produce an MP3 audio file of all of the audio on the Timeline.
2. Produce an iPod-ready video.
3. Upload the original PowerPoint presentation so the viewers can download it from the Web.

When production of the video is complete, the video is accessed from a link on a web page. These ancillary files are available for download through links at the bottom of the page.

1. To create an MP3 file, check the **Create MP3 File** option. The **Options** dropdown menu appears. If necessary, select a different output option.
2. To create an iPod-ready video file, check the **Create iPod File** option. The **Options** dropdown menu appears. If necessary, select a different output option.
3. To include the original PowerPoint presentation for download, check the **Include PPT file** option. Click the **Browse** button  to find the PowerPoint presentation. Click **OK**.

Continue with Production Wizard

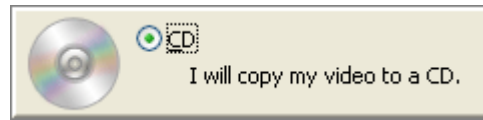
To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **What Type of Content does your Timeline Include**.

Preview Option

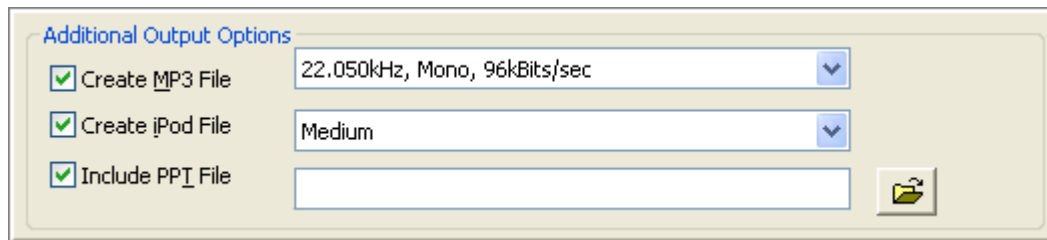
For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

CD Distribution Production Option

Use the CD production option to produce the video in a CD-ready format. Include an auto-run file so the video will play as soon as it is put in the CD tray on the viewer's PC.




Additional Output Options



These options, found in the first screens of either the **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard** or the **Custom Production Wizard**, allow you to:

1. Simultaneously produce an MP3 audio file of all of the audio on the Timeline.
2. Produce an iPod-ready video.
3. Upload the original PowerPoint presentation so the viewers can download it from the Web.

When production of the video is complete, the video is accessed from a link on a web page. These ancillary files are available for download through links at the bottom of the page.

1. To create an MP3 file, check the **Create MP3 File** option. The **Options** dropdown menu appears. If necessary, select a different output option.
2. To create an iPod-ready video file, check the **Create iPod File** option. The **Options** dropdown menu appears. If necessary, select a different output option.
3. To include the original PowerPoint presentation for download, check the **Include PPT file** option. Click the **Browse** button  to find the PowerPoint presentation. Click **OK**.

Continue with Production Wizard

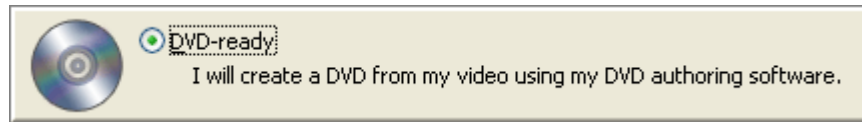
To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **What Type of Content does your Timeline Include**.

Preview Option

For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

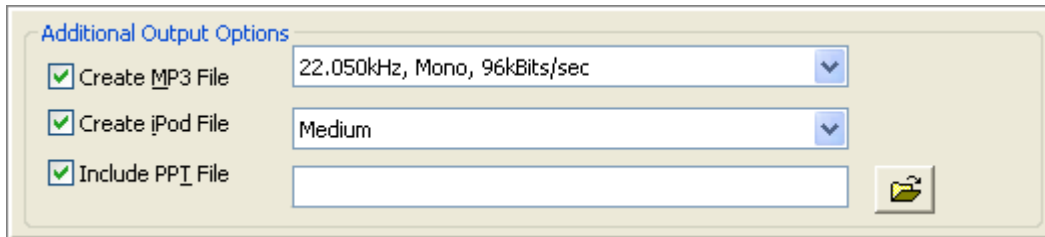
DVD-ready Distribution Production Option

Use the DVD production option within the **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard** to produce the video in a DVD-ready AVI format.



This means that Camtasia Studio will properly size and encode the video with the highest quality options for use with most third party DVD authoring software applications. Just import the final AVI video into the DVD project and you are ready to go.


Additional Output Options



These options, found in the first screens of either the **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard** or the **Custom Production Wizard**, allow you to:

1. Simultaneously produce an MP3 audio file of all of the audio on the Timeline.
2. Produce an iPod-ready video.
3. Upload the original PowerPoint presentation so the viewers can download it from the Web.

When production of the video is complete, the video is accessed from a link on a web page. These ancillary files are available for download through links at the bottom of the page.

1. To create an MP3 file, check the **Create MP3 File** option. The **Options** dropdown menu appears. If necessary, select a different output option.
2. To create an iPod-ready video file, check the **Create iPod File** option. The **Options** dropdown menu appears. If necessary, select a different output option.
3. To include the original PowerPoint presentation for download, check the **Include PPT file** option. Click **Browse**  to find the PowerPoint presentation. Click **OK**.

Continue with Production Wizard

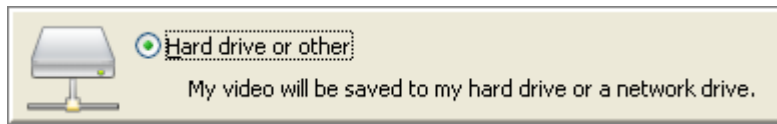
To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **What Type of Content does your Timeline Include**.

Preview Option

For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

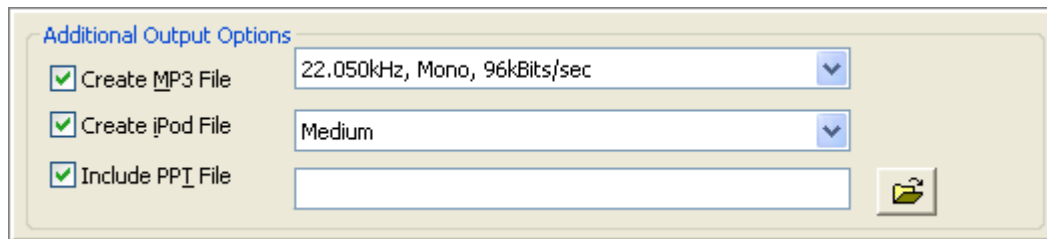
Hard Drive or Other Distribution Production Option:

Use the **Hard Drive or Other** production option if you are not sure how you are going to distribute the video.



Note: If you have Flash elements such as Hotspots, a Quiz or a Survey, on the *Timeline*, choose the Web distribution option.


Additional Output Options



These options, found in the first screens of either the **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard** or the **Custom Production Wizard**, allow you to:

1. Simultaneously produce an MP3 audio file of all of the audio on the Timeline.
2. Produce an iPod-ready video.
3. Upload the original PowerPoint presentation so the viewers can download it from the Web.

When production of the video is complete, the video is accessed from a link on a web page. These ancillary files are available for download through links at the bottom of the page.

1. To create an MP3 file, check the **Create MP3 File** option. The **Options** dropdown menu appears. If necessary, select a different output option.
2. To create an iPod-ready video file, check the **Create iPod File** option. The **Options** dropdown menu appears. If necessary, select a different output option.
3. To include the original PowerPoint presentation for download, check the **Include PPT file** option. Click the **Browse** button  to find the PowerPoint presentation. Click **OK**.

Continue with Production Wizard

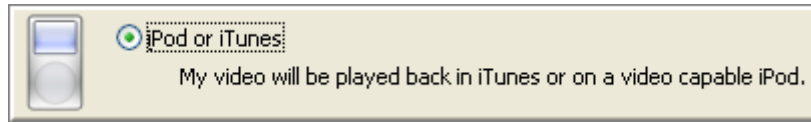
To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **What Type of Content does your Timeline Include**

Preview Option

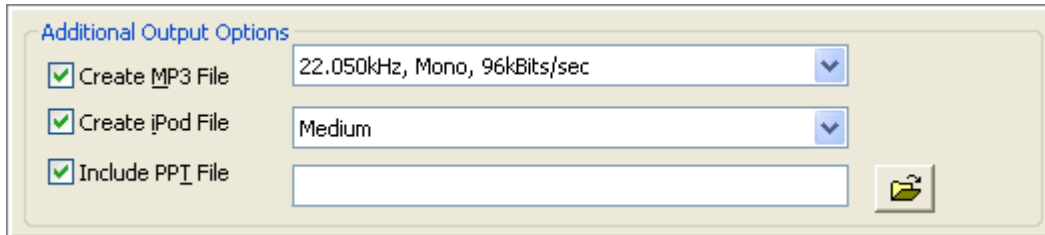
For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

iPod or iTunes

Use iPod or iTunes to create a video that is specially formatted to play on an iPod or within iTunes.




Additional Output Options



These options, found in the first dialog box of either the **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard** or the **Custom Production Wizard**, allow you to:

1. Simultaneously produce an MP3 audio file of all of the audio on the Timeline.
2. Upload the original PowerPoint presentation so the viewers can download it from the Web.

When production of the video is complete, the video is accessed from a link on a web page. These ancillary files are available for download through links at the bottom of the page.

1. To create an MP3 file, check the **Create MP3 File** option. The **Options** dropdown menu appears. If necessary, select a different output option.
2. To include the original PowerPoint presentation for download, check the **Include PPT file** option. Click **Browse**  to find the PowerPoint presentation.
3. Click **OK**.

Continue with Production Wizard

Click **Next** to continue with the Production Wizard. Continue with **Where would you like to save your video files(s)?**

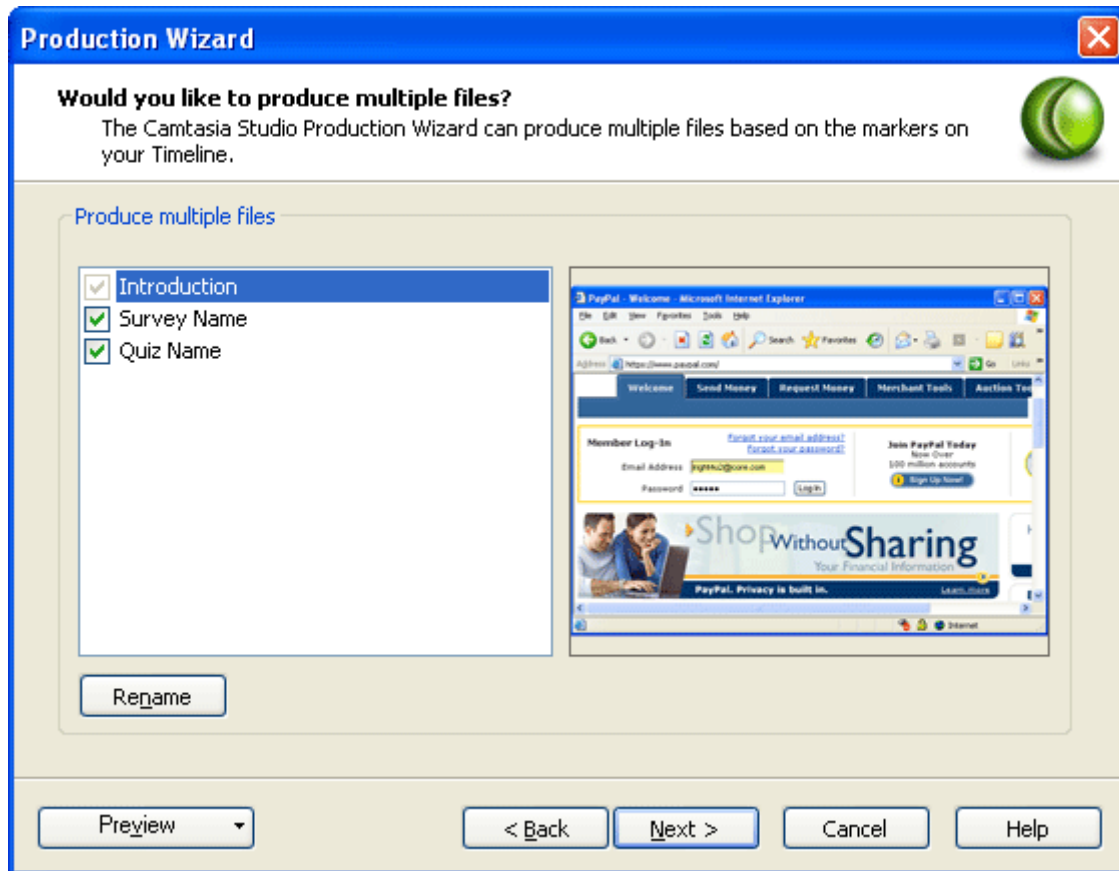
Preview Option

For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Produce Multiple Files

Enable to create and produce individual videos based on *Markers* that have been set during the editing process. Enable the individual *Markers* to have produced as individual videos.

To rename a Marker or Quiz, double-click on one in the list and type a new name. Or, click a Marker and click the **Rename** button. Type the new name.

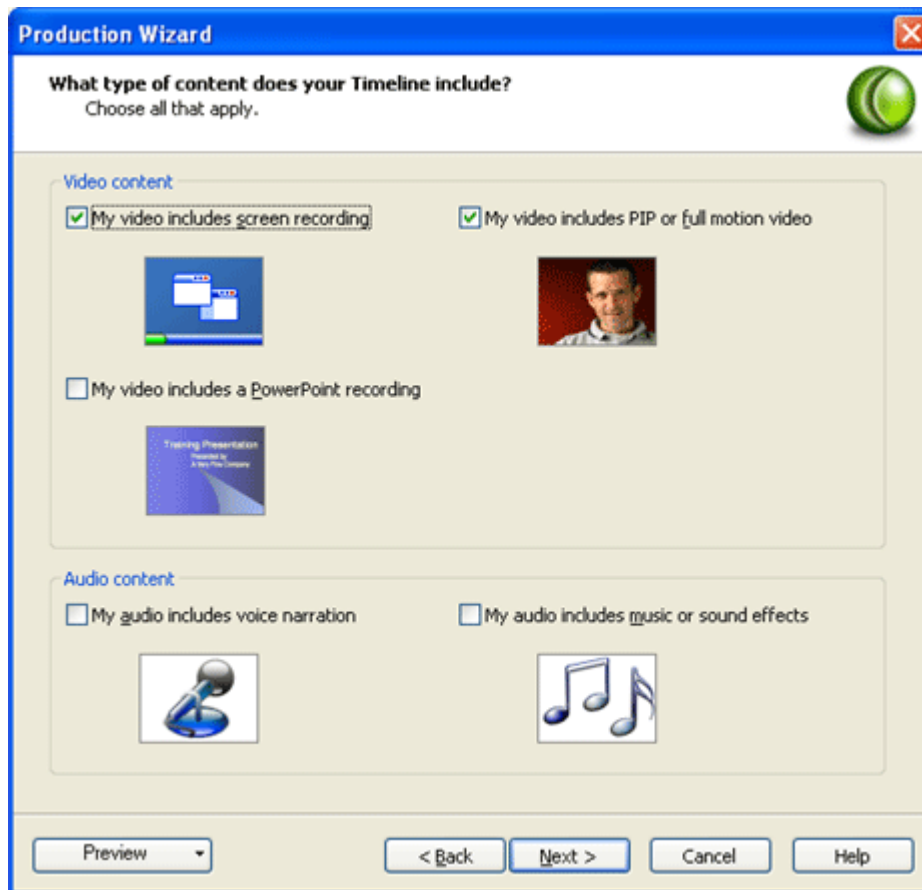


Click **Next**. Continue with **Where would you like to save your video files(s)?**

For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

What Type of Content does your Timeline Include?

Within this screen, check all of the options that apply to the content that is currently on the Timeline.



Continue with Production Wizard

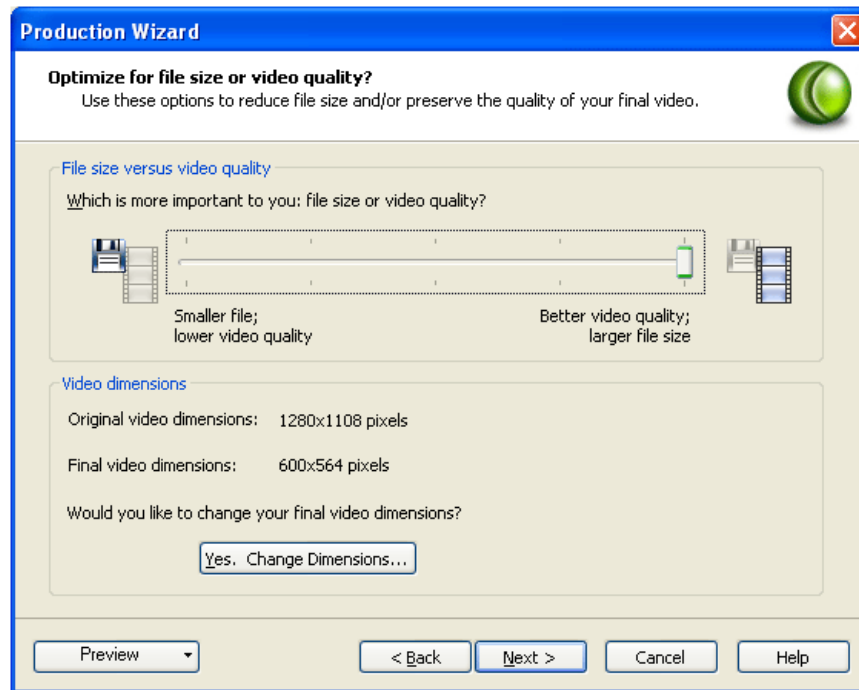
Click **Next** to continue with the Production Wizard. Continue with **Optimize for File Size or Video Quality**.

Preview Option

For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Optimize for File Size or Video Quality

Within this screen, use the slider to tell the wizard how important the quality of the video is to you in relation to file size.



Are Video Dimensions Visible?

If you see the **Video Dimensions** options, this is a notice that the original video dimensions may be too large and the Production Wizard has chosen a size that is best for this production.

- The original video dimensions are seen in the **Original video dimensions** field.
- The **Final video dimensions** field contains the new recommended dimensions

Change the Recommended Dimensions

1. To change to a dimension other than the recommended option, click the **Yes. Change Dimensions** button.
2. The *Video Dimensions Preview* window appears.
3. Drag the corner of the Preview to the desired size.
4. A new dimension is updated to the **Final video dimensions** field.
5. Click **OK** to accept this dimension and continue with the production wizard.

Continue with Production Wizard

Click **Next** to continue with the Production Wizard. Continue with one of these options:

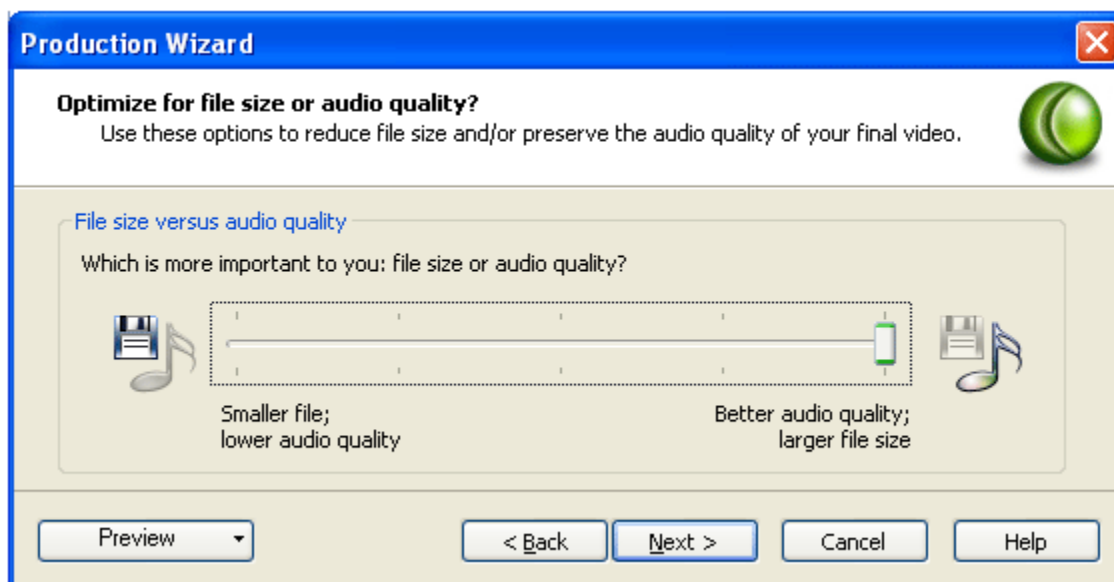
- If you have audio on the Timeline, continue with **Optimize for File Size or Audio Quality**.
- If you have any Callouts or Quizzes on the Timeline, or you chose Web output as the distribution option, continue with **Flash Templates**.
- If you have neither audio or Markers, continue with **Where would you like to save your video files(s)?**

Preview Option

For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Optimize for File Size or Audio Quality

Within this dialog box, use the slider to tell the wizard how important the quality of the audio is to you in relation to file size.



Continue with Production Wizard

Click **Next** to continue with the Production Wizard.

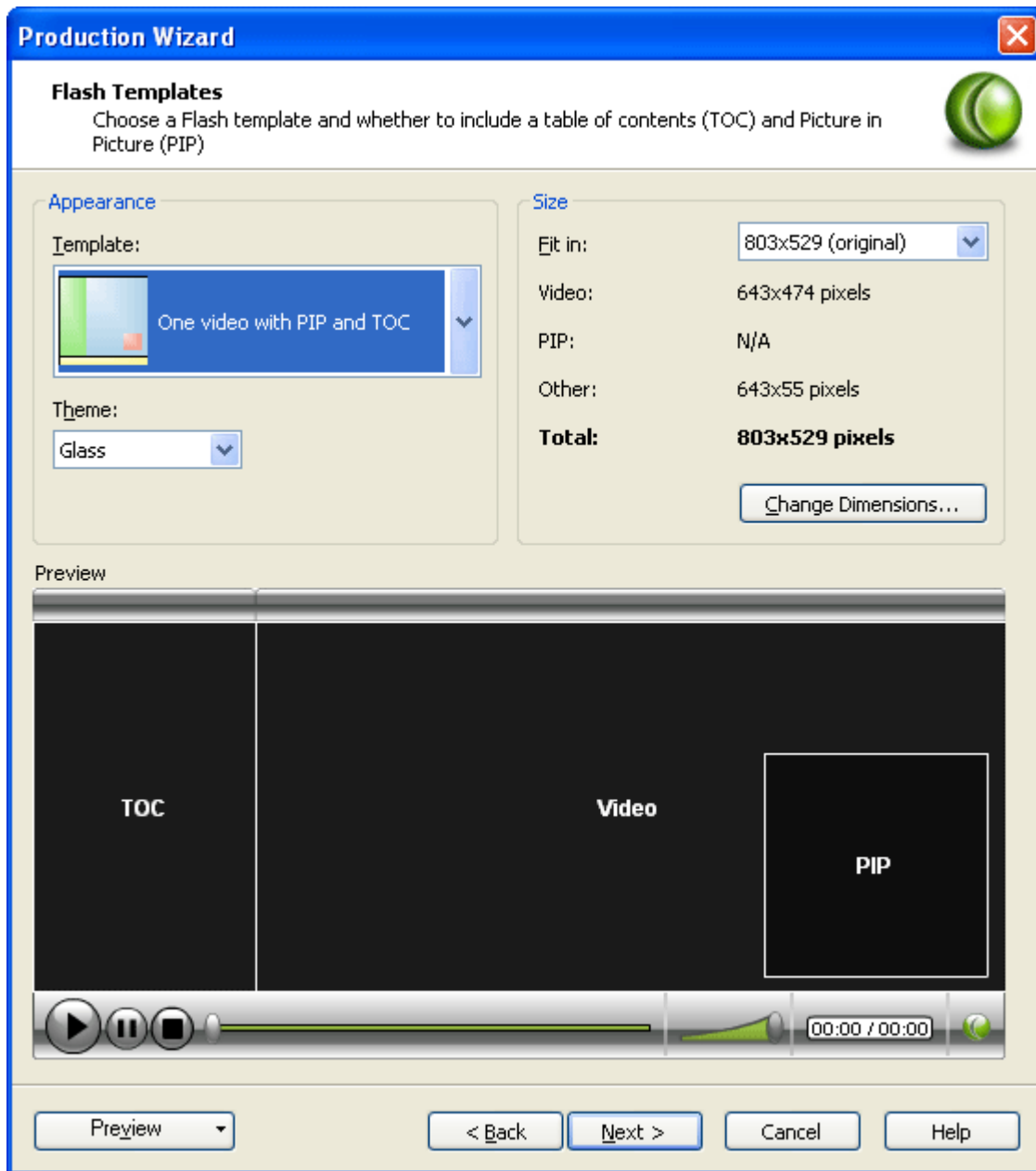
- If you are producing with the E-mail file output, continue with **Where would you like to save your video files(s)?**
- If you have any Callouts or Quizzes on the Timeline, or you chose Web output as the distribution option, continue with **Flash Templates**.
- Otherwise, continue with **Would you like to Create a Table of Contents**.

Preview Option

For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Flash Templates

Choose the template to be used for the produced movie. These templates determine how the video (or video with picture-in-picture) appear when produced.



You can also choose a template that includes a table of contents based on Quizzes or Markers you may have on the Timeline.

- For a detailed description of each template, see **Flash Template Examples**.
- Click the **Change Dimensions** button to change the dimensions of the produced video. See also: **Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box)**.

Option	Description and Use
Template	From the dropdown menu, choose the template used for the produced movie. These templates determine how the video (or video with picture-in-picture) will appear once it is produced. See also: Flash Template Examples .
Theme	Choose the desired look for the video controller and wrapper. The look is updated in the Preview area.
Fit in	From the dropdown menu, choose the maximum size for this produced movie which includes the main video, any side-by-side video, table of contents, the playback controls, and the player wrapper. When using the Fit in option, it is like an unseen border or frame is placed around the video. This unseen frame makes sure that when you resize the videos you cannot go outside of the maximum width and height that was set. Note: The actual size of the video may be made smaller than the size selected in this field. However, it can never be made larger than the size selected. See also: Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box) .
Video	The actual size of the main video in pixels. This is a read-only field. To change this, click the Change Dimensions button. If changes are made within the <i>Video Dimensions Preview</i> screen, they are updated to this field. See also: Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box) .
PIP	The actual size of the side-by-side PIP video in pixels. This is a read-only field. To change this, click the Change Dimensions button. If changes are made within the <i>Video Dimensions Preview</i> screen, they are updated to this field. See also: Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box) .
Other	The actual size of the playback controls and the player wrapper in pixels. This size will always be the same as the width of the main video and will always be 55 pixels in height. This is a read-only field.
Total	The overall total size of this produced movie including the main video, any side-by-side video, table of contents, the playback controls, and the player wrapper. Note: This size will always be less than or equal to the Fit in size.
Change Dimensions	Change the size of the main video or the size of the side-by-side video. Embedded PIP cannot be resized using this option. Embedded PIP must be sized prior to production while the PIP is on the Timeline. See also: Modify an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip . For complete instructions on this topic, see Change Dimensions .
Preview	The Preview option located within the <i>Custom Production Wizard</i> , or when using a <i>Production Preset</i> , is used to set a production option and immediately produce a thirty second clip of the video. See also: Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline .

Continue with Production Wizard

- If you have Markers or at least one Quiz on the Timeline and have selected a template with a table of contents, continue with **Would you like to Create a Table of Contents**.
- If you have no Markers or Quizzes on the Timeline or you have selected a template that does **not** have a table of contents, continue with **Where would you like to save your video files(s)?**

Preview Option

For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Flash Template Examples

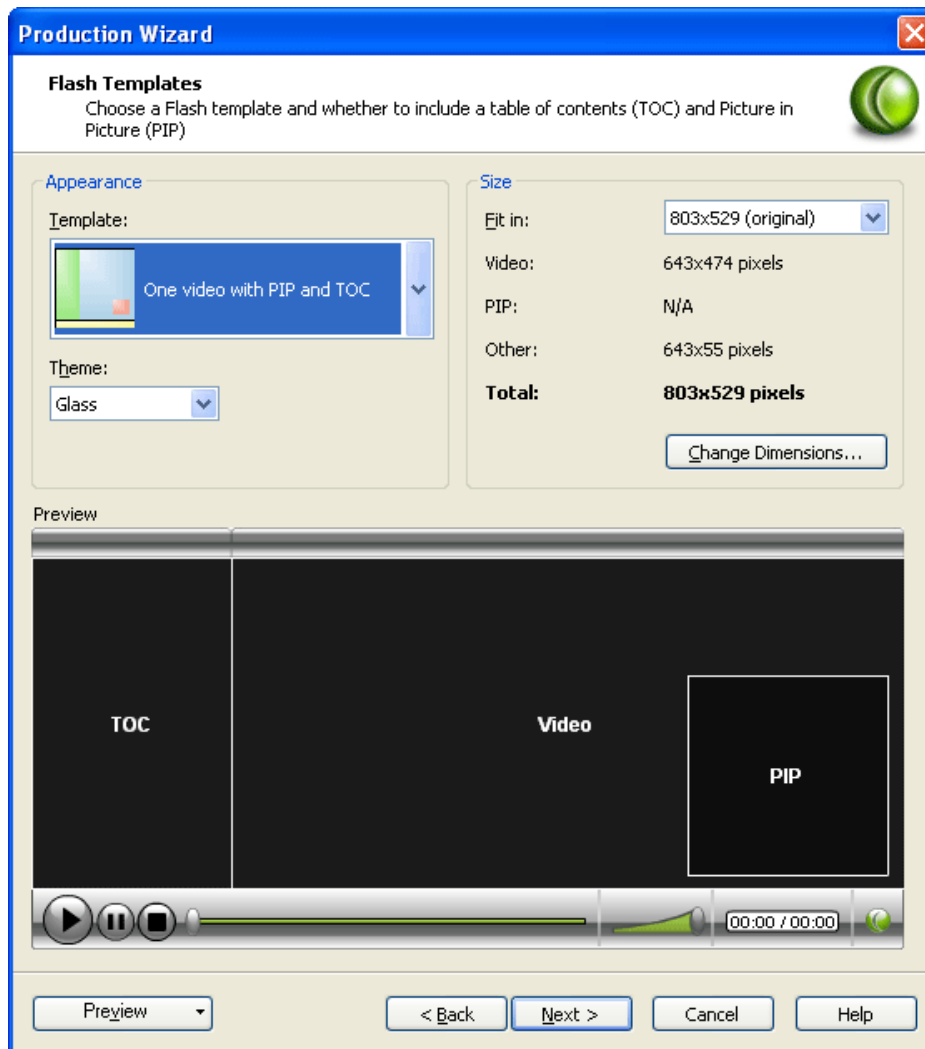
Choose the template for the produced movie. These templates determine how the video (or video with picture-in-picture) appears when produced. You can also choose a template that includes a table of contents based on the Quizzes or markers you have on the *Timeline*.


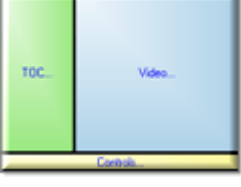

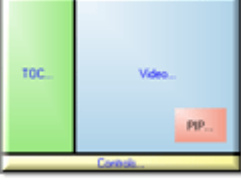
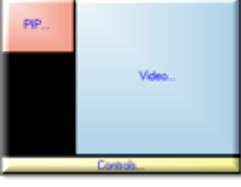
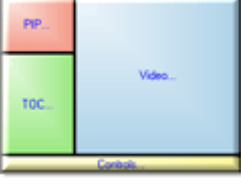
This table contains the correct template and video codec production combination based on the Flash Player used for playback of the movie.


See also: **Camtasia Theater and the Legacy SWF Output Flash Template Option.**

To get output compatible with...	Use these settings...
Flash Player 6	Choose the Legacy SWF Output template. See also: Camtasia Theater and the Legacy SWF Output Flash Template Option.
Flash Player 7	Choose any template except the <i>Legacy SWF Output</i> template. If the output includes FLV video, you must use H.263 as the <i>Video Codec</i> instead of VP6.
Flash Player 8	Choose any template except the <i>Legacy SWF Output</i> template. If the output includes FLV video, you must use VP6 as the <i>Video Codec</i> instead of H.263.

This table on the next page describes each Flash template.



Template Option	Description and Use	
One video		<p>Produces one video that has the advanced playback controls embedded in it.</p> <p>The advanced controls that show depend on the controls options that were selected during the production process. See also: Flash Options Controls Tab and Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box).</p>
One Video with TOC		<p>Produces one video that has the advanced playback controls embedded in it along with a table of contents. The table of contents entries are created from any <i>Markers</i> or <i>Quizzes</i> on the <i>Timeline</i>.</p> <p>The advanced controls that show depend on the controls options that were selected during the production process.</p> <p>See also: Flash Options Controls Tab and Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box).</p>
One Video with PIP		<p>Produces a main video with an embedded picture-in-picture video. Also has the embedded advanced playback controls.</p> <p>The advanced controls that show depend on the controls options that were selected during the production process.</p> <p>See also: Flash Options Controls Tab and Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box).</p>
One Video with PIP and TOC		<p>Produces a main video with an embedded picture-in-picture video. Also has the advanced playback controls embedded along with a table of contents. The table of contents entries are created from any <i>Markers</i> or <i>Quizzes</i> on the <i>Timeline</i>.</p> <p>The advanced controls that show depend on the controls options that were selected during the production process.</p> <p>See also: Flash Options Controls Tab and Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box).</p>
Two Videos Side-by-Side		<p>Produces a main video with a picture-in-picture video located to the side of the main video. Also has the embedded advanced playback controls.</p> <p>The advanced controls that show depend on the controls options that were selected during the production process.</p> <p>See also: Flash Options Controls Tab and Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box).</p>
Two Videos Side-by-Side with TOC		<p>Produces a main video with a picture-in-picture video located to the side of the main video.</p> <p>Also has the advanced playback controls embedded along with a table of contents. The table of contents entries are created from any <i>Markers</i> or <i>Quizzes</i> on the <i>Timeline</i>.</p> <p>The advanced controls that show depend on the controls options that were selected during the production process.</p> <p>See also: Flash Options Controls Tab and Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box).</p>

Template Option	Description and Use
Legacy SWF Output 	<p>Produces one video in Flash SWF format that has the basic playback controls embedded in it.</p> <p>Overall, if you need to produce a SWF movie of a screen recording that can be used in Camtasia Theater, choose this template option. However, certain restrictions apply. For more on the <i>Legacy SWF Output</i> option, see Camtasia Theater and the Legacy SWF Output Flash Template Option.</p> <p>See also: Flash Options Controls Tab.</p>

Camtasia Theater and the Legacy SWF Output Flash Template Option

Camtasia Studio now supports Flash SWF/FLV output. In previous versions of Camtasia Studio, only SWF output was supported.

The move to a combined Flash SWF/FLV output means that longer PowerPoint presentations, full motion video, and talking head Picture-in-Picture can all be produced with the Flash quality that you have come to expect from Camtasia Studio.

This also means that when creating a Flash movie, depending on the content of the Timeline, you may end up with a SWF or FLV movie file or even both kinds of Flash files in the produced movie project folder.

Theater & the Legacy SWF Output Flash Template

The **Legacy SWF Output** Flash Template is used to create a SWF movie file that is compatible with Camtasia Theater or any of the Flash players. It is very important to note that Theater is **only** intended to be used in conjunction with screen recordings or low motion PowerPoint recordings that have been produced in Flash SWF format using the **Legacy Flash Template** option. FLV movie files cannot be used in Camtasia Theater.

If you need to produce a SWF movie that can be used in Camtasia Theater, choose the **Legacy SWF Output** Flash Template option during production.

SWF output and/or Camtasia Theater are not the best options for distributing the Flash movies if the produced Flash movies contain any of these:

- Quizzes
- Callouts with Hot Spots
- Full motion or real-world video.
- Picture-in-Picture video.
- Long PowerPoint presentations.
- Any PowerPoint presentation with animation or transition effects.

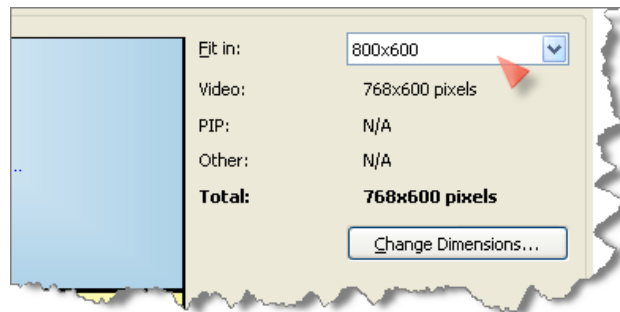
If the Timeline contains any of these kind of elements or video clips, then you **should not** produce using the **Legacy SWF Output** Flash Template.

Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box)

Note: This dialog box is located in the *Flash Templates Production Wizard*. To access this dialog box, choose **Camtasia Studio > Produce Video As > Flash (SWF/FLV) Adobe Flash Output > Next > Flash Templates** dialog box > **Change Dimensions** button.

Note: Embedded PIP video cannot be resized using this option. Embedded PIP video must be sized prior to production while the PIP is on the Timeline. See **Modify an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip**.

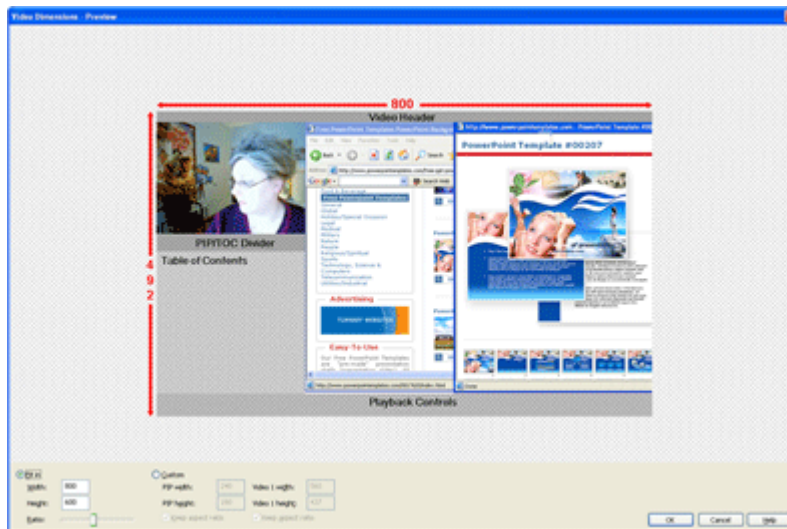
The *Video Dimensions Preview* dialog box is used to change the produced size of the main video, the size of the side-by-side video, or both.



To change the size of the video(s) click **Change Dimensions**



The *Video Dimensions Preview* dialog box appears. Each option and its use is described in the table below.



Option Name	Description and Use
Fit in	<p>By default, the Fit in radio button is selected to determine the maximum size for the produced video including the main video, any side-by-side video, table of contents, the playback controls, and the player wrapper. The size that was selected in the <i>Flash Templates</i> dialog box is carried over here.</p> <p>In these fields, you can manually change the maximum size by entering the width and height in pixels.</p> <p>Width: Delete the current entry and enter the width in pixels.</p> <p>Height: Delete the current entry and enter the height in pixels.</p>

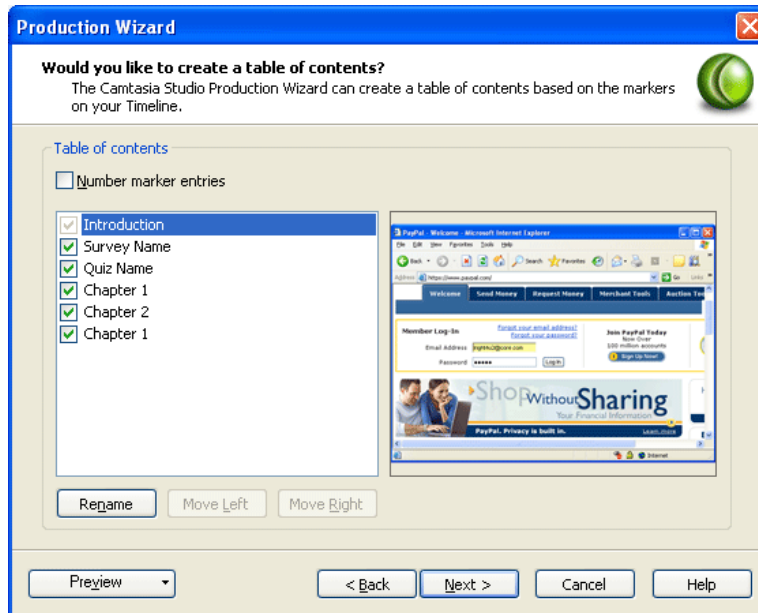
Option Name	Description and Use
Ratio	<p>When using the Fit in option, it is like an unseen border or frame is placed around the video. This unseen frame makes sure that when you resize the videos you cannot go outside of the maximum width and height that was set.</p> <p>The Ratio slider is used to resize the videos within the confines of that unseen border. Grab and drag the slider to change the size of the videos. No matter how you size them, they will always be within the maximum Fit in width and height.</p> <p>Only available when using the Fit in option.</p> <p>If you change the width and height sizes here, they are updated to the Fit in field on the <i>Flash Template</i> page and noted with the words “User Defined”.</p>
Custom	<p>Enable the Custom option to set the video size(s) to desired dimension.</p> <p>In these fields, change the maximum size by entering the width and height in pixels. To set the custom width and height, enable the Custom option. Set the width and height.</p> <p>PIP width: Delete the current entry and enter the width in pixels.</p> <p>PIP height: Delete the current entry and enter the height in pixels.</p> <p>Video 1 width: Delete the current entry and enter the width in pixels.</p> <p>Video 1 height: Delete the current entry and enter the height in pixels.</p>
Keep aspect ratio	<p>Maintains horizontal and vertical size aspect ratio when scaling the video using the Custom options. When enabled, the video will appear normal, not stretched or distorted.</p> <p>Enabled by default.</p>
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Would you like to Create a Table of Contents

Note: If you do not want a table of contents in the movie, then back up in the production wizard and choose a Flash Template that does not have a TOC (table of contents).

Markers and Quizzes may serve as bookmarks or placeholders within the video. When the movie is produced in conjunction with the Table of Contents option, the Markers and Quizzes will show as hyperlinks in the HTML page. Overall, incorporating a table of contents into the HTML page provides easy navigation points for the viewer. In this dialog box, you can:

- Choose specific Markers to include in the HTML page.
- Rename any Markers or Quizzes in this dialog box. Any changes made here are updated to the Markers or Quizzes on the Timeline.
- Indent the Markers or Quizzes to the right.



Option Name	Description and Use
Selecting Markers or Quizzes	By default, all of the Markers and Quizzes are selected to be included in the table of contents. This is noted by a green check mark next to the Marker or Quiz name <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Untitled. If you do not want a particular Marker or Quiz to be included in the table of contents, click the green check mark to remove it <input type="checkbox"/> Untitled.
Rename	To rename a Marker or Quiz, double-click on it in the list and type a new name. Or, click the Marker or Quiz, click the Rename button, and type the new name.
Move Left	To move the Marker or Quiz back to its original position, click on the Marker or Quiz and click the Move Left button.
Move Right	To indent a Marker or Quiz, click on the Marker or Quiz and click the Move Right button.

Continue with Production Wizard

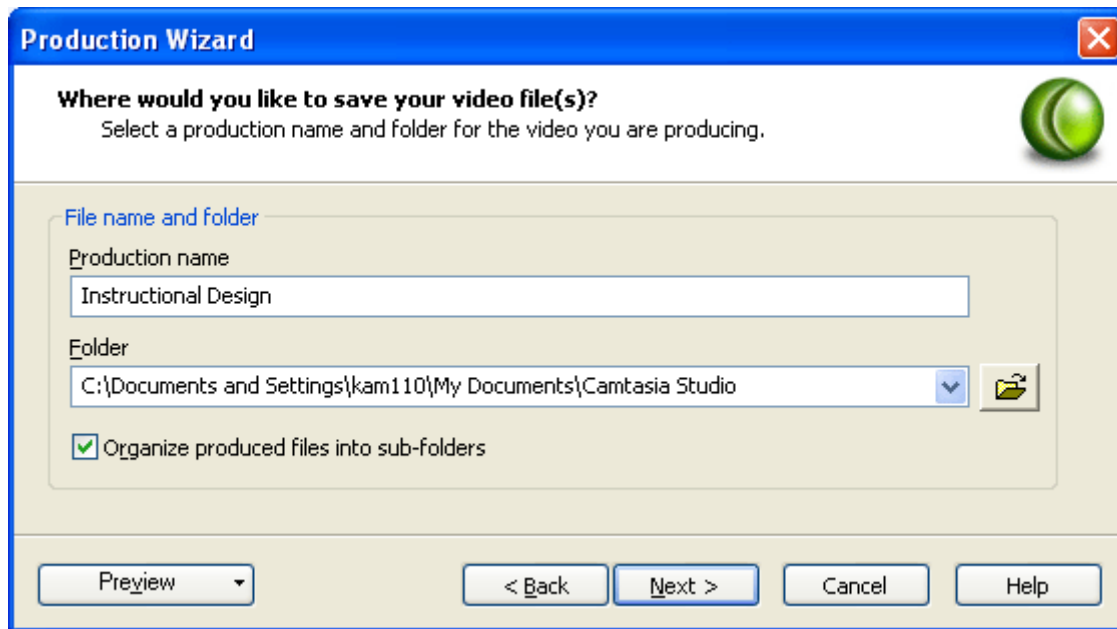
Click **Next** to continue with the Production Wizard. Continue with **Where would you like to save your video files(s)?**

Preview Option

For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Where would you like to save your video file(s)?

Within this dialog box, choose a production name and folder. Additionally, enable the **Organize produced files into sub-folders** option to have each produced video placed into its own folder.



Continue with Production Wizard

Click **Next** to continue with the Production Wizard. Continue with **Completing the Camtasia Studio Production Wizard**.

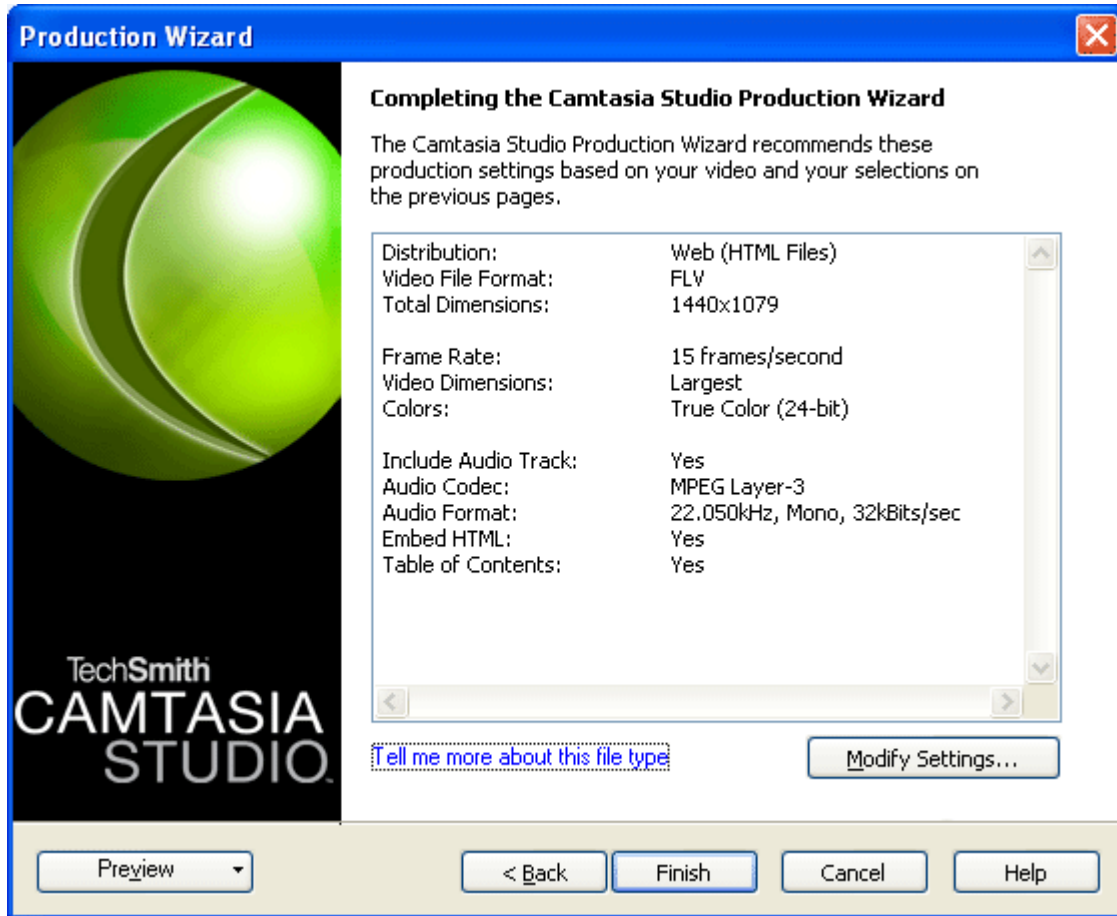
Preview Option

For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Completing the Camtasia Studio Production Wizard

This dialog box contains the settings that the Wizard has selected. To change any of these settings, click the **Modify Settings** button. This wizard will close and the Custom Production Wizard appears. Continue with **Custom Production Wizard**.

To learn more about the video file format that was selected, click the **Tell Me More about this File Type** link.

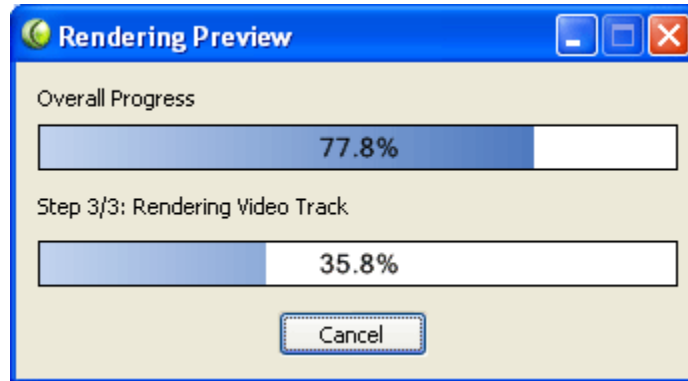


Production Preview Option

For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Continue with Production Wizard

Click **Finish**. The actual production process, called rendering, begins. As the video renders, the *Rendering Preview* dialog box appears:



Continue with the option that matches the production distribution method:

Web Production is Complete

E-mail Production is Complete

CD Production is Complete

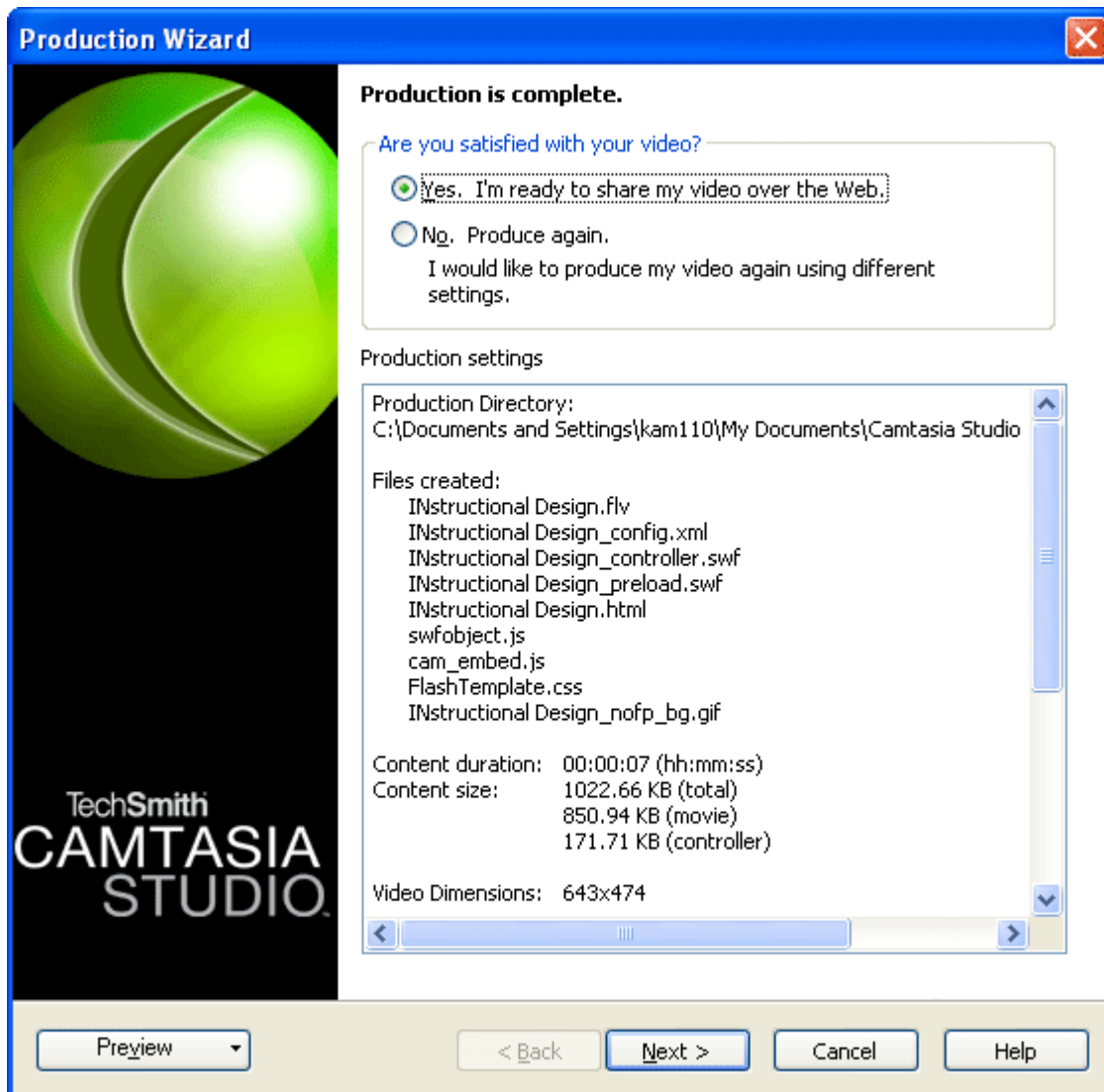
DVD Production is Complete

Hard Drive Production is Complete

Note: If you have produced using a Production Preset, you may not see another dialog box once the production is complete.

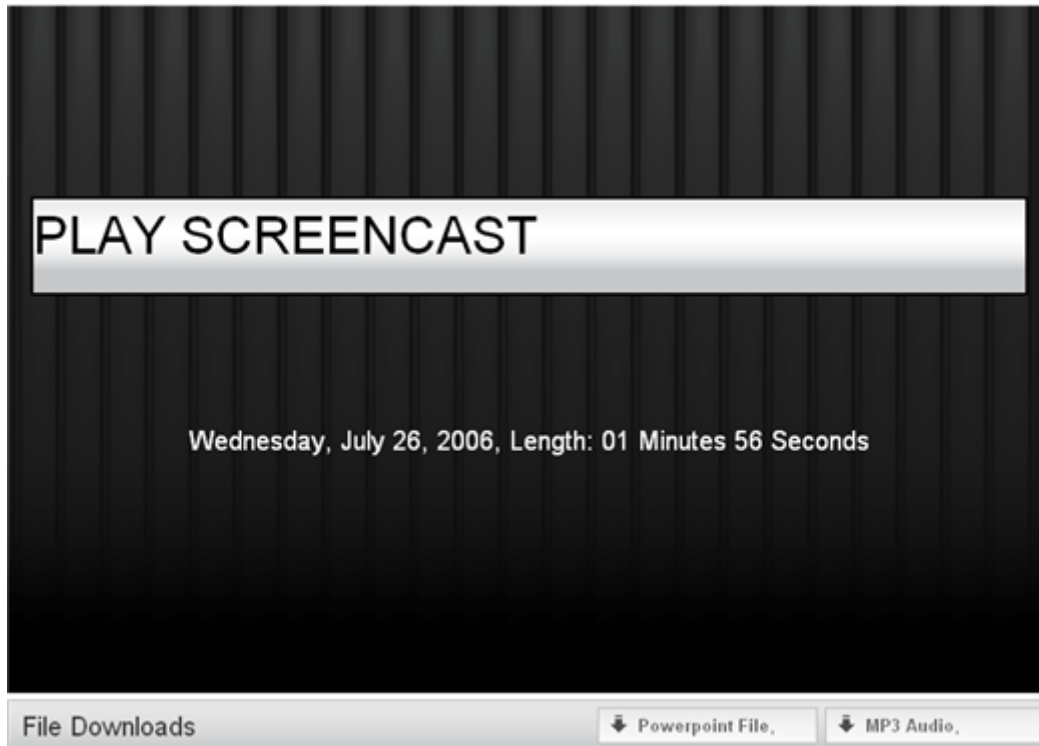
Web Production is Complete

After the video is produced, this dialog box appears. The video will also playback for review.



Did your production include iPod, PowerPoint, or MP3 file output?

If so, a dialog box will appear allowing the playback of the video for your review. The ancillary files that you chose to simultaneously produce are available for download from links at the bottom of this page.

**Production Preview Option**

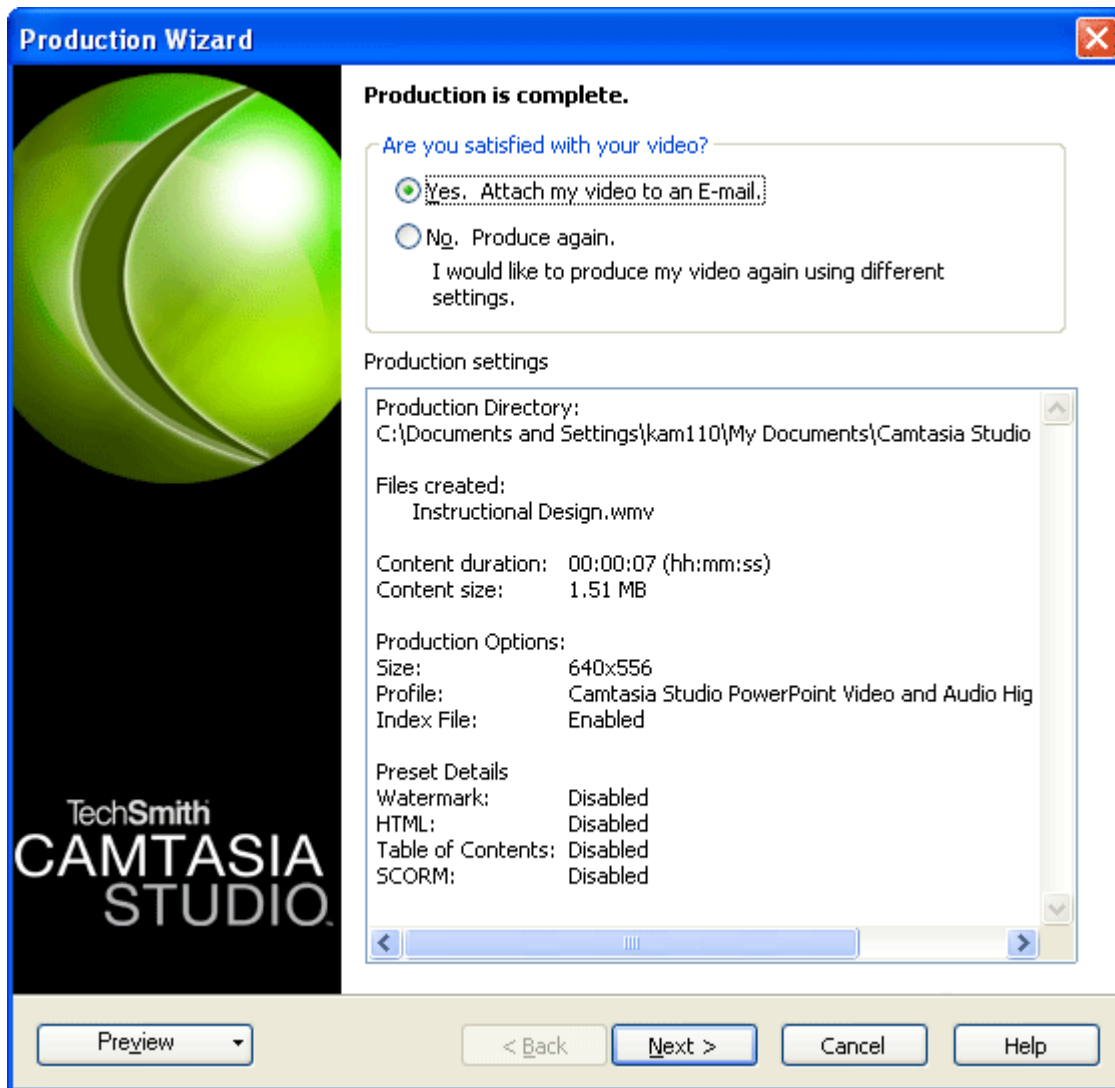
For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Continue with Production Wizard

Read the information in this dialog box then click **Next** to continue with the Production Wizard. Continue with **Web: What Would You Like To Do Next?**

E-mail Production is Complete

After the video is produced, this dialog box appears. The video will also playback for your review.



Production Preview Option

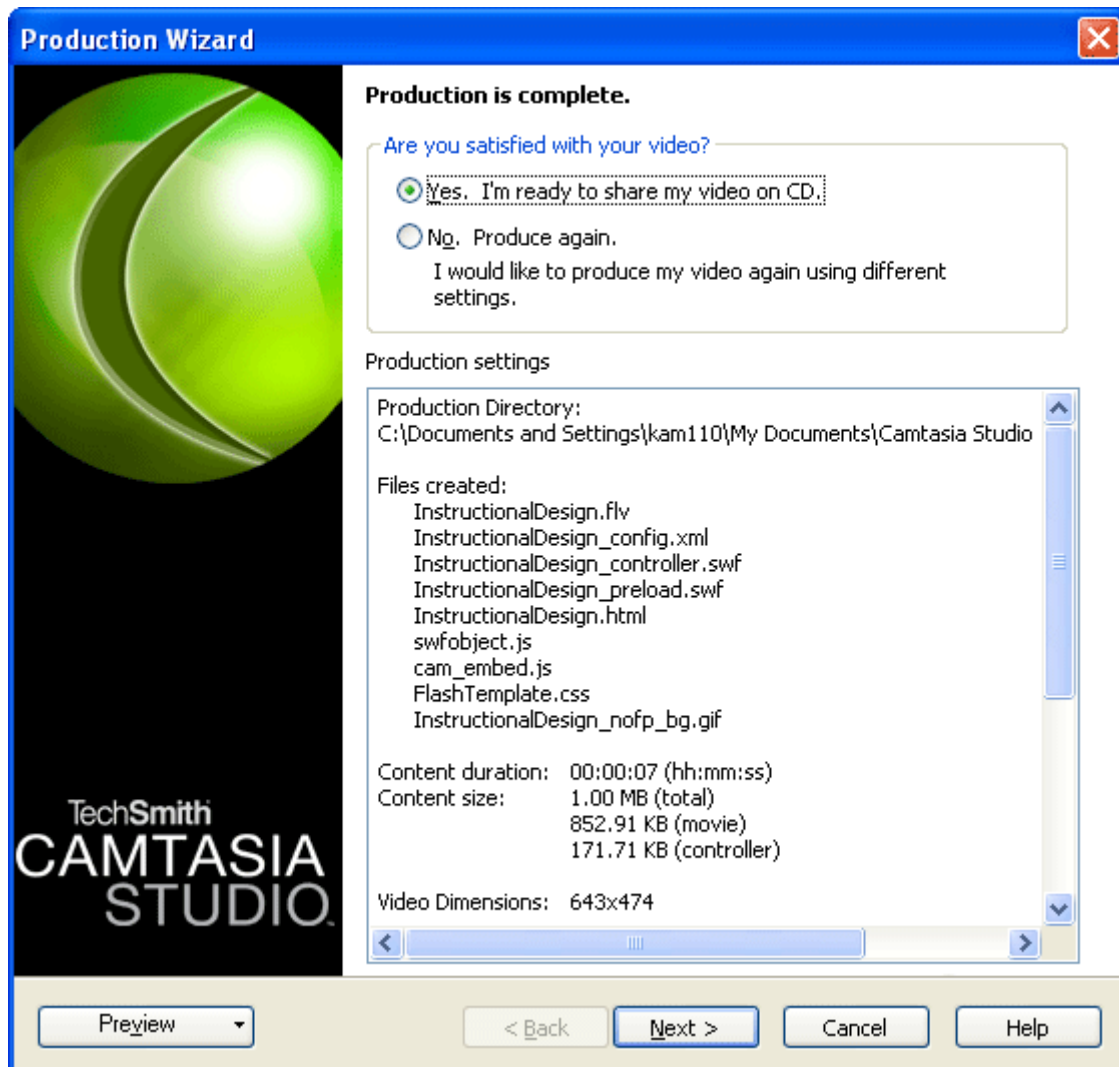
For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Continue with Production Wizard

Click **Next** to continue with the Production Wizard. Continue with **Share Your Video by E-Mail**.

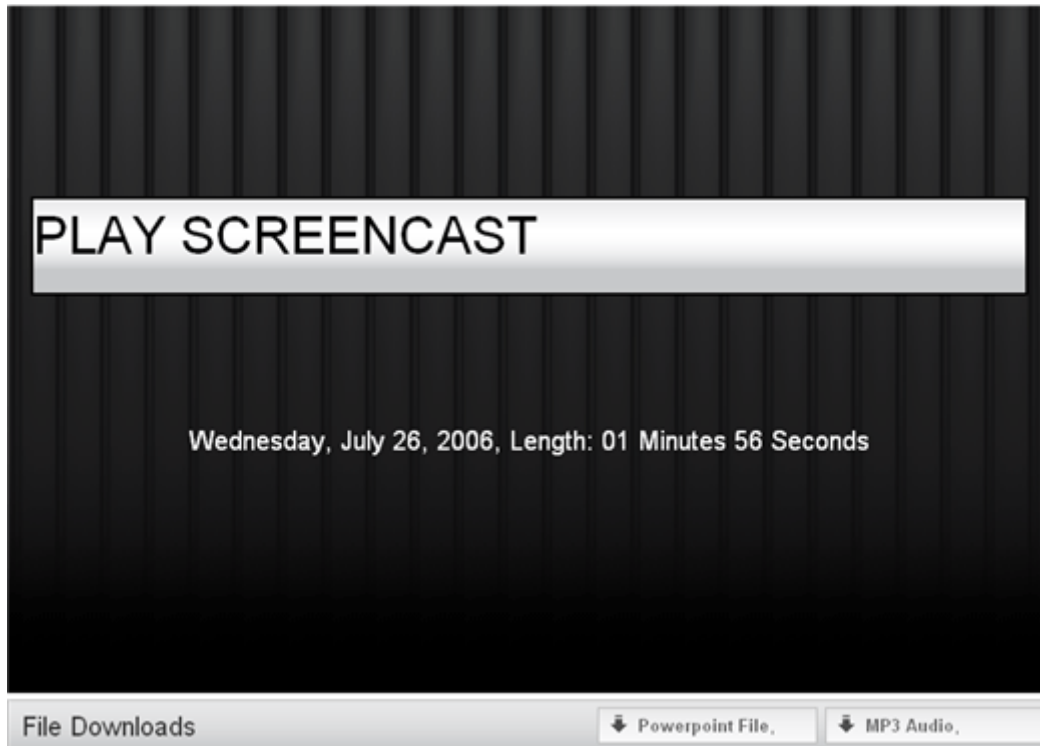
CD Production is Complete

After the video is produced, this dialog box appears. The video will also playback for your review.



Did your production include iPod, PowerPoint, or MP3 file output?

If so, a dialog box appears allowing the playback of the video for your review. The ancillary files that you chose to simultaneously produce are available for download from links at the bottom of this page.



Production Preview Option

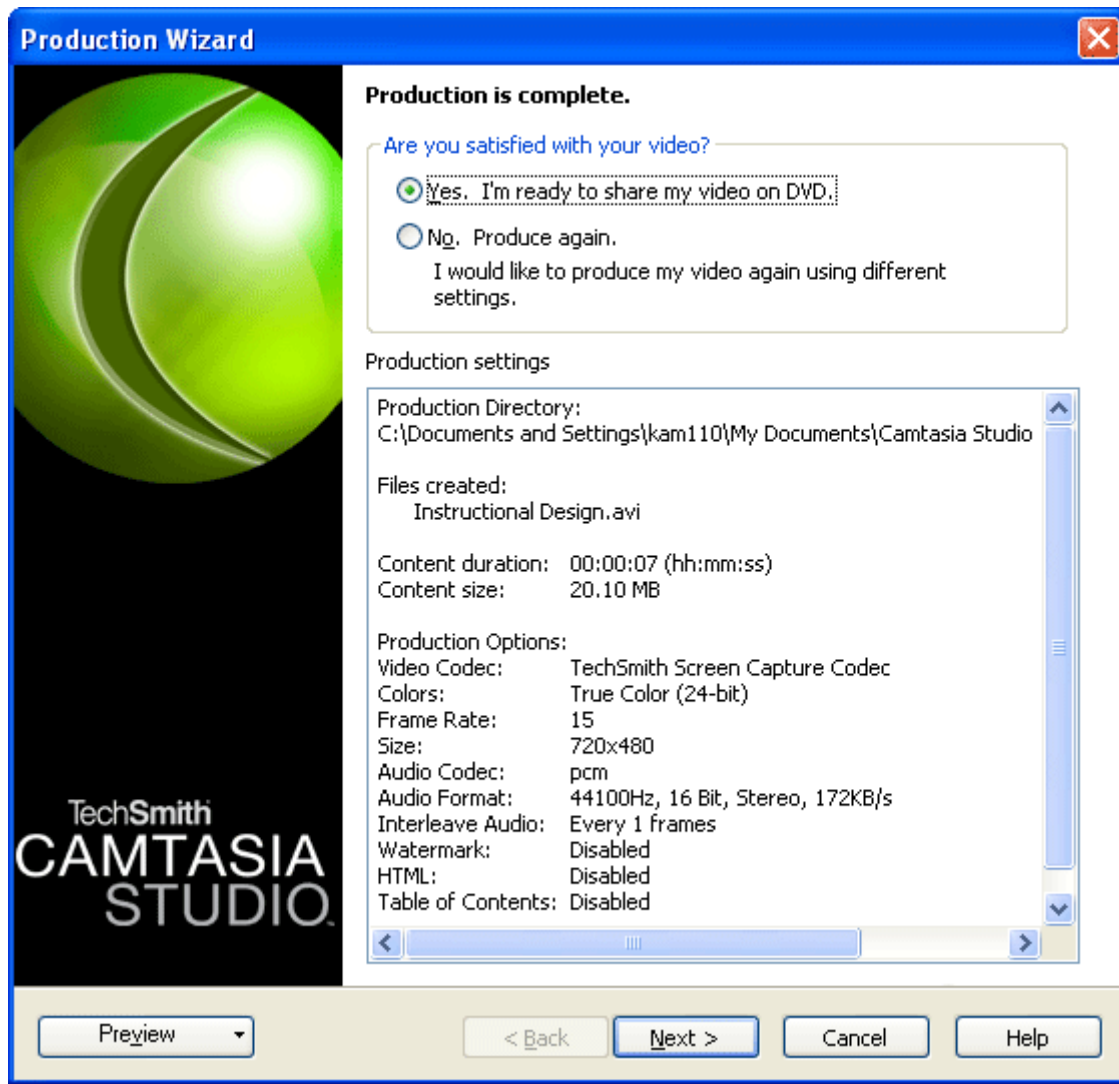
For more information on the **Preview** option, see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Continue with Production Wizard

Read the information in this dialog box then click **Next** to continue with the Production Wizard. Continue with **CD: What Would You Like To Do Next?**

DVD Production is Complete


After the video is produced, this dialog box appears. The video will also playback for your review.



Continue with Production Wizard

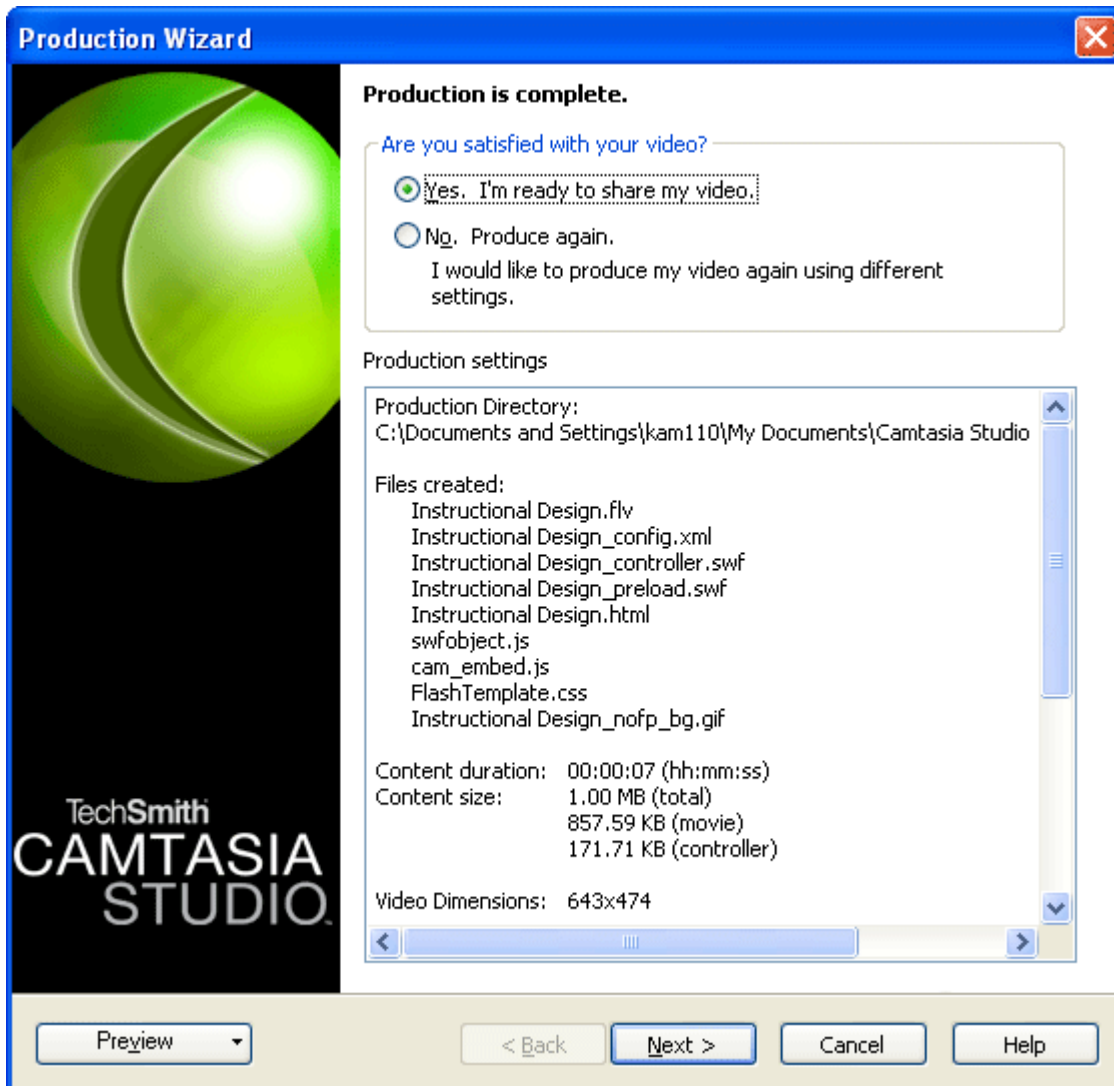
Read the information in this dialog box then click **Next** to continue with the Production Wizard. Continue with **DVD: What Would You Like To Do Next?**

Preview

For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Hard Drive Production is Complete


After the video is produced, this dialog box appears. The video will also playback for your review.



Continue with Production Wizard

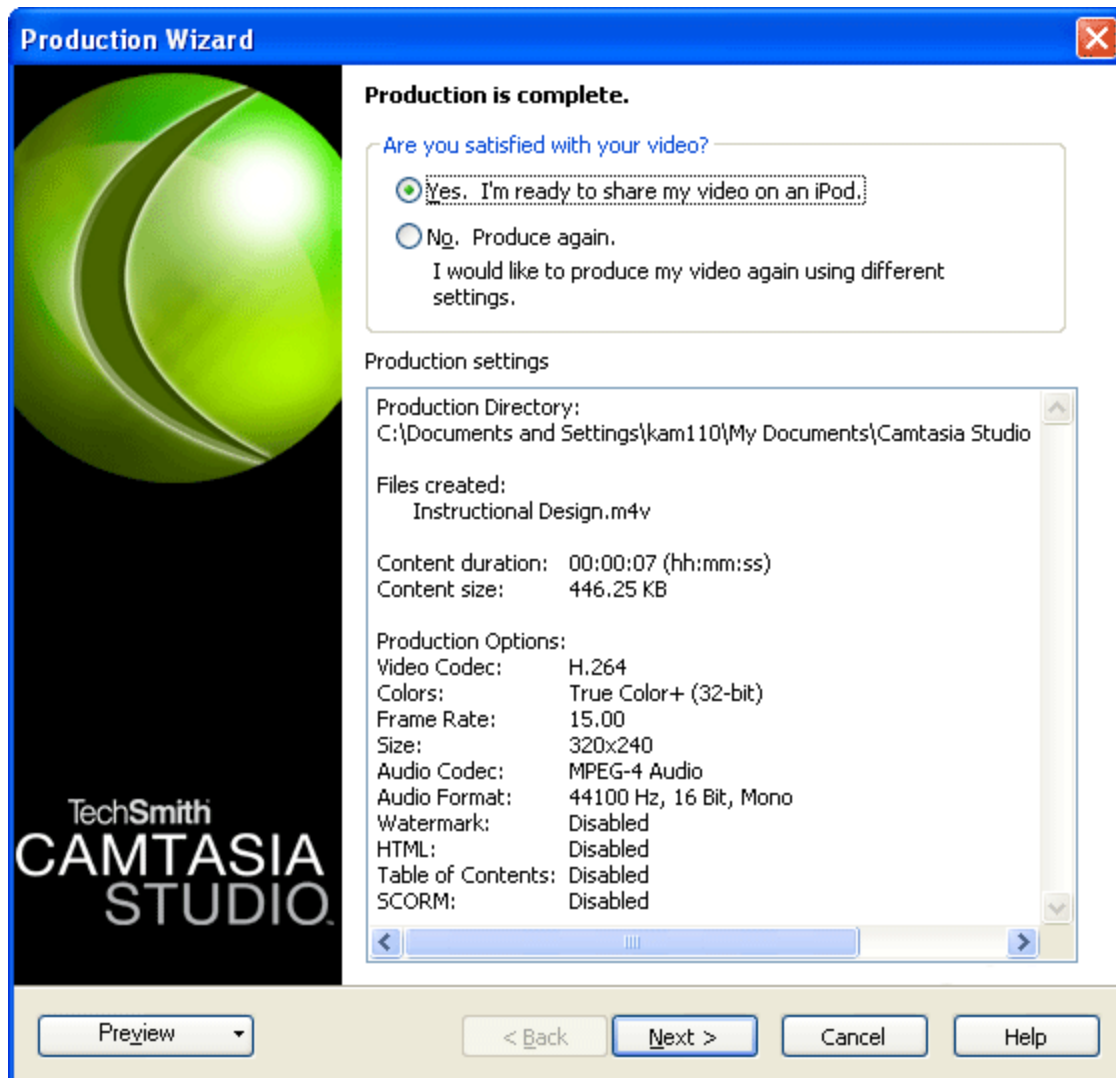
Read the information in this dialog box then click **Next** to continue with the Production Wizard. Continue with **Web: What Would You Like To Do Next?**

Preview

For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline.**

iPod or iTunes Production is Complete

After the video is produced, this dialog box appears. The video will also playback for your review.



Continue with Production Wizard

Read the information in this dialog box then click **Next** to continue with the Production Wizard. Continue with **iPod, What Would You Like To Do Next?**

Preview

For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Web: What Would You Like To Do Next?

This dialog box appears. Choose the desired option and click **Finish**. The production will close.



Open Production Folder

Opens Windows Explorer so you can view the files.

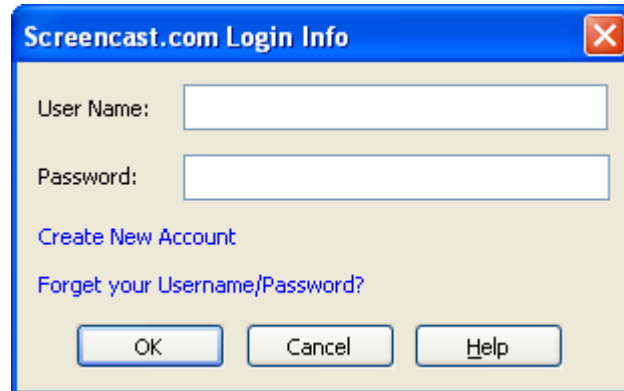
Zip Output to send to you Web administrator

Creates a zip file of the files.

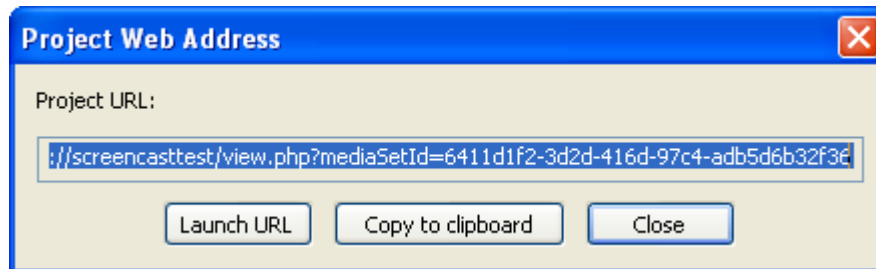
Upload video to [Screencast.com](http://www.screencast.com)

Upload the video and any additional output options you may have produced to Screencast.com. Screencast.com is a hosting site for business and academic professional users who want an easy-to-use solution with robust features for hosting and sharing video and other rich media files on the web.

A prompt appears to either logon or register for a new account.



Once you have successfully logged in to Screencast.com, a URL is created and given to you:




Click **Launch URL** to see the Screencast.com page.

You can also copy the URL to the clipboard so you can easily distribute it to others so they can view your page and download any additional files that were added to this production.

Create a Production Preset

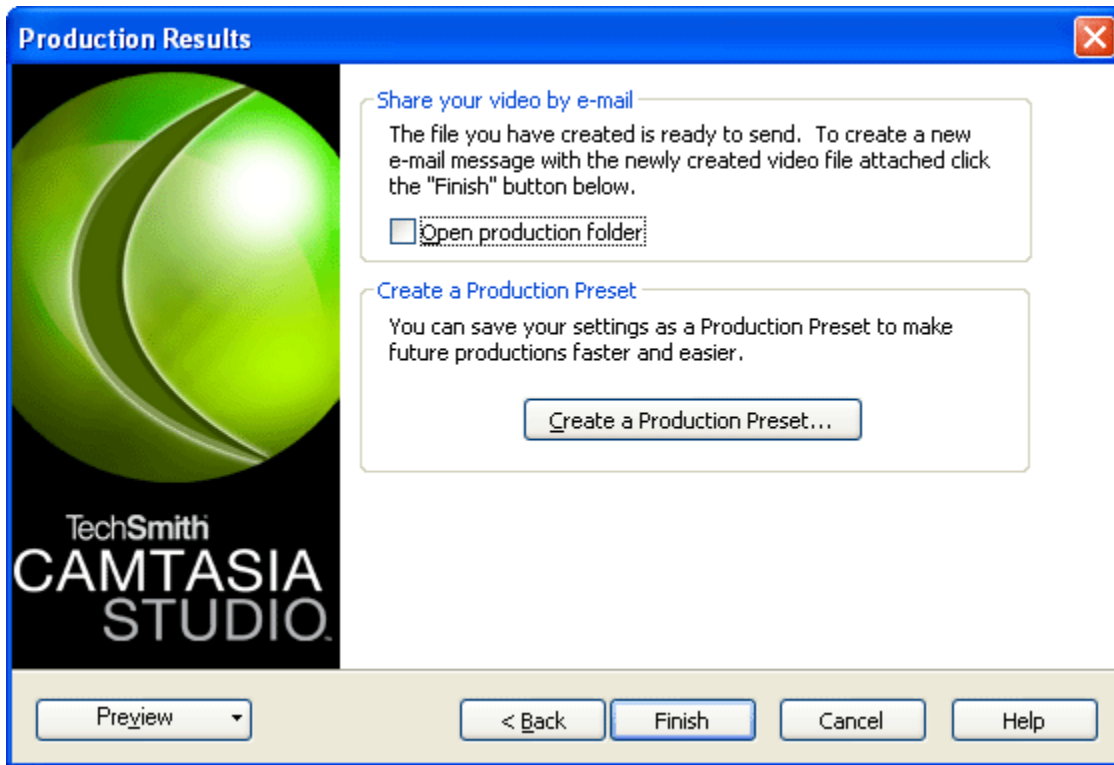
A Production Preset contains a set of saved production instructions including the Video File Format, Encoding Options, and Video Size options.

Preview

For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Share Your Video by E-Mail

This dialog box appears. Choose the desired option and click **Finish**.



After you have made the selections, click **Finish**. The video will now be attached to an email. Address the email and write the content. Click **Send**. The Production Wizard will close.

Open Production Folder

Opens Windows Explorer so you can view the files.

Create a Production Preset

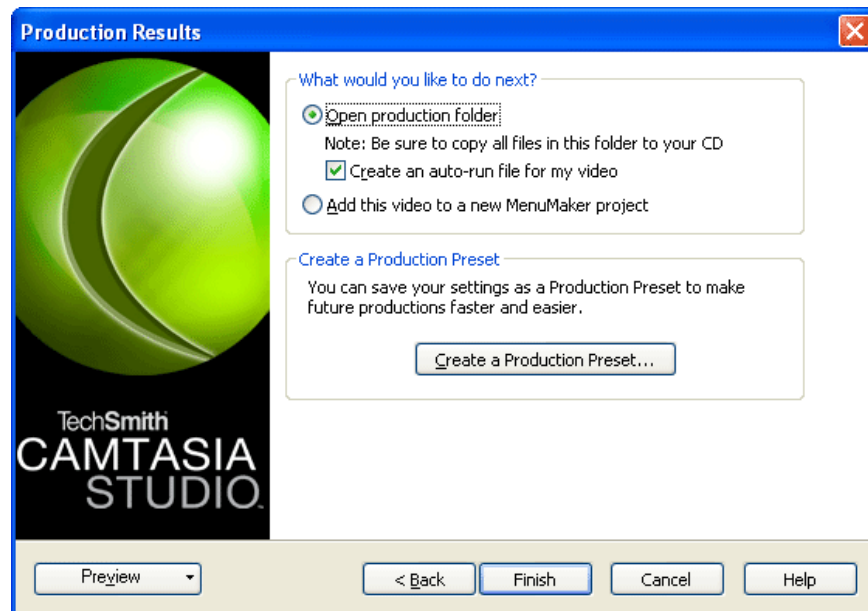
A Production Preset contains a set of saved production instructions including the Video File Format, Encoding Options, and Video Size options.

Preview

For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

CD: What Would You Like To Do Next?

This dialog box appears.



Choose the desired option and click **Finish**. The Production Wizard will close. If you choose the MenuMaker option, the MenuMaker wizard will appear.

Open Production Folder

Opens Windows Explorer so you can view the files. Be sure to copy ALL files in this folder to the CD.

Create an auto-run file for my video

Include an auto-run file so the video will play as soon as it is put in the CD tray on the viewer's PC.

Add this video to a new MenuMaker project

Creates an attractive menu from which to launch the video file. With MenuMaker, copies of all of the files are located in one central location making it easy to open and close files or applications. This means no more searching through drives, directories, and folders when giving a presentation or teaching a class. Also create a CD-ROM that will launch with the menu displayed - a perfect way to distribute information to customers, students, workgroups, and more.

Continue with **Choose a MenuMaker Template**.

Create a Production Preset

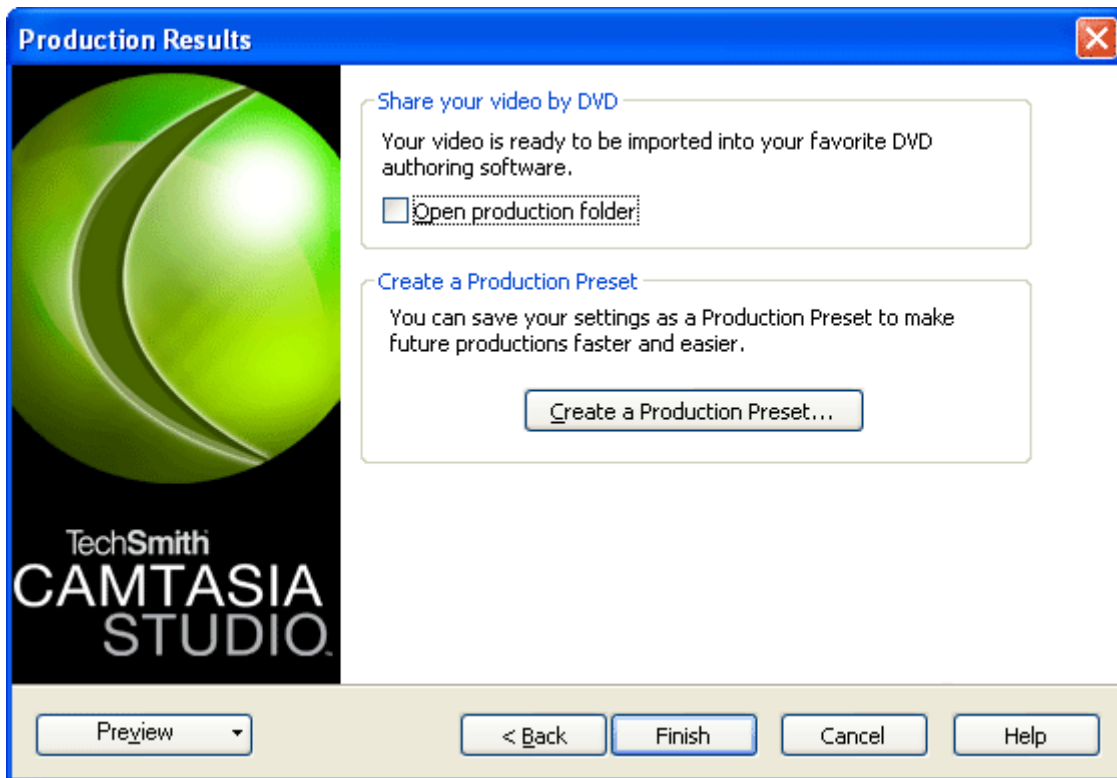
A Production Preset contains a set of saved production instructions including the Video File Format, Encoding Options, and Video Size options.

Preview

For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

DVD: What Would You Like To Do Next?

This dialog box appears.



If desired, choose **Open Production Folder** which opens Windows Explorer so you can view the files.

Click **Finish**. The Production Wizard will close.

Create a Production Preset

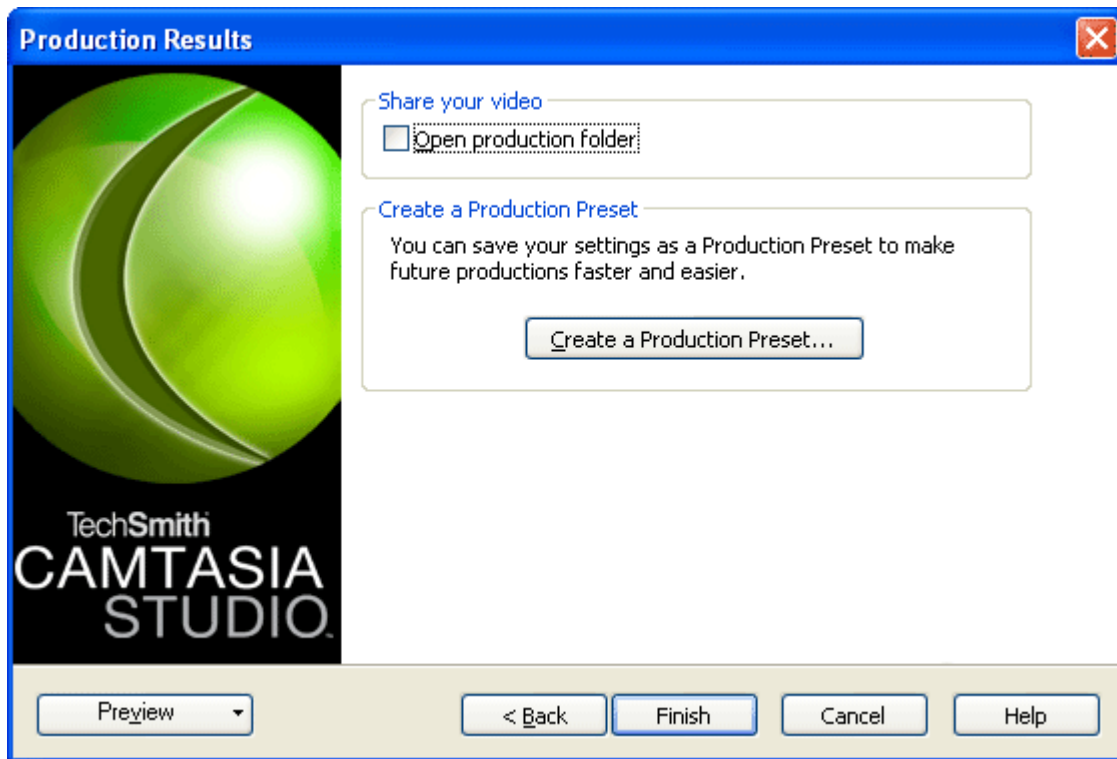
A Production Preset contains a set of saved production instructions including the Video File Format, Encoding Options, and Video Size options.

Preview

For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Hard Drive: What Would You Like To Do Next?

This dialog box appears.




If desired, choose **Open Production Folder** which opens Windows Explorer so you can view the files. Click **Finish**. The Production Wizard will close.

Create a Production Preset

A Production Preset contains a set of saved production instructions including the Video File Format, Encoding Options, and Video Size options.

Preview

For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

iPod, What Would You Like To Do Next?

This dialog box appears. The video is ready to be uploaded to your video capable iPod or imported into iTunes for playback.



Choose the desired option and click **Finish**. The production will close.

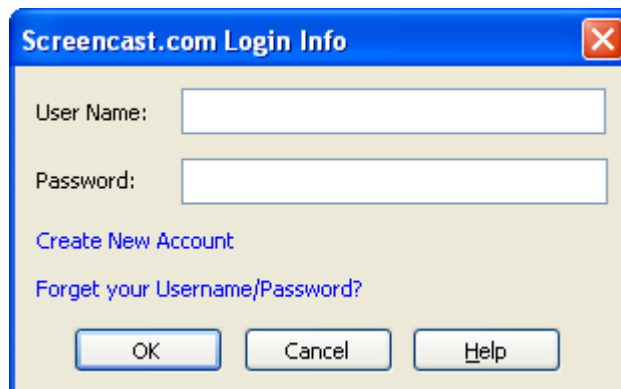
Open Production Folder

Opens Windows Explorer so you can view the files.

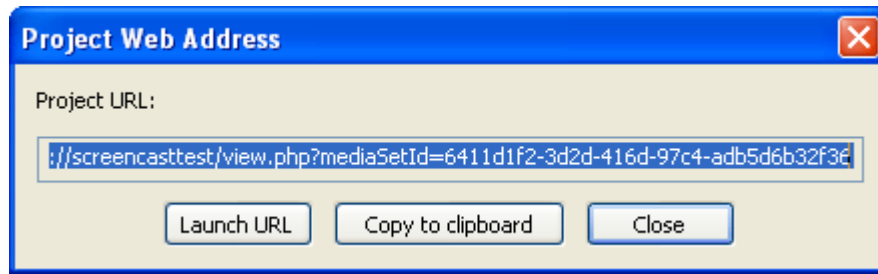
Upload video to [Screencast.com](http://www.screencast.com)

Upload the video and any additional output options you may have produced to Screencast.com. Screencast.com is a hosting site for business and academic professional users who want an easy-to-use solution with robust features for hosting and sharing video and other rich media files on the web.

A prompt appears to either logon or register for a new account.



Once you have successfully logged in to Screencast.com, a URL is created and given to you:




At this time, you can click **Launch URL** to see the Screencast.com page.

You can also copy the URL to the clipboard so you can easily distribute it to others so they can view your page and download any additional files that were added to this production.

Create a Production Preset at the End of the Production Process

A Production Preset contains a set of saved production instructions including the Video File Format, Encoding Options, and Video Size options.

Preview

For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Production Presets

A Production Preset contains a set of saved production instructions including the Video File Format, Encoding Options, and Video Size options.

Setting up a Production Preset makes the production of videos faster and easier since choosing a Production Preset bypasses most of the Production Wizard process.

Additionally, there are two ways to **create** a Production Preset: before video production or after the production of the video.

See the following topics:

Produce Using a Production Preset

To produce a video using a Production Preset, continue with **Use a Production Preset to Produce the Video**.

Create a New Production Preset

When creating a new Production Preset, you do not have to produce the video at the same time. In this case, production and the creation of a Production Preset are two separate processes. To create the Production Preset, use the Production Preset Wizard that closely resembles the Production Wizard.

Create a Production Preset at the End of the Production Process

When creating a Production Preset **after** the production of a video, the production settings that were just used to create the Production Preset are saved.

See also:

- **Production Preset Details**
- **Manage Production Presets**

Use a Production Preset to Produce the Video

1. To use Production Presets, create a video as usual within Camtasia Studio.
2. When you are ready to produce the video, within the Task List, choose **Produce Video As**. The Production Wizard appears.
3. Enable the **Production Preset** option:



4. From the dropdown list, choose the desired preset.
5. Click **Next**. Continue with **Where would you like to save your video file(s)?**

Production Preset Details

Camtasia Studio comes with several Production Presets. Production Presets contains a set of saved production instructions including the Video File Format, Encoding Options, and Video Size options.

Click a link below to view the details for a Production Preset.

PowerPoint to DVD

Production Options	Details
Video File Format	AVI
Video Codec	TechSmith Screen Capture Codec
Colors	Automatic
Frame Rate	10
Size	720x480
Audio Codec	PCM (uncompressed audio)
Audio Format	22050Hz, 16 Bit, Mono, 43KB/s
Interleave Audio	Every 1 Seconds
Watermark	Disabled
HTML	Disabled
Table of Contents	Disabled
SCORM	Disabled

PowerPoint to iPod

Production Options	Details
Video File Format	QuickTime (M4V)
Video Codec	H.264
Colors	True Color+ (32-bit)
Frame Rate	Automatic
Size	320x240
Audio Codec	MPEG-4 Audio
Audio Format	44100 Hz, 16 Bit, Stereo
Watermark	Disabled
HTML	Disabled
Table of Contents	Disabled
SCORM	Disabled

PowerPoint to Web

Production Options	Details
Video File Format	Adobe Flash (SWF)
Colors	High Color (16-bit)
Frame Rate	3
Size	640x480
JPEG Encoding	Disabled
Playback controls	Advanced
Pause at start	Disabled
Allow resizing	Disabled
End action	Stop
Audio Format	MP3
Audio Attributes	22.050kHz, Mono, 24kBits/sec
Watermark	Disabled

PowerPoint to Window Mobile Device (320x240)

Production Options	Details
Video File Format	Windows Media (WMV)
Size	320x240
Profile	Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Video and Audio High
Index File	Enabled
Watermark	Disabled
HTML	Disabled
Table of Contents	Disabled
SCORM	Disabled

PowerPoint to Window Mobile Device (640x480)

Production Options	Details
Video File Format	Windows Media (WMV)
Size	640x480
Profile	Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Video and Audio High
Index File	Enabled
Watermark	Disabled
HTML	Disabled
Table of Contents	Disabled
SCORM	Disabled

Screen Recording to iPod

AVI is recommended for CD delivery requiring the highest video quality. Once you produce the completed AVI files, use Pack and Show to bundle the Camtasia Player and Codec for easy delivery on CD-ROM.

Production Options	Details
Video File Format	QuickTime (M4V)
Video Codec	H.264
Colors	True Color+ (32-bit)
Frame Rate	Automatic
Size	320x240
Audio Codec	MPEG-4 Audio
Audio Format	44100 Hz, 16 Bit, Stereo

Production Options	Details
Watermark	Disabled
HTML	Disabled
Table of Contents	Disabled
SCORM	Disabled

Screen Recording to Web

Production Options	Details
Video File Format	Adobe Flash (SWF)
Colors	High Color (16-bit)
Frame Rate	7
Size	Largest
JPEG Encoding	Disabled
Playback controls	Advanced
Pause at start	Disabled
Allow resizing	Disabled
End action	Stop
Audio Format	MP3
Audio Attributes	22.050kHz, Mono, 24kBits/sec
Watermark	Disabled

Timeline Audio to MP3

Production Options	Details
Video File Format	MP3 Audio
Audio Bit Rate	44.100kHz, Mono, 64kBits/sec
Watermark	Disabled
HTML	Disabled
Table of Contents	Disabled
SCORM	Disabled

Create a New Production Preset

A Production Preset contains a set of saved production instructions including the Video File Format, Encoding Options, and Video Size options.

Setting up a Production Preset makes the production of videos faster and easier since choosing a Production Preset bypasses most of the Production Wizard process.

When creating a Production Preset, you do not have to produce at the same time. These are separate processes.

To create a new Production Preset:

1. Create or edit a video within Camtasia Studio as usual.
2. Within the Task List, choose **Produce Video As**.
3. The Production Wizard appears.
4. Enable the **Production Presets** option.



5. Click the **Manage** button. The *Manage Production Profiles* dialog box appears.
6. Click **New**. The *Production Preset Wizard* dialog box appears.
7. Within the **Preset Name** field, enter the name.
8. In the **Description** field, if desired, enter a detailed description for this profile.
9. Choose the **Video File Format** option.
10. To include an MP3, iPod video, or PowerPoint presentation with this production, enable the desired **Additional Output Options**.
11. Continue to choose the profile options just as though you were stepping through the Production Wizard. Continue with the Production Wizard topic that matches the video file output type:
 - Flash Templates**
 - Windows Media Encoding Options**
 - QuickTime Encoding Options**
 - AVI Encoding Options**
 - iPod Options**
 - MP3 Audio Only**
 - RealMedia Encoding Options**
 - Camtasia for RealPlayer Plug-in Encoding Options**
 - Animated GIF Encoding Options**
12. When you come to the last page of the Production Preset Wizard, click **Finish**.
13. The *Manage Production Presets* dialog box appears. The new Production Preset is available in the Production Presets list.

What Would You Like to Do Now?

At this time, to:

- Produce using the new Production Preset, choose it from the **Production Presets** list box. Step through the wizard to complete the video production. See also: **Use a Production Preset to Produce the Video**.
- Create another Production Preset, click **New**. Step through the wizard as previously described in this section.
- Continue working within Camtasia Studio, click **Close**. In the Production Wizard, click **Cancel**.

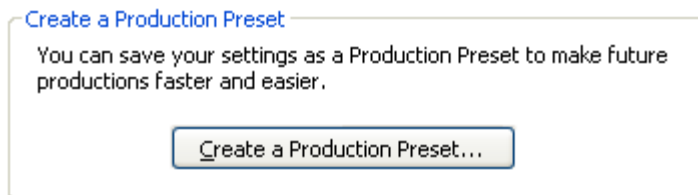
Create a Production Preset at the End of the Production Process

Note: This process is a continuation from the *Production Results* dialog box within the Production Wizard. To create a Production Preset without first producing a video, see **Create a New Production Preset**.

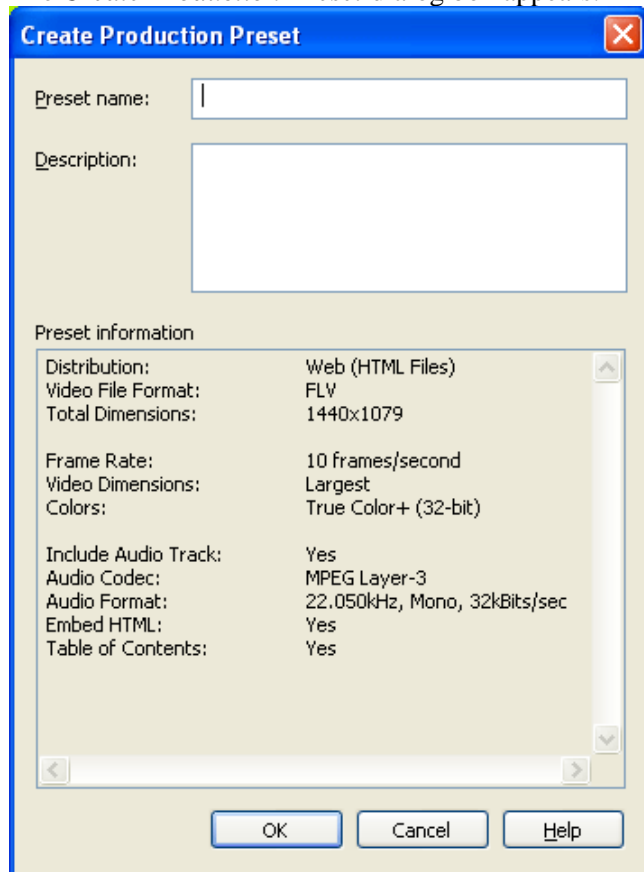
When creating a Production Preset **after** the production of a video, the production settings used to create the Production Preset are saved. See also: **Production Presets**.

To create a Production Preset based on the Production settings just used:

1. To create a Production Preset after production, create the video within Camtasia Studio as usual.
2. When you are ready to produce the video, in the Task List, choose **Produce Video As**. Step through the wizard as you normally would.
3. After the video is produced, the *Production Results* dialog box appears. On this page, click **Create a Production Preset**.



4. The *Create Production Preset* dialog box appears.



5. Enter a name for this preset in the **Present Name** field.
6. If desired, enter a description in the **Description** field.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **Finish** within the Production Wizard.

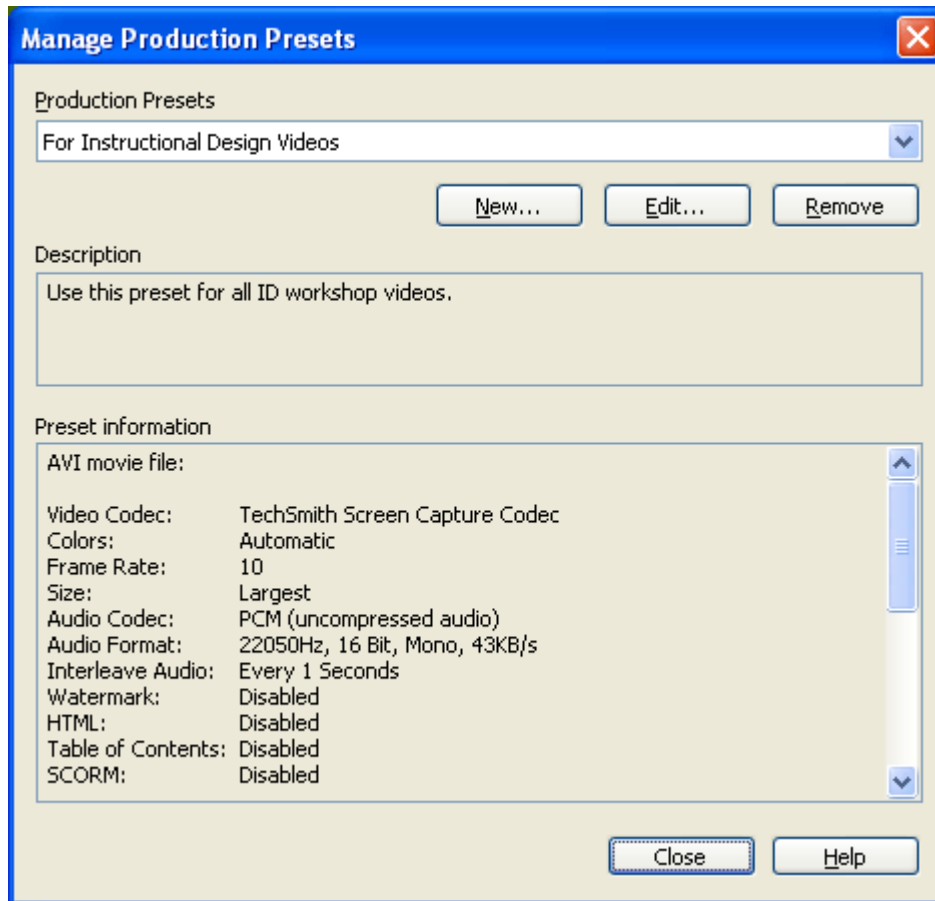
Manage Production Presets

The *Manage Production Presets* dialog box is used to add, edit, and remove Custom Production Presets. To access the *Manage Production Presets* dialog box:

1. Create or edit a video within Camtasia Studio as usual.
2. Within the Task List, choose **Produce Video As**.
3. The Production Wizard appears.
4. Enable the **Production Presets** option.



5. Click **Manage**. The *Manage Production Profiles* dialog box appears.

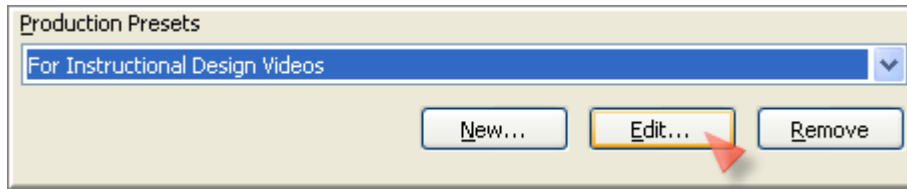


Create a New Production Preset

To create a new Production Preset, see **Create a New Production Preset**.

Edit an Existing Production Preset

1. Within the **Production Presets** dropdown list, choose the preset to edit.
2. Click **Edit**.



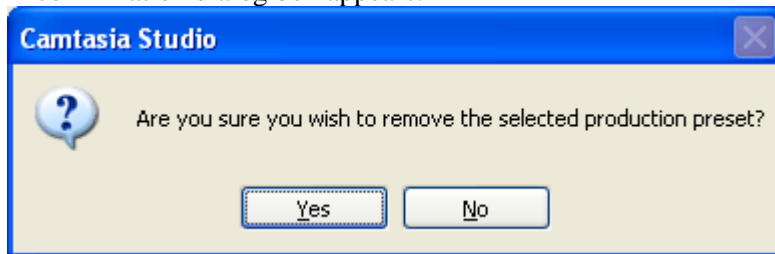
3. Step through the *Editor Wizard* screens, making changes along the way. When you come to the end of the wizard, click **Finish**. The changes are saved.

At this time, to:

- Produce using the newly edited Production Preset, choose it from the **Production Presets** list box. Step through the wizard to complete the video production. See also: **Use a Production Preset to Produce the Video**.
- Edit another Production Preset, repeat the previously described steps in this section.
- Continue working within Camtasia Studio, click **Close**. In the Production Wizard, click **Cancel**.

Remove a Production Preset

1. Select the profile to remove from the *Production Profiles* dropdown list.
2. Click **Remove**.
3. A confirmation dialog box appears.



4. Click **Yes** to permanently remove the preset. Click **No** to return to the *Manage Production Profiles* dialog box.
5. To continue working within Camtasia Studio, click **Close**. In the Production Wizard, click **Cancel**.

Tell Me More about this File Type

These are recommendations for file format compressions when producing movies with Camtasia Studio. Please note that your settings may be different from these depending on what you are producing. Many times a combination of the settings are best.

How will you share your videos?

This question needs to be answered before production begins since it directly impacts the type of video format that is selected. See the recommendations given below and follow the corresponding link to get specific information on that video format.

My video will go to:	Internet / Intranet	CD	DVD	I Don't Know
Recommended:	Adobe Flash (SWF/FLV) Ideal for Web distribution. Most compatible for viewing on different browsers and operating systems.	Adobe Flash (SWF/FLV) Ideal for CD-ROM distribution because it retains the highest quality and is editable with video editing programs.	Audio Video Interleave (AVI) & DVD Productions Highest quality recordings which can be readied for use with DVD authoring software.	Adobe Flash (SWF/FLV) Most compatible for viewing on different browsers and operating systems.
Alternative:	Windows Media (WMV - Streaming Format) Ideal for longer or higher motion recordings. QuickTime (MOV)	Windows Media (WMV - Streaming Format) Ideal for longer or higher motion recordings.		Audio Video Interleave (AVI) & DVD Productions Highest quality recordings which can be reproduced into any other video file format.

Video File Type Overview Table

This table gives you a comparison of the different file formats available to you in Camtasia Studio.

File Type	Description
Adobe Flash (SWF/FLV)	Typically used for Web distribution. Plays in most browsers with no additional software required. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adobe Flash (SWF/FLV) • Web Distribution Production Option • Camtasia Theater and the Legacy SWF Output Flash Template Option
Windows Media Video (WMV)	Windows Media Video (WMV) is the current Microsoft streaming file format. WMV files can be streamed or played locally from the hard disk. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Windows Media (WMV - Streaming Format) • http://www.microsoft.com/windows/windowsmedia/9series/encoder/default.aspx
QuickTime (MOV)	Requires Apple QuickTime. This is one possible choice if you must produce videos that are played on both Windows and Apple operating systems. See also: QuickTime (MOV) .
Audio Video	AVI retains the highest quality and is editable by Camtasia Studio, Camtasia Effects, or

File Type	Description
Interleave (AVI)	other video editing programs. AVI is also easily converted into other movie formats. See also: Audio Video Interleave (AVI) and CD-ROM Distribution and Audio Video Interleave (AVI) & DVD Productions.
iPod /iTunes	When creating an iPod video file, Camtasia Studio automatically formats the video to ensure that you get the correct dimension and encoding. See also: iPod/iTunes.
MP3 Audio	The MP3 Audio Only option produces just the audio portion of the video and upload it to Screencast.com. See also: MP3 Audio Only.
RM	The RealMedia file format creates video files that are compressed and optimized for Web delivery using the standard RealVideo and RealAudio codecs. See also: RealMedia Streaming Media (RM).
CAMV	CAMV, like TSCC is lossless and will produce perfect quality, highly compressed videos with small file sizes. However, if file size is a primary consideration, and the video contains real world photography, dithered surfaces or gradient fills then CAMV may not be the best choice. See also: Camtasia for RealPlayer (RealPlayer Plug-In)(CAMV
ANIMATED GIF	The GIF video format is primarily used for short tutorials and product demonstrations that playback in any browser on any computer platform. GIF is also ideal for adding short animations to the PowerPoint presentation. See also: GIF Animation File (GIF).

Adobe Flash (SWF/FLV)

Adobe Flash is a cross-platform movie file format that plays on any computer that supports the Flash Player. Flash is ideal for publishing movies on the Web.

In previous versions of Camtasia Studio, only SWF output was supported. The move to a combined Flash SWF/FLV output means that longer PowerPoint presentations, full motion video, and talking head Picture-in-Picture can all be produced with the Flash quality that you have come to expect from Camtasia Studio.

This also means that when creating a Flash movie, depending on the content of the Timeline, you may end up with a SWF or FLV movie file or even both kinds of Flash files in the produced movie project folder.

For other important Flash information, see **Camtasia Theater and the Legacy SWF Output Flash Template Option** and **Flash Player 8 Security**.

About Flash Player Compatibility

This table contains the correct template and video codec production combination based on the Flash Player used for playback of the movie.

See also: **Camtasia Theater and the Legacy SWF Output Flash Template Option**.

To get output compatible with...	Use these settings...
Flash Player 6	Choose the Legacy SWF Output template. See also: Camtasia Theater and the Legacy SWF Output Flash Template Option .
Flash Player 7	Choose any template except the <i>Legacy SWF Output</i> template. If the output includes FLV video, you must use H.263 as the <i>Video Codec</i> instead of VP6.
Flash Player 8	Choose any template except the <i>Legacy SWF Output</i> template. If the output includes FLV video, you must use VP6 as the <i>Video Codec</i> instead of H.263.

To produce the video using the **Adobe Flash (SWF/FLV)** video file output, continue with **Custom Production Wizard**.

Click a topic below to see the Custom Production Wizard recommendations.

SWF High Quality Settings

- Video Format: **SWF** (*Flash Options* dialog box > *Video* tab)
- Colors: **Automatic** (*Flash Options* dialog box > *Video* tab)
- Frame Rate: **Automatic** (*Flash Options* dialog box > *Video* tab)
- If audio, enable **Encode Audio** (*Flash Options* dialog box > *Audio* tab)
- Audio Format: **MP3** (*Flash Options* dialog box > *Audio* tab)
- Audio Attributes: **22.050kHz, Stereo, 56 kBits/sec** (*Flash Options* dialog box > *Audio* tab)

SWF Medium Quality Settings

- Video Format: **SWF** (*Flash Options* dialog box > *Video* tab)
- Colors: **High Color (16-bit)** (*Flash Options* dialog box > *Video* tab)
- Frame Rate: **10** (*Flash Options* dialog box > *Video* tab)
- If audio, enable **Encode Audio** (*Flash Options* dialog box > *Audio* tab)
- Audio Format: **MP3** (*Flash Options* dialog box > *Audio* tab)
- Select **11.025kHz, Stereo, 24 kBits/sec** (*Flash Options* dialog box > *Audio* tab)

SWF Smallest Size Settings

- Video Format: **SWF** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Colors: **High Color (16-bit)** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Frame Rate: **5** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- If audio, enable **Encode Audio** (*Flash Options dialog box > Audio tab*)
- Audio Format: **MP3** (*Flash Options dialog box > Audio tab*)
- Select **11.025kHz, Stereo, 18 kBits/sec** (*Flash Options dialog box > Audio tab*)

FLV High Quality Settings

- Video Format: **FLV** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Frame Rate: **15** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Video Codec: **VP6** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Max Bitrate: **1000** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Key Frame Rate: **30** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Bitrate Control: **Variable 2-Pass** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Video Quality: **100** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- If audio, enable **Encode Audio** (*Flash Options dialog box > Audio tab*)
- Audio Format: **MP3** (*Flash Options dialog box > Audio tab*)
- Audio Attributes: **22.050kHz, Stereo, 56 kBits/sec** (*Flash Options dialog box > Audio tab*)

FLV Medium Quality Settings

- Video Format: **FLV** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Frame Rate: **10** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Video Codec: **VP6** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Max Bitrate: **512** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Key Frame Rate: **50** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Bitrate Control: **Variable 2-Pass** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Video Quality: **80** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- If audio, enable **Encode Audio** (*Flash Options dialog box > Audio tab*)
- Audio Format: **MP3** (*Flash Options dialog box > Audio tab*)
- Select **11.025kHz, Stereo, 24 kBits/sec** (*Flash Options dialog box > Audio tab*)

FLV Smallest Size Settings

- Video Format: **FLV** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Frame Rate: **5** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Video Codec: **VP6** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Max Bitrate: **150** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Key Frame Rate: **80** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Bitrate Control: **Variable 2-Pass** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- Video Quality: **60** (*Flash Options dialog box > Video tab*)
- If audio, enable **Encode Audio** (*Flash Options dialog box > Audio tab*)
- Audio Format: **MP3** (*Flash Options dialog box > Audio tab*)
- Select **11.025kHz, Stereo, 18 kBits/sec** (*Flash Options dialog box > Audio tab*)

Windows Media (WMV - Streaming Format)

The WMV file format is the latest Microsoft streaming file format and does a good job of delivering quality recordings with smaller file size.

- WMV is also well suited for longer recordings or recordings with higher motion.
- A variety of audio and video compressors are available, including the Windows Media Screen video codec which is optimized for screen recordings.
- WMV can produce very small file sizes and if the videos contain real world photography, dithering or gradient fills, the file size may be significantly smaller than TSCC-encoded AVI files.
- WMV files play in Microsoft's Windows Media Player. Unless the Windows Media Player is a very current version, Windows Media Player will have to (automatically) contact Microsoft and download new codecs. As a result, the computer playing the video will, in most cases, have to have Internet connectivity.
- While not as perfect quality as lossless TSCC videos, WMV produces very good image quality.
- Creating WMV files has a steeper learning curve than understanding how to create AVI files. Producing WMV files requires understanding bandwidth. If you don't set the production bandwidth high enough, during playback the video may turn out black, or blocky or the image may freeze during playback.

To produce the video using the **Windows Media (WMV - Streaming Format)** video file options, continue with **Custom Production Wizard**.

General Strengths & Weaknesses

- Strengths:** Small file size media.
It is not downloaded to the computer.
Plays in recent Microsoft Windows Media Player and browser.
- Weaknesses:** Limited editing options.
Cannot be converted to another format.

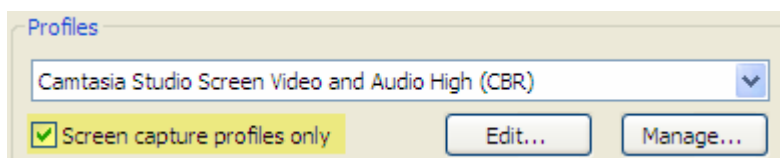
Recommendations for Windows Media Video output depend on the nature of the recorded videos. See these topics for more information on this file type:

Custom Production Wizard Settings for Normal Screen Recordings

Custom Production Wizard Settings for High Motion Screen & Camcorder Recordings

Custom Production Wizard Settings for Normal Screen Recordings

If the video includes normal screen recordings of your PC and **does not** include full motion video, lots of scrolling windows, or many transitions, we recommend that you enable the **Screen capture profiles only** option in the Production Wizard's *Windows Media Encoding Options* dialog box.



Note: If the recording has no audio, choose the video-only profile such as **Camtasia Studio Screen Video Low (CBR)**.

To produce the video using the **Windows Media (WMV - Streaming Format)** video file output, continue with **Custom Production Wizard**.

Click a topic below to see the **Custom Production Wizard** recommendations.

WMV High Quality Settings

- Audio? Profile: **Camtasia Studio Screen Video and Audio High (CBR)** (*Windows Media Encoding Options* dialog box)
- No audio? Profile: **Camtasia Studio Screen Video High (CBR)** (*Windows Media Encoding Options* dialog box)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

WMV Medium Quality Settings

- Audio? Profile: **Camtasia Studio Screen Video and Audio Medium (CBR)** (*Windows Media Encoding Options* dialog box)
- No audio? Profile: **Camtasia Studio Screen Video Medium (CBR)** (*Windows Media Encoding Options* dialog box)
- **800x600** (*Video Size* dialog box)

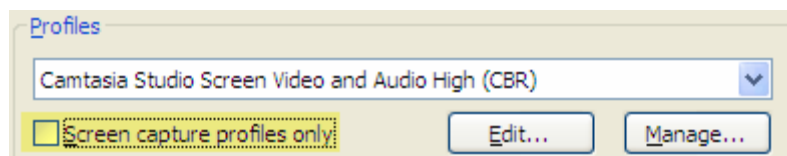
WMV Smallest Size Settings

- Audio? Profile: **Camtasia Studio Screen Video and Audio Low (CBR)** (*Windows Media Encoding Options* dialog box)
- No audio? Profile: **Camtasia Studio Screen Video Low (CBR)** (*Windows Media Encoding Options* dialog box)
- **640x480** (*Video Size* dialog box)

See also: **Custom Production Wizard Settings for High Motion Screen & Camcorder Recordings.**

Custom Production Wizard Settings for High Motion Screen & Camcorder Recordings

If the video includes footage from a camcorder, full motion video, lots of scrolling windows, or many transitions, we recommend that you **disable** the **Screen capture profiles only** option in the Production Wizard's *Windows Media Encoding Options* dialog box.



Note: If the recording has no audio, choose the video-only profile such as **Camtasia Studio Screen Video Low (CBR)**.

To produce the video using the **Windows Media (WMV - Streaming Format)** video file output, continue with **Custom Production Wizard**.

Click a topic below to see the **Custom Production Wizard** recommendations.

WMV High Quality Settings

- Audio? Profile: **Camtasia Studio Full Motion Video and Audio High (CBR)** (*Windows Media Encoding Options* dialog box)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

WMV Medium Quality Settings

- Audio? Profile: **Camtasia Studio Full Motion Video and Audio Medium (CBR)** (*Windows Media Encoding Options* dialog box)
- **800x600** (*Video Size* dialog box)

WMV Smallest Size Settings

- Audio? Profile: **Camtasia Studio Full Motion Video and Audio Low (CBR)** (*Windows Media Encoding Options* dialog box)
- **640x480** (*Video Size* dialog box)

QuickTime (MOV)

QuickTime is a video file format with a wide selection of video and audio compressors.

- A common Internet file format that requires the free Apple QuickTime player be installed for playback.
- Often used for distribution to a MAC centered audience.
- This is one possible choice if you must produce videos that are played on both Windows and Apple operating systems. QuickTime Player can play AVI files, but cannot play AVI files that are TSCC-encoded.
- We recommend that you install the latest version of QuickTime from <http://www.apple.com/quicktime>.

We recommend that you install the latest version of QuickTime: <http://www.apple.com/quicktime>.

To produce the video using the **QuickTime MOV** video file output, continue with **Custom Production Wizard**.

Strengths & Weaknesses

- Strengths:** Wide selection of video and audio compressors.
Will play while downloading.
Multi-platform, industry-standard, multimedia software architecture.
- Weaknesses:** Viewing may appear "jerky" if download is slow.
Entire file will download to the viewer's computer.

Click a topic below to see the **Custom Production Wizard** recommendations.

MOV High Quality Settings

- If audio, enable **Sound** (*QuickTime Encoding Options* dialog box > **QuickTime Options** button > *Movie Settings* > **Sound Options**)
- Size: **16 Bit** (*QuickTime Encoding Options* dialog box > **QuickTime Options** button > *Movie Settings* > **Sound Options** >)
- Use: **Stereo** (*QuickTime Encoding Options* dialog box > **QuickTime Options** button > *Movie Settings* > **Sound Options**)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

MOV Medium Quality Settings

- If audio, enable **Sound** (*QuickTime Encoding Options* dialog box > **QuickTime Options** button > *Movie Settings* > **Sound Options**)
- Size: **8 Bit** (*QuickTime Encoding Options* dialog box > **QuickTime Options** button > *Movie Settings* > **Sound Options**)
- Use: **Mono** (*QuickTime Encoding Options* dialog box > **QuickTime Options** button > *Movie Settings* > **Sound Options**)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

MOV Smallest Size Settings

- If audio, enable **Sound** (*QuickTime Encoding Options* dialog box > **QuickTime Options** button > *Movie Settings* > **Sound Options**)
- Size: **8 Bit** (*QuickTime Encoding Options* dialog box > **Audio Setup** button)
- Use: **Mono** (*QuickTime Encoding Options* dialog box > **Audio Setup** button)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

Audio Video Interleave (AVI) and CD-ROM Distribution

The AVI file format is ideal for CD-ROM distribution because it retains the highest quality and is editable by Camtasia Studio, Camtasia Effects, or other video editing programs.

To ensure playback on any Windows PC, use MenuMaker to create a CD menu which automatically plays the AVI with a freely distributed Camtasia Player (200k).

To produce the video using the **AVI** video file output, continue with **Custom Production Wizard**.

AVI Strengths & Weaknesses

- Strengths:**
- Common and easy to view.
 - Editable and easily converted into other video formats.
 - A great vendor-neutral format for your stock footage or for distribution CD-ROM.
- Weaknesses:**
- Files can be large with higher motion and complex image recordings.
 - Entire file must load to a person's computer before playing.
 - TSCC-encoded AVI requires TSCC video codec for playback.

AVI High Quality Settings

- Colors: **Automatic** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box)
- Frame Rate: **Automatic** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box)
- No audio? Uncheck **Encode Audio** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box)
- If audio: **22.050kHz 16 Bit Stereo** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box > **Audio Setup** button)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

AVI Medium Quality Settings

- Colors: **High Color (16-bit)** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box)
- Frame Rate: **10** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box)
- No audio? Uncheck **Encode Audio** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box)
- If audio: **12kHz 16 Bit Stereo** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box > **Audio Setup** button)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

AVI Smallest Size Settings

- Colors: **High Color (16-bit)** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box)
- Frame Rate: **5** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box)
- No audio? Uncheck **Encode Audio** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box)
- If audio: **8kHz 16 Bit Stereo** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box > **Audio Setup** button)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

See also: **Audio Video Interleave (AVI) & DVD Productions**.

Audio Video Interleave (AVI) & DVD Productions

The AVI file format is ideal for customers who have DVD authoring software. The AVIs produced with Camtasia Studio can be converted by most authoring software into a DVD-Ready format.

Note: Camtasia Studio AVI videos do not automatically playback on DVDs. You must first produce them to AVI format using Camtasia Studio and convert them to appropriate MPEG formats using your DVD authoring software.

To produce the video using the AVI video file output, continue with **Custom Production Wizard**.

Strengths & Weaknesses

- Strengths:** Highest quality recordings possible.
Can be edited in Camtasia Studio and most non-linear editing software.
Includes high quality audio options.
- Weaknesses:** Requires DVD-authoring software to convert to MPEG format
Files can be large with higher motion and complex image recordings.
Entire file must load to a person's computer before loading.

High Quality Settings

- Colors: **Automatic** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box)
- Frame Rate: **Automatic** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box)
- No audio? Uncheck **Encode Audio** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box)
- If audio: **22.050kHz 16 Bit Stereo** (*AVI Encoding Options* dialog box > **Audio Setup** button)
- **Video Size 720x480** (TV/DVD). (*Video Size* dialog box > **Preset video sizes**)

If the original screen recording is larger than 720x480, you may consider using *Zoom-n-Pan* to deliver the best quality productions. See also: **Zoom-n-Pan**.

iPod/iTunes

iPod is a portable media player designed and marketed by Apple Computer. Use the iPod/ iTunes option to create a video that is specially formatted to play on an iPod or within iTunes.

When creating an iPod video file, Camtasia Studio automatically formats the video to ensure that you get the correct dimension and encoding.

To produce the video using the **iPod/iTunes** video file output, continue with **Custom Production Wizard**.

MP3 Audio Only

Note: If you do not want to upload the audio to Screencast.com, but still want the Timeline audio in MP3 format, press <**CTRL + U**>. Name the file in the *Save Audio As* dialog box.

MP3 or MPEG-1 Audio Layer 3, is a popular digital audio encoding and lossy compression format, designed to greatly reduce the amount of data required to represent audio, yet still sound like a faithful reproduction of the original uncompressed audio to most listeners.

The MP3 Audio Only option produces just the audio portion of the video and uploads it to Screencast.com.

To produce the video using the **MP3 Audio Only** file output, continue with **Custom Production Wizard**.

RealMedia Streaming Media (RM)

The RealMedia file format creates video files that are compressed and optimized for Web delivery using the standard RealVideo and RealAudio codecs. It requires your viewers to have the RealPlayer and codec installed. Quality is often reduced for low bandwidth priority and there are limited editing options.

This format gives 'real world' video content with many color gradients and high motion where lossy video quality is acceptable. It requires viewers to have the RealPlayer and codec installed.

With streaming media file formats, quality depends on the target bitrate. Also, streaming files are generally not editable and cannot be converted to any other file format. For these reasons, it is best to keep the original source content in the AVI file format and use streaming media file formats only for publishing and delivery.

To produce the video using the **RealMedia Streaming Media (RM)** video file output, continue with **Custom Production Wizard**.

Strengths & Weaknesses

Strengths: Small file size media. It is not downloaded to the computer.
Plays in RealPlayer and browser with the plug-in.
Great audio compression.

Weaknesses: Requires streaming server to stream from a Web site.
Lossy video compression.
Limited editing options.
Cannot be converted to another format.

RM High Quality Settings

- File Type: **SureStream™ - RealServer G2 Compatible** (*RealMedia Encoding Options* dialog box)
- Target Audience: **Dual ISDN** (*RealMedia Encoding Options* dialog box)
- If no audio, Audio Format: **No Audio** (*RealMedia Encoding Options* dialog box)
- If audio, Audio Format: **Stereo Music** (*RealMedia Encoding Options* dialog box)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

RM Medium Quality Settings

- File Type: **SureStream™ - RealServer G2 Compatible** (*RealMedia Encoding Options* dialog box)
- Target Audience: **56K Modem** (*RealMedia Encoding Options* dialog box)
- If no audio, Audio Format: **No Audio** (*RealMedia Encoding Options* dialog box)
- If audio, Audio Format: **Voice w/ background music** (*RealMedia Encoding Options* dialog box)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

RM Smallest Size Settings

- File Type: **SureStream™ - RealServer G2 Compatible** (*RealMedia Encoding Options* dialog box)
- Target Audience: **28K Modem** (*RealMedia Encoding Options* dialog box)
- If no audio, Audio Format: **No Audio** (*RealMedia Encoding Options* dialog box)
- If audio, Audio Format: **Voice Only** or **Music Only** (*RealMedia Encoding Options* dialog box)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

Camtasia for RealPlayer (RealPlayer Plug-In(CAMV))

This file format uses the Camtasia for RealPlayer Plug-In to stream video with perfect lossless quality.

- Play back can be either locally from a hard disk, from a network, or over the Web.
- The first time a CAMV file is played, the Real Player will contact Real Networks and automatically download the CAMV Plug-In for the player. This means that the user must have Real Player installed and have a connection to the Internet.
- CAMV, like TSCC, is lossless and will produce perfect quality, highly compressed videos with small file sizes. However, if file size is a primary consideration, and the video contains real world photography, dithered surfaces or gradient fills then CAMV may not be the best choice.
- The audio stream is encoded with standard Real Audio codecs.
- Choose for content with few color gradients, low motion, and where the highest video quality is required.

To produce the video using the **Camtasia for RealPlayer (CAMV)** video file output, continue with **Custom Production Wizard**.

Strengths & Weaknesses

Strengths: Stream files over low bandwidth.

Weaknesses: Requires a streaming server.

Recommended Settings

- Target Audience: **Dual ISDN** (*Camtasia RealPlayer Plug-In Encoding Options* dialog box)
- Colors: **12-bit** (*Camtasia RealPlayer Plug-In Encoding Options* dialog box)
- Frame Rate: **Automatic** (*Camtasia RealPlayer Plug-In Encoding Options* dialog box)
- Key frame every: **40** (*Camtasia RealPlayer Plug-In Encoding Options* dialog box)
- If no audio, Audio Format: **No Audio** (*Camtasia RealPlayer Plug-In Encoding Options* dialog box)
- If audio, Audio Format: **Stereo** (or other setting depending on the audio type) (*Camtasia RealPlayer Plug-In Encoding Options* dialog box)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

GIF Animation File (GIF)

The GIF video format is used to publish short tutorials and product demonstrations that playback in any browser on any computer platform. GIF is also ideal for adding short animations to a PowerPoint presentation.

- Camtasia Studio creates highly optimized animated GIF files that are as small as possible. However, there are practical limits on the length of GIF animations since they must be downloaded entirely before they can play in a browser.
- GIF animations do not contain audio and are limited to 8 bit, 256 colors.
- Can be played in image viewing programs, Web browsers, Windows Media Player, Real Player and other applications. It is not a streaming format.
- Animated GIF is highly compressed and lossless.
- Generally not used for long videos, but rather for short clips.

To produce the video using the **Animated GIF** video file output, continue with **Custom Production Wizard**.

Strengths & Weaknesses

Strengths: Supported by nearly all Web browsers. Tend to be smaller than other animation files.

Animated GIF files are commonly used on Web pages. Due to their small size, they are ideal for Web delivery, where the exacting detail of an AVI file is not necessary.

Animated GIF files are highly condensed.

This industry-standard file format is used to publish short tutorials and product demonstrations on the Web that play back in any browser on any computer platform.

Weaknesses: Video only.

Limited to 256 colors.

Less range and flexibility.

GIF High Quality Settings

- Colors: **Automatic** (*Animated GIF Encoding Options* dialog box)
- Frame Rate: **Automatic** (*Animated GIF Encoding Options* dialog box)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

GIF Medium Quality Settings

- Colors: **256** (*Animated GIF Encoding Options* dialog box)
- Frame Rate: **10** (*Animated GIF Encoding Options* dialog box)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

GIF Smallest Size Settings

- Colors: **256** (*Animated GIF Encoding Options* dialog box)
- Frame Rate: **5** (*Animated GIF Encoding Options* dialog box)
- **Largest Video Size** (*Video Size* dialog box)

Custom Production Wizard

When you have set the timing and sequence of video clips and still images in the video, added all Callouts, Quizzes, and Voice Narration, you are ready to produce the video. This process, called production or rendering, assembles all of the audio, video, and images into one video file, based on the sequence you have established on the Timeline.

The Custom Production option gives more flexibility over the final video file format and is used to customize frame rates, video and audio codecs, etc. There is also the option to produce just a small sample of the video to see if you are satisfied with the results of the current custom settings.

How will you share your videos?

This question needs to be answered before production begins since it directly impacts the type of video format that is selected. See the recommendations given below and follow the corresponding link to get specific information on that video format.

For more information on each of the different video file formats, see [Tell Me More about this File Type](#).

	Internet / Intranet	CD	DVD
Recommend:	Adobe Flash (SWF) Ideal for shorter, 10-15 minute recordings with moderate screen motion. Windows Media (WMV – Streaming Format) Ideal for longer or higher motion recordings.	Audio Video Interleave (AVI) & CD-ROM Distribution Ideal for CD-ROM distribution because it retains the highest quality and is editable with video editing programs.	Audio Video Interleave (AVI) & DVD Productions Highest quality recordings which can be readied for use with DVD authoring software.
Alternative:	RealMedia Streaming Media (RM) QuickTime (MOV)	Windows Media (WMV Streaming Format)	

Begin Custom Production Wizard

1. Make sure the project that you want to produce is open and you are finished making edits on the Timeline.
2. In the Task List, choose **Produce Video As** link.
3. The Production Wizard appears.
4. Choose the **Custom production settings** option.



Continue with **How would you like to produce the video?**

How would you like to produce the video?

For help with understanding the different video file format, see **Tell Me More about this File Type**.

1. Select the *Video File Format* from the list.
2. Click **Next**.
3. To continue with the wizard instructions, click the link that corresponds to the video file format that you chose:

Adobe Flash output, continue with **Flash Templates**.

WMV, continue with **Windows Media Encoding Options**.

MOV, continue with **QuickTime Encoding Options**.

AVI, continue with **AVI Encoding Options**.

iPod or **iTunes**, continue with **iPod Options**.

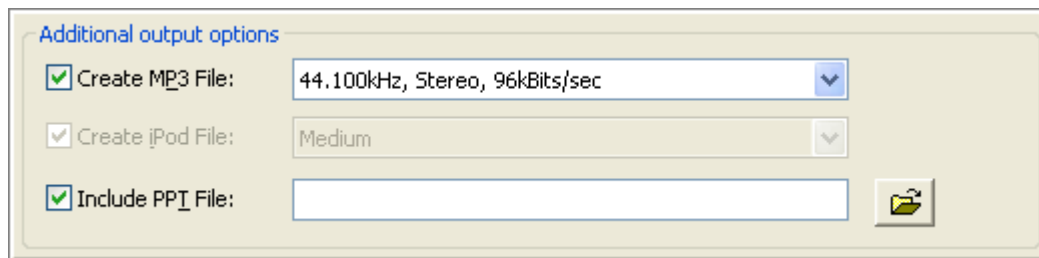
MP3 audio, continue with **MP3 Audio Only**.

RM, continue with **RealMedia Encoding Options**.

CAMV, continue with **Camtasia for RealPlayer (RealPlayer Plug-In(CAMV))**.

GIF, continue with **Animated GIF Encoding Options**.

Additional Output Options:



These options, found in the first dialog box of the **Recommend my Production Settings Wizard**, **Custom Production Wizard**, or **Production Preset Wizard** allow you to:

1. Simultaneously produce an MP3 audio file of all of the audio on the Timeline.
2. Upload the original PowerPoint presentation so viewers can download it from the Web.

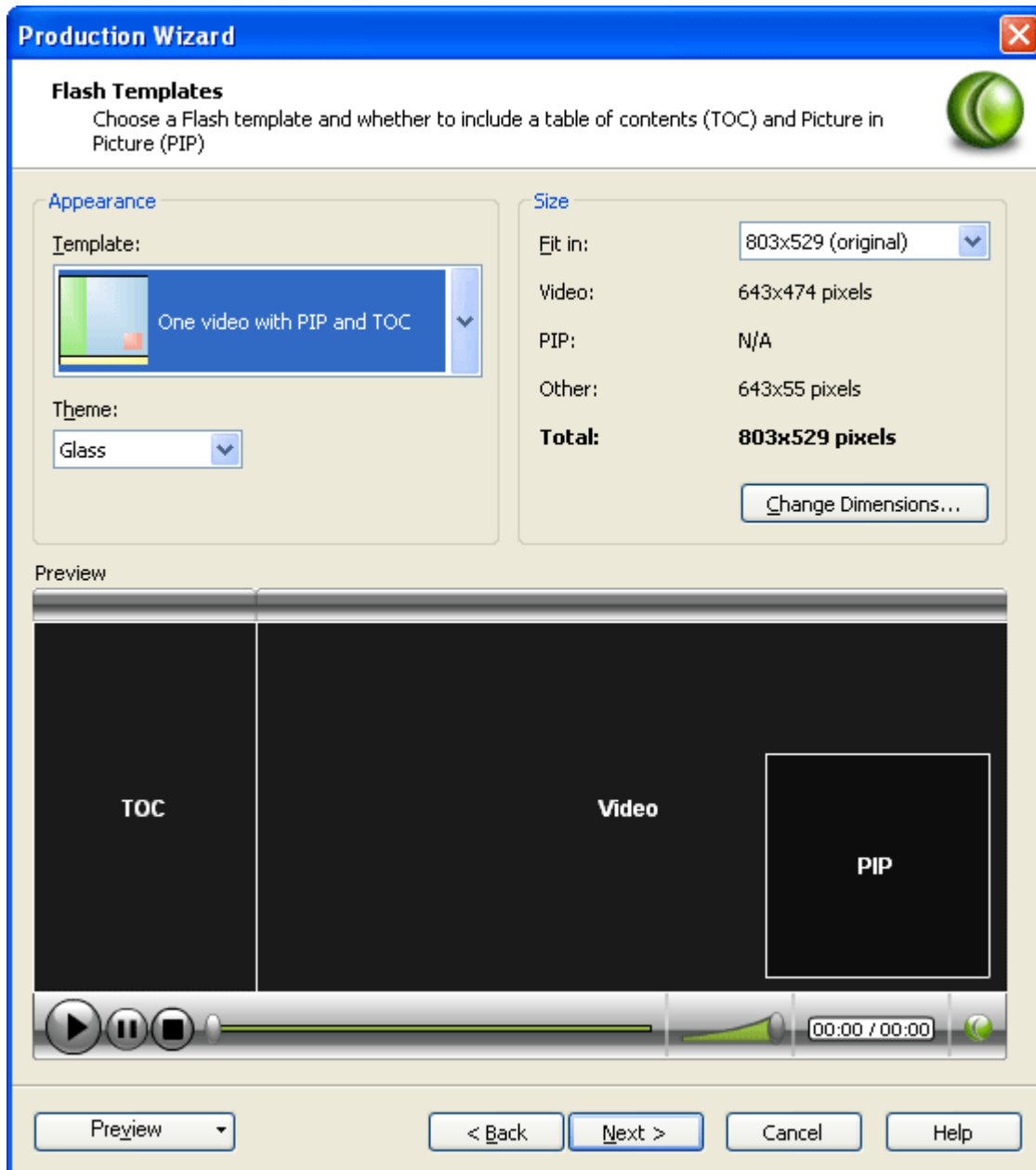
When production of the video is complete, the video is accessed from a link on a web page. These ancillary files are available for download through links at the bottom of the page.

1. To create an MP3 file, check the **Create MP3 File** option. The **Options** dropdown menu appears. If necessary, select a different output option.
2. To include the original PowerPoint presentation for download, check the **Include PPT file** option. Click

Browse  to find the PowerPoint presentation. Click **OK**.

Flash Templates

Within this dialog box, choose a template to be used to control the look of the produced movie.




These templates determine how the video (or video with picture-in-picture) will appear once it is produced. You can also choose a template that includes a table of contents based on Quizzes or Markers you may have on the Timeline.

- For a detailed description of each template, see **Flash Template Examples**.
- Click **Change Dimensions** to change the dimensions of the produced video. See also: **Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box)**.

Option	Description and Use
Template	From the dropdown menu, choose a template. These templates determine how your video (or video with picture-in-picture) will appear once it is produced. See also: Flash Template Examples .
Theme	Choose the look for the video controller and wrapper. The look is updated in the Preview area.
Flash Options	Configure options such as the JPEG compression, frame rate, audio format, Flash actions, and more. See also: Flash Options .
Fit in	From the dropdown menu, choose the maximum size for this produced movie which includes the main video, any side-by-side video, table of contents, the playback controls, and the player wrapper. When using the Fit in option, it is like an unseen border or frame is placed around the video. This unseen frame makes sure that when you resize the videos you cannot go outside of the maximum width and height that was set. Note: The actual size of the video may be made smaller than the size selected in this field. However, it can never be made larger than the size selected. See also: Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box) .
Video	The actual size of the main video in pixels. This is a read-only field. To change, click Change Dimensions . If changes are made within the <i>Video Dimensions Preview</i> dialog box, they are updated to this field. See also: Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box) .
PIP	The actual size of the side-by-side PIP video in pixels. This is a read-only field. To change, click Change Dimensions . If changes are made within the <i>Video Dimensions Preview</i> dialog box, they are updated to this field. See also: Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Dialog Box) .
Other	The actual size of the playback controls and the player wrapper in pixels. This size will always be the same as the width of the main video and will always be 55 pixels in height. This is a read-only field.
Total	The overall total size of this produced movie including the main video, any side-by-side video, table of contents, the playback controls, and the player wrapper. Note: This size will always be less than or equal to the Fit in size.
Change Dimensions	Change the size of the main video or the size of the side-by-side video. Embedded PIP cannot be resized using this option. Embedded PIP must be sized prior to production while the PIP is on the Timeline. See Modify an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip . For complete instructions on this topic, see Change Dimensions .
Preview	The Preview option, found within the <i>Custom Production Wizard</i> or when using a Production Preset, allows you to set a production option and immediately produce a thirty second clip of the video. See also: Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline .

Production Preview Option

For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Continue with Production Wizard

To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **Video Options**.

Flash Options

The **Flash Options** button in the Custom Production wizard's *Flash Templates* dialog box gives you access to the *Flash Options* tabbed dialog box. Within these tabs, you can set JPEG compression, frame rate, audio format, Flash actions, and more.

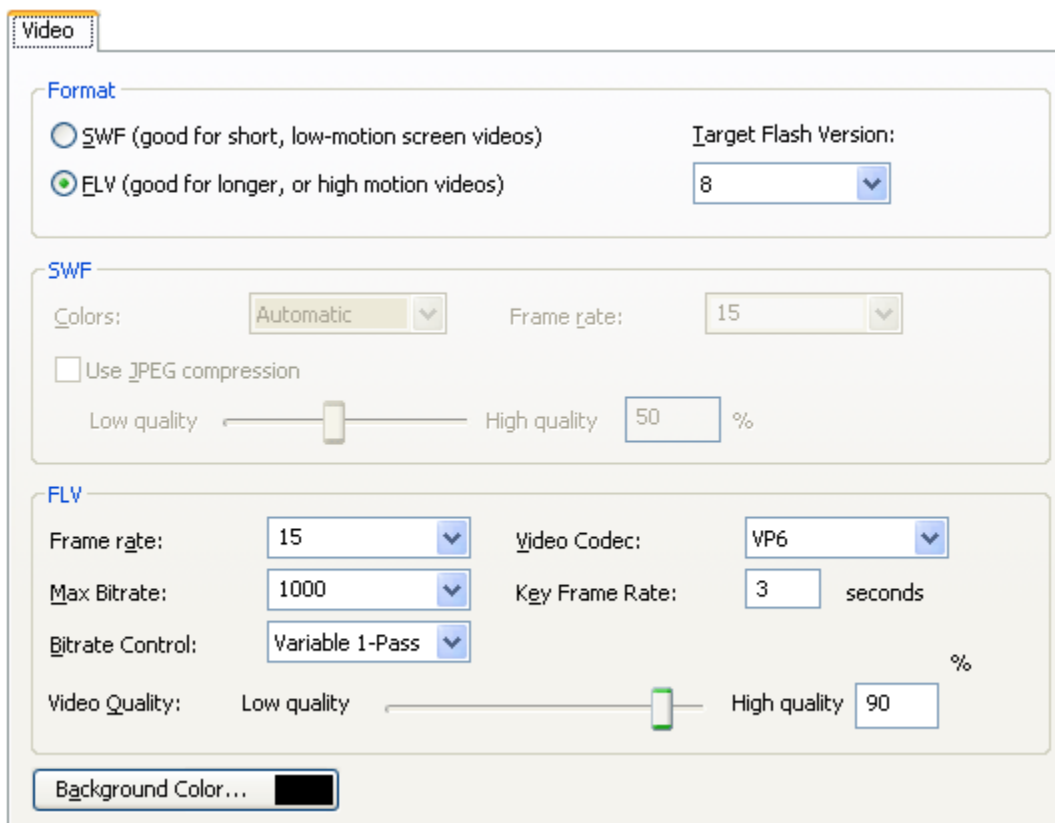
See also:

- **Flash Options Video Tab**
- **Flash Options PIP Tab**
- **Flash Options Audio Tab**
- **Camtasia Theater and the Legacy SWF Output Flash Template Option**
- **Flash Options Table of Contents Tab**
- **Flash Options Controls Tab**

Flash Options Video Tab

Path: Camtasia Studio > Produce Video As link > Custom Production Wizard > Flash (SWF/FLV) Adobe Flash Output > Next > Flash Templates dialog box > Flash Options button > Video tab

The *Flash Options Video* tab is used to customize the file format, compression, video codec, etc. of the Flash movie.



Option Name	Description and Use
-------------	---------------------

Option Name	Description and Use
SWF	<p>Produce the Flash movie in SWF file format. A good choice for producing movies that are short in duration and contain low motion video such as screen recordings or basic PowerPoint presentation.</p> <p>If you have any camera video / real world video on the Timeline such as a talking head or, you have a PowerPoint presentation with animations or transitions in it, choose the FLV production option instead.</p>
FLV	<p>Produce the Flash movie in FLV file format.</p> <p>A good choice for producing movies that are longer in duration and/or contain high motion video. In general FLV seems to maintain audio/video sync better than SWF for longer recordings.</p> <p>If you have any camera video/ real world video on the Timeline such as a talking head or, you have a PowerPoint presentation with animations or transitions in it, choose the FLV production option instead of SWF. If you choose to use SWF with camera video, the resulting movie file will not only be huge, it also will not play correctly. Additionally, it may actually crash or hang the browser if you put it on the Web for playback.</p> <p>Also choose FLV if any of the video clips on the Timeline are lossy or have already been compressed. This would include WMV or MPG clips.</p>
Target Flash Version	<p>Choose the target version of the Flash Player that is the minimum version that you want to require your users to have in order to view the content.</p>
(SWF) Colors	<p>Select a color option from the drop-down list.</p> <p>The default Automatic option preserves the highest color setting of all the clips on the Timeline.</p> <p>If you want to decrease the size of the video, select a lower color depth.</p> <p>Note: Decreasing the color depth will also degrade the quality of the produced movie.</p>
(SWF) Frame Rate	<p>Select a frame rate option from the drop-down list.</p> <p>The default Automatic option preserves the highest frame rate of all the clips on the Timeline.</p> <p>If you want to decrease the size of the video, select a lower frame rate.</p> <p>Note: Lowering the frame rate to reduce the bandwidth needed by the video stream, can make the movie appear choppy during playback.</p>
(SWF) Use JPEG compression	<p>JPEG compression always loses some image quality. Quality specifies the quality of the compressed video, where 100% is the highest and 10% is the lowest. The higher the image quality adjustment, the larger the file size of the produced movie.</p>
(FLV) Frame Rate	<p>Select a frame rate option from the drop-down list.</p> <p>The default Automatic option preserves the highest frame rate of all the clips on the Timeline.</p> <p>If you want to decrease the size of the video, select a lower frame rate.</p> <p>Note: Lowering the frame rate to reduce the bandwidth needed by the video stream, can make the movie appear choppy during playback.</p>
(FLV) Max Bitrate	<p>The Max bitrate setting determines the overall size of the video.</p> <p>By setting a max bitrate you can be sure that it will only take up a certain amount of bytes per second.</p> <p>A lower max bitrate will result in smaller files but will also result in lower quality video. Choosing “no maximum” results in the highest quality video.</p>

Option Name	Description and Use
(FLV) Bitrate Control	<p>Attempts to achieve better compression by varying the bitrates used to encode different parts of the video.</p> <p>Variable 1-Pass: Analyzes and encodes the movie in one pass.</p> <p>Variable 2-Pass: Attempts to achieve better compression by analyzing the video prior to encoding. This causes the encoding process to take longer, but may produce a smaller file.</p> <p>Constant: Analyzes and encodes the movie at the fastest rate but will generally result in the largest produced movie file.</p>
(FLV) Video Codec	<p>There are two options for Video codec: H.263 and On2's VP6.</p> <p>VP6: This codec is supported by Flash player 8 and up and produces smaller files with better quality. Note: Producing using the VP6 codec will take longer than producing with the H.263 codec, however a much better image quality and file size is achieved.</p> <p>H.263: This codec is supported by Flash player 7 and up and produces bigger files with poorer quality.</p>
(FLV) Key Frame Rate	<p>Used to determine how often to include a key frame in the video stream. This is in seconds. For FLV files, due to limitations of the Adobe Flash Player, when seeking in a FLV you can only seek to key frames. This means that the lower the key frame rate, the more precise seeking will be. However, a lower key frame rate will also result in significantly larger files.</p> <p>To set the key frame, enter the number of seconds. So, every <number of seconds> a key frame is inserted.</p> <p>Note: A lower key frame rate means more key frames in the produced movie. As a result, the movie file is larger and seeking within the movie is more precise.</p>
(FLV) Video Quality	<p>Quality specifies the quality of the compressed video, where 100% is the highest and 10% is the lowest. The higher the image quality adjustment, the larger the produced movie file will be.</p> <p>For most screen capture videos, the default, 80%, is the best choice.</p> <p>Note: The image quality is a logarithmic scale. So, going from 70% to 80% will not increase the quality as much as going from 80% to 90% will.</p>
Apply	Apply any changes to the options on this tab. Allows you to make changes on another tab before exiting.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

See also:

Flash Options PIP Tab

Flash Options Audio Tab

Camtasia Theater and the Legacy SWF Output Flash Template Option

Flash Options Table of Contents Tab

Flash Options Controls Tab

Flash Options PIP Tab

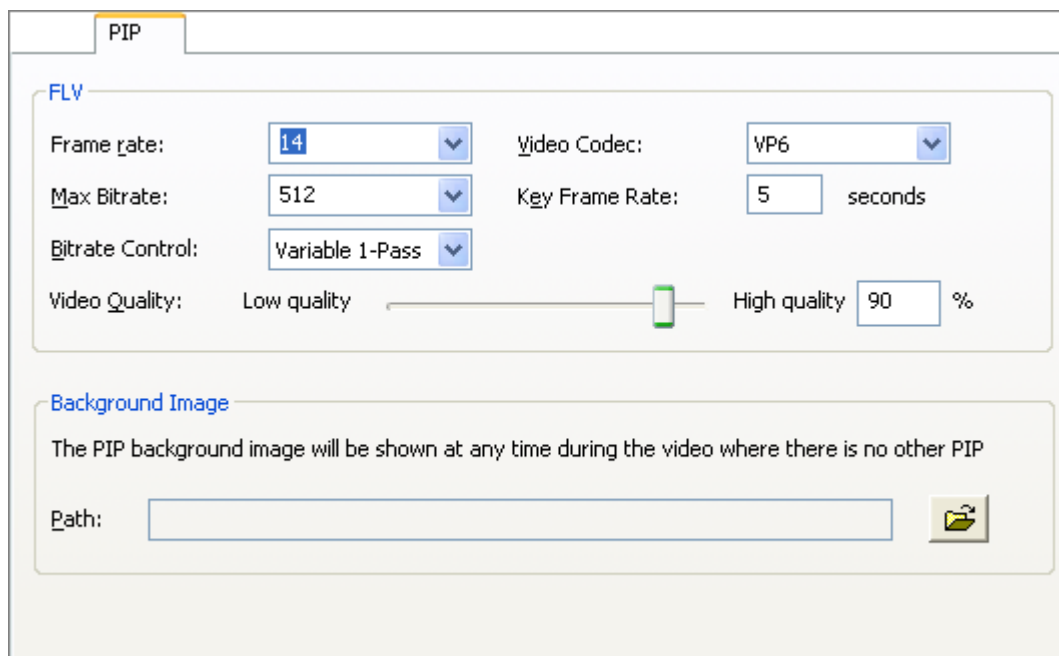
Path: Camtasia Studio > Produce Video As link > Custom Production Wizard > Flash (SWF/FLV) Adobe Flash Output > Next > Flash Templates dialog box > Flash Options button > PIP tab

The *Flash Options PIP* tab is used to customize the compression, codec, and bit rate of the video clips on the PIP track.


This table contains the correct template and video codec production combination based on the Flash Player used for playback of the movie.

See also: **Camtasia Theater and the Legacy SWF Output Flash Template Option.**

To get output compatible with...	Use these settings...
Flash Player 6	Choose the Legacy SWF Output template. See also: Camtasia Theater and the Legacy SWF Output Flash Template Option.
Flash Player 7	Choose any template except the Legacy SWF Output template. If the output includes FLV video, you must use H.263 as the Video Codec instead of VP6.
Flash Player 8	Choose any template except the Legacy SWF Output template. If the output includes FLV video, you must use VP6 as the Video Codec instead of H.263.



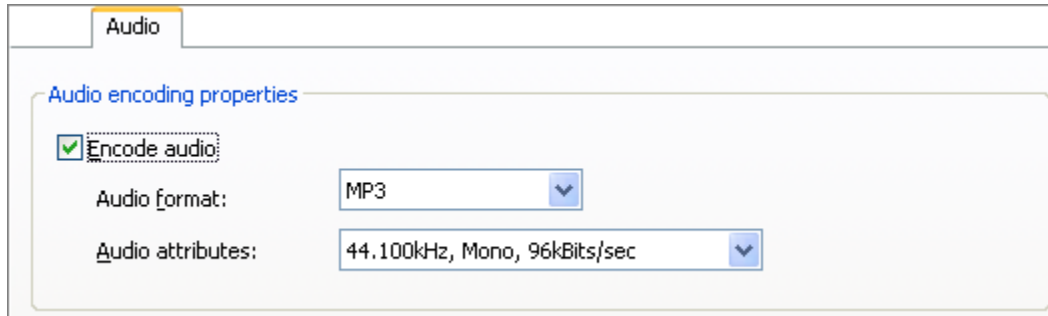
Option Name	Description and Use
Frame Rate	Select a frame rate option from the drop-down list. The default Automatic option preserves the highest frame rate of all the clips on the Timeline. If you want to decrease the size of the video, select a lower frame rate. Note: Lowering the frame rate to reduce the bandwidth needed by the video stream, can make the movie appear choppy during playback.

Option Name	Description and Use
Max Bitrate	<p>The Max bitrate setting determines the overall size of the video. By setting a max bitrate you can be sure that it will only take up a certain amount of bytes per second.</p> <p>A lower max bitrate will result in smaller files but will also result in lower quality video. Choosing “no maximum” results in the highest quality video.</p> <p>For medium quality, choose 300. For low quality, choose 100.</p>
Bitrate Control	<p>Attempts to achieve better compression by varying the bitrates used to encode different parts of the video.</p> <p>Variable 1-Pass: Analyzes and encodes the movie in one pass.</p> <p>Variable 2-Pass: Attempts to achieve better compression by analyzing the video prior to encoding. This causes the encoding process to take longer, but may produce a smaller file.</p> <p>Constant: Analyzes and encodes the movie at the fastest rate but will generally result in the largest produced movie file.</p>
Video Codec	<p>There are two options for Video codec, H.263 and On2’s VP6.</p> <p>H.263: This codec is supported by Flash player 7 and up and produces bigger files with poorer quality.</p> <p>VP6: This codec is supported by Flash player 8 and up and produces smaller files with better quality. Note: Producing using the VP6 codec will take longer than producing with the H.263 codec, however, much better image quality and file size is achieved.</p>
Key Frame Rate	<p>Used to determine how often to include a key frame in the video stream. This is in seconds. For FLV files, due to limitations of the Adobe Flash Player, when seeking in a FLV you can only seek to key frames. This means the lower the key frame rate, the more precise seeking will be. However, a lower key frame rate will also result in significantly larger files.</p> <p>To set the key frame, enter the number of seconds to be used. So, every <number of seconds> a key frame is inserted.</p> <p>Note: A lower key frame rate means more key frames in the produced movie. As a result, the movie file is larger and seeking within the movie is more precise.</p>
Video Quality	<p>Quality specifies the quality of the compressed video, where 100% is the highest and 10% is the lowest. The higher the image quality adjustment, the larger the produced movie file will be.</p> <p>For most screen capture videos, the default, 80%, is the best choice.</p> <p>Note: The image quality is a logarithmic scale. So, going from 70% to 80% will not increase the quality as much as going from 80% to 90% will.</p>
Background Image	<p>Choose a background image to show within the video while no PIP video is present. This is ideal for showing an image with a corporate logo, a Web site address, etc.</p> <p>Click Browse . Find the BMP, GIF, JPEG, or PNG image file. Click Open. The file path is updated to the Path field.</p>
Apply	Apply any changes to the options on this tab. Allows you to make changes on another tab before exiting.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Flash Options Audio Tab

Path: Camtasia Studio > Produce Video As link > Flash (SWF/FLV) Adobe Flash Output > Next > Flash Templates dialog box > Flash Options button > Audio tab

The *Flash Options Audio* tab is used to customize the audio format and attributes of the Flash movie.



Option Name	Description and Use
Encode Audio	Remove the check mark from the Encode Audio box if you do not want to include audio in the movie you are producing.
Audio Format	From the dropdown menu, choose the type of audio format that you want to include with this video. Once an Audio Format is selected, the <i>Audio Attributes</i> dialog box is updated to reflect the default settings.
Audio Attributes	Once the Audio Format option is selected, this field is automatically updated with a default setting. To change this setting, choose a different setting from the dropdown menu.
Apply	Apply any changes to the options on this tab. Allows you to make changes on another tab before exiting.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

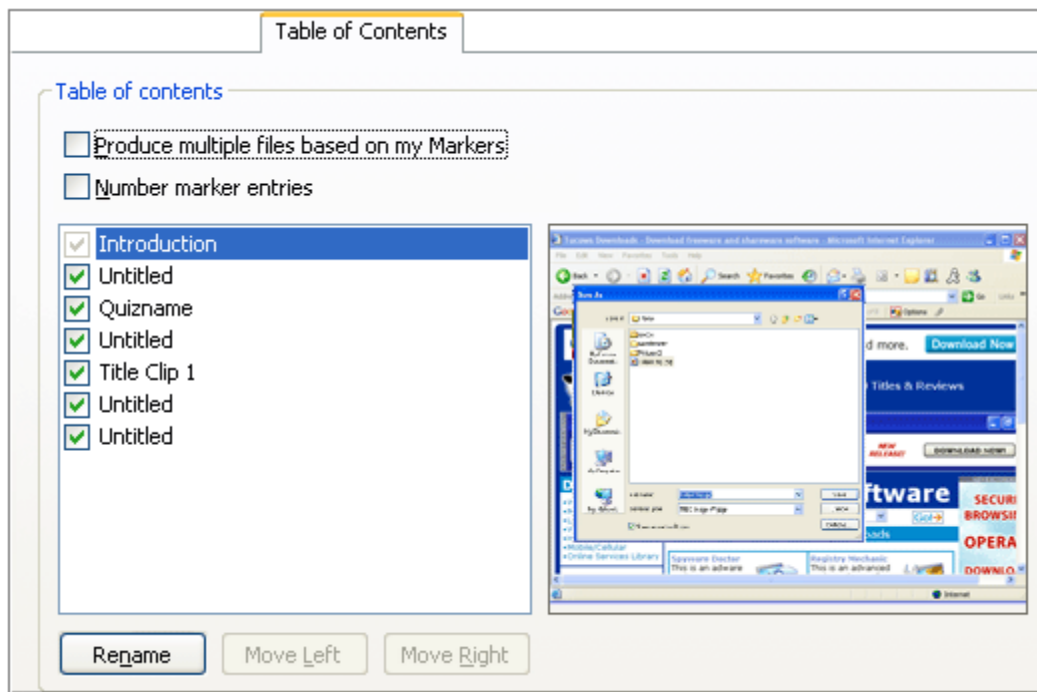
Flash Options Table of Contents Tab

Path: Camtasia Studio > Produce Video As link > Flash (SWF/FLV) Adobe Flash Output > Next > Flash Templates dialog box > Flash Options button > Table of Contents tab

Markers and Quizzes may serve as bookmarks or placeholders within the movie. When the movie is produced in conjunction with the Table of Contents option, the Markers and Quizzes will show as hyperlinks in the HTML page. Incorporating a table of contents into the HTML page provides easy navigation points for your viewer.

The *Table of Contents* dialog box is used to choose specific Markers to include in the HTML page. You can also rename any Markers or Quizzes in this dialog box. Any changes made here are updated to the Markers or Quizzes on the Timeline.

You can also move the Markers or Quizzes to the right to indent them.



Option Name	Description and Use
Produce multiple files based on my Markers	Create and produce individual videos based on Markers that have been set during the editing process.
Number marker entries	Number the markers in the final table of contents. Numbering is done sequentially.
Selecting Markers or Quizzes	By default, all of the Markers and Quizzes are selected to be included in the table of contents. This is noted by a green check mark next to the Marker or Quiz name <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Untitled. If you do not want a particular Marker or Quiz to be included in the table of contents, click the green check mark to remove it <input type="checkbox"/> Untitled.
Rename	To rename a Marker or Quiz, double-click it in the list and type the new name. Or, click on the Marker or Quiz and click Rename . Type the new name.
Move Left	To move the Marker or Quiz back to its original position, click on the Marker or Quiz and click Move Left .
Move Right	To indent a Marker or Quiz, click on the Marker or Quiz and click Move Right .
Apply	Apply any changes to the options on this tab. Allows you to make changes on

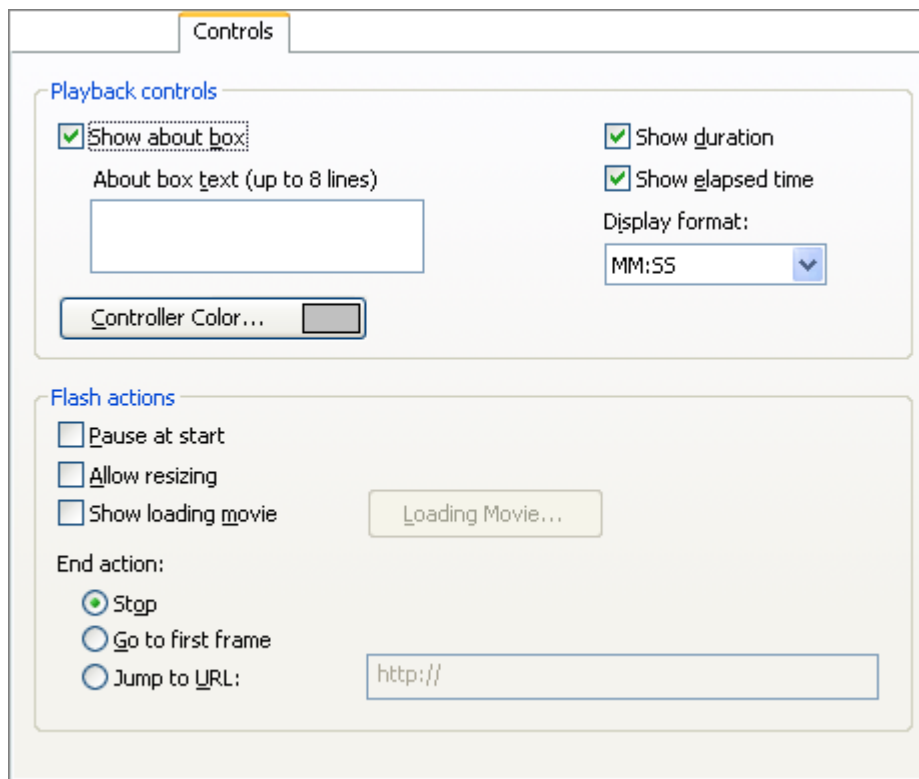
Option Name	Description and Use
	another tab before exiting.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Flash Options Controls Tab

Path: Camtasia Studio > Produce Video As link > Flash (SWF/FLV) Adobe Flash Output > Next > Flash Templates dialog box > Flash Options button > Controls tab

The *Controls* tab is used to customize the look of the playback controls that show within the SWF movie.

Within the *Controls* tab, you can set the options for pausing and playing the movie the controller color, adding an about box, adding duration information, and more.



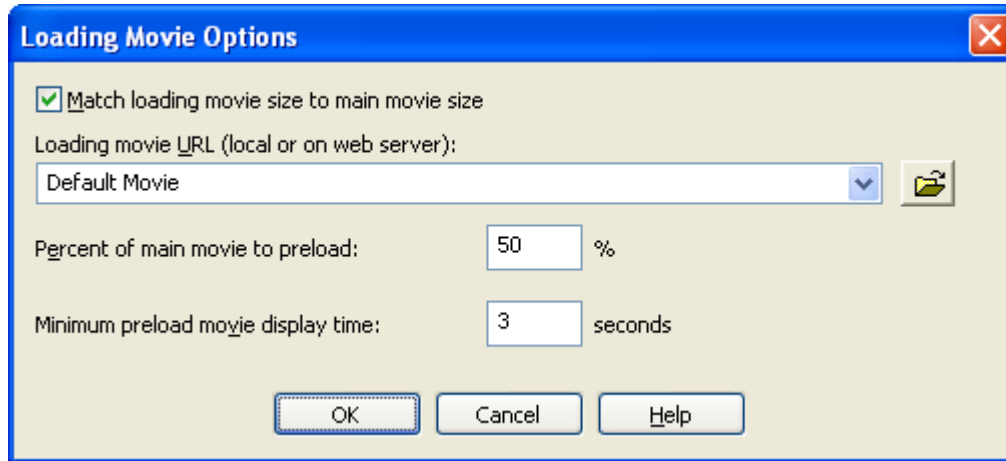
Option Name	Description and Use
Show about box	Make an "About" box available to the users. The About box is accessed by the user when the Camtasia Studio button is selected on the Movie Controller. This type of box usually contains important information such as copyright, authorship, dates, etc. When the About box option is enabled, enter the information, up to eight lines of text in the About text field.
About box text	Type the text that you want to appear in the about box. You can add up to eight lines of text.
Show duration	Shows the total duration of the SWF movie in the selected display format.
Show elapsed time	Shows the current time of the SWF movie in the selected display format.
Display format	From the dropdown menu, select a display text format for the duration and/or

Option Name	Description and Use
	elapsed time. You may choose different Hour: Minute: Second combinations. You can also choose if you want the minute and second labels to be displayed. The small letters denote the display of the labels.
Controller color	Click the Controller Color button to shows the color selection chart. Use the mouse to select the color that you want to tint the Movie Controller.
Pause at start	The video will pause before it is played prohibiting the video from automatically playing when the URL is first accessed. The video will need to be started manually using the Play button on the playback controls. Note: If the playback controls are not enabled , you must right-click on the video in the Web browser and click Play from the pop-up menu.
Allow resizing	Note: Only applies when you use the produced SWF file without launching it from the HTML page that is created at the time of production. If you use the SWF file within the HTML page, then this has no effect. Enable to allow the viewer to manually resize the video as it is playing. Enabling will allow the viewer, at will, to resize the video to a size that may not be correct for perfect video playback.
Show loading movie	Shows a SWF movie while the SWF file downloads. See also: Loading Movie Options .
End action	Specify the action to occur at the end of the video. To select an End Action , enable the desired action. Choose from these: Stop will force the player to stop once the end of the movie is reached. Go to first Frame will move the movie back to the beginning once it has finished playing. Jump to URL will cause the browser to launch using the URL you provide in the field. Enter the URL after the http://.
Apply	Apply any changes to the options on this tab. Allows you to make changes on another tab before exiting.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Loading Movie Options

Path: Camtasia Studio > Produce Video As link > Flash (SWF/FLV) Adobe Flash Output > Next > Flash Templates dialog box > Flash Options button > Controls tab > Loading Movie button.

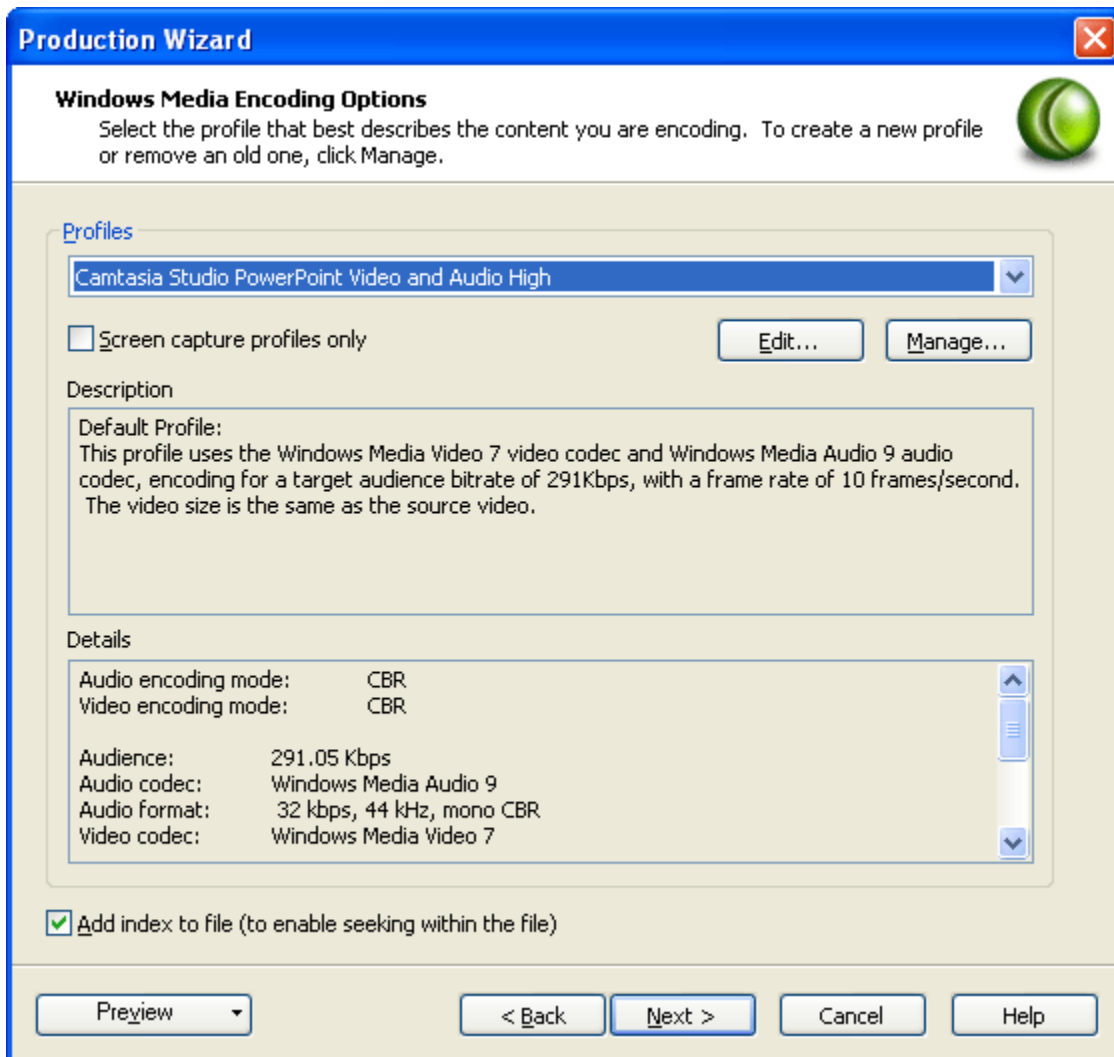
Within the *Loading Movie Options* dialog box, you can set the options for the brief movie that plays while the main movie is loading.



Option Name	Description and Use
Match loading movie size to main movie size	Preloading movie's size matches the size of the produced movie. Ensures that both movies are the same size in terms of width and height. If not enabled, then the preloading movie appears at its own width and height dimensions. In this case, if some of the main movie is larger in size than the loading movie, the background color will show.
Loading movie URL (local or on Web server)	Enter the URL or path to the movie to shows while the Flash movie file loads. The URL may be absolute (http://www.mydomain.com/mymovie.swf) or relative (./mymovie.swf). To help get you up and going quickly, we have provided a default option that links to a URL that plays a Camtasia Studio-made preload SWF file.
Percent of main movie to preload	Enter the percentage of the main movie that to preload before it begins playing. The preload movie will remain on the screen until this percentage is reached.
Minimum preload movie display time (in seconds)	Enter the minimum amount of time in seconds that the preload movie will remain on the screen. This works in combination with the <i>% of Main Movie to Preload</i> setting. This means that both conditions must be met before the movie begins playing.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Windows Media Encoding Options


The *Windows Media Encoding Options* dialog box is used to configure the video during production. The WMV file format is the latest Microsoft streaming file format.



- WMV files play in Microsoft's Windows Media Player.
- A variety of audio and video compressors are available, including the Windows Media Screen video codec which is optimized for screen recordings.
- For more information, consult the Windows Media Encoding documentation or visit the Microsoft Website:
<http://www.microsoft.com/windows/windowsmedia/9series/encoder/default.aspx>

Windows Media Options Description Table

Windows Media Option	Description
Profiles	Select the profile that you want to use in the encoding session. A profile contains all of the technical details required to encode content, which includes supported source types, target audience, codecs, frame rate, and so on. The profiles that are available in the list depend on the type of encoding you plan to do, such as live broadcast, file conversion, or screen capture. Used to select one of the listed screen capture quality options. They are listed by the target delivery options (28.8 Kbps live delivery, 28.8 Kbps 5 fps, and 128 Kbps -- also suitable for email delivery).
Description	This read-only field gives a description of the profile that is selected in the Profiles dropdown menu.
Details	The Details box shows details about the selections you have made on this tab for the audio and video options of the Windows Media videos you are recording.
Add index to file (to enable seeking within the file)	Enable the Add index to file (to enable seeking within the file) option if you want to enable users to seek specific portions of the content using the seek capabilities in Windows Media Player.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

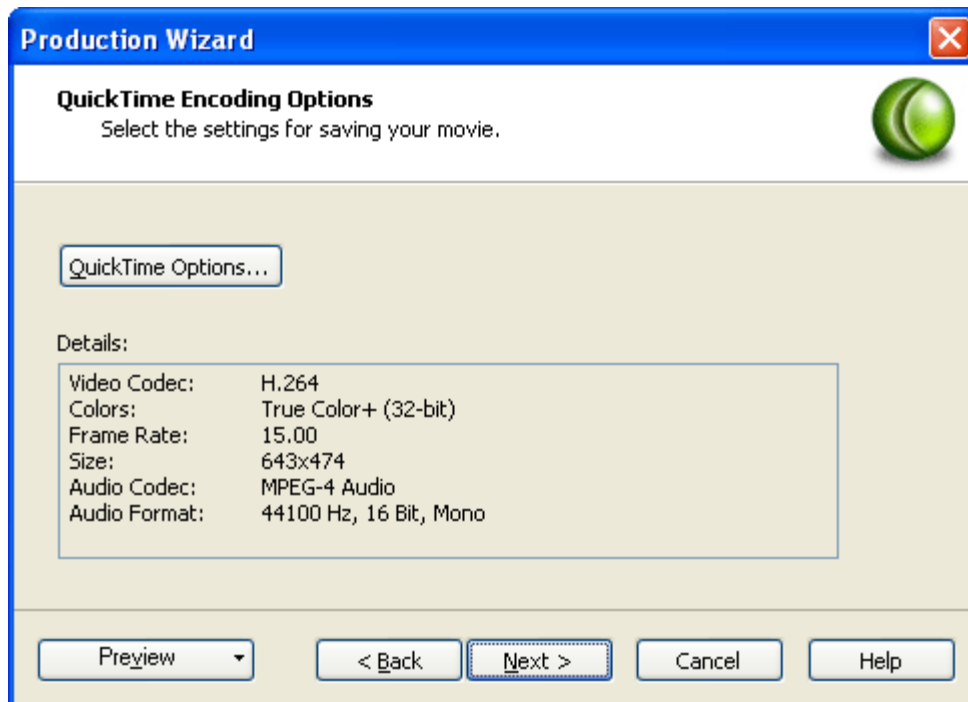
For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Continue with Production Wizard

To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **Video Size**.

QuickTime Encoding Options

The *QuickTime Encoding Options* dialog box is used to configure the video during production.



To access the QuickTime options, click **QuickTime Options** . The *Movie Settings* dialog box appears.

Note: The options found in this dialog box are populated by QuickTime. See the QuickTime documentation for more information on each of these settings.

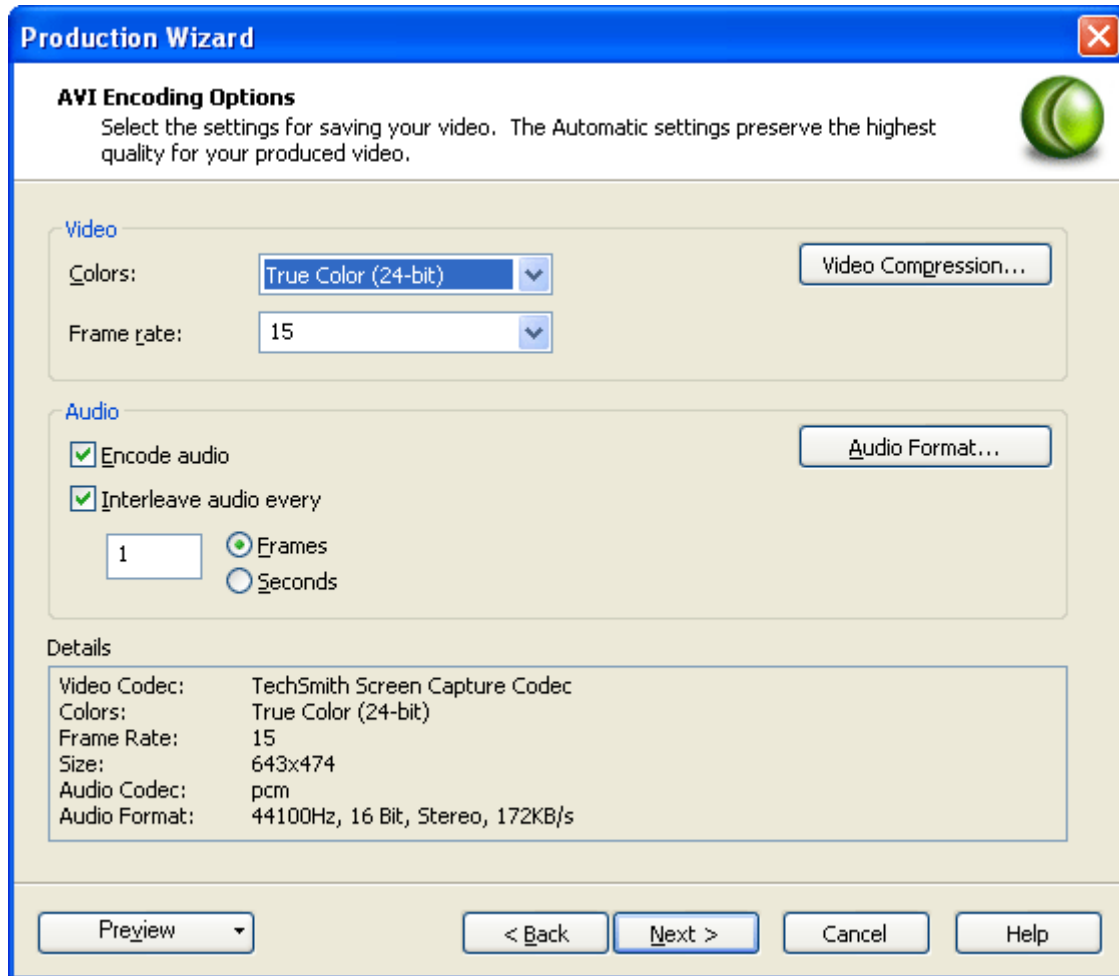
For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Continue with Production Wizard

To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **Video Size**.

AVI Encoding Options

The *AVI Encoding Options* dialog box is used to configure the video during production.



The AVI file format retains the highest quality and is editable by Camtasia Studio, Camtasia *Effects*, or other video editing programs. This AVI file format is also a vendor-neutral format that can be converted into vendor-specific streaming media file formats. These features make AVI files an ideal format for your original, high-quality recordings.

Camtasia Studio uses the TechSmith Screen Capture Codec (TSCC) as the default video compressor. However, you can choose to use any available Windows AVI video codec, including the standard MD-RLE and MS Video 1 codecs that come with Windows.


AVI Options Description Table

This table describes each of the AVI production options.

AVI Option	Description
Colors	Select a color option from the drop-down list. The default Automatic option preserves the highest color setting on the Timeline. If you want to decrease the size of the video, select a lower color depth.
Frame Rate	Select a frame rate option from the drop-down list. The default Automatic option preserves the highest frame rate setting on the Timeline. If you want to decrease the size of the video, select a lower frame rate.
Video Compression	Set the compression options for the capture. For more information on selecting the options in this dialog box, see the same options listed within Camtasia Recorder's <i>Codec Setup (Video Compression)</i> dialog box.

AVI Option	Description
Audio Format	The Audio Format button gives you access to the <i>Audio Format</i> dialog box. In this dialog box you can set record and playback rate options. See also: Audio Format .
Encode Audio	Remove the check mark from the Encode Audio box if you do not want to include audio in the movie you are producing.
Interleave Audio	Interleaving the audio and video data allows it to playback smoothly when the video file is played from a slower device such as a floppy disk or CD-ROM. The only reason to disable interleaving would be to speed up video file "Rendering" time. The box for Interleave audio every X video frames specifies how much to interleave audio and video data. The lower the number specified for "X," the smoother the playback will be. Interleaving every 1 video frame is full interleaving which always results in the smoothest playback.
Frames	Enter the number of frames that should play before interleaving occurs. Interleaving with higher numbers of video frames results in progressively less interleaving and potentially less smooth playback. However, the video file may be smaller with less interleaving. This can be an important consideration for long videos with large pixel dimensions and detail.
Seconds	Enter the number of seconds that should play before interleaving occurs. Interleaving with higher numbers of video frames results in progressively less interleaving and potentially less smooth playback. However, the video file may be smaller with less interleaving. This can be an important consideration for long videos with large pixel dimensions and detail.
Details	The Details box shows details about the selections you have made on this tab for the audio and video options of the AVI videos you are recording.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Production Preview Option

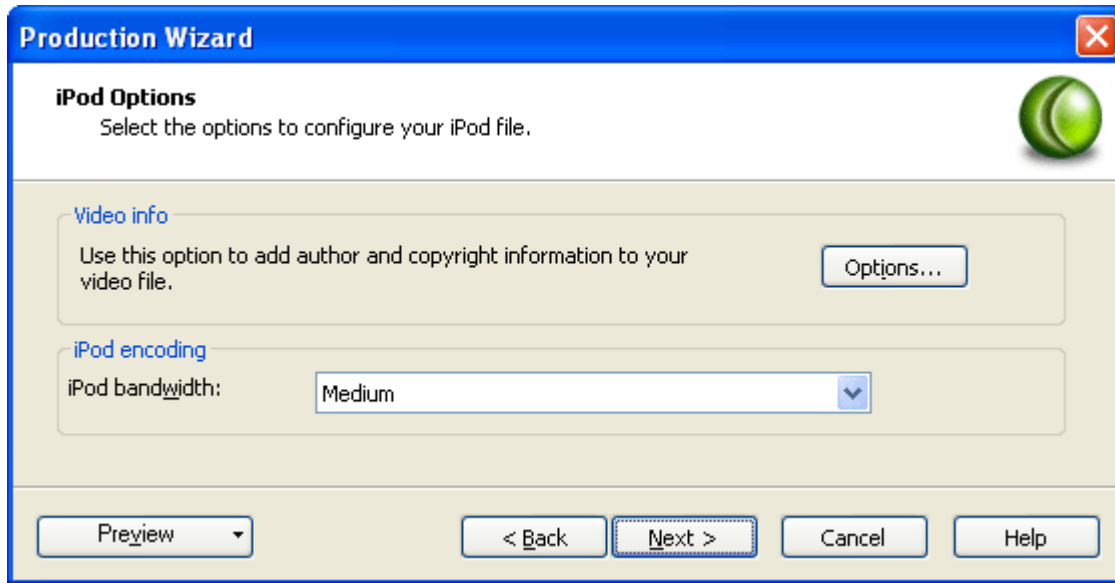
For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Continue with Production Wizard

To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **Video Size**.


iPod Options

The *iPod Options* dialog box is used to configure the video during production.



iPod Option	Description
Options	Opens the <i>Project Properties</i> dialog box used to enter iTunes and author information. See also: Add Metadata Using the Project Properties .
iPod bandwidth	From the dropdown menu, choose the desired bandwidth for this video. For most, the default Medium option will be good.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Production Preview Option

For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

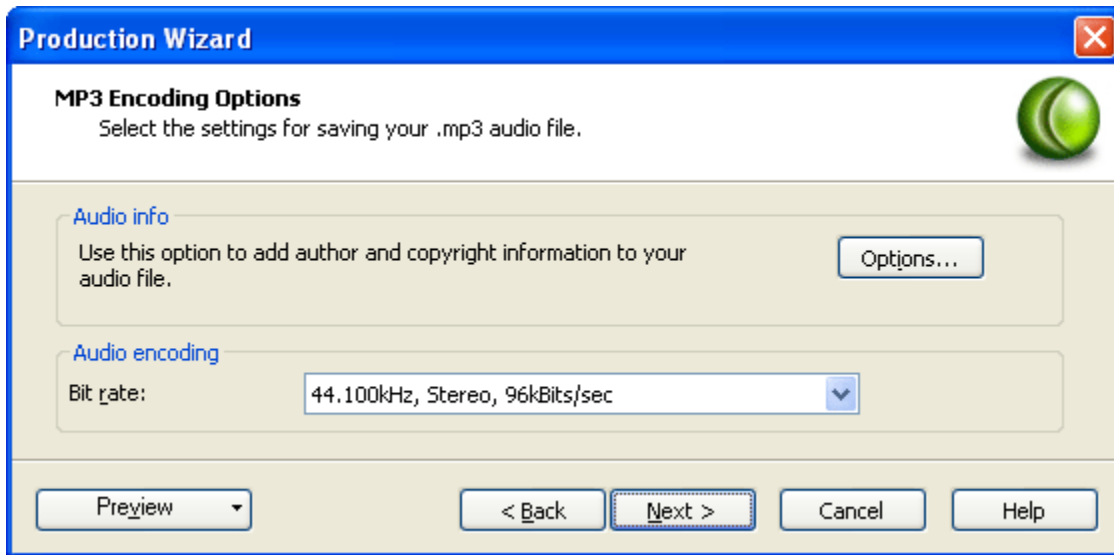
Continue with Production Wizard

To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **Produce Video**.

MP3 Audio Only


Note: If you do not want to upload the audio to Screencast.com, but still want the audio in MP3 format, press <CTRL + U>. Name the file in the *Save Audio As* dialog box.

The *MP3 Encoding Options* dialog box is used to configure the audio during production.



MP3 Option	Description
Options	Opens the <i>Project Properties</i> dialog box used to enter author and copyright information. See also: Add Metadata Using the Project Properties .
Audio Encoding Bit rate	Attempts to achieve better compression by varying the bits used to encode different parts of the video. From the dropdown menu, click the bit rate for this video. For most, the default option will work well.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Production Preview Option

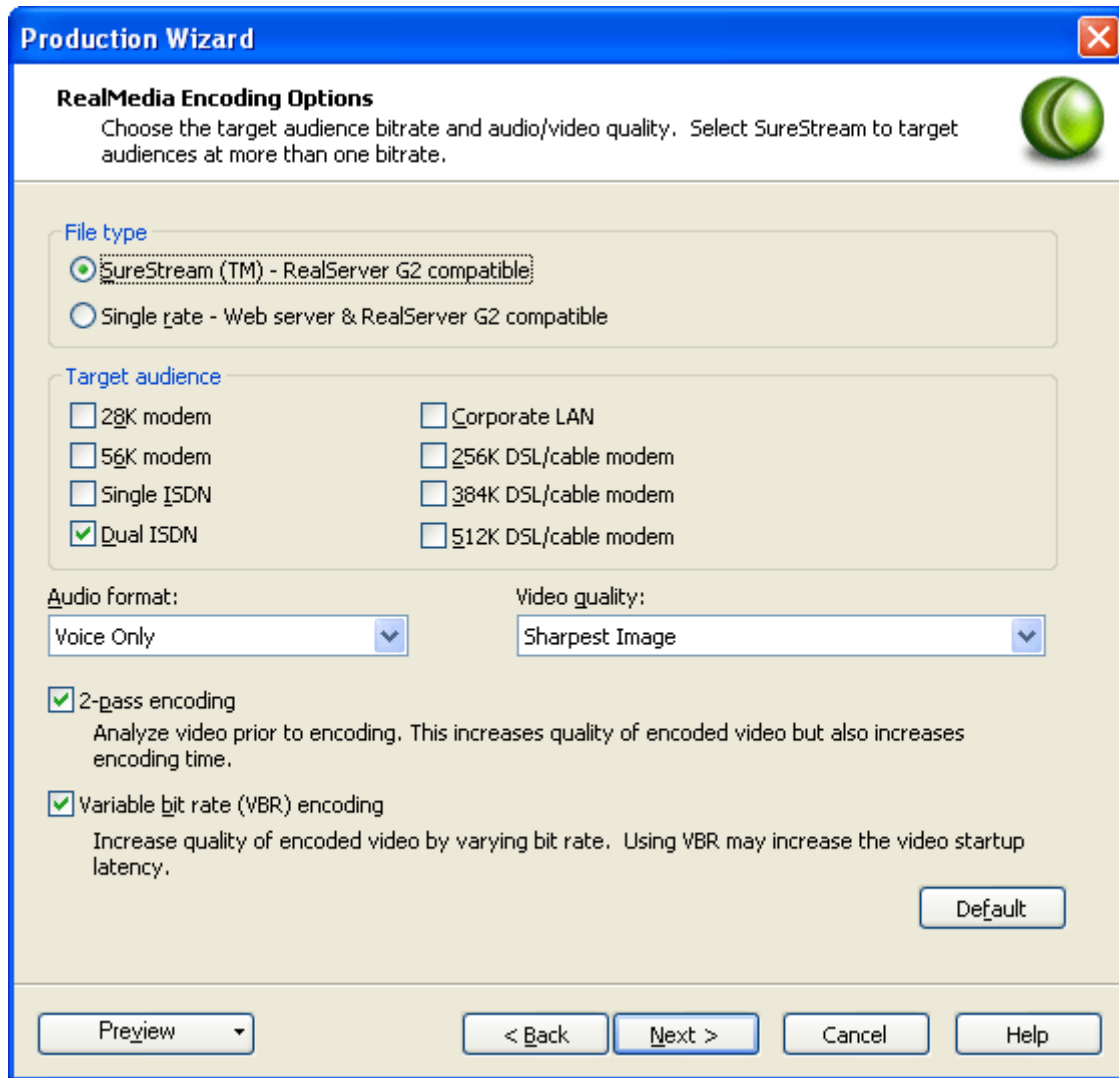
For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Continue with Production Wizard

To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **Produce Video**.

RealMedia Encoding Options

The *RealMedia Encoding Options* dialog box is used to configure the video during production.




RealMedia Options Description Table

RealMedia Option	Description
File Type	Select a RealVideo file type: either SureStream or Single Rate . Select SureStream to produce a file that can stream to target audiences at more than one bitrate. Contact your system administrator if you need more information.
Target Audience	Select an appropriate throughput option based on the access methods your viewers are likely to use. In the Target Audience field, select the bitrate from the menu by clicking the box next to the option. A check mark appears once an option is enabled.
Audio Format	Select a format from the dropdown list that matches the audio included <i>on the Timeline</i> . A No Audio setting is included to produce a movie with no audio track.
Video Quality	Select an option from the dropdown list that matches the video on the Timeline. For most screen capture videos, Sharpest Image is the best choice.
2 Pass Encoding	Attempts to achieve better compression by analyzing the video prior to encoding. This causes the encoding process to take longer, but may produce a smaller file.
Variable Bit Rate	Attempts to achieve better compression by varying the bits used to encode different

RealMedia Option	Description
Encoding	parts of the video.
Default	To restore defaults, click Default .
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Production Preview Option

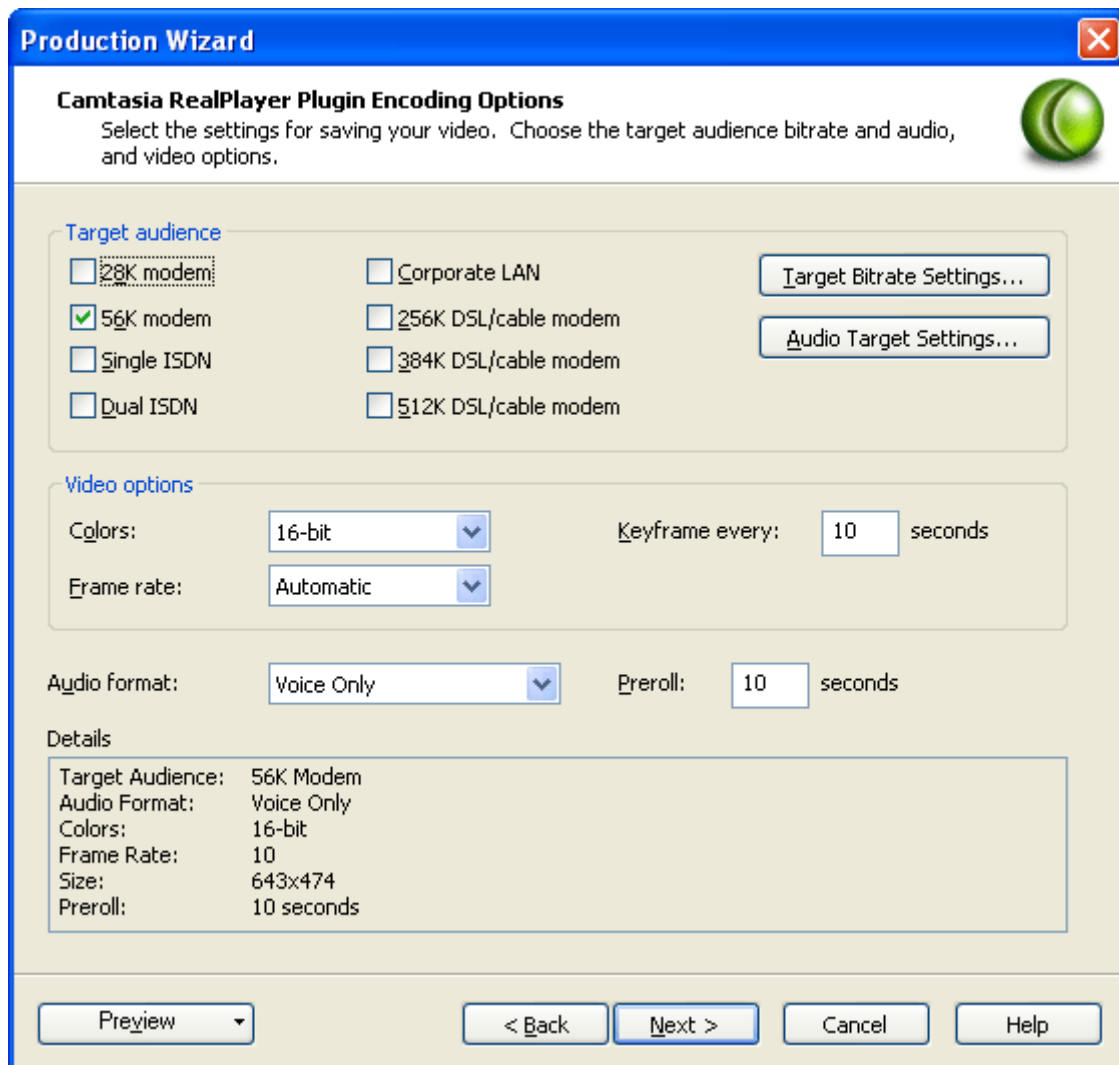
For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Continue with Production Wizard

To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **Video Size**.

Camtasia for RealPlayer Plug-in Encoding Options

The *Camtasia RealPlayer Plug-in Encoding Options* dialog box is used to configure the video during production.



This file format uses the Camtasia for RealPlayer Plug-In to stream video with perfect lossless quality. The audio stream is encoded with standard Real Audio codecs. Choose for content with few color gradients, low motion, and where the highest video quality is required.

The Camtasia for RealPlayer file format produces a presentation in three files:

1. mymovie.camv (the video stream)
2. mymovie.rm (the audio stream, if any)
3. mymovie.smil (SMIL presentation file to play the audio and video streams simultaneously).

RealPlayer 8.0 or later must be installed on your system to play this format. If asked to update the RealPlayer, do so. When you select Camtasia for RealPlayer in Camtasia, the required plug-in from the RealNetworks AutoUpdate service should be downloaded automatically, if necessary.

Note: A video only presentation does not require an SMIL file. The .CAMV file can be opened directly in RealPlayer.

Note: To stream a .CAMV file from a RealServer, stop RealServer, copy the camtasf.dll file format plug-in from the Camtasia Studio install folder to the RealServer Plug-in folder and then restart RealServer.

Tips for Reducing Dropped Frames when Producing a Camtasia for RealPlayer (.camv) File


If you are experiencing dropped frames during the production of a .camv file, consult these tips for helping reduce dropped frames:

- Increase the target bitrate.
- Decrease the audio bitrate.
- Increase the buffering 'preroll'.
- Decrease the frame rate.
- Decrease the color depth.
- Avoid content with a lot of color gradients and motion.

Camtasia for RealPlay Options

For more information on each of the options found in the *Camtasia RealPlayer Plug-in Encoding Options* dialog box, see **Camtasia for RealPlayer Plug-in Encoding Options**.

Production Preview Option


For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

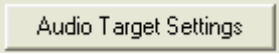
Continue with Production Wizard

To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **Video Size**.

Camtasia for RealPlay Options Description Table

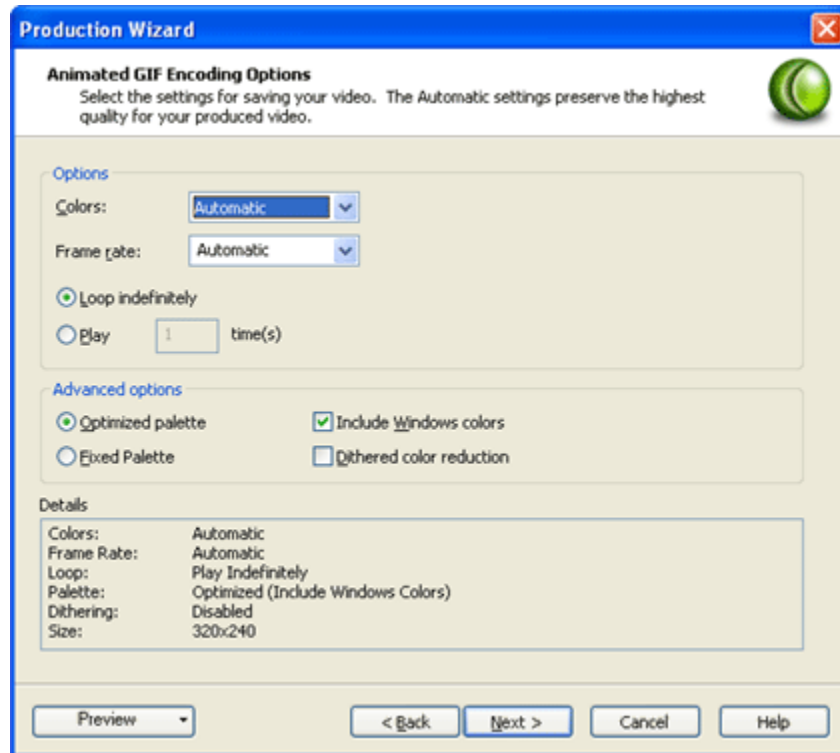
This table describes each of the *Camtasia for RealPlayer* production options.

Camtasia for RealPlayer Option	Description & Use
Target Audience	Used to select the appropriate throughput option based on the access methods your viewers are likely to use. For best performance, select the largest bandwidth likely. For conservative performance, select the smallest likely bandwidth.
Target Bitrate Settings	Used to set the overall bitrate for each target audience. This gives you control over the exact bitrate (audio and video combined) that the streaming media file is encoded for. For example, it is common to encode to a target bitrate of 34 Kbps for the 56K modem target audience, since 34 Kbps of actual useable bandwidth is what you can typically expect. To set the bitrate, click Target Bitrate Settings  . The <i>Target Bitrate Settings</i> dialog box appears. Also see the RealPlayer documentation.

Camtasia for RealPlayer Option	Description & Use
Audio Target Settings	<p>Used to set the bitrate allocated to the audio stream (if any) in the streaming media file. The video stream uses leftover bandwidth, if any. That is, if you choose 56K modem as a target audience and configure the audio stream bitrate to be 16 Kbps for the 56K modem target audience, then the video stream is encoded to an 18 Kbps bitrate (assuming the overall bitrate for 56K modem is set to 34 Kbps).</p> <p>Note: The bandwidth for the video stream (resulting in fewer dropped video frames) can be increased by choosing a lower audio bitrate.</p> <p>To set the bitrate, click Audio Target Settings . The <i>Target Audience Settings</i> dialog box appears.</p> <p>Also see the Real Player documentation.</p>
Colors	<p>This field is used to select the color depth of the video stream. 16-bit color is essentially lossless video.</p> <p>The 12- and 9-bit color settings reduce the color in the video, resulting in some loss of quality such as exhibiting bands of color gradients.</p> <p>The 12- and 9-bit color settings can significantly reduce the bandwidth required for the video stream.</p> <p>To select the colors, choose the option from the dropdown menu.</p>
Keyframe every	<p>Used to determine how often to include a key frame in the video stream.</p> <p>A key frame is a video frame that does not depend on previous frames streamed to RealPlayer. It is used to recover from lost frames, during network congestion for example, and, during seeking in the movie when the user moves the seek slider in RealPlayer.</p> <p>Increasing the key frame frequency results in quicker and smoother seeking. However, it increases the bandwidth needed for the video stream.</p> <p>To set the key frame inclusion rate, enter the amount of seconds in the Keyframe every field.</p>
Frame Rate	<p>The target frame rate for the video stream. Choose Automatic to use the highest frame rate of all the clips on the Timeline. If the frame rate can not be achieved at a given target bitrate, video frames are dropped. Lower the frame rate to reduce the bandwidth needed by the video stream, but video can become choppy.</p>
Audio Format	<p>Select a format from the dropdown list that matches the type of audio that exists in the clip(s) on the Timeline.</p> <p>A No Audio setting is included to produce a movie with no audio track.</p>
Preroll	<p>Used to set the amount of time, in seconds, that RealPlayer initially buffers the audio and video stream before it starts to play the movie.</p> <p>Note: You can artificially increase the bandwidth for the video and audio stream (resulting in fewer dropped video frames) by increasing the preroll. There is a limit to how much preroll your audience will tolerate. With too large a preroll, you lose the advantages of streaming, since so much of the file must be downloaded and buffered before the movie starts to play.</p> <p>To set the preroll, enter the amount of seconds in the Preroll field.</p>
Details	<p>The Details box shows details about the selections you have made on this tab for the audio and video options of the Camtasia for RealPlayer videos you are recording.</p>
Cancel	<p>Exit without making any changes.</p>

Animated GIF Encoding Options

The *Animated GIF Encoding Options* dialog box is used to select the options used to configure the video during production.




- The GIF video format is used to publish short tutorials and product demonstrations that playback in any browser on any computer platform.
- Camtasia Studio creates highly optimized animated GIF files that are as small as possible. However, there are practical limits on the length of GIF animations since they must be downloaded entirely before they can play in a browser.
- GIF animations do not contain audio and are limited to 256 colors.

GIF Options Description Table

GIF Option	Description
Colors	Select a color option from the drop-down list. The default <i>Automatic</i> option preserves the highest color setting <i>on the Timeline</i> . If you want to decrease the size of the video, select a lower color depth. The <i>Automatic</i> option is selected by default.
Frame Rate	Select a frame rate option from the drop-down list. The default <i>Automatic</i> option preserves the highest frame rate setting on the Timeline. If you want to decrease the size of the video, select a lower frame rate. The <i>Automatic</i> option is selected by default.
Loop indefinitely	After the video ends, it will loop to the beginning and play over and over. Disable if you want the video to end after it plays. Enabled by default.
Play	Used in conjunction with the Loop option. Enable to stipulate the number of times to loop the video. Enter number of times to play.
Optimized Palette	Generates an optimized palette using all of the colors in all frames in the GIF file. This typically produces a better quality and better looking GIF file than Fixed Palette. Enabled by default.
Fixed Palette	Generates a palette with a fixed set of colors. It may be useful if you must have the same

GIF Option	Description
	palette used in multiple GIF files. For example, multiple animated GIF files playing on a Web page viewed on a 256-color desktop.
Include Windows colors	Include the standard Windows 20 colors in the GIF file palette (either Optimized Palette or Fixed Palette). Typically produces the best results for screen recordings. Enabled by default.
Dithered color reduction	Apply a dithering effect during color reduction. Dithering attempts to smooth the effects of color reduction. Dithering is typically only useful for real-world content (for example, a music video) rather than screen recordings of an Office-style application.
Details	The Details box shows details about the selections you have made on this tab for the audio and video options of the GIF videos you are recording.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Production Preview Option

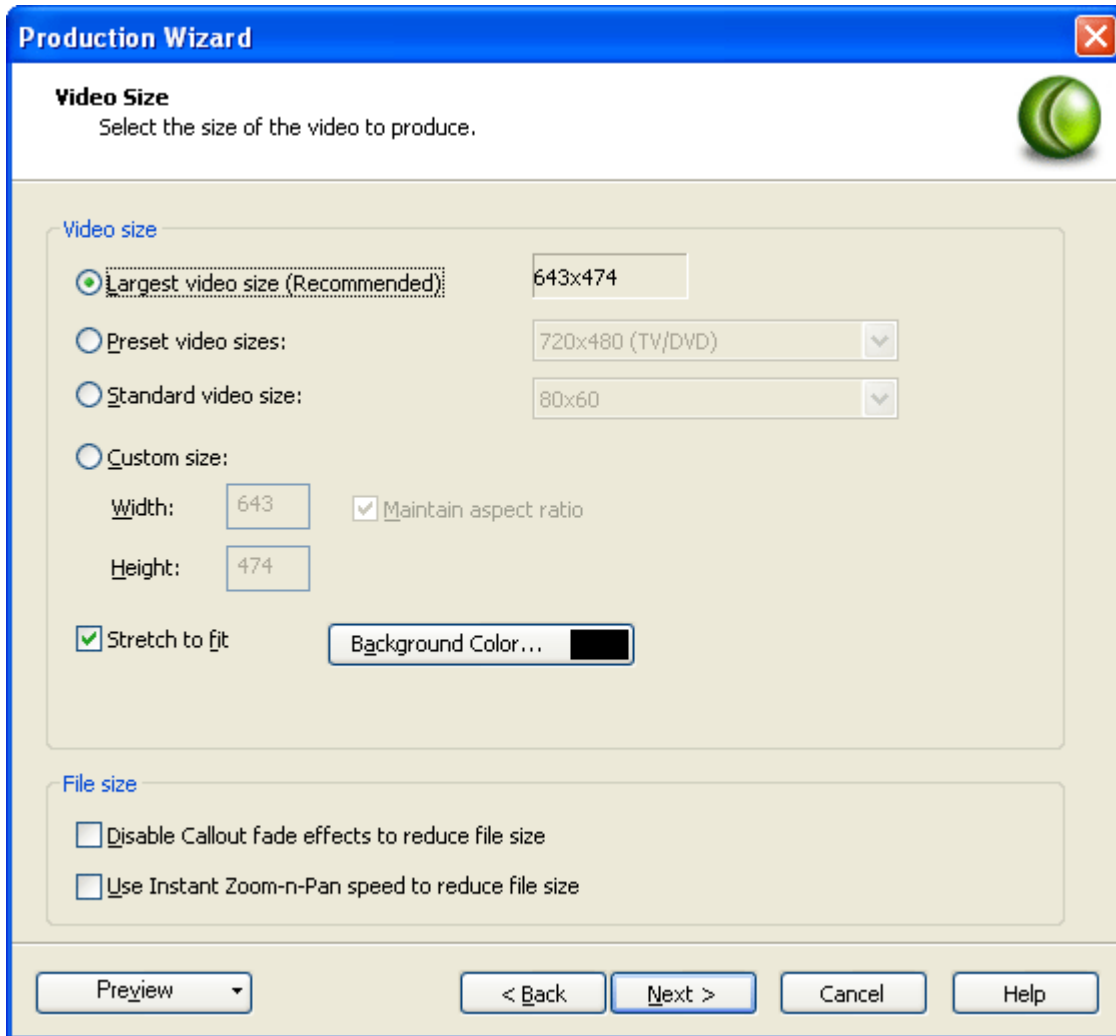
For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Continue with Production Wizard

To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **Video Size**.

Video Size

The *Video Size* dialog box is used to set the size of the produced video.




This table describes each of the video Size options.

Video Size Option	Description
Largest video size (Recommended)	Creates the entire video using the size of the largest clip in the storyboard. Recommended since Camtasia Studio calculates the size required to include the largest dimensions encountered in the clips included in the project.
Preset video size	Create the video using a preset size. Choose the radio button. From the dropdown menu, choose the preset size.
Standard video size	Create the video using a standard size. Choose the radio button. From the dropdown menu, choose the size.
Custom size	Create the video using dimensions that you set. Choose the radio button. Type the Width and Height in the boxes provided.
Stretch to fit	Enlarges small clips and reduces larger ones to fit. If the image is distorted, recalculate aspect ratios. Enable the Stretch to fit box if you want to create a final movie that fits the size you have specified regardless of individual clip size.

Video Size Option	Description
Background color	Sets the background color for clips that are smaller than the standard size specified. Click Background Color . Choose the color. Click OK . The color is updated in the Size tab.
Disable Callout fade effects to reduce file size	Disables the fade in and/or out effects on Callouts included in the video in order to reduce the final produced video size.
Use instant Zoom-n-Pan speed to reduce size	Disables the slow or fast options for Zoom-n-Pan effects included in the video in order to reduce the final produced video size. The Zoom-n-Pan effects are set to Instant.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Production Preview Option

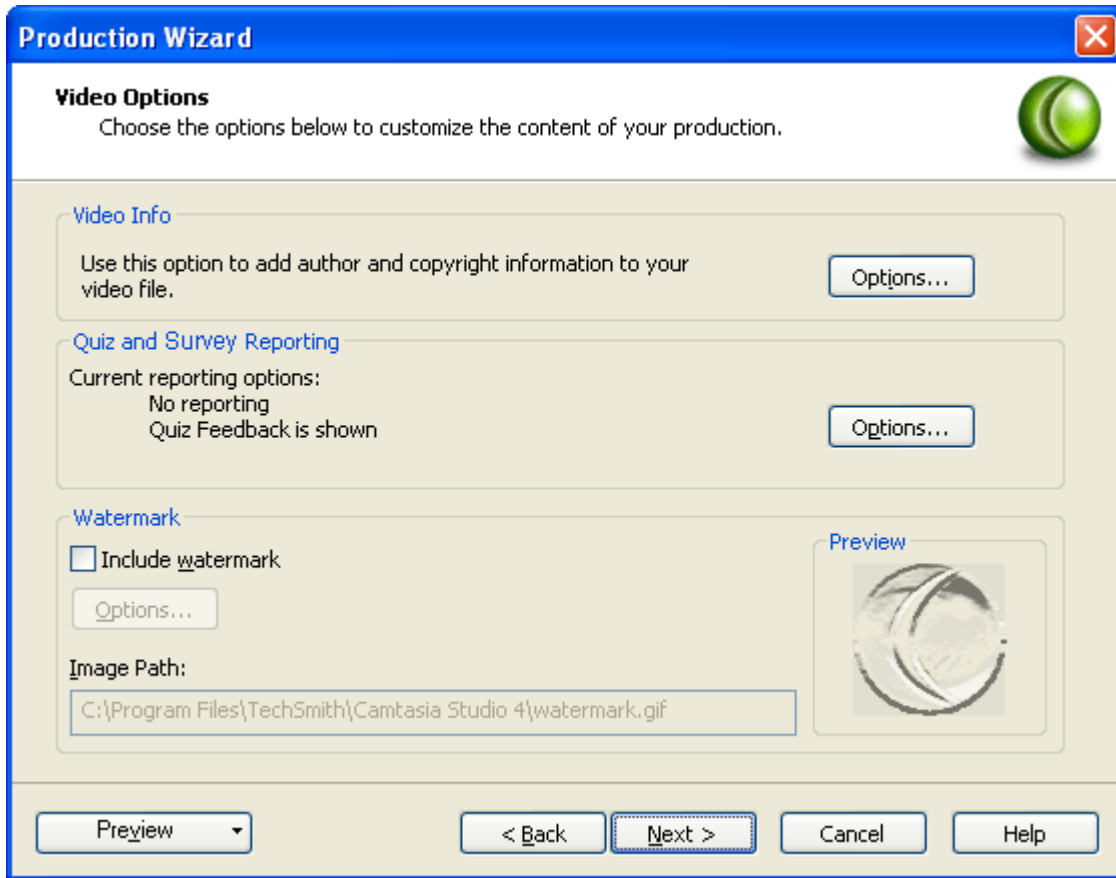
For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Continue with Production Wizard

To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **Video Options**.

Video Options

The *Video Options* dialog box is used to choose the Watermark and Quiz reporting options. To change or **Add Metadata Using the Project Properties**, click **Options** in the *Video Info* group box.




Video Options Description Table

This table describes each of the *Video Information* options.

Video Information Option	Description
Video Info Options	Used to enter additional information about the video that you want displayed to your audience, such as the title, author, and copyright. For information on these options, see Add Metadata Using the Project Properties .
Quiz and Survey Reporting Options	Choose to whether or not to have reporting for the Quizzes on the Timeline. If you choose to report, you can modify the report settings here. Enable the SCORM option. The Options button becomes enabled. See also: Quiz and Survey Reporting Options and Manifest Options .
Include watermark	Include a watermark in this video.
Watermark Options	Once Include watermark is selected, the Options button is enabled. Click this button to open the <i>Watermark</i> dialog box that contains the watermark display options. See also: Watermark Dialog Box .
Image Path	Shows the path and file name for the watermark image. A read only field. This information is updated from the Watermark dialog box's Image Path field.

Video Information Option	Description
HTML	Create a Web page that has the video already embedded into it for simple and easy Web production. The <i>HTML</i> dialog box is used to define several options for the Web page such as alignment of the video in the page, player controls, and more. If you are creating an MP3 or iPod file at this time, there will also be download links for these built into the HTML page. For information on these options, see HTML Options .
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

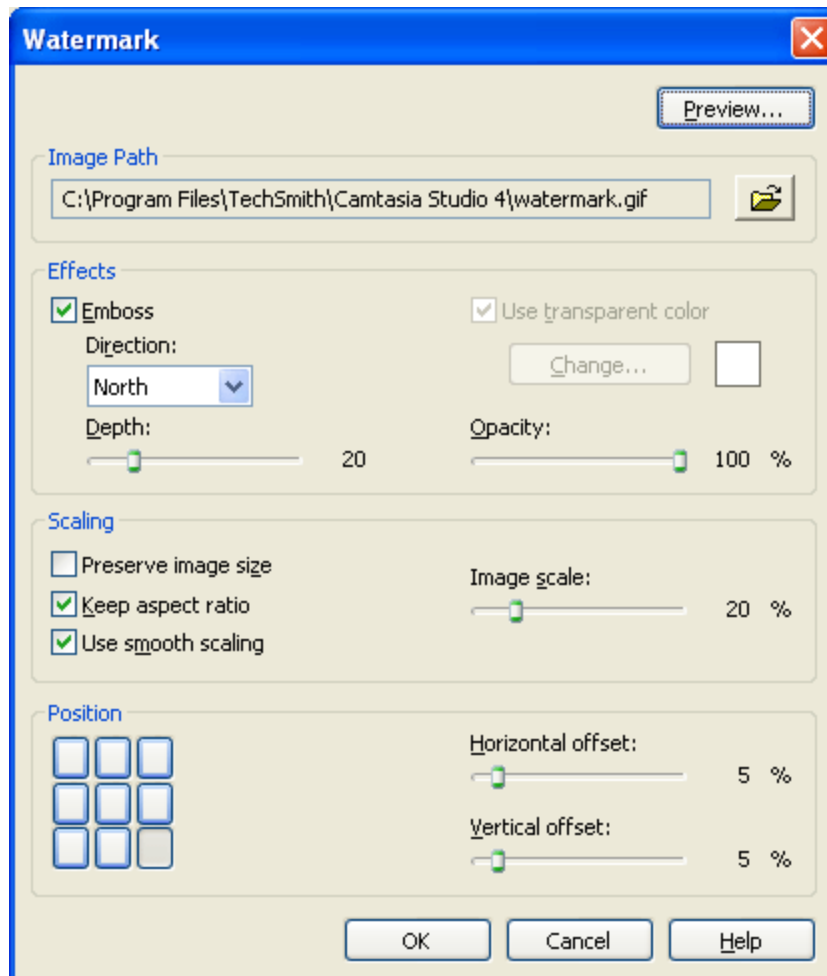
For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Continue with Production Wizard


To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **Marker Options**.

Watermark Dialog Box

The *Watermark* dialog box is used to set the options for the watermark.

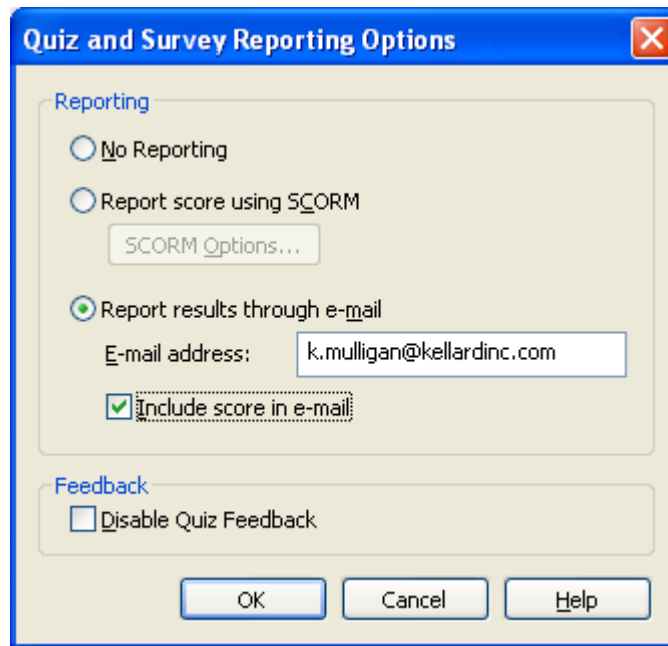


This table describes each of the Watermark options.

Watermark Option	Description & Use
Preview	Turns the watermark preview on to show how the watermark appears in the produced video.
Image Path	Select the image to use as the watermark. Click Browse  . Select the watermark image and click Open . The image is updated to the Image Path field. Additionally, the image is displayed in the <i>Watermark Preview</i> window.
Emboss	Creates an underlay watermark effect that appears translucent and slightly raised.
Direction	Changes how pronounced the embossing effect appears.
Depth	The emboss direction refers to a shadow effect on the embossed image and a rough indication of the direction of a light source. Use the Preview option to see how the direction changes the embossing effect.
Use Transparent Color	Makes part of the watermark image transparent. When selected, the areas of the watermark image that match the transparent color are hidden so that the video shows through the watermark.
Change	Select the Transparent Color to be used. The transparent color you select must match the area(s) that you want to be transparent in the watermark image. Use the Preview to verify that the transparent effect works. The preview will not show it as being transparent until the right color is selected. In order to make the background transparent, white must be selected in the <i>Color</i> dialog box.
Opacity	Opacity is the attribute that allows the watermark to be solid (showing none of the video behind it) or to have varying degrees of transparency (the ability to see part of the video through the image). To adjust the amount of opacity that is applied to the watermark, grab the slider bar and move up toward more opaque (solid) or down toward less opaque (transparent).
Preserve Image Size	Inserts the watermark graphic at its full size. Will not apply any scaling to the graphic at all.
Keep aspect ratio	Maintains horizontal and vertical size aspect ratio when scaling the watermark image. When selected, the watermark appears normal, not stretched or distorted. Default setting is on.
Use smooth scaling	Applies a smooth scaling algorithm to the watermark image for less jaggedness. Default setting is on. Turn off if it interferes with the transparency of the watermark.
Image Scale	Changes how big the watermark image appears. 100% means the watermark image is at its full size.
Positioning Cluster	Use the nine-button positioning cluster to select the position of the watermark within the video frame.
Horizontal Offset	Changes the horizontal offset of the watermark image from the edge of the video frame. Used to refine the watermark positioning.
Vertical Offset	Changes the vertical offset of the watermark image from the edge of the video frame. Use the Preview to see the offset effect.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Quiz and Survey Reporting Options

In the *Quiz and Survey Reporting Options* dialog box, choose whether or not to have reporting for the Quizzes on the Timeline. If you choose to report, you can modify the report settings in this dialog box.



Quiz Reporting Option	Description
No Reporting	Enable if you do not want reporting of any kind for this video.
Report score using SCORM	Produces a packaged eLearning lesson with the video using SCORM. SCORM, <i>Sharable Content Object Reference Model</i> , defines a reference model for sharable learning content objects.
SCORM Options	Once you enable the SCORM option, the Options button becomes enabled. Click to open the <i>Manifest Options</i> dialog box. Set the options for the eLearning lesson. See also: Manifest Options .
Report results through e-mail	Reports the results of the Quiz via e-mail using an email address that you provide. The Quiz taker's answer for each question is included in the e-mail.
E-mail address	Once you enable the Report results through e-mail option, the E-mail address field becomes enabled. Enter the complete e-mail address in this field.
Include score in e-mail	Includes the overall Quiz score in the e-mail that is sent.
Disable Quiz Feedback	The Quiz taker will not receive feedback on each question that they answer.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Manifest Options

A SCORM manifest is a mandatory XML file that describes the components of a content package.

The *Manifest Options* dialog box is used to define several options for the Manifest such as course name, course description, lesson name, and more.

This dialog box can be accessed within the *Video Options* dialog box in several different ways depending on if you have a Quiz on the Timeline. Click the appropriate option below.

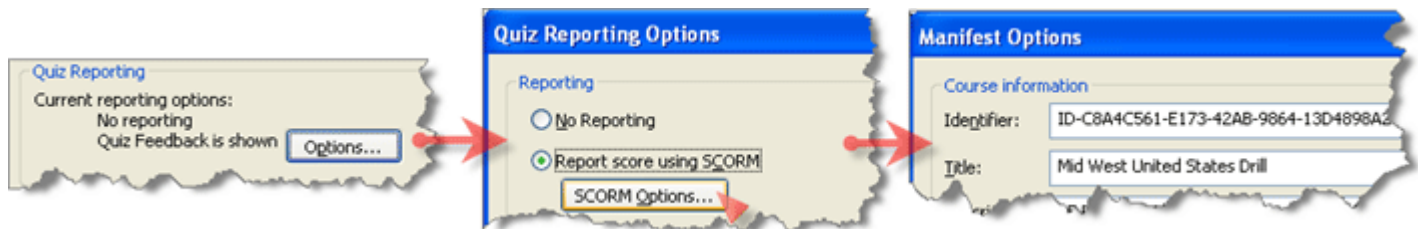
No, I don't have a Quiz on the Timeline but I'm Producing with Flash Output

1. To access this dialog box, choose **Camtasia Studio > Produce Video As > Flash (SWF/FLV) Adobe Flash Output > Next > Flash Templates** dialog box > **Next > Video Options** dialog box.
2. Within the *Video Options* dialog box, enable the **SCORM** option.
3. Click **Options**.
4. The *Manifest Options* dialog box appears.



Yes, I have a Quiz on the Timeline

1. To access this dialog box, choose **Camtasia Studio > Produce Video As > Flash (SWF/FLV) Adobe Flash Output > Next > Flash Templates** dialog box > **Next > Video Options** dialog box.
2. Within the *Video Options* dialog box, click **Options**. The *Quiz Reporting Options* dialog box appears.
3. Within the *Quiz Reporting Options* dialog box, enable the Report score using **SCORM** option.
4. Click **SCORM Options**.
5. The *Manifest Options* dialog box appears.



I am Producing with an Output Option other than Flash

1. To access this dialog box, choose **Camtasia Studio > Produce Video As > Choose an output option other than Flash SWF/FLV > Next > Encoding Option dialog box > Next > Video Size dialog box > Next > Video Options dialog box.**
2. Within the *Video Options* dialog box, enable the **SCORM** option.
3. Click **Options**.
4. The *Manifest Options* dialog box appears.



Manifest Options Description Table

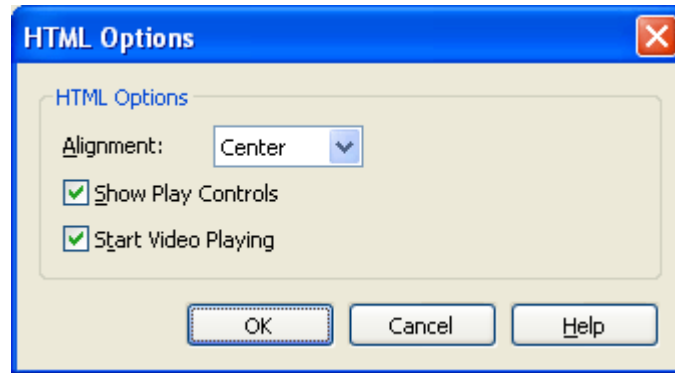
Manifest Option	Description
Identifier	The Identifier uniquely identifies the manifest. By default, an Identifier is created for you. To change the Identifier, highlight the existing entry and enter the new information.
Title	Enter the title for this eLearning course.
Description	Enter a description for this eLearning course.
Subject	Enter a subject for this eLearning course.
Version	The version indicates the version of the manifest. The default entry is 1.0. To change the version, highlight the existing entry and enter the new information.
Duration	This is the time that this eLearning lesson will take when played at the intended speed. This field is populated for you by default based and is a read-only field.
Language	Enter the language code used by the typical audience. By default, the language code is in for English.
Lesson Title	Enter the title for this lesson.
Produce zip file	All of the elements of the content packaged are zipped up into a single archive file during video production.
Produce unzipped files	Enable if you would not like all of the elements of the content package to be zipped up into a single archive file during video production.
Produce both zip file and unzipped files	All of the elements of the content package are zipped up into a single archive file during video production and , are produced unzipped as well.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

HTML Options

Note: Not available with *Adobe Flash (SWF) Movie File* option.

The **Embed Video into HTML** option is used to create a Web page that has the video already embedded into it for simple and easy Web production. The *HTML* dialog box contains several options for the Web page such as alignment of the video in the page, player controls, and more.

Within the *Video Options* dialog box, enable the **Embed Video into HTML** option. Click **Options**. The *HTML Options* dialog box appears:

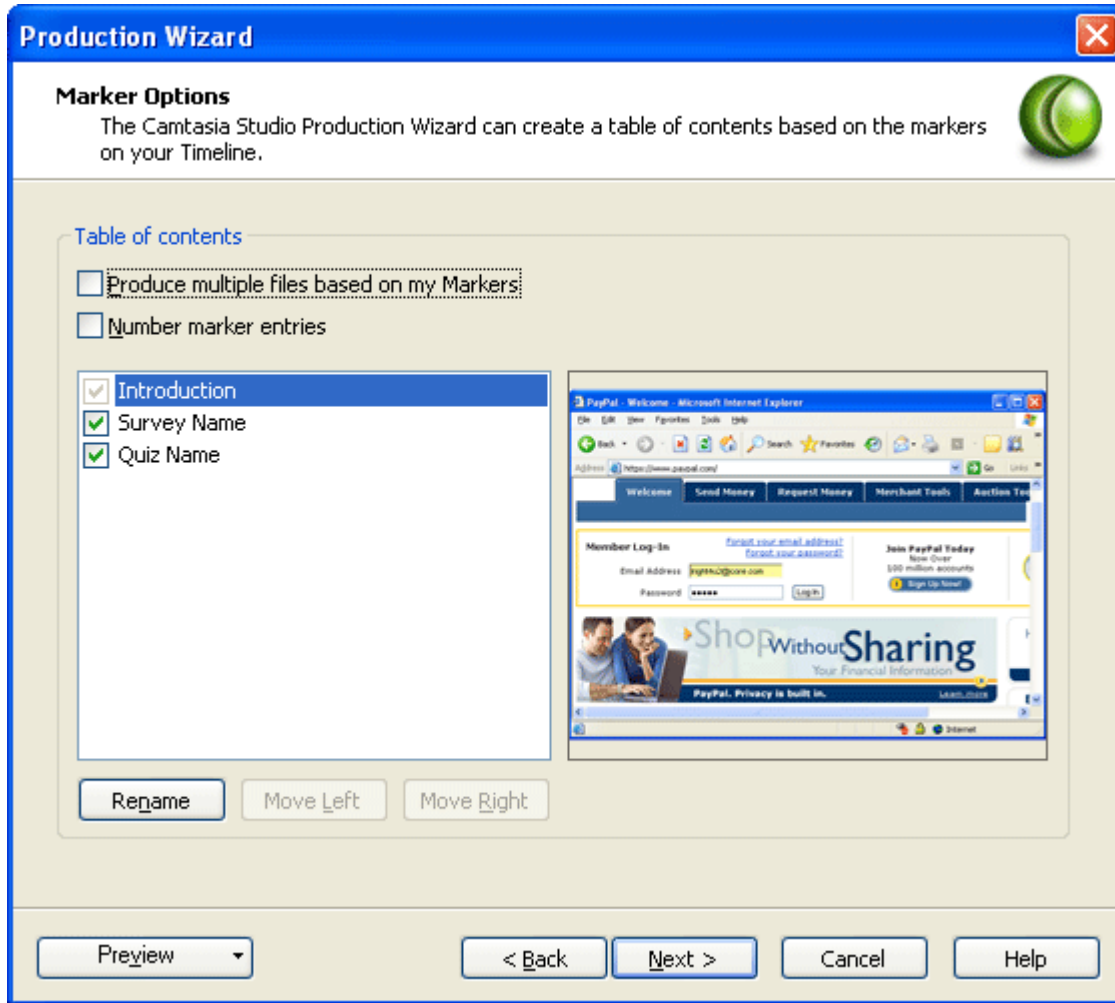


Manifest Option	Description
Alignment	Choose the alignment from the dropdown box.
Show Play Controls	Show the player controls within the HTML page. Allows for easy navigation within the video.
Start Video Playing	Start playing the video as soon as the HTML page is opened. If disabled, the viewer will need to manually start the video by using the Play button on the playback controls.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Marker Options

Note: The options available to you in this dialog box will differ depending upon the video file format that you have selected.


Incorporating Markers into the HTML page provides easy navigation points for your viewer. The *Marker Options* dialog box is used to choose the Table of Contents options and the specific Markers you want to include in the HTML page.



Marker Options Description Table

Marker Option	Description
Produce multiple files based on my Markers	Create and produce individual videos based on <i>Markers</i> that have been set during the editing process.
Include a table of contents with my produced video	Include an interactive table of contents in the produced video. Note: Must be used in conjunction with the Embed Video into HTML option found in the <i>Video Options</i> dialog box. If the Embed Video into HTML option has not been enabled, use the Back button to back up to the previous dialog box. Enable and click Next to continue.
Cut off long Marker names, don't wrap	Cut off the end of any <i>Marker</i> names that would wrap to another line.
Number Marker entries	Numbers the markers in a list.
Which Markers would you like	Enable the individual <i>Markers</i> to be included in the interactive index within the

Marker Option	Description
to use in the Table of Contents?	HTML page.
Rename	To rename a <i>Marker</i> , double-click on one in the list and type a new name. Or, click the <i>Marker</i> , click Rename , and type the new name.
Move Left	To move the <i>Marker</i> back to its original position, click the <i>Marker</i> and click Move Left .
Move Right	To indent a <i>Marker</i> , click the <i>Marker</i> and click Move Right .
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

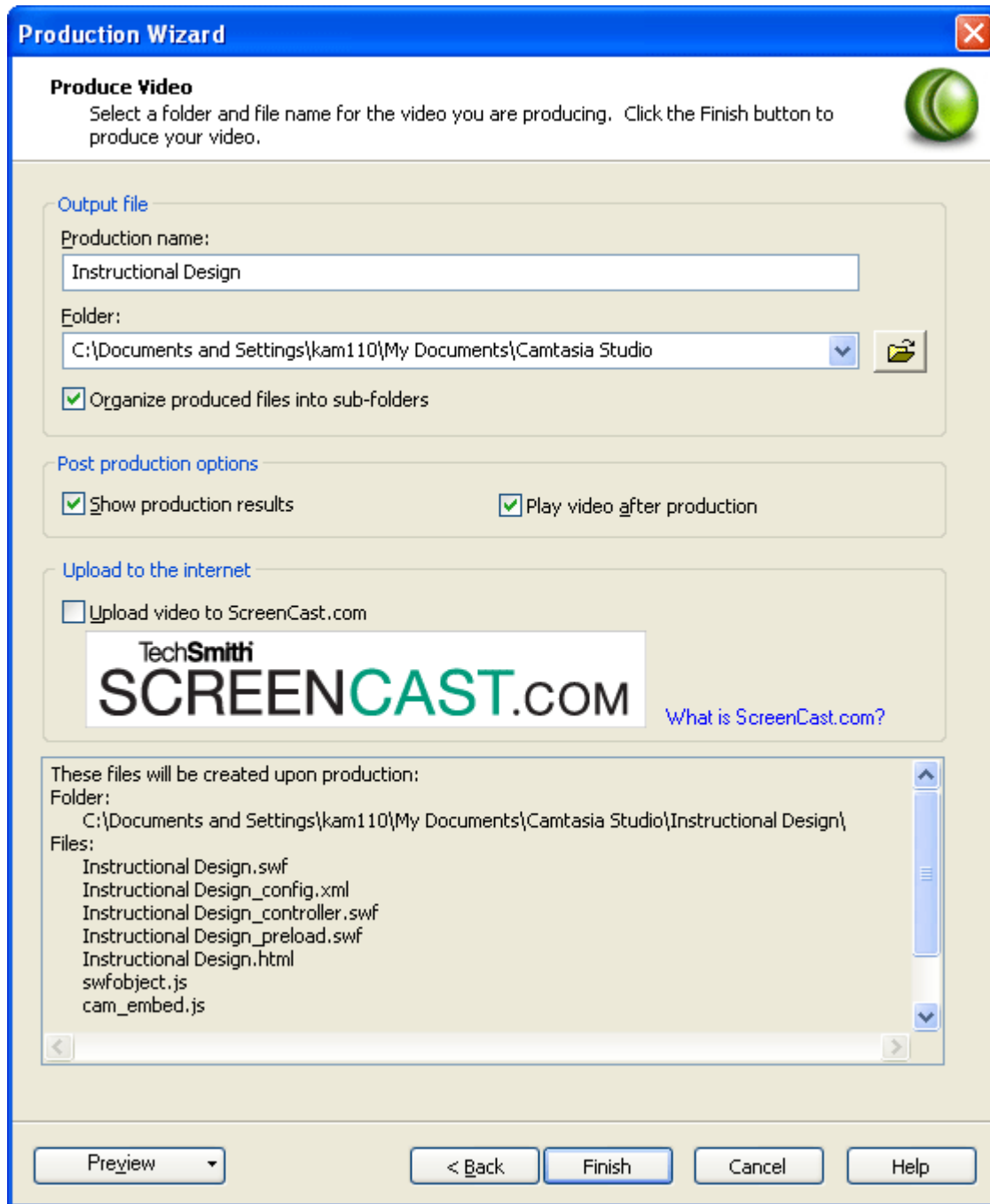
Continue with Production Wizard

To continue with the Production Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **Produce Video**.


Produce Video

The final step in producing a video is the actual rendering. This process assembles all of the audio, video, and images into one video file, based on the sequence you have established on the Timeline.

The *Produce Video* dialog box is used to enter the destination folder name and file name and lets you choose from three post production options including the automatic upload of the video



This table describes each of the Produce Video options.

Info Option	Description
Production Name	Enter the name of this video.
Folder	In the Folder field, from the drop-down list of recently-used folders, select a folder to house this video or, click Browse  to find one.

Info Option	Description
Organize produced files into sub-folders	Each produced video is placed into its own folder.
Show Production Results	View the <i>Production Results</i> dialog box after the production process is complete.
Play video after production	Play the video after the production process is complete.
Upload presentation to Screencast.com	Upload the video and any additional output options you may have produced to screencast.com. Screencast.com is a hosting site for business and academic professional users who want an easy-to-use solution with robust features for hosting and sharing video and other rich media files on the web. Unlike typical hosting sites which are geared toward customers for general entertainment purposes, Screencast.com has valuable features that a professional would appreciate such as having the choice of whether or not to retain the original quality of the content; the ability to analyze how often the content is viewed and/or downloaded; controlling access to your intellectual property and tailoring the brand experience for your audience with a customizable skin.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Continue with Production Wizard


Once you have set all of the video options, click **Finish**. The rendering will start immediately. Once the production is complete, continue with **Production Results**.

Production Results

Once the rendering process is complete, the video will playback . Additionally, the *Production Results* dialog box appears. This dialog box shows information about the movie production process, including the files that were created, content duration, content file size, and the options used to produce the movie.

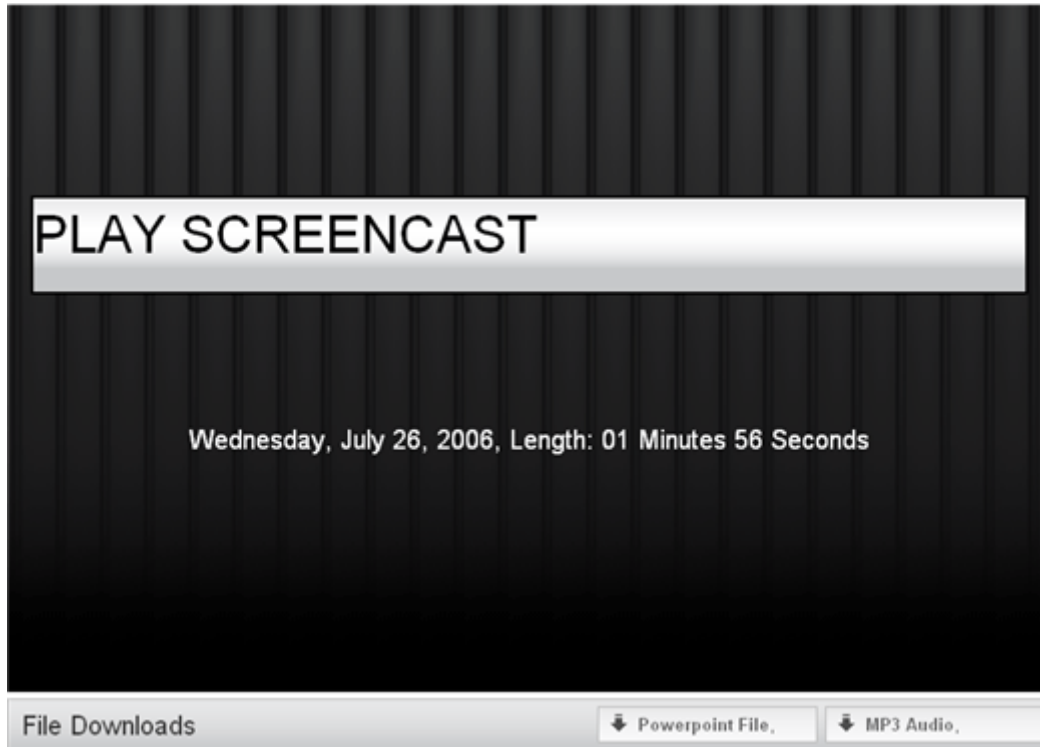
Note: Each file format opens a *Production Results* dialog box. For this example, the SWF format is shown.

After review, click **Finish**. Camtasia Studio appears. Save the video project, if desired.

For more information on the **Preview** option , see **Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline**.

Did your production include iPod, PowerPoint, or MP3 file output?

Did you choose the Flash video file output or, did you choose to include an HTML page for production options other than Flash? If so, a dialog box appears allowing the playback of the video for your review. The ancillary files that you chose to simultaneously produce are available for download from links at the bottom of this page.



Batch Produce Several Projects at One Time

The Batch Production option is used to batch process multiple Camtasia Studio projects using Production Presets and a simple Batch Production Wizard. This feature is especially helpful for those users who create many projects and would like to batch produce them all at once, maybe even overnight, in order to save time during the work day.

The Batch Production process requires you to select a Production Preset with which to produce the files. You can choose just one Production Preset to produce all of the files or, you can choose multiple Production Presets.

Before the Batch Produce is begun, create the Production Preset to use.

See also:

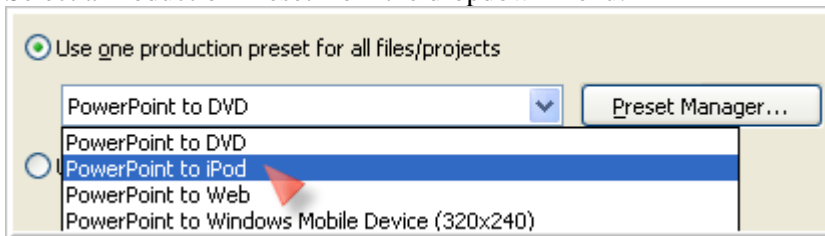
- **Production Presets**
- **Create a New Production Preset**
- **Manage Production Presets**
- **Use One Production Preset for all Produced Files**
- **Use More Than One Production Preset for all Produced Files**

Use One Production Preset for all Produced Files

1. From within the *Task List*, choose **Produce > Batch production**:



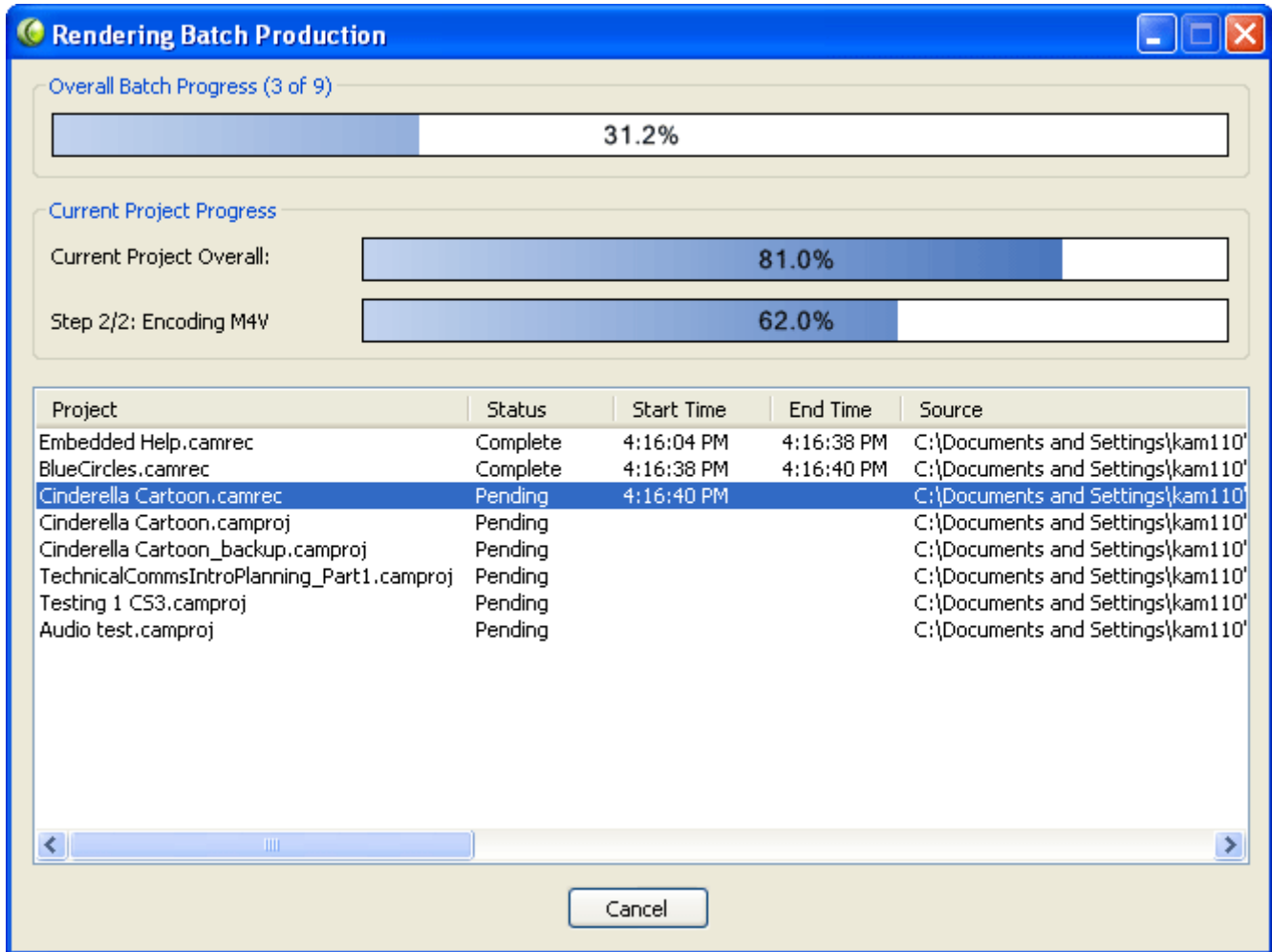
2. The *Select Files* dialog box appears.
3. Click **Add Files/Projects** to add the projects to produce.
4. The *Select Files and Projects to batch Produce* dialog box appears. Find the files. To select multiple files, hold down the <CTRL> key while selecting the files with the mouse.
5. Click **Open**. If you have added any files in error, highlight them and click **Remove Selected**.
6. When you have all the files added to the list, click **Next**.
7. Click **Use one Production Preset for all files**.
8. Select a Production Preset from the dropdown menu:



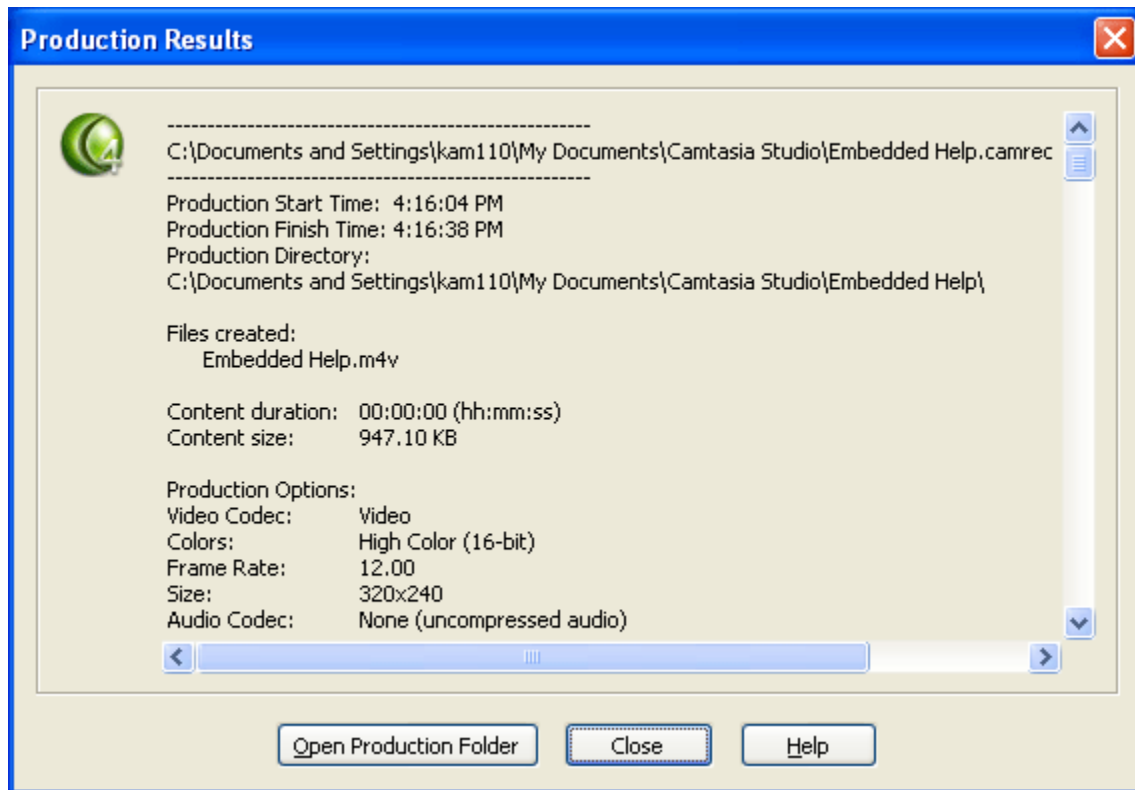
9. Click **Next**. The *Batch Production Finish* dialog box appears. Find the folder where the produced files are saved.
10. To produce projects and files in separate folders, enable the **Organize produced files into sub-folders** option.
11. To see a summary page after the production process stops, enable the **Show production results** option.

After the Batch Processing Begins

After you click **Finish**, the batch processing will immediately begin. As the batch process proceeds, the status of each of the projects being produced appears.



Once the batch processing is complete, the *Production Results* dialog box appears.



This results box gives you valuable information about the produced files such as the start and end times, the name of the produced video, and where the files are stored once they were produced.

Click **Close** to exit the *Production Results* dialog box.

To create a new Production Preset, see:

Production Presets

Create a New Production Preset

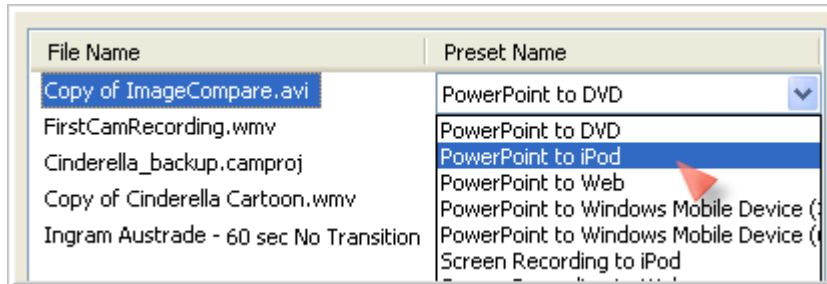
Manage Production Presets

Use More Than One Production Preset for all Produced Files

1. From within the *Task List*, choose **Produce > Batch production**:



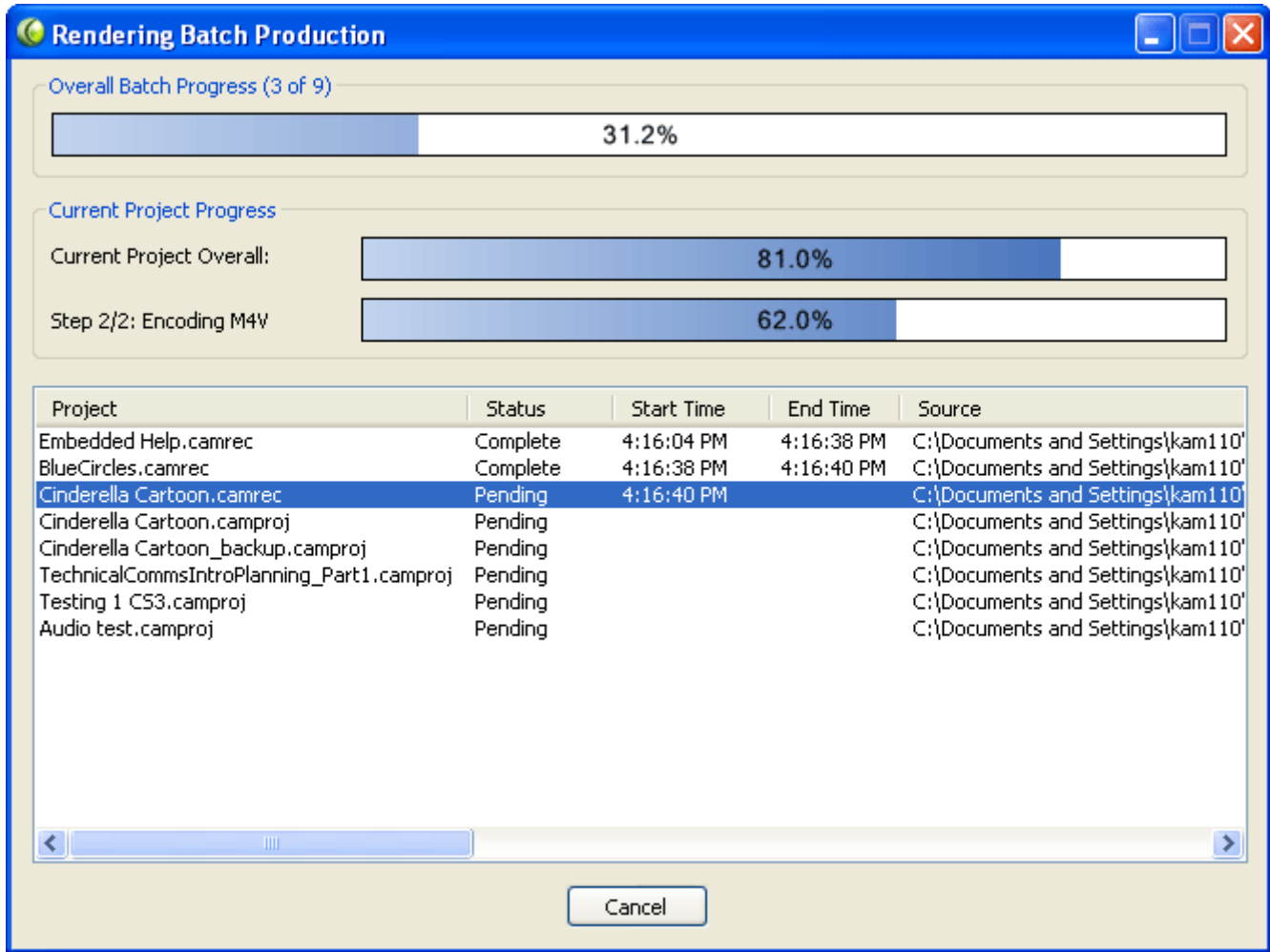
2. The *Select Files* dialog box appears.
3. Click **Add Files/Projects** to add the projects to produce.
4. The *Select Files and Projects to batch Produce* dialog box appears. Find the files. To select multiple files, hold down the <CTRL> key while selecting the files with the mouse.
5. Click **Open**. If you have added any files in error, highlight them and click **Remove Selected**.
6. When you have all the files added to the list, click **Next**.
7. Click **Use a different Production Preset for each file/project**.
8. Click **Next**. The *Select Presets* dialog box appears. Highlight the file name and click the **Preset Name** field to enable the dropdown menu.
9. Choose a Production Preset for each file:



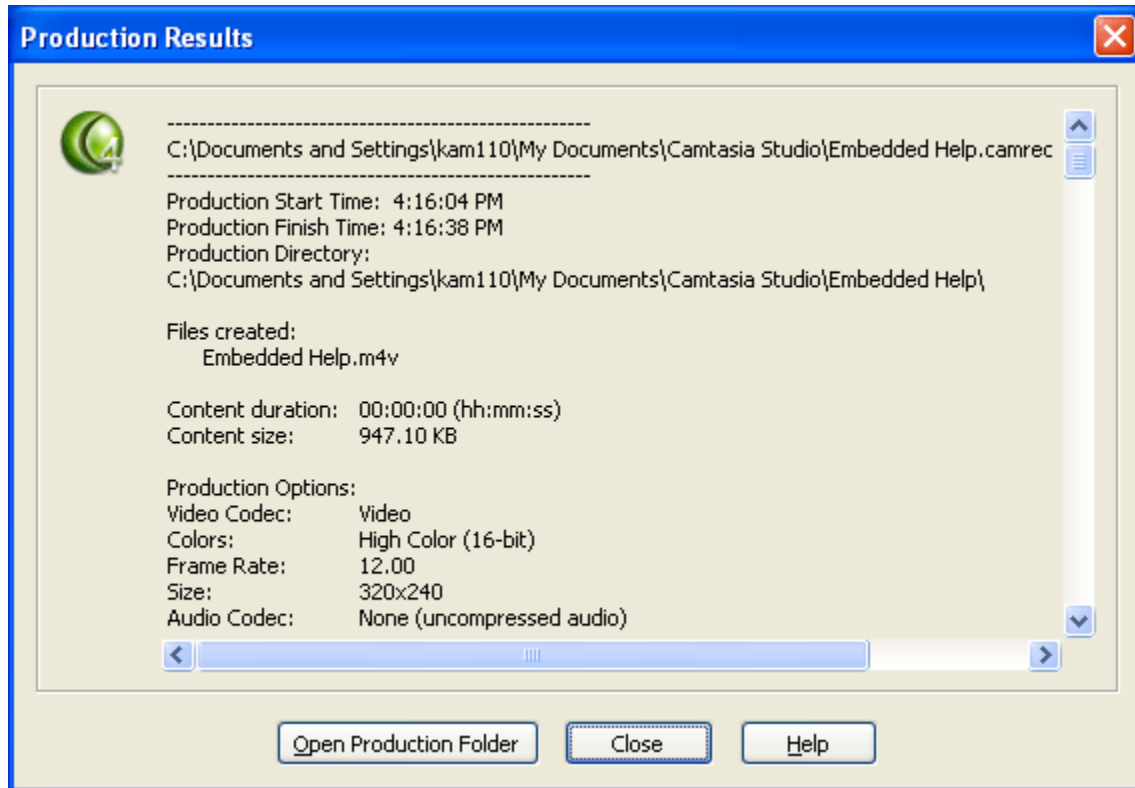
10. When you are done selecting the individual Production Presets, click **Next**. The *Batch Production Finish* dialog box appears. Find the folder where the produced files to be saved.
11. To produce projects and files in separate folders, enable the **Organize produced files into sub-folders** option.
12. To see a summary page after the production process stops, enable the **Show production results** option.
13. Click **Finish**.

After the Batch Processing Begins

After you click **Finish**, the batch processing will immediately begin. As the batch process proceeds, the status of each of the projects being produced appears.



Once the batch processing is complete, the *Production Results* dialog box appears.



This results box gives you valuable information about the produced files such as the start and end times, the name of the produced video, and where the files are stored once they were produced.

Click **Close** to exit the *Production Results* dialog box.

To create a new Production Preset , continue with:

Production Presets

Create a New Production Preset

Manage Production Presets

Package a Video as a Pack and Show Executable File

Pack and Show is used to package the video for easy one-step distribution to your users. Pack and Show creates a Windows-executable file that users can double-click to unpack the file and play the movie.

You have the option to include the TSCC codec and Camtasia Player in the package, so they are automatically installed on the user's computer. When users receive the .EXE file, they double-click it to unpack it, install TSCC if desired, and show the movie.


There are two advantages to using Pack and Show:

- Users get everything they need to view a TSCC-encoded movie.
- The packaging process may reduce the size of files to be distributed without affecting the movie quality. For example, when the movie contains uncompressed audio, the audio quality is unaffected by packaging.

Continue with **Pack and Show Wizard**.

Pack and Show Wizard

To package the video for easy one-step distribution to your users:

1. Choose **File > Pack and Show**. The *Pack and Show Wizard* dialog box appears.
2. In the **Video File Name** field, click **Browse**  to find the video.
3. The name of the executable file and its path is automatically populated in the **Executable File Name** field based upon the name of the video that was chosen. It is stored in the same directory as the selected video. You can accept the default entry or enter a new file name and/or path.
4. Once these fields are filled in, click **Next**.

If you selected an **AVI** file to package, continue with **Pack and Show Wizard Options**.

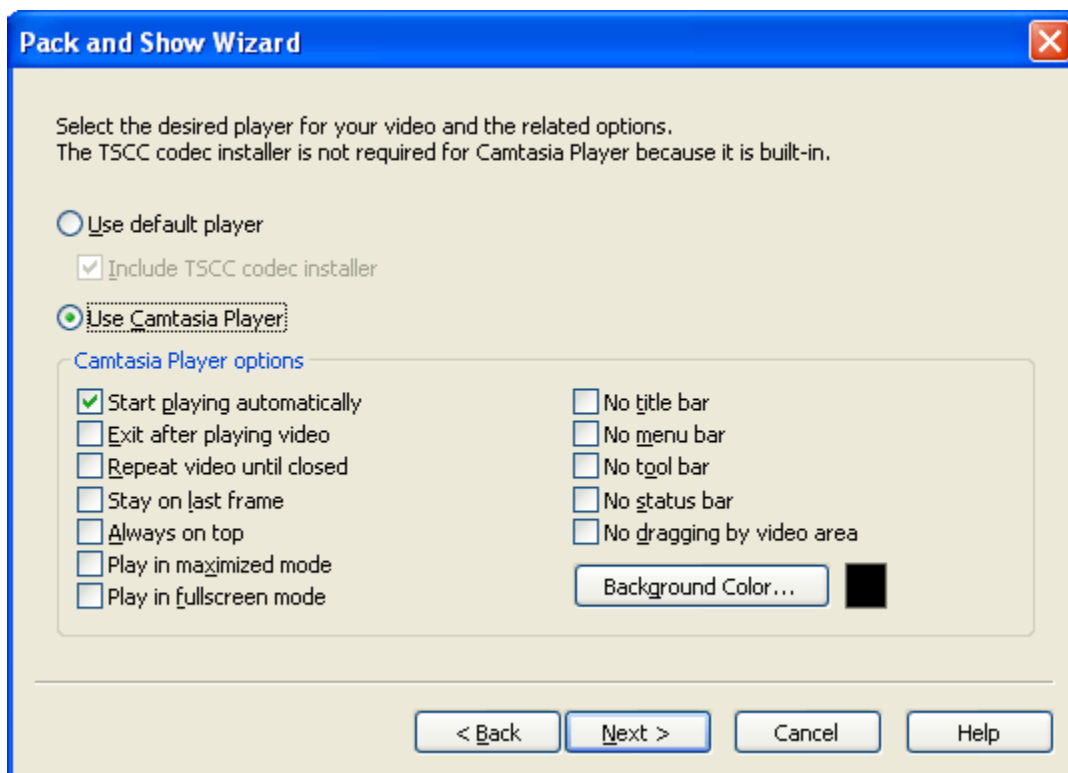
If you selected a **SWF** or **FLV** file to package, continue with **SWF Options**.

If you selected a **CAMV** file to package, continue with **CAMV Options**.

If you selected a **WMV**, **RM**, or **MOV** file to package, continue with **Package Video Options**.

Pack and Show Wizard Options

The *Pack and Show Wizard* dialog box appears for packaging an AVI video that has the TSCC codec built into it.



Use Camtasia Studio Player

By default, the **Use Camtasia Player** option is selected. The TSCC codec is built into the Camtasia Player. This means that you do not need to separately download and install the TSCC codec on the host machine in order to view the video with the TSCC if you are using *Player* for playback.

For a description of each Player option, see **Player Options Description Table**.

Use Default Player on Viewer's PC

To use the default player on the host PC, select the **Use default player** option. If desired, check the **Include TSCC codec installer** option.

To continue with the Pack and Show Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **Package Video Options**.

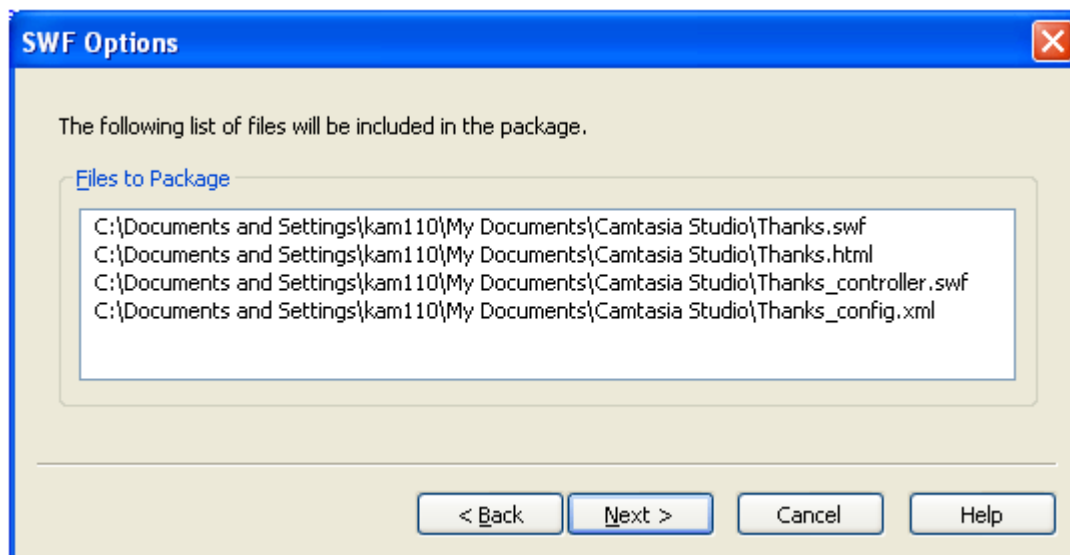
Player Options Description Table

This table describes each of the *Player* options that can be included in the Pack and Show video.

Player Option	Description
Start playing automatically	Starts <i>Player</i> as soon as the <i>Pack and Show</i> executable is double-clicked on.
Exit after playing movie	<i>Player</i> closes automatically as soon as video is done playing.
Repeat movie until closed	Automatically repeats movie until <i>Player</i> is manually closed by user.
Stay on last frame	<i>Player</i> stops on and shows last frame when video finishes.
Always on top	<i>Player</i> will reside as the topmost application on the desktop.
Play in maximized mode	<i>Player</i> operates as in maximized mode.
Play in full screen mode	<i>Player</i> operates full-screen.
To title bar	No title bar appears.
No menu bar	No menu bar appears.
No toolbar	No tool bar appears.
No status bar	No status bar appears.
No dragging by movie area	You cannot drag the video around the screen.
Background Color	Sets the background color. This is the color that is seen around the video if the video size does not take up the entire screen when the full-screen option is enabled. Click Background Color . Choose the color. Click OK .

SWF Options

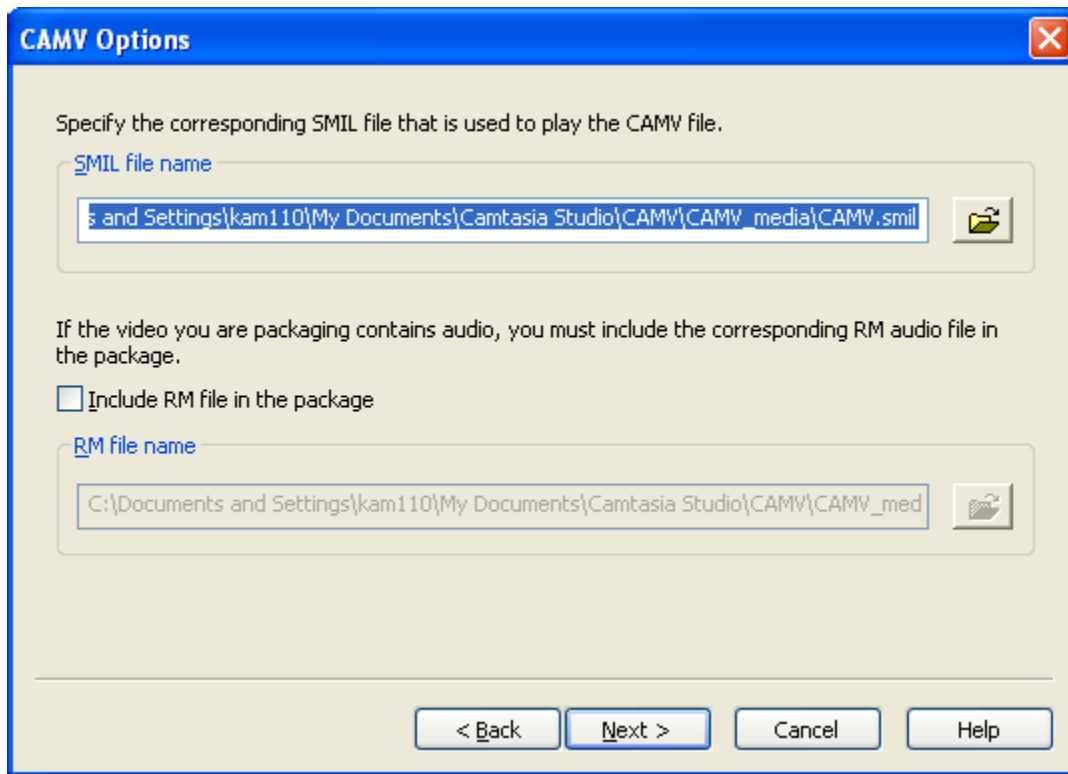
The *SWF Options* dialog box appears. This read-only field shows you a list of all the files that are included in the Pack and Show file. Each of these files are needed in order to correctly play the SWF or FLV movie.



To continue with the Pack and Show Wizard, click **Next**. Continue with **Package Video Options**.

CAMV Options

The *CAMV Options* dialog box appears.



The Camtasia for RealPlayer file format produces a presentation in three files:

1. mymovie.camv (the video stream)
2. mymovie.rm (the audio stream, if any)
3. mymovie.smil (SMIL presentation file to play the audio and video streams simultaneously).

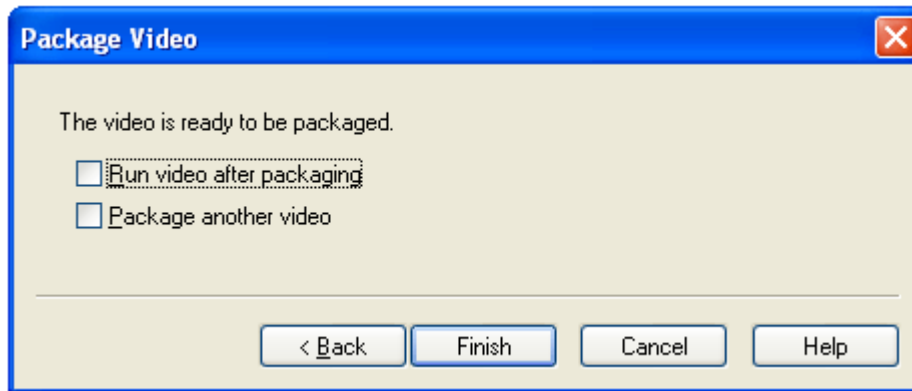
A video only presentation does not require an SMIL file. The .CAMV file can be opened directly in RealPlayer. However, if you want the video to play audio, you must include the SMIL and RM files in the Pack and Show file.

1. In the **SMIL file name** field, find the SMIL file that corresponds to the video being packaged.
2. Check the **Include RM file in the package** option.
3. In the **RM file name** field, find the RM file that corresponds to the video being packaged.
4. Click **Next**.

Continue with **Package Video Options**.

Package Video Options

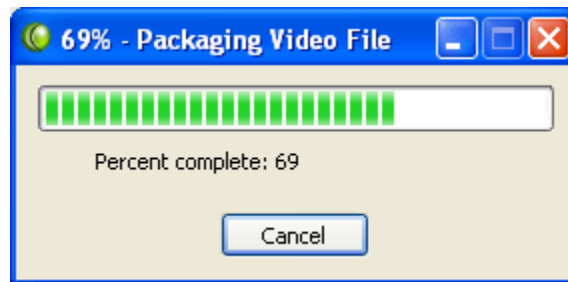
The *Package Video* dialog box appears.



Enable the **Run movie after packaging** option to play the video after it is packaged to test the Pack and Show EXE that is created.

Enable the **Package another movie** option to package another movie using this wizard after the current package processing is completed.

Click **Finish** to start the packaging process. The packaging begins and a status bar appears to alert you to the progress.



After the packaging process is complete, the video file is now packaged into an executable file and stored on your computer.

- If you opted to play the video after packaging, it will automatically begin playing.
- If you opted to package another video, the Pack and Show wizard appears. If necessary, continue with **Pack and Show Wizard**.
- To distribute the video, ship the file with the .EXE extension, instructing the recipient to double-click the file to open and play it.

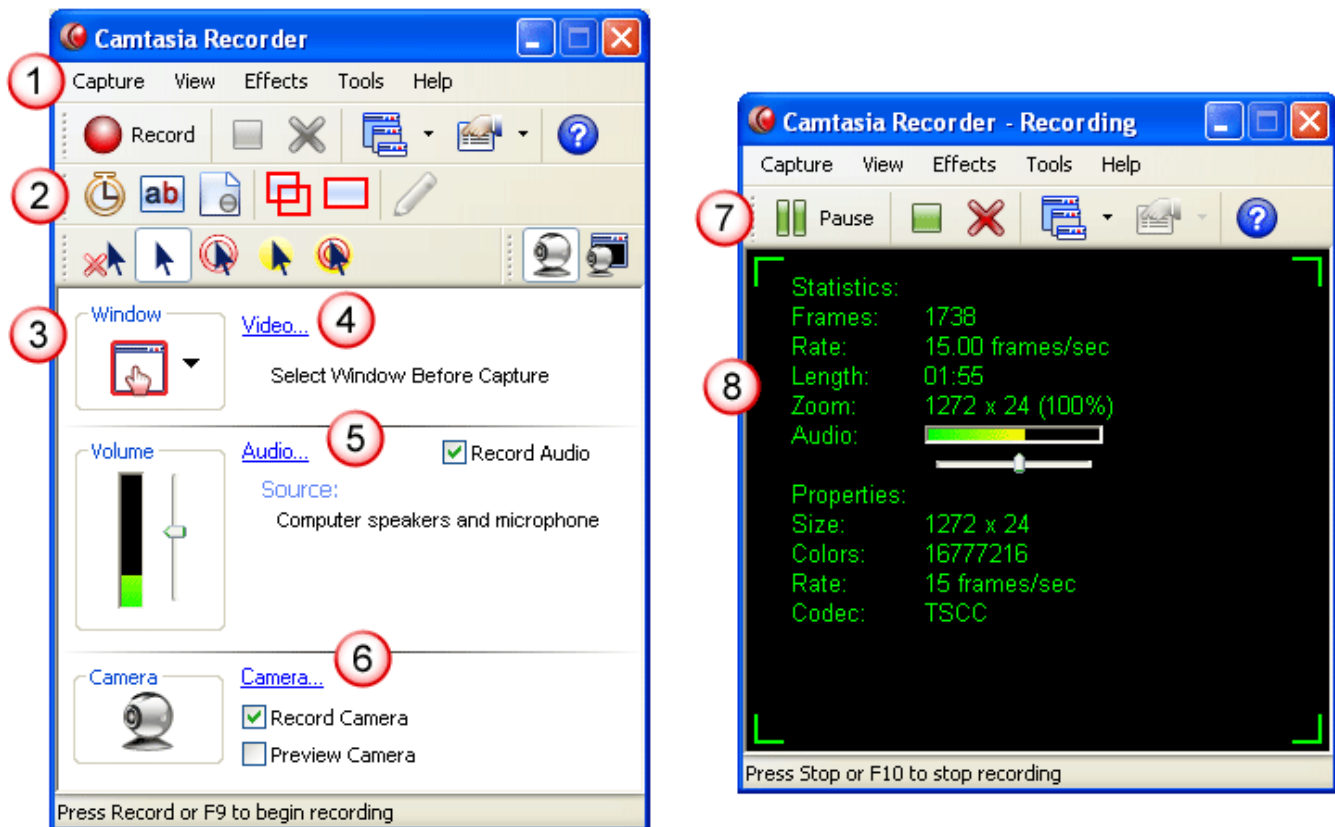
Recorder

Recording the screen is the primary cornerstone or building block for the videos that are produced. Therefore, it is important that you learn how to record the screen in a clean, steady, professional manner.

While animated slideshow software may require you to take a screenshot each time the screen changes, Recorder lets you record a real-time video by pressing the **Record** button just once.

Everything is recorded, including on screen motion such as streaming video, voice narration, and system audio. This streamlined approach focuses on the application you want to record—instead of on the recording software itself. As a result, you can rapidly record and produce training, demonstration and tutorial videos and, rich PowerPoint presentations.

Below, find an overview of the components of Camtasia Recorder's two different views of Recorder: the *Normal* view and the *Recording* view. Before you work with Recorder, take a few minutes to get familiar with these views. To open Recorder, from within Camtasia Studio, click **Record the Screen** or, from the menu bar, choose **Tools > Recorder**.



- 1 **Menu Bar.** Access all dropdown menus from the menu bar.
- 2 **Toolbar Area** where the different toolbars shows. Access several commonly used options from the toolbars. This is a quicker method than accessing the same option from the dropdown menus. The toolbars will change according to which **View > Toolbar** option is enabled.
- 3 **Input Options.** Defines the area of the desktop that is recorded. The four Recorder Input options let you capture exactly the area of the screen you want to include in the video.
- 4 **Video Tab link.** Manually set any configuration options concerning the codecs or capture mode.
- 5 **Audio Wizard link.** Select the audio input device and the input source. Also adjust the volume to the best level for the input source that is selected.

- 6 **Camera Tab** link. Select the camera input device. The options for that device are populated by your web camera.
- 7 **Main Toolbar**. Start, pause and stop the recording. Access the Recorder effects and tools options.
- 8 **Video Statistics and Properties Area**. Shows the video's vital information including frame rate, video size, the codec being used, etc.

See also:

- **Start, Pause, Stop, and Delete a Recording**
- **Record the Screen with Audio**
- **Add Annotation Effects While Recording**
- **Add Cursor & Highlight Effects While Recording**
- **Add a Watermark While Recording**
- **Add Zoom and Pan Effects While Recording**
- **Recorder Capture Modes**

Recorder Basics

Recording the screen is the primary cornerstone or building block for the videos that are produced. It is important that you learn how to record the screen in a clean, steady, professional manner.

These tips will help you along the way:

- Make multiple short recordings instead of one large recording.
- You may find that you need to rehearse video capture sequences to get the best results. To practice, you can perform several "takes," replaying them after production to see ways of improving the video.
- For lengthy or involved sequences of action, you may want to write a script before recording. Think through the actions you want to capture and write them down in sequential steps.
- Record clips using high-quality codec settings (for example, use the TechSmith Screen Capture Codec for lossless video compression, and use uncompressed PCM audio). Then, use Camtasia Studio to produce a finished video with whatever final compression you need from the high-quality lossless source clips recorded with Recorder.
- If you are including voice-over audio, write your comments exactly as you want them and print the script in large type, to make it easy to read while recording. To eliminate the sound of paper shuffling, you can tape script pages together and hang them near the monitor so they are easy to read.
- Normal mouse and cursor movement can be jerky, hesitant, or too fast for the capture to pick up. The cursor appears to jump and the program reacts before the viewer can see where the mouse is. To eliminate some of these problems, practice the sequence slowly, then build up speed as you go.
- When showing cursor movement, pause first for a fraction of a second over the element, and click. This will allow cursor position to be established in the video before the next action takes place.
- By viewing glitches and correcting them in succeeding takes, eventually a professional-looking video sequence is created.

See also:



- **Start, Pause, Stop, and Delete a Recording**
- **Record the Screen with Audio**
- **Record the Screen with Camera (PIP)**
- **Add Annotation Effects While Recording**
- **Add the Cursor while Recording**
- **Add a Watermark While Recording**

Start, Pause, Stop, and Delete a Recording

These sections give detailed information on starting, pausing, stopping, and deleting a recording.



Start a Recording

There are five ways to start recording:

- **Camtasia Studio > Welcome** dialog box > **Start a new project by recording the screen > OK**. The recording wizard will appear.
- Camtasia Studio > **Record my Screen** button  in the Task List. The recording wizard will appear.
- **Recorder > Record** button on the toolbar .
- Choose **Recorder > Capture > Record**. Recording begins immediately.
- Within **Recorder**, press the default Record/Pause hotkey, <F9>. Or, if you have changed the hotkey use that. Recording begins immediately.



Pause a Recording

There are four ways to pause recording:

- Click **Pause** on Recorder's main toolbar .
- Click **Pause** on the recording toolbar .
- Choose **Recorder > Capture > Pause**.
- Press the default Record/Pause hotkey, <F9>. Or, if you have changed the hotkey use that.



Stop a Recording

This finishes and saves the current capture. There are four ways to stop recording:

- Click **Stop** on Recorder's main toolbar .
- Click **Stop** on the Recording toolbar .
- Choose **Recorder > Capture > Stop**.
- Press the default Record/Pause hotkey, <F10>. Or, if you have changed the hotkey use that.

Delete a Recording

This cancels and discards the current capture. There are three ways to delete a recording

- Click **Delete** on Recorder's main toolbar .
- Click **Delete** on the Recording toolbar .
- Choose **Recorder > Capture > Stop**.

Record the Screen with Audio



1. Choose **Start > Programs > Camtasia Studio**.
2. In the *Welcome* dialog box, click **Start a new project by recording the screen**.
3. In the *New Recording Wizard* dialog box, choose a capture option. Click **Next**.
4. In the *Select...* dialog box, choose the actual window or region that you want to capture. Click **Next**.
5. In the *Recording Options* dialog box, enable the **Record Audio** option. Click **Next**.
6. In the *Audio Settings* dialog box, choose the **Audio Input Source** options. **Note:** If there is no audio coming through the selected source, the Input Level meter will not have any read out or activity showing. Either select a different audio input source or connect the source to your PC.

Microphone Audio: Record from the microphone. This is the most commonly used option.

Speaker Audio: Record the audio that is playing out of the speakers. You can also choose to record the microphone. To record from the microphone in conjunction with the speakers, enable the Include microphone audio option.

Manual Input Selection: Choose an audio input option other than the microphone or speakers. From the dropdown list, choose the audio input device.

When you have made the audio input selection, click **Next**.

7. In the *Begin Recording* dialog box, get familiar with two of the Record options: **Record** and **Stop**.
8. Enable the **Disable display acceleration during capture option**. This will give you the best recording results. Read the tip about Hardware Acceleration and click **OK**.
9. Once you are ready to record, click **Finish**. The wizard will minimize and the Recorder appears, ready to record.
10. Click **Record** . Once you click record, the screen will momentarily go black. This is normal and expected.
11. Create the recording by performing some onscreen activity.
12. When done recording, click **Stop** . Or, press the **F10** key on the keyboard.

After you Record

After the recording is made, the *Preview Window* appears and the video plays back for review. Continue with **After you Record**.

Record the Screen with Camera (PIP)



1. Choose **Start > Programs > Camtasia Studio**.
2. In the *Welcome* dialog box, choose **Start a new project by recording the screen**.
3. In the *New Recording Wizard* dialog box, choose a capture option. Click **Next**.
4. In the *Select...* dialog box, choose the actual window or region that you want to capture. Click **Next**.
5. In the *Recording Options* dialog box, enable the **Record Audio** option. Click **Next**.
6. In the *Audio Settings* dialog box, choose the **Audio Input Source** options. **Note:** If there is no audio coming through the selected source, the Input Level meter will not have any read out or activity showing. Select a different audio input source or connect the source to your PC.

Microphone Audio: Record from the microphone. This is the most commonly used option.

Speaker Audio: Record the audio that is playing out of the speakers. You can also choose to record the microphone. To record from the microphone in conjunction with the speakers, enable the Include microphone audio option.

Manual Input Selection: Choose an audio input option other than the microphone or speakers. From the dropdown list, choose the audio input device.

When you have made the audio input selection, click **Next**.

7. In the *Begin Recording* dialog box, take a moment to get familiar with two of the Record options: **Record** and **Stop**.
8. Enable the **Disable display acceleration during capture** option. This will give you the best recording results. Read the tip about Hardware Acceleration and click **OK**.
9. Once you are ready to record, click **Finish**. The wizard will minimize and the Recorder appears, ready to record.
10. Click **Record** . Once you click record, the screen will momentarily go black. This is normal and expected.
11. Create the recording by performing some onscreen activity.
12. When you are done recording, click **Stop** . Or, press the **F10** key on the keyboard.

After you Record

After the recording is made, the *Preview Window* appears and the video plays back for review. Continue with **After you Record**.

ScreenDraw and ScreenPad

Note: The ScreenDraw and ScreenPad documentation is located on the Camtasia Studio Documentation Page. Please download the PDF guide here:
<http://www.techsmith.com/products/studio/documentation.asp>


ScreenPad Overview

ScreenPad is a tool in Camtasia Recorder that lets you add various annotations while you are recording the video. Annotations include pre-made or user-created shapes and text boxes that are stored in ScreenPad libraries. By dragging and dropping one of these library annotations onto the screen, you are creating an "instance" of that annotation.

Once you have the ScreenPad annotations arranged on the screen just the way you want them, you can save them as a layout. A layout is an arrangement of one or more annotations. They are saved in the "Layouts" tab of the ScreenPad window. Whenever you open a layout, all images appear in the same position on the screen. For instance, if you combined the company's name and logo in a layout-they will always be placed on the screen in the same position. You can assign hotkeys to the layouts used to cycle smoothly through them during recording without ever interrupting the creation of the video clip.

ScreenDraw Overview

The ScreenDraw feature is used to draw on the desktop while you record a video. Make the videos lively and easier to understand by underlining, pointing, and illustrating with the freehand drawing tool. Or, draw various shapes on screen while recording in order to highlight and draw focus to a particular area. The video can show the pen moving across the screen as you're recording, or you can pause the recording, then draw, and have the drawing appear already completed.

While recording, this feature is activated using the **ScreenDraw** button  or by using a customized hotkey. Using the ScreenDraw hotkey lets you even draw on popup menus. Additionally, you can draw various shapes, such as Highlight, Ellipse, Pen, Line, or Arrow.

ScreenDraw can also be activated from the menu bar in **Effects > Annotation > ScreenDraw**.

Add Annotation Effects While Recording

Recorder has features that allow you to apply real-time effects like cursor and object highlighting, graphic and image annotations, watermarks, time stamps, captioning and audible mouse clicks. These effects are called annotations.

The **Annotation Toolbar** contains toggle options. This means that you can use the toolbar buttons to turn the option on or off as the video is being recorded. Click the button once to enable the option. Click the button once more to disable the option.



See these topics for step-by-step directions.

- **Apply a Time or Date Stamp to a Recording**
- **Apply an Elapsed Time Stamp to a Recording**
- **Apply a Computer Name or User Name Stamp to a Recording**
- **Apply a Caption to a Recording**
- **Automatically Add Highlights to Multiple Areas of the Recording**
- **Highlight One Area of the Recording**
- **Add Cursor & Highlight Effects While Recording**

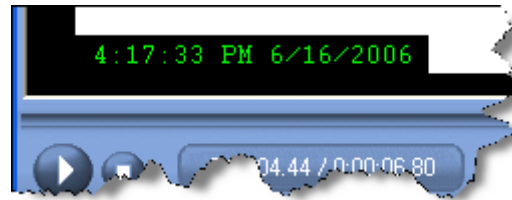
See also:

Recorder Toolbars

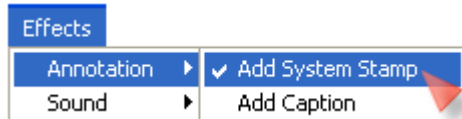
Annotation Toolbar

Apply a Time or Date Stamp to a Recording

The time and date stamps shows the recording's creation time and date. This graphic shows how the time and/or date stamp might appear in the recording.



1. Choose **Recorder > Options** button down arrow on the toolbar > **Annotation** tab.
2. Choose **Time /Date** from the System stamp group box.
3. Click **Time/Date Format**. The *Time/Date Format* dialog box appears.
4. Choose the display and the time/date format.
5. Preview the time/date display in the read-only **Preview** field. When you have the options set correctly, click **OK**.
6. (Optional) Within the *Annotation* tab, choose the **Show Stamp for** option along with the number of seconds to set how long the time/date stamp is viewed on the recording.
7. (Optional) Click **Options**. The *Options* dialog box appears. Use to define the look of the stamp including the font, font color, font style, location, etc. Click **OK**.
8. When you have made all of the selections, within the *Annotation* tab, click **OK**.
9. Choose **Effects** menu > **Annotation > Add System Stamp**. The stamp is now turned "on". This is indicated by a checkmark appearing next to the option:



10. Record as usual.

The stamp is included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Annotation > Add System Stamp** option is turned "off". This is indicated by no checkmark appearing next to the option.

See also:

Annotation Toolbar

Annotation Tab Options

Time/Date Format Dialog Box

Custom Date Format Symbols

System Stamp & Caption Customization Options

Apply an Elapsed Time Stamp to a Recording

Apply a Computer Name or User Name Stamp to a Recording

Apply a Caption to a Recording

Automatically Add Highlights to Multiple Areas of the Recording

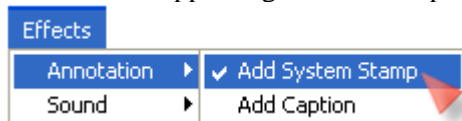
Highlight One Area of the Recording

Apply an Elapsed Time Stamp to a Recording

The elapsed time stamp indicates how much time has gone by out of the total running time of the view. This graphic shows how the elapsed time stamp might appear in the recording.



1. Choose **Recorder > Options** button down arrow on the toolbar > **Annotation** tab.
2. Choose **Elapsed Time** from the System stamp group box.
3. (Optional) Click **Options**. The *Options* dialog box appears. Use to define the look of the stamp including the font, font color, font style, location, etc. Click **OK**.
4. When you have made all of the selections, within the *Annotation* tab, click **OK**.
5. Choose **Effects** menu > **Annotation > Add System Stamp**. The stamp is now turned “on”. This is indicated by a checkmark appearing next to the option:



6. Record as usual.
The stamp is included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Annotation > Add System Stamp** option is turned “off”. This is indicated by no checkmark appearing next to the option.

See also:

Annotation Toolbar

Annotation Tab Options

Time/Date Format Dialog Box

Custom Date Format Symbols

System Stamp & Caption Customization Options

Apply a Computer Name or User Name Stamp to a Recording

Apply a Time or Date Stamp to a Recording

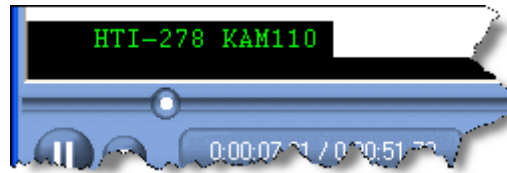
Apply a Caption to a Recording

Automatically Add Highlights to Multiple Areas of the Recording

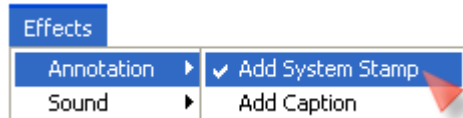
Highlight One Area of the Recording

Apply a Computer Name or User Name Stamp to a Recording

The computer name and/or user name stamp shows the names that are set up on the PC system. This graphic shows how the computer name and/or user name stamp might appear in the recording.



1. Choose **Recorder > Options** button down arrow on the toolbar > **Annotation** tab.
2. Choose **Computer name and/or User name** from the System stamp group box.
3. (Optional) Click **Options**. The *Options* dialog box appears. Use to define the look of the stamp including the font, font color, font style, location, etc. Click **OK**.
4. When you have made all of the selections, within the *Annotation* tab, click **OK**.
5. Choose **Effects** menu > **Annotation > Add System Stamp**. The stamp is now turned “on”. This is indicated by a checkmark appearing next to the option:



6. Record as usual.

The stamp is included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Annotation > Add System Stamp** option is turned “off”. This is indicated by no checkmark appearing next to the option.

See also:

Annotation Toolbar

Recorder Annotation Tab

Annotation Tab Options

Time/Date Format Dialog Box

Custom Date Format Symbols

System Stamp & Caption Customization Options

Apply an Elapsed Time Stamp to a Recording

Apply a Caption to a Recording

Automatically Add Highlights to Multiple Areas of the Recording

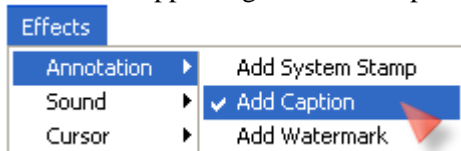
Highlight One Area of the Recording

Apply a Caption to a Recording

The caption stamp shows text entered in the **Caption** text field. This graphic shows how the caption stamp might appear in the recording.



1. Choose **Recorder > Options** button down arrow on the toolbar > **Annotation** tab.
2. Enter the text in the **Caption** field.
3. (Optional) Click **Options**. The *Options* dialog box appears. Use to define the look of the stamp including the font, font color, font style, location, etc. Click **OK**.
4. Choose the **Prompt before capture** option to be prompted for a new caption each time you record. This is used to change the caption on the fly.
5. When you have made all of the selections, within the *Annotation* tab, click **OK**.
6. Choose **Effects** menu > **Annotation > Add Caption**. The stamp is now turned “on”. This is indicated by a checkmark appearing next to the option:



7. Record as usual.

The stamp is included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Annotation > Add Caption** option is turned “off”. This is indicated by no checkmark appearing next to the option.

See also:

Annotation Toolbar

Annotation Tab Options

System Stamp & Caption Customization Options

Apply a Time or Date Stamp to a Recording

Apply an Elapsed Time Stamp to a Recording

Apply a Computer Name or User Name Stamp to a Recording

Apply a Caption to a Recording



Automatically Add Highlights to Multiple Areas of the Recording

Highlight One Area of the Recording

Automatically Add Highlights to Multiple Areas of the Recording

Adds a highlight border to areas (typically a window, dialog, or box) as the cursor passes over them during recording. The highlight area changes dynamically with the cursor position. This graphic shows you how the highlight might appear in the recording.



1. Choose **Recorder > View menu > Annotation** toolbar.
2. Click the **AutoHighlight** tool on the toolbar .
3. (Optional) Choose **Recorder > Options** button down arrow on the toolbar  > **Annotation** tab.
4. In the **Highlight Width** box, enter the width for the highlight box (in pixels).
5. Click **Color** to change the color of the highlight. Click **OK** when color is selected.
6. Within the *Annotation* tab, click **OK**.
7. Record as usual.

Note: You must turn on the highlight option each time you record in order for the highlight to be included in the recording.

See also:

Annotation Toolbar

Annotation Tab Options

System Stamp & Caption Customization Options

Apply a Time or Date Stamp to a Recording

Apply an Elapsed Time Stamp to a Recording

Apply a Computer Name or User Name Stamp to a Recording

Apply a Caption to a Recording

Highlight One Area of the Recording



Highlight One Area of the Recording

Adds a highlight border to areas of the capture (typically a window, dialog, or box) as the cursor passes over them during recording.

Note: The highlight area changes dynamically as the cursor moves across the recording area.

This graphic shows you how the highlight might appear in the recording.



1. Choose **Recorder > View menu > Annotation** toolbar.
2. (Optional) Choose **Recorder > Options** button down arrow on the toolbar  > **Annotation** tab.
3. In the **Highlight Width** box, enter the width for the highlight box (in pixels).
4. Click **Color** to change the color of the highlight. Click **OK** when color is selected.
5. Within the *Annotation* tab, click **OK**.
6. Click the **Highlight** tool on the Annotation toolbar . The cursor immediately turns into a pointer. Move the pointer around the screen and click the area you want to highlight.
7. Record as usual.

Note: You must turn on the highlight option each time you record in order for the highlight to be included in the recording.

See also:

Annotation Toolbar

Recorder Annotation Tab

Annotation Tab Options

System Stamp & Caption Customization Options

Apply a Time or Date Stamp to a Recording


Apply an Elapsed Time Stamp to a Recording

Apply a Computer Name or User Name Stamp to a Recording

Apply a Caption to a Recording

Automatically Add Highlights to Multiple Areas of the Recording

Time/Date Format Dialog Box

Path: Recorder > Options button down arrow on the toolbar  > Annotation tab > choose **Time/Date** option > **Time/Date Format** button.


Note: Once you have made the *Annotation* tab selections, you must enable the **Effects** menu > **Annotation** > **Add System Stamp** option before this stamp can be used during the recording process. Or, choose **View** menu > **Annotation Toolbar** and enable the options from there.

Within this dialog box choose the way the time and/or date stamp is displayed on the recording. You can choose from several preset options or create a custom look.

This table describes each of the *Annotation* tab's **Time/Date Format** options.

Annotation Time/Date Format Option	Description
Time then date	Show the time first and then the date.
Time only	Only show the time.
Date then time	Show the date first and then the time.
Date only	Show the date.
Time	Use the menu to select the format for the time. Once you have made a selection, use the Preview field to see how the selection is displayed on the recording.
Custom Time Format	To use a time format that is not listed, first select the <i>Custom Format</i> option from the <i>Time</i> menu. The Custom Time Format field becomes enabled. In the Custom Time Format field, enter the format using the given symbols. For information on each of the time symbols, see Custom Time Format Symbols .
Date	Use the menu to select the format for the date. Once you have made a selection, use the Preview field to see how the selection is displayed on the recording.
Custom Date Format	To use a date format that is not listed, first select the Custom Format option from the menu. The Custom Time Format field becomes enabled. In the Custom Time Format field, enter the format using the given symbols. For more information on each of the date symbols, see Custom Date Format Symbols .
Preview	View the Preview field to see how the time or date setting will look on the recording.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Custom Time Format Symbols

Path: Recorder > Options button down arrow on the toolbar  > Annotation tab > choose Time/Date option > Time/Date Format button > Choose Time Display option > In the Time group box, click Custom Format.

Note: Once you have made the *Annotation* tab selections, you must enable the **Effects** menu > **Annotation** > **Add System Stamp** option before this stamp can be used during the recording process. Or, choose **View** menu > **Annotation Toolbar** and enable the options from there.

When setting the time using the **Custom** field, you must use a combination of symbols in the **Custom Format** field to ensure correct results.

Additionally, you must separate the symbols with a colon (:).

For example, to show 9:28:40 AM in the recording, you would enter h:mm:ss tt in the **Custom date format** field.

Enter This Time Format Symbol	To Achieve this Result
h	Hour, single digit. Example: 1, 5, 10, 12
hh	Hour, double digits. Example: 01, 05, 10, 12
H	Hour, single digit, military style. Example: 1, 5, 15, 18
HH	Hour, double digits, military style. Example: 01, 05, 15, 18
mm	Minutes. Example: 01, 09, 11
ss	Seconds. Example: 01, 02, 32, 47
tt	Time of day. Example: AM, PM

See also:


Time/Date Format Dialog Box

Custom Time Format Symbols

Custom Date Format Symbols

System Stamp & Caption Customization Options

Custom Date Format Symbols

Path: Recorder > Options button down arrow on the toolbar  > Annotation tab > choose Time/Date option > Time/Date Format button > In the Date group box, click Custom Format.

Note: Once you have made the *Annotation* tab selections, you must enable the **Effects** menu > **Annotation** > **Add System Stamp** option before this stamp can be used during the recording process. Or, choose **View** menu > **Annotation Toolbar** and enable the options from there.


When setting the time or date using the **Custom** field, you must use a combination of symbols in the **Custom Format** field to ensure correct results.

Additionally, you must separate the symbols with a slash (/).

For example, to show 6/20/2006 in the recording, you would enter M/d/yyyy in the **Custom date format** field.

Enter This Date Format Symbol	To Achieve this Result
M	Month, single digit. Example: 1, 5, 10, 12
MM	Month, double digits. Example: 01, 05, 10, 12
MMMM	Month in word format. Example: May, October, December
d	Day, single digit. Example: 1, 5, 10, 12
dd	Day, double digits. Example: 01, 05, 10, 12
dddd	Day in word format. Example: Monday, Wednesday, Sunday
yy	Year in last two digits. Example: 87, 98, 01, 02
yyyy	Year with all four digits. Example: 1987, 1998, 2001, 2002

System Stamp & Caption Customization Options

Path: Recorder > Options button down arrow on the toolbar  > Annotation tab > Options button (either in the System Stamp or Caption group boxes).

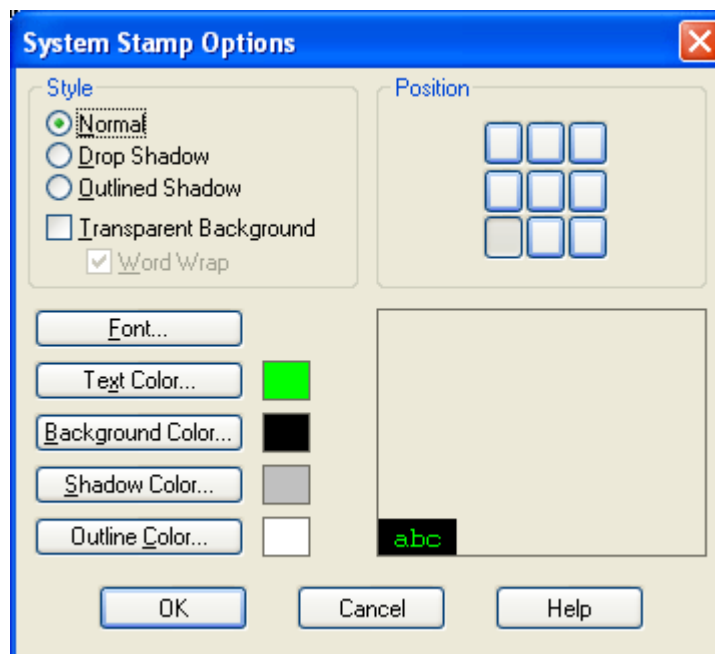
Note: Once you have made the *Annotation* tab selections, you must enable the **Effects** menu > **Annotation** > **Add System Stamp** or **Add Caption** option **before** this stamp can be used during the recording process. Once you have made the *Annotation* tab selections, you must enable the **Effects** menu > **Annotation** > **Add System Stamp** or **Add Caption** option **before** this stamp can be used during the recording process. Or, choose **View** menu > **Annotation Toolbar** and enable the options from there.

The **System Stamp** options are used to define the look of the system stamp including the font, font color, font style, location, etc.

The **Caption** options are used to define the look of the caption including the font, font color, font style, location, etc.

Note: These dialog boxes and the options they contain are identical. Therefore, both sets of options are discussed within this one topic.

Once you click one of the **Options** buttons, the *Options* dialog box appears.



Once the font options are selected, click **OK** to save the System Stamp or Caption font attributes and exit back to the *Annotations* tab.

This table describes each of the System Stamp / Caption options along with its use.

Font Option	Description & Use
Normal	Shows normal text in the recording.
Drop Shadow	Shows text with a drop shadow in the recording.
Outlined Shadow	Shows text with an outlined shadow in the recording.
Transparent Background	Gives the caption or system stamp a transparent background. Anything that is behind the System Stamp or the Caption in the recording area is visible.

Font Option	Description & Use
Word Wrap	The System Stamp or the Caption will wrap to the size of the System Stamp or Caption box. This allows all of the text to be seen. If the text is not wrapped, then it is strung out in one long line. Then, if the text box is resized, the text may be cut off.
Position	Use the squares to select the location of the System Stamp or the Caption. Click the square in the grid that corresponds to the position of the caption or system stamp.
Font	Change the font type, size, color, etc. To change the font attributes, click Font . The <i>Font</i> dialog box appears. Select the font options and click OK .
Text Color	Select text color. Click Text Color . The <i>Color</i> dialog box appears. Select the color and click OK .
Background Color	Select background color. Click Background Color . Click the Text Color button. The <i>Color</i> dialog box appears. Select the color and click OK .
Shadow Color	Select text shadow color. Click Shadow Color . Click Text Color . The <i>Color</i> dialog box appears. Select the color and click OK .
Outline Color	Select outline color. Click Outline Color . Click Text Color . The <i>Color</i> dialog box appears. Select the color and click OK .
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Add Cursor & Highlight Effects While Recording

The Cursor options found in the *Cursor* tab allows you to define how the cursor will be displayed in the recording. Cursor effects include hiding the cursor, showing the cursor, cursor selection, and highlight capabilities for both mouse and cursor clicks.

The Cursor toolbar is used for turning the cursor effects on or off during recording.




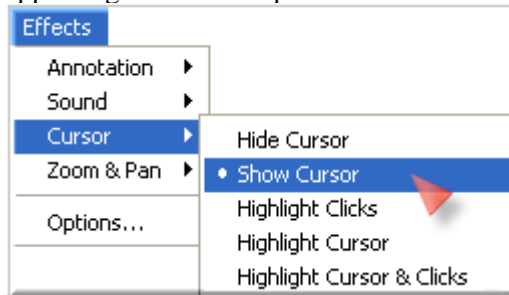
Click a tool button once to “turn on” the effect. Click **Hide Cursor** to “turn off” the effect.

See these topics for step-by-step directions:

- **Add the Cursor while Recording**
- **Add the Cursor and Mouse Clicks while Recording**
- **Add a Cursor Highlight to a Recording**
- **Add a Cursor Highlight and Keystroke Clicks to a Recording**
- **Add the Cursor with Mouse Clicks and Apply Cursor Sounds while Recording**

Add the Cursor while Recording

1. Choose **Recorder > Options** button down arrow on the toolbar  > **Cursor**.
2. Within the *Cursor* tab, click **Cursor Setup**.
3. Make the changes to the look of the cursor. Click **OK**.
4. Within the *Cursor* tab, click **OK**.
5. Choose **Effects** menu > **Cursor** > **Show Cursor**. The effects is now turned “on”. This is indicated by a bullet appearing next to the option:



Or, turn on the **Cursor Toolbar** and enable the effect from there

using the **Show Cursor** tool .

6. Record as usual.

The cursor is included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Cursor** > **Cursor** option is turned “off. Or, the

Hide Cursor tool  on the toolbar is selected.

See also:

Recorder Cursor Tab

Cursor Setup Options

Highlight Cursor Options

Cursor Toolbar

Highlight Cursor Options

Highlight Mouse Clicks Options

Add the Cursor while Recording


Add the Cursor and Mouse Clicks while Recording

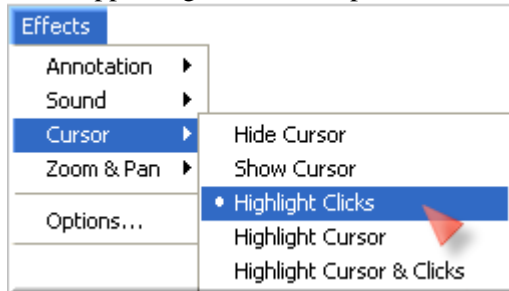
Add a Cursor Highlight to a Recording


Add a Cursor Highlight and Keystroke Clicks to a Recording

Add the Cursor with Mouse Clicks and Apply Cursor Sounds while Recording

Add the Cursor and Mouse Clicks while Recording

1. Choose **Recorder > Options** button down arrow on the toolbar  > **Cursor**.
2. Within the *Cursor* tab, click **Cursor Setup**.
3. Make the changes to the look of the cursor. Click **OK**.
4. Within the *Cursor* tab, in the **Highlight mouse clicks** group box, make any changes to the look of the mouse clicks. Click **OK**.
5. Choose **Effects** menu > **Cursor > Highlight Clicks**. The effects is now turned “on”. This is indicated by a bullet appearing next to the option:



- Or, turn on the **Cursor Toolbar** and enable the effect from there using the **Show Cursor** tool .
6. Record as usual. The mouse clicks will not be visible during the recording process. The effect appears during the replay of the video.

The cursor is included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Cursor > Highlight Clicks** option is turned “off”.

Or, the **Hide Cursor** tool  on the toolbar is selected.

See also:

Recorder Cursor Tab

Cursor Setup Options

Highlight Cursor Options

Cursor Toolbar

Highlight Cursor Options

Highlight Mouse Clicks Options


Add the Cursor while Recording

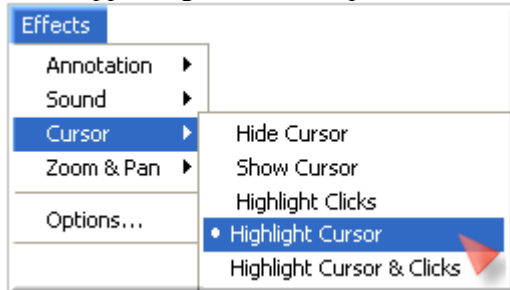
Add a Cursor Highlight to a Recording


Add a Cursor Highlight and Keystroke Clicks to a Recording


Add the Cursor with Mouse Clicks and Apply Cursor Sounds while Recording

Add a Cursor Highlight to a Recording

1. Choose **Recorder > Options** button down arrow on the toolbar  > **Cursor**.
2. Within the *Cursor* tab, make the changes to the look of the cursor. Click **OK**.
3. Choose **Effects** menu > **Cursor > Highlight Cursor**. The effects is now turned “on”. This is indicated by a bullet appearing next to the option:



- Or, turn on the **Cursor Toolbar** and enable the effect from there using the **Highlight Cursor** tool .
4. Record as usual. The cursor highlight will not be visible during the recording process. The effect appears during the replay of the video.

The highlighted cursor is included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Cursor > Highlight Cursor** option is turned “off. Or, the **Hide Cursor** tool  on the toolbar is selected.

See also:

Recorder Cursor Tab

Cursor Setup Options

Highlight Cursor Options

Cursor Toolbar

Highlight Cursor Options

Highlight Mouse Clicks Options




Add the Cursor while Recording


Add the Cursor and Mouse Clicks while Recording


Add a Cursor Highlight and Keystroke Clicks to a Recording

Add the Cursor with Mouse Clicks and Apply Cursor Sounds while Recording

Add a Cursor Highlight and Keystroke Clicks to a Recording

1. Choose **Recorder > Options** button down arrow on the toolbar  > **Sound**.
2. Within the *Sound* tab, set the volume of the keystroke sound effects using the slider.
3. Go to the *Cursor* tab. Make the changes to the look of the cursor. Click **OK**.
4. Turn on the Audio and Cursor toolbars. Choose **View** menu > **Audio Toolbar** and then choose **View** menu > **Cursor Toolbar**.
5. On the Cursor toolbar, click **Highlight Cursor** .
6. On the Audio toolbar, click **Keyboard Sounds** .
7. Record as usual. The cursor highlight and keyboard clicks will not be visible or audible during the recording process. The effect appears during the replay of the video.

The highlighted cursor is included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Cursor > Highlight Cursor** option is turned “off”. Or, the **Hide Cursor** tool  on the toolbar is selected.

The keystroke sounds are included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Sounds > Keyboard Sounds** option is turned “off”. Or, the **Keyboard Sounds** tool  on the toolbar is deselected.

See also:

Recorder Cursor Tab

Cursor Setup Options

Highlight Cursor Options

Cursor Toolbar

Highlight Cursor Options

Highlight Mouse Clicks Options




Add the Cursor while Recording

Add the Cursor and Mouse Clicks while Recording

Add a Cursor Highlight to a Recording


Add the Cursor with Mouse Clicks and Apply Cursor Sounds while Recording

Add the Cursor with Mouse Clicks and Apply Cursor Sounds while Recording

1. Choose **Recorder > Options** button down arrow on the toolbar  > **Sound**.
2. Within the *Sound* tab, set the volume of the mouse sound effects using the slider.
3. Go to the *Cursor* tab. Make the changes to the look of the cursor and the mouse clicks. Click **OK**.
4. Turn on the Audio and Cursor toolbars. Choose **View** menu > **Audio Toolbar** and then choose **View** menu > **Cursor Toolbar**.
5. On the Cursor toolbar, click **Highlight Cursor & Clicks** .
6. On the Audio toolbar, click **Cursor Sounds** .
7. Record as usual. The cursor highlight and keyboard clicks will not be visible or audible during the recording process. The effect appears during the replay of the video.

The highlighted cursor is included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Cursor > Highlight Cursor & Clicks**

option is turned “off”. Or, the **Hide Cursor** tool  on the toolbar is selected.

The keystroke sounds are included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Sounds > Cursor Sounds** option is turned “off”. Or, the **Cursor Sounds** tool  on the toolbar is deselected.

See also:

Recorder Cursor Tab

Cursor Setup Options

Highlight Cursor Options

Cursor Toolbar

Highlight Cursor Options

Highlight Mouse Clicks Options

Add the Cursor while Recording


Add a Cursor Highlight to a Recording

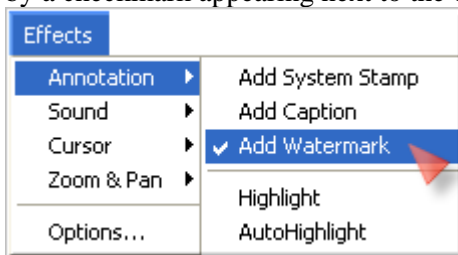
Add a Cursor Highlight and Keystroke Clicks to a Recording

Add a Watermark While Recording

The watermark adds an image or embossed image to the recording. This graphic shows how the watermark might appear in the recording.



1. Choose **Recorder > Options** button down arrow on the toolbar  > **Watermark** tab.
2. Within the *Watermark* tab, choose the image file and all other desired options.
3. When you have made all of the selections, click **OK**.
4. Choose **Effects** menu > **Annotation** > **Add Watermark**. The watermark is now turned “on”. This is indicated by a checkmark appearing next to the option:



5. Record as usual.

Once you have made the *Watermark* tab selections, you must enable the corresponding watermark option from **Effects** menu > **Annotation** dropdown menu > **Add Watermark** option **before** the watermark can be used during the recording process.

Or, turn on the **Annotation Toolbar** and enable the Watermark from there using the **Add Watermark** tool .

The Watermark effect is included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Annotation** > **Add Watermark** option is turned “off”(or the tool on the toolbar is turned off). See also: **Annotation Toolbar**.

See also:

Recorder Watermark Tab

Watermark Tab Options

Add Zoom and Pan Effects While Recording

Important Note:

Zoom and pan effects can also be added after you have recorded the video. For many people, it is easier to add these effects after the video is recorded rather than while the video is being recorded. See also:

Zoom-n-Pan.

Zooming magnifies the action while panning focuses the action. Used together, zoom and pan help focus your viewer's attention on specific areas of the recording.

Using Zoom-n-Pan, you can also deliver a high-quality recording of a full-screen application on the smallest laptop or handheld device.

- Zoom while recording to show more detail or cover more area.
- Pan to capture the smaller area where the action is taking place.

The **Zoom and Pan Toolbar** is used for adding zoom and/or pan effects to the video as it is being recorded.



Continue with these topics:

Add an AutoPan Effect During Recording

The AutoPan effect will allow a zoom frame to follow the cursor as you record. In this way, the action that is taking place is always in focus.

Add an AutoZoom Effect During Recording

The AutoZoom effect is used to zoom between two windows, regions, etc., with a smooth, professional appearance. With this effect, AutoZoom automatically pans the area and zooms in smoothly for a nice transition.

Add a Zoom To Effect During Recording

The Zoom To effect is used to zoom directly to a certain size, or to a specific region, window, or the full-screen while recording. Once the Zoom To effect is turned on, pressing the **Zoom To** button again will set the zoom view back to 100 percent.


See also:

Recorder Zoom Tab**Zoom and Pan Toolbar****Zoom Tab Options**

Add an AutoPan Effect During Recording

The AutoPan effect will allow a zoom frame to follow the cursor as you record. In this way, the action that is taking place is always in focus.



1. Choose **Recorder** > **Options** button down arrow on the toolbar > **Zoom & Pan**.
2. Within the *Zoom* tab, adjust the **AutoPan speed**.
3. Click **OK**.
4. Choose **Effects** menu > **Zoom & Pan** > **AutoPan**. Or, turn on the **Zoom & Pan Toolbar** and enable the AutoPan effect from there using the **AutoPan** tool . The AutoPan effect is now turned “on”.
5. Record as usual. The AutoPan frame follows the cursor as it moves across the recording area.

The AutoPan effect is included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Zoom & Pan** > **AutoPan** option is turned “off”(or the tool on the toolbar is turned off). See also: **Zoom and Pan Toolbar**.

See also:

Recorder Zoom Tab

Zoom and Pan Toolbar









Zoom Tab Options

Add an AutoZoom Effect During Recording

Add a Zoom To Effect During Recording

Add an AutoZoom Effect During Recording

The AutoZoom effect is used to zoom between two windows, regions, etc., with a smooth, professional appearance. With this effect, AutoZoom automatically pans the area and zooms in smoothly for a nice transition.

1. Choose **Recorder > Options** button down arrow on the toolbar  > **Zoom & Pan**.
2. Within the *Zoom* tab, adjust the **AutoZoom speed**. When recording, the recorder frame will momentarily become invisible while it adjusts to the smaller size and the effect is added to the recording. The amount of time that recorder frame is not visible will depend on the speed that you choose here.
3. Select **Use smooth scaling during AutoZoom**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Choose **Tools** menu > **Options > Capture** tab.
6. Uncheck the **Minimize before starting capture option**. This will allow Recorder to stay visible so you can control the zoom effect using the toolbar. Click **OK**. Make sure you move Recorder out of the way of the Recording frame so it is not included in the video.
7. Choose **View** menu > **Zoom & Pan Toolbar**. Enable the AutoZoom effect using the **AutoZoom** tool . The AutoZoom effect is now turned “on”.
8. Become familiar with the location of the **Zoom In**  and **Zoom Out**  buttons on the toolbar. When recording, click these buttons to control the application of the **AutoZoom** effect.
9. Click **Record**  on the main toolbar to begin recording. When you come to a point where you want to zoom in, click **Zoom In** . The recording frame will momentarily disappear and will reappear. It will have decreased in size. Continue to click **Zoom In**  until the desired level of magnification is achieved.
10. At this time, you can also move the recording frame to another area of the recording area. This keeps the focus on the area being zoomed in on.
11. When you are done zooming in, click **Zoom Out**  until the desired level of magnification is achieved.
12. When you are done recording, click **Stop**.

The AutoZoom effect is included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Zoom & Pan > AutoZoom** option is turned “off”(or the tool on the toolbar is turned off). See also: **Zoom and Pan Toolbar**.

See also:

Recorder Zoom Tab

Zoom and Pan Toolbar

Zoom Tab Options

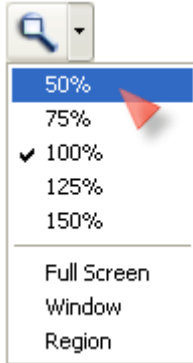
Add an AutoPan Effect During Recording



Add a Zoom To Effect During Recording

Add a Zoom To Effect During Recording

The Zoom To effect is used to zoom directly to a certain size, or to a specific region, window, or the full-screen while recording. Once the Zoom To effect is turned on, pressing the **Zoom To** button again will set the zoom view back to 100 percent.

1. Choose **Tools** menu > **Options** > **Capture** tab.
2. Uncheck the **Minimize before starting capture option**. This will allow Recorder to stay visible so you can control the zoom effect using the toolbar. Click **OK**. Make sure you move Recorder out of the way of the Recording frame so it is not included in the video.
3. Choose **View** menu > **Zoom & Pan Toolbar**.
4. Become familiar with the location of the **Zoom To** button on the toolbar. Click the down arrow to reveal the Zoom To options. When zooming to an area, choose one of these options to apply the zoom effect.



5. Click **Record**  on the main toolbar to begin recording. When you come to a point where you want to zoom in, click the **Zoom To** down arrow button and select the desired *Zoom To* option. The recording frame will move to that area or size.
6. When you are done zooming in, click the **Zoom To** . The recording frame will return to its original size and location at 100% magnification.
7. When you are done recording, click **Stop**.

See also:

Recorder Zoom Tab

Zoom and Pan Toolbar

Zoom Tab Options

Add an AutoZoom Effect During Recording

Add an AutoPan Effect During Recording

Recorder Capture Modes

Recorder is used to capture the screen in many different ways. These different ways of capturing are called modes.

The modes are changed with in the

Normal Mode

Normal mode is the mode most often used for screen and camera recording and is therefore the default capture mode. Recorder starts up in Normal mode.

Recorder's Single Frame Capturing Mode

Single Frame Capture mode is used to capture just one frame at a time. Recorder is always in a paused state and the **Record** button is used just like a camera shutter button.

Time-Lapse Capture Mode

Time-lapse capture mode is used to capture at one frame rate and playback at a slower/faster rate. Setting the timing to slow or very slow frame rates may be useful for setting up a "watching" application or capturing program activities that require lengthy processing times.

Live Output Capture Mode

Live Output Capture mode allows Recorder to appear as a standard video capture device that can be used as a video source by applications such as streaming media encoders, video conferencing applications, video editors, and Webcam applications.

See also:

Set the Recorder to Time-Lapse Capture Mode

Time-lapse Capture Setup Options

Set the Recorder to Live Output Mode

Recorder's Single Frame Capturing Mode

Note: Only available when recording as AVI output and not with CAMREC output, the default output option. For more information on this topic, see **Camtasia Studio's CAMREC Files and Record an AVI – Not a CAMREC**



Single Frame Capture is the recording mode that captures just one frame at a time. Recorder is always in a paused state and the **Record** button is used just like a camera shutter button. Every time you click it, you take a still picture of the screen. You can repeat the capture as many times as needed, and you can change the contents of the capture region between captures to achieve the desired motion effect.

This way, you can arrange the screen without the camera recording the actions. When the screen suits your needs, you take another picture. Obviously, this works great for a slide show, because you can include as many different scenes as you require. For an animation-type video, you can condense a longer video by recording only the key steps of a sequence.

Works well with the Time-lapse capture mode. For example, by setting the Time-lapse playback frame rate to 1 frame per 10 seconds, you can use Single Frame capture to add slides, each of which is displayed for 10 seconds.

See also: **Time-Lapse Capture Mode**.

Enable Single Frame Capture Mode

1. In Recorder, choose **Tools** menu > **Options** > **Capture** tab.
2. Enable the **Single frame capture** mode.
3. If a tip appears, read it and click **Close**.
4. Click **Record** .
5. Repeat the capture as many times as needed. You can change the contents of the capture region between captures to achieve whatever motion effect you want.
6. When you are finished recording, click **Stop**  to save the video. Or, press the **F10** key on the keyboard. After the recording is made, the *Preview Window* appears and the video plays back for review. Continue with **After you Record**.

See also:

Time-Lapse Capture Mode

Set the Recorder to Time-Lapse Capture Mode

Time-lapse Capture Setup Options

Live Output Capture Mode

Set the Recorder to Live Output Mode

Time-Lapse Capture Mode

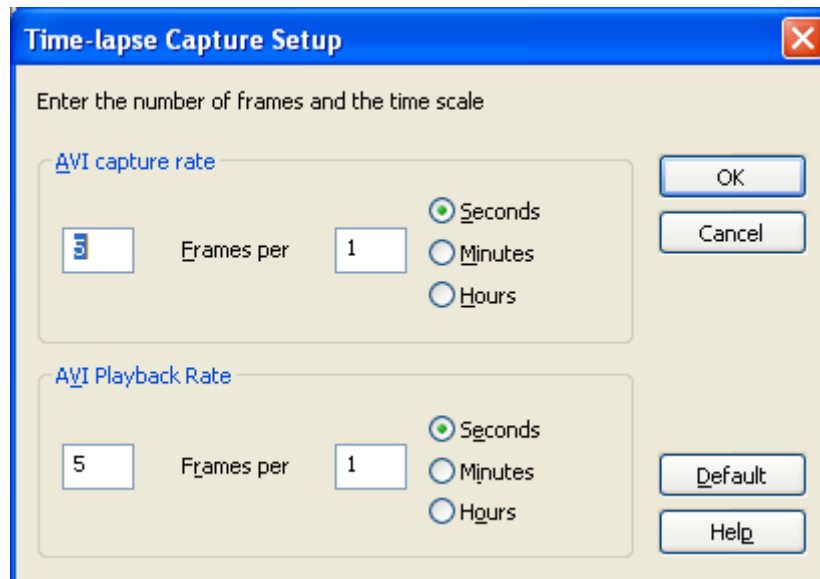
Path: Choose **Recorder > Tools > Options > Screen** tab > **Manual** option > **Time-lapse capture**.

Time-lapse capture mode is used to capture at one frame rate and playback at a slower/faster rate. Setting the timing to slow or very slow frame rates may be useful for setting up a "watching" application or capturing program activities that require lengthy processing times.

Enabling the Time-lapse capture checkbox on the *Preferences Streams* tab will enable the **Time-lapse Setup** button.

Note: If the Time-lapse capture mode is on, the audio recording and camera recording features are disabled.

The **Time-lapse Setup** button gives you access to the *Time-lapse Capture Setup* dialog box to set capture and playback rate options.



Since the Time-lapse mode supports very low capture and playback frame rates you can capture at one frame rate and playback at a slower or faster rate.

Continue with: **Set the Recorder to Time-Lapse Capture Mode** or **Time-lapse Capture Setup Options**.

See also:

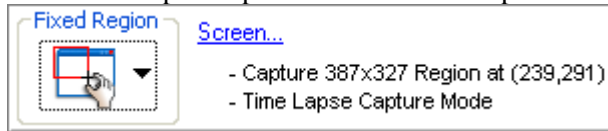
Recorder's Single Frame Capturing Mode


Live Output Capture Mode

Set the Recorder to Live Output Mode

Set the Recorder to Time-Lapse Capture Mode

1. Within Recorder, choose **Tools** menu > **Options** > **Screen** tab > **Manual** option > **Time-lapse** capture.
2. Click **Time-lapse setup**. The *Time-lapse capture Setup* dialog appears.
3. Set the **AVI Capture Rate** in frames per second.
4. Set the **AVI Playback Rate** in frames per second.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Within the *Tools Options* dialog box, click **OK**.
7. The Time-Lapse Capture Mode status is updated to the Recorder:



8. Click **Record**  to begin recording.

See also:

Recorder's Single Frame Capturing Mode

Time-Lapse Capture Mode

Time-lapse Capture Setup Options

Live Output Capture Mode

Set the Recorder to Live Output Mode

Time-lapse Capture Setup Options

This table describes each of the Time-lapse Capture Setup options.

Time-lapse Capture Setup Field	Description
AVI Capture Rate	This controls the timing of the Recorder "snapshots" of individual frames to be included in the video. Set the frame rate in terms of seconds, minutes, or hours.
AVI Playback Rate	This controls how the AVI will play back. The playback rate is kept the same as the capture rate by default, but you can use a faster playback rate to compress the timing, length, and file size of the video. Set the playback rate in terms of seconds, minutes, or hours.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.
Default	Set the frame rate to Recorder default setting, 5 fps.

See also:

Recorder's Single Frame Capturing Mode

Time-Lapse Capture Mode

Set the Recorder to Time-Lapse Capture Mode

Live Output Capture Mode

Set the Recorder to Live Output Mode

Live Output Capture Mode

Path: Choose **Recorder** > **Tools** menu > **Options** > **Screen** tab > **Manual** option > **Live output capture**.

The Live Output Capture feature allows Recorder to appear as a standard video capture device that can be used as a video source by applications such as streaming media encoders, video conferencing applications, video editors, and Webcam applications.

The live output option essentially makes Recorder a "plug-in" that provides a unique source of content and enhances these applications. These applications normally use real hardware video cameras as their video source.

The live output feature makes Recorder appear as another video camera on the system. However, Recorder's live output is a software camera that records from the desktop. With the live output option **ON**, Recorder feeds its video frames to applications like a streaming media encoder instead of saving them to a video file.

The same VCR-style record/pause/resume/stop controls are used during a live output session as when recording to a video file. All of Recorder's video effects (cursor highlights, pan, zoom, and all annotation effects) apply for live output. Input options are disabled since you are sending the entire screen into the feed.

Note: Some live encoding applications only allow you to choose a single default video capture device. If you have more than one video capture device on your system, such as a video capture card, then the Recorder's video capture device may not be available in the encoding application. In this case, disable the non-Recorder capture device using the Control Panel Multimedia applet. In the Multimedia applet, go to the *Devices* tab, expand the **Video Capture Devices** list, select the device to disable, click **Properties**, and choose **Do not use this video capture device**.

See also:

Set the Recorder to Live Output Mode.

Recorder's Single Frame Capturing Mode

Time-Lapse Capture Mode

Set the Recorder to Time-Lapse Capture Mode

Time-lapse Capture Setup Options

Live Output Capture Mode

Set the Recorder to Live Output Mode

1. Within Recorder, choose **Tools** menu > **Options** > **Screen** tab > **Manual** option > **Live output capture**.
2. Click **Live output setup** . The *Live Output Setup* dialog box appears.
3. Set the Live capture rate in frames per second.
4. If desired, set the **Default Video Format**. This is used to set a default size for the output that is seen by the third party. It is important to note that when setting a default size, the size determined by the live output server will override this setting. To set a default setting, click **Default Video Format**. The first time option is accessed, a message about the Camtasia Studio Video Driver appears. Click **OK**.
5. The *Video Capture Format* dialog box appears.
6. Enter the **Image Format**, **Image Dimensions**, or **Custom Size** options and click **OK**.
7. Click **OK** to exit the *Live Output Setup* dialog box.
8. Click **OK** to exit the *Tools Options* dialog box.
9. Start the application you are sending live video to.
10. Now, use Recorder just as you would for output to a video file.

Note: This may be a streaming media encoder, such as Windows Media Encoder or Real Producer, or it may be a video capture application such as Adobe Premiere, or it may be a live Webcam application. In the application you are sending video to, select the Video Capture Device as the live source.

Note: Time-lapse capture mode is on, the audio recording and camera recording features are disabled.

See also:

Recorder's Single Frame Capturing Mode

Time-Lapse Capture Mode

Set the Recorder to Time-Lapse Capture Mode

Time-lapse Capture Setup Options

Live Output Capture Mode

Set the Recorder to Live Output Mode

MenuMaker

Camtasia MenuMaker is used to create an attractive menu from which to launch the files. With MenuMaker, copies of all of the files are located in one central location making it easy to open and close files or applications. This means no more searching through drives, directories, and folders when giving a presentation or teaching a class. You can easily create a CD-ROM that will launch with the menu displayed making it a perfect way to distribute information to customers, students, workgroups, and more.

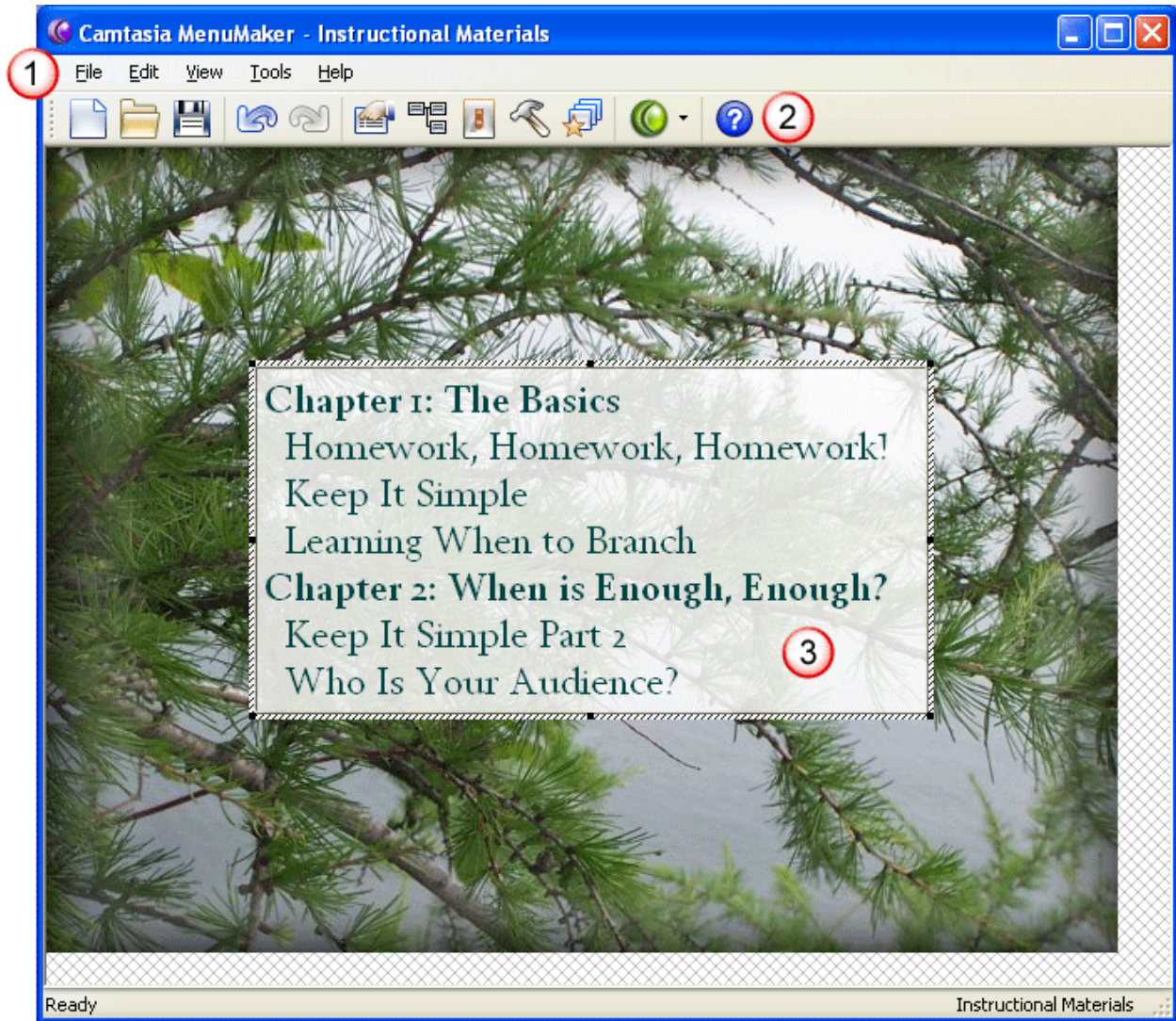
Make the menu from a number of different templates included with MenuMaker or make your own customized template. Additionally, include all types of files in the menu such as document files, graphic files, multimedia files, etc. The only stipulation for the inclusion of files is that the host application necessary to run the files resides on the PC that is used to launch the files.

See also:

- **Welcome to MenuMaker**
- **MenuMaker Welcome Options**
- **Create a MenuMaker Project**
- **Generate the Menu Using the Wizard**

Welcome to MenuMaker

Before you begin your work within MenuMaker, take a few minutes to get familiar with the MenuMaker interface.



1	Menu Bar. Access all dropdown menus from the menu bar.
2	Toolbar Area. Access several commonly used options from the toolbar. This is a quicker method than accessing the same option from the dropdown menus.
3	List Box. The files added to the menu are displayed in the <i>List Box</i> . The color of the font, font attributes, and box style can all be edited for a customized look.

See also:

Create a MenuMaker Project

MenuMaker Welcome Options

Generate the Menu Using the Wizard

MenuMaker Options & Properties

Customize Menu Using Menu Properties Tab Options

Add a Submenu

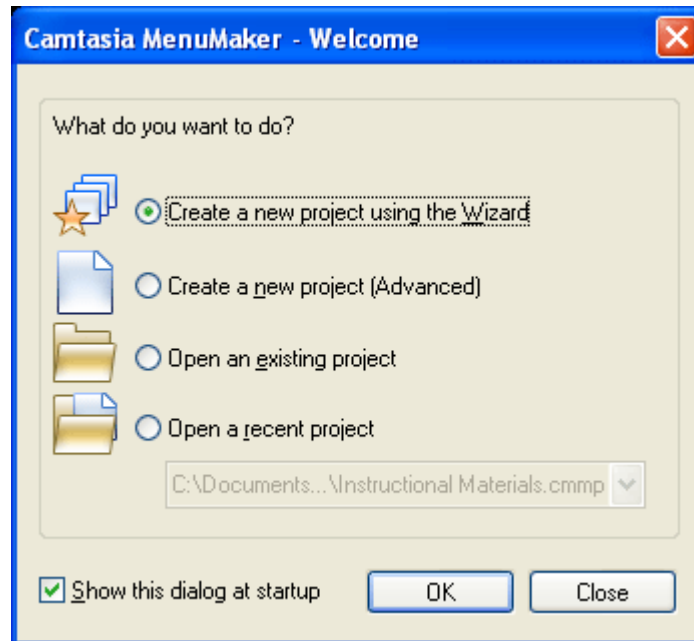
Moving Content Files

MenuMaker Welcome Options

To create a new menu project using the wizard, make sure that the **Create a new menu using the Wizard** option is selected in the *Welcome* dialog box and click **OK**. The MenuMaker Wizard begins.

The wizard will walk you through the process of creating a menu project using a template that is already created for you. After you have finished with the wizard, you can edit the look of the menu before you create the actual menu.

When you first open MenuMaker, the *Welcome* dialog box appears. Choose an option and click **OK**.



Create a new project using the Wizard

Creates a new project using the wizard to step you through the process.

See also: **Create a MenuMaker Project**.

Create a new project (Advanced)

Creates a new menu project without the help of the wizard.

See also: **Camtasia MenuMaker Menu Options**.

Open an existing menu

Open a project that has already been created.

Open a recent project

Open a menu project that has recently been opened. Enable the recent list dropdown menu for you to choose from. This dropdown menu contains the last four projects that were opened.

Note: To disable the *Welcome* dialog box from appearing each time MenuMaker is opened, click the **Show this dialog at startup** box to remove the checkmark. Once this dialog box is disabled, the same open options can be found under the File menu. To enable the *Welcome* dialog box once again, from within MenuMaker, choose **Tools > Options**. Within the *Options* dialog box, click the **Display welcome dialog on startup** option. Click **OK**.

See also:

- **Create a MenuMaker Project**
- **Generate the Menu Using the Wizard**
- **MenuMaker Options & Properties**
- **Customize Menu Using Menu Properties Tab Options**
- **Add a Submenu**

Create a MenuMaker Project

MenuMaker operates on a project basis. This means you add files, edit the look and feel of the menu and save your work as a project file. Later, you can come back to that project file and change the look of the menu, add or delete files, etc. From the project file, you can also test the menu and create the actual menu files.

Creating a new menu with Camtasia MenuMaker is quite simple, involving only six basic steps from beginning to end. This includes such steps as selecting a template, adding the files, saving the project, testing, and creating the menu.

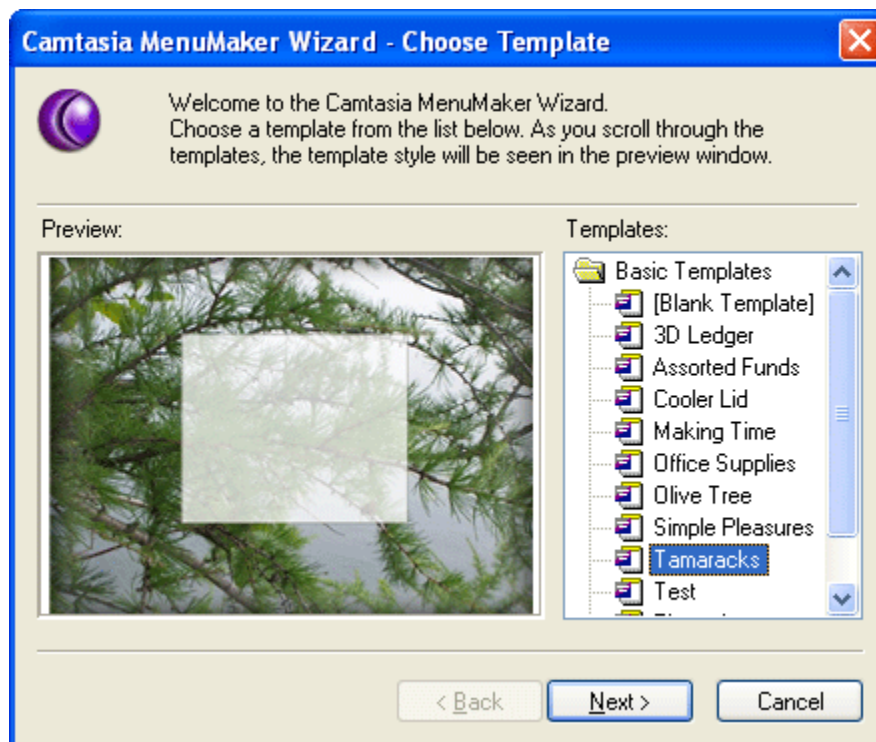
1. Choose **Start > All Programs > Camtasia Studio 4 > Applications > Camtasia MenuMaker**.
2. The *Welcome* dialog box appears.
3. Choose **Create a new project using the Wizard**:



Continue with **Choose a MenuMaker Template**.

Choose a MenuMaker Template

Choose the template for the new menu. The template contains the graphic for the menu interface as well as the different list box and font attributes.



MenuMaker gives you the choice of several predefined templates to use. These are located in the folder entitled **Basic Templates**. Each of these templates show a floating menu self-contained within a border. This menu allows whatever else is on the desktop to remain visible while the menu is open.

You can download many more templates from the [TechSmith Web site](#). To install all of the templates, click on the [Download all Templates](#) button at the top of the page.

Note: When you create your own templates, by default, they are stored in the *My Templates* folder.

When selecting a template from the dropdown menu, a thumbnail image appears. This is used to preview the template's graphic interface before you make your selection.

Once you have made the template selection, click **Next**. Continue with **Choose the Files to include on the CD**.

Choose the Files to include on the CD

Choose the files to be included in the menu. Add as many video, sound, image, program, and document files to the menu as will fit on the CD.

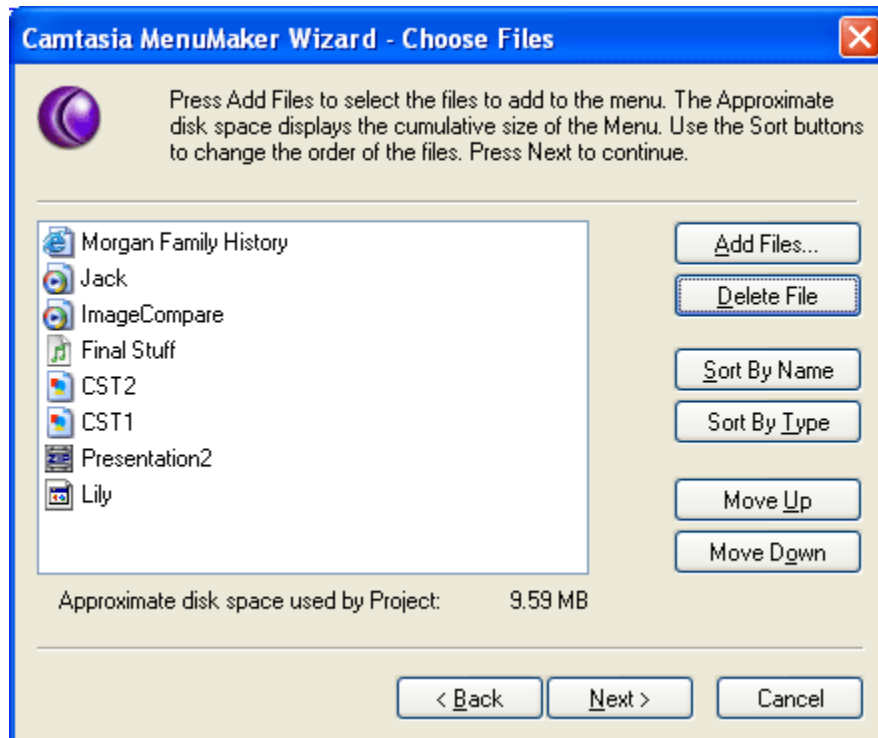
Note: The only real stipulation for adding files is that the application that is necessary to run the selected files should be present on the host PC.

To help keep track of the size of the menu, the total file size is reflected in the read-only **Approximate disk space used by Project** field.

To add the files,

1. Click **Add Files**. The *Add File Items* dialog box appears.
2. Select a directory in the **Look in** field.
3. Select the type of file you want to add to the menu in the **File of Type** field.
4. Once the file is selected, click **Apply**. If desired, select another file and click **Apply**.
Note: If you are selecting several files from within the same directory, press and hold the <CTRL> key to select multiple files to add at one time.
5. Repeat this process until you have finished selecting the files and click **OK**.

The files are updated to the wizard dialog box as seen in this graphic.



Alongside each file name is an icon. These icons let you know which application is used to open that file when it is accessed from the menu on the PC that is being used to create the menu.

Note: The applications that are used to open a particular type of file on the host PC depend upon the associations set up on the host PC.

File Order

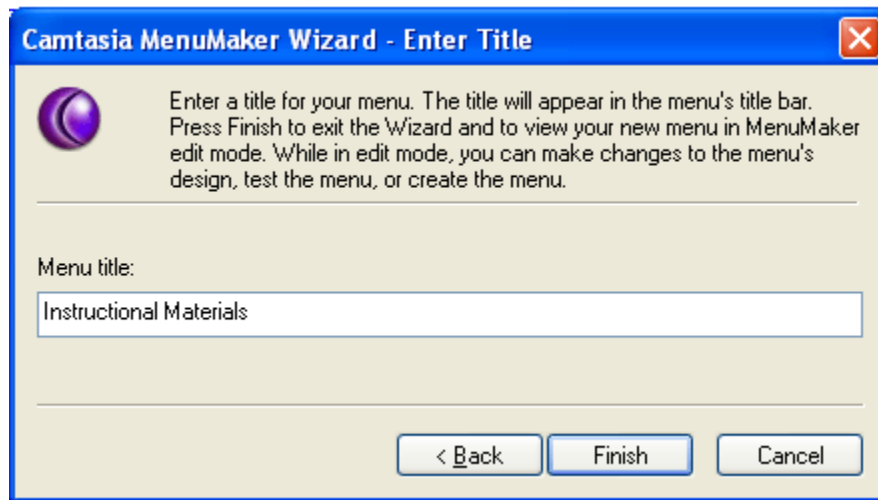
The order in which the files appear in this list is the order in which they will appear in the menu. To change the order, delete a file, or sort the files, highlight the file and use the options described in this table.

Button	Description
Delete Files	Deletes the selected file.
Sort By Name	Sorts all files alphabetically by file name.
Sort By Type	Sorts all files according to file type and alphabetically.
Move Up	Moves the selected file up in the order.
Move Down	Moves the selected file down in the order.

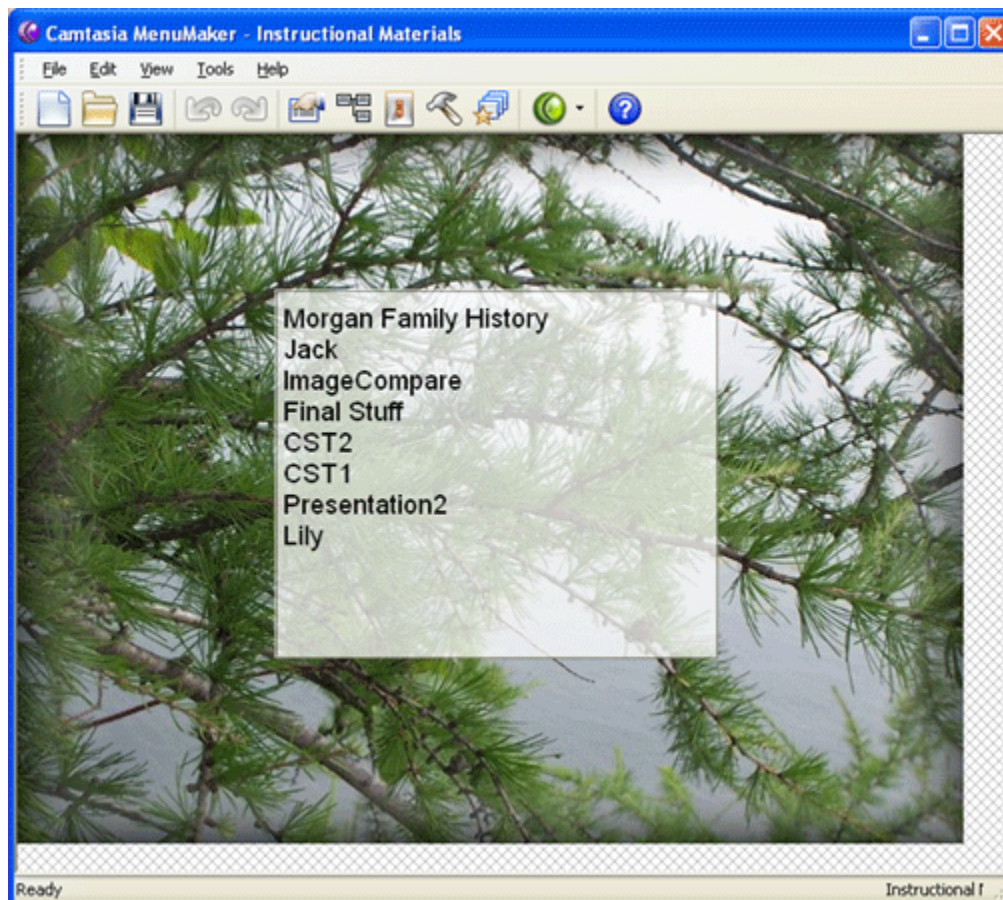
Once you have made the file selections and performed any edits, click **Next**. Continue with **Enter Menu Title**.

Enter Menu Title

Enter a title for this menu. This is the name that is displayed in the menu's title bar.



Once you have entered the title, click **Finish**. The menu project will now be created and displayed.




You are now in **Edit Mode**. Within Edit Mode, you can make changes to the look of the template, change the file names displayed within the menu, add or delete files in the menu, test the menu in preview mode, or create the menu.

To edit the MenuMaker project, continue with **Customize Menu Using Menu Properties Tab Options**.

To create the actual MenuMaker menu, continue with **Generate the Menu Using the Wizard**.

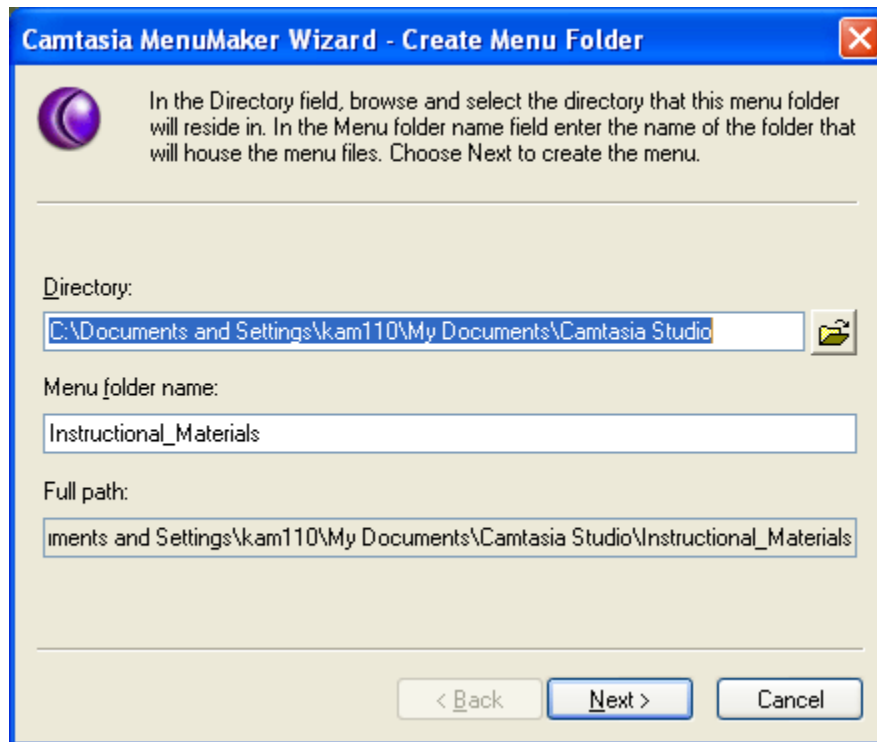
Generate the Menu Using the Wizard

A MenuMaker Wizard will take you step-by-step through the creation process.

1. Make sure the MenuMaker project is open.
2. Click **Create Menu** on the toolbar .
3. The Wizard begins. Continue with **Create Menu Folder**.

Create Menu Folder

The *Create Menu Folder* dialog box appears. Designate the location and enter a name of the folder that will contain the menu files.



Camtasia MenuMaker Wizard - Create Menu Folder

In the Directory field, browse and select the directory that this menu folder will reside in. In the Menu folder name field enter the name of the folder that will house the menu files. Choose Next to create the menu.


Directory:
C:\Documents and Settings\kam110\My Documents\Camtasia Studio

Menu folder name:
Instructional_Materials

Full path:
ments and Settings\kam110\My Documents\Camtasia Studio\Instructional_Materials

< Back Next > Cancel

Directory Field

1. In the **Directory** field, click **Browse** . The *Browse for Directory* dialog box appears.
2. Find the directory that will contain the menu files.
3. Click **OK**. The Directory file path is updated to reflect the selection.

Menu Folder Name

In the **Menu Folder Name** field, enter the name of the folder that will contain the menu files. By default, this is the name that was given as the title of the menu. If desired, rename the folder by highlighting the name and typing the new name.

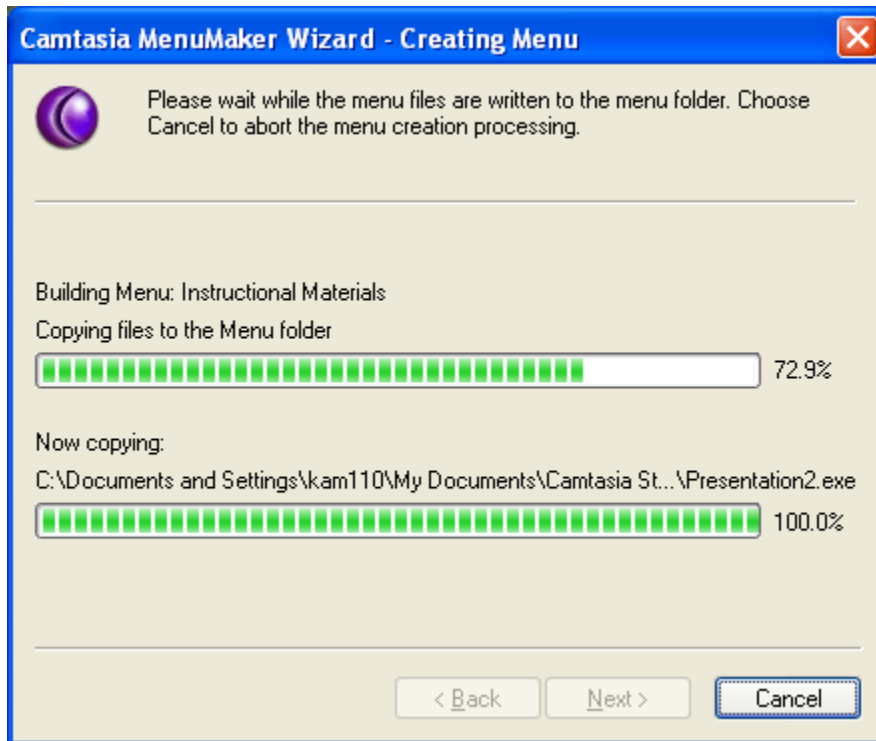
Full Path

The **Full Path** field is a read-only field that reflects the directory and folder structure. Click **Next**. If prompted to create the folder, click **Yes**.

Continue with **Create Menu**.

Create Menu

As soon as you click **Next**, the menu creation begins. During this step, the menu files are processed and the menu is created.



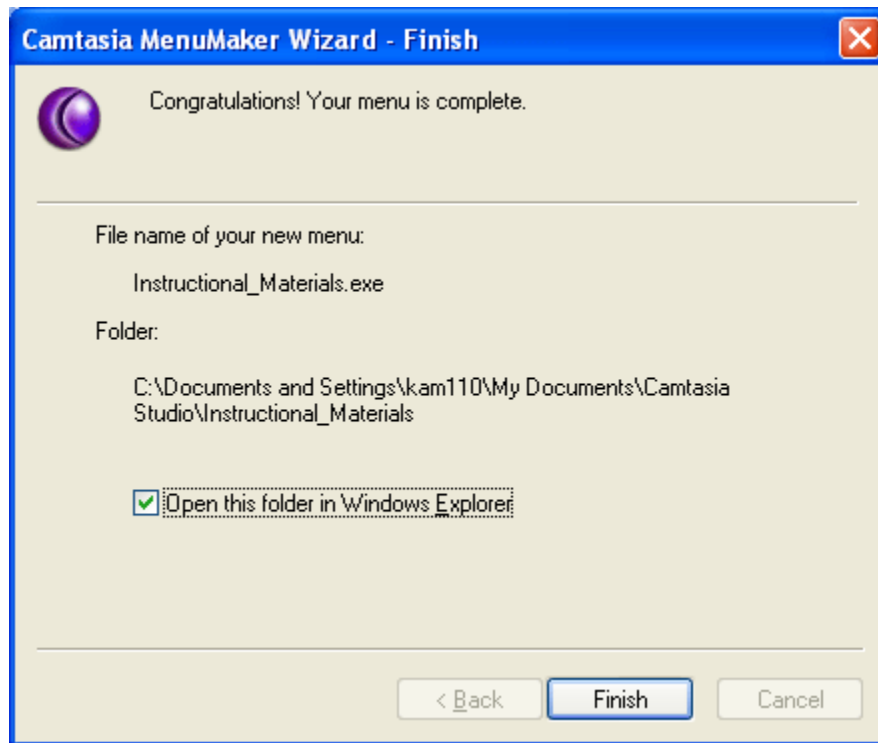
As the files are being processed, the **Building Menu** status bar will give you the overall status of the build. The **Now Copying** status bar will show which file is being copied.

Click **Cancel** to abort the menu creation process.

Once the menu is created, the *Finish* dialog box appears. Continue with **Finish Menu**.

Finish Menu

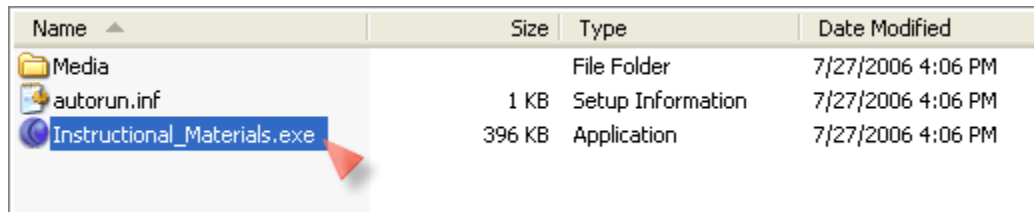
At this time, the menu is created and the files now reside in the folder that you designated.



You now have the option of opening *Windows Explorer* to review that folder and its contents after the Wizard exits.

Click **Finish** to exit the Wizard. You have successfully completed the menu creation process. The files are now ready to be burned to a CD or uploaded to a network.

When playing the menu from within the folder, double-click the .exe file:



MenuMaker Options & Properties

This section describes the each of the options and properties found within MenuMaker along with its purpose and use.

Choose from one of these menu topics:

Set the Display Options for my Menu using the Project Properties

The *Project Properties* dialog box is used to set options for new projects such as the display format, default font, background color, and what sounds if any will play while using the menu.

Customize Menu Using Menu Properties Tab Options

The *Menu Properties* dialog box is used to set options for the menu such as title, changing the way the file names shows, overall size, font attributes, what graphic is to be used as the background, and what sounds if any will play while using the menu.

Add a Submenu

Adding a submenu adds another menu to the project which will branch off of the first or main menu. When adding a submenu to a project, the current MenuMaker template and project properties are applied to the new menu.

Moving Content Files Within a Menu or Between Menus

The *Project Content* dialog box is used to move content files to a new location either within the same menu or to a different menu.

See also:

Customize Camtasia Player Command Line Options

Customize Menu Using Menu Properties Tab Options

General Tab

Cursor Tab

List Tab

Content Tab

Content Tab Toolbar

Add Files In the Content Tab




Set the Display Options for my Menu using the Project Properties



The *Project Properties* dialog box is used to set options for new projects such as the display format, default font, background color, and what sounds if any will play while using the menu.

You can access the *Project Properties* dialog box by choosing **File > Project Properties**. The *Project Properties* dialog box appears.

Project Properties Options Description Table

This table describes each of the *Project Properties* options.

Project Properties Option	Description & Use
Start Menu automatically when CD-ROM is inserted	The menu to starts automatically when it is inserted into the CD-ROM drive.
Always use Camtasia Player on AVI files	Makes Camtasia Player the default player for AVI video files included in this menu. If not enabled, then AVI videos will play on the system's current default player.
Options	Opens the <i>Options for Camtasia Player</i> dialog box used to customize the command line options when launching <i>Player</i> . For more information on these options, see Customize Camtasia Player Command Line Options .
Display Mode	Determines if the menu is displayed within a free standing window or within a full screen. Window: The standalone window option shows a floating menu self-contained within a border. This menu allows whatever else is on the desktop to remain visible while the menu is open. Full Screen: This menu shows a coordinating full-screen background that hides whatever else is on the desktop while the menu is open.
Default Font	Shows the standard Windows <i>Font</i> dialog box used to change the font type, size, color, etc. To change the default font attributes, click Font . The <i>Font</i> dialog box appears. Font: To change the font, choose the new font from the font list. Font Style: To change the font style, choose the style from the list. Size: To change the font size, choose the new size from the list. Sample: This area will give you a preview of the changes made to the font. OK: Save and update changes. Cancel: Exit the <i>Font</i> dialog box without making any changes.
Desktop Color	This is the background canvas color that appears outside of the menu when the full-screen option is selected. The amount of desktop color that appears on the desktop is determined by the size of the menu. Click Desktop Color to reveal the <i>Color</i> dialog box. Choose the color and click OK .
Icon File	Select an icon file to shows in the menu's title bar. This icon appears in the system tray when the menu is minimized. <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Click Browse .2. Find the icon file.3. Click OK. The file path is updated to <i>Resources</i> tab field.
Startup sound	Select a sound file that plays when the menu starts up. <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Click Browse .2. Find the sound file.3. Click OK. The file path is updated to <i>Resources</i> tab field. Click Test  to test the sound.

Project Properties Option	Description & Use
Exit sound	Select a sound file that plays when the menu exits. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Browse . 2. Find the sound file. 3. Click OK. File path is updated to <i>Resources</i> tab field. Click Test  to test the sound.
Browse	Used to find the resource file.

Customize Camtasia Player Command Line Options

Once you click **Options** in the *General* tab, the *Options for Camtasia Player* dialog box appears.

Use to customize the command line options when launching *Player*.


Camtasia Player Options Description Table

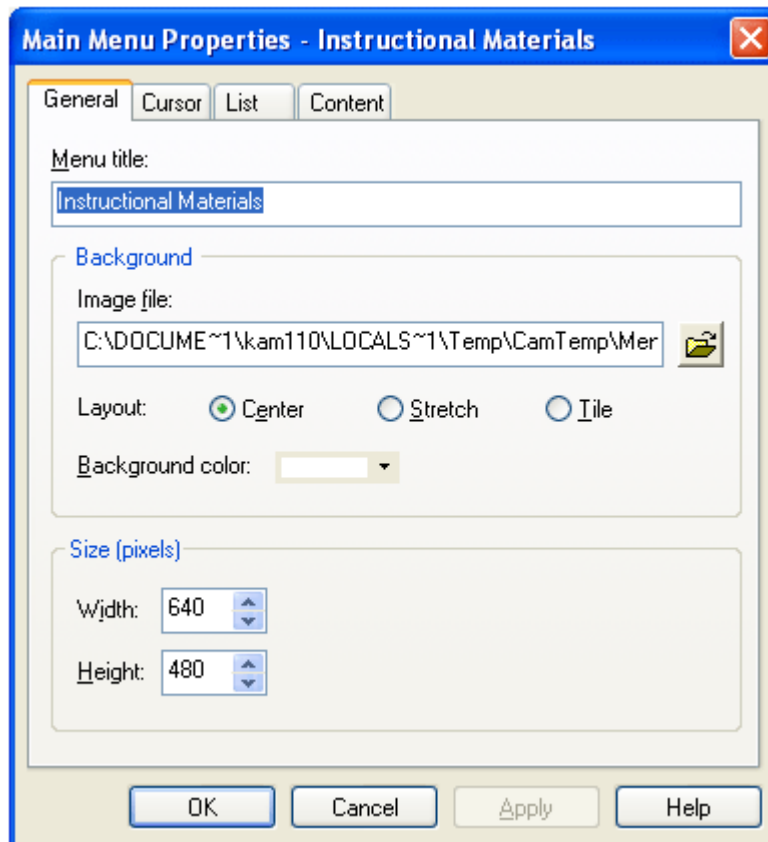
This table describes each of the *Player* options that can be included in the menu.

Player Option	Description
Start playing automatically	Starts <i>Player</i> as soon as menu item is double-clicked on.
Exit after playing movie	<i>Player</i> closes automatically as soon as video is done playing.
Repeat movie until closed	Automatically repeats movie until <i>Player</i> is manually closed by user.
Stay on last frame	<i>Player</i> stops on and shows last frame when video finishes.
Always on top	<i>Player</i> will reside as the topmost application on the desktop.
Play in maximized mode	<i>Player</i> operates as in maximized mode.
Play in full-screen mode	<i>Player</i> operates as a full-screen.
No title bar	No title bar appears.
No menu bar	No menu bar appears.
No toolbar	No tool bar appears.
No status bar	No status bar appears.
No dragging by movie area	You cannot drag the video around the screen.
Background Color	Sets the background color. This is the color that is seen around the video if the video size does not take up the full-screen when the full-screen option is enabled. Click Background Color . The <i>Color</i> dialog box appears. Select the color and click OK .
Load Default	Loads the default values. The default options are selected using the Save as Default button.
Save as Default	Select the command lines and save them as the default value. When accessing this dialog box at a later time, click on the Load Default button. This will automatically select those options.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Customize Menu Using Menu Properties Tab Options

The *Menu Properties* dialog box is used to set options for the menu such as title, changing the way the file names show, overall size, font attributes, what graphic is to be used as the background, and what sounds if any will play while using the menu.

Access this dialog box by choosing the **Menu Properties** tool on the toolbar . The *Main Menu Properties* tabbed dialog box appears:



General Tab

Set the different properties for the menu's overall look including how the menu is displayed, the size of the menu, how the menu is positioned on the PC screen, etc.

Cursor Tab

Add cursor sound and visual effects to the menu.

List Tab

Set the different properties for the menu's *List Box* including text color, font attributes, color, style, position, etc.

Content Tab

Add and arrange the file or Web link content that you want to include in the menu. There are three parts to this tab: the toolbar, the content list, and the file name fields.

See also:

Cursor Tab

List Tab

Content Tab

Content Tab Toolbar

Add a Submenu

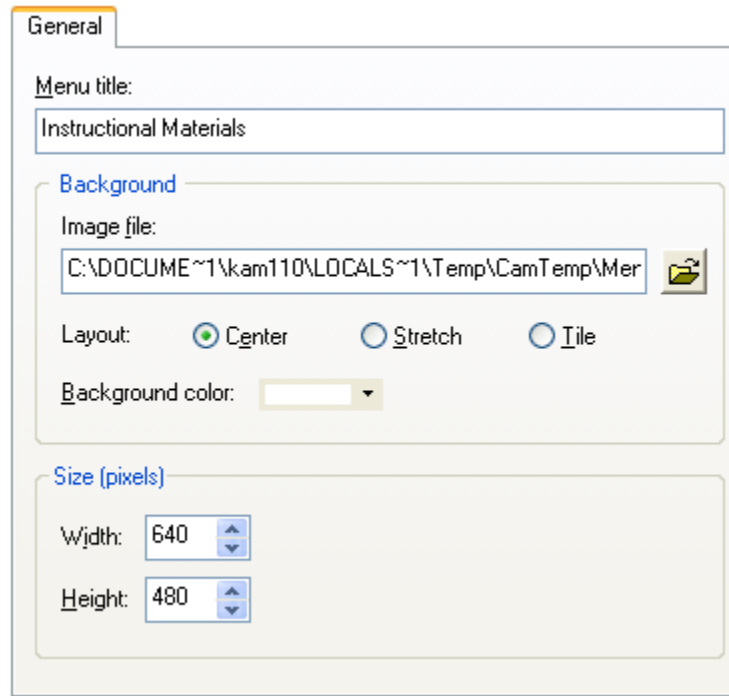
Content Tab File Name Field Descriptions

Add a Submenu

Buttons Tab


General Tab

The *General* tab is used to set the different properties for the menu's overall look. These options determine how the menu is displayed, the size of the menu, how the menu is positioned on the PC screen, etc.



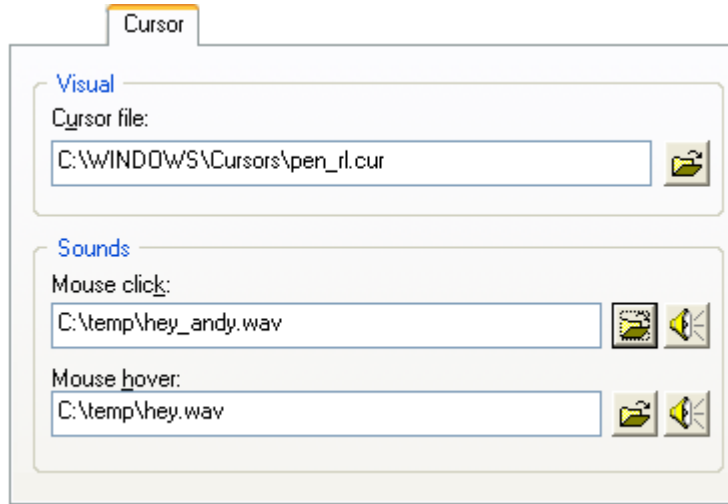
There are many properties that can be changed to get the exact look that you want for the menu.

This table describes each of the *General* tab options.






General Tab Option	Description
Menu Title	Enter the name of the Menu's title. This is displayed in the menu's title bar. If the menu was created using the wizard, the title that was given during the wizard process appears in this field.
Image File	This is the graphic that is used as the background for the menu. Click Browse  . Find a BMP, GIF, or JPEG file. If you do not want to use an image for the menu's background, leave this field empty.
Layout	This determines how the background image is displayed within the menu. Center: centers the graphic in the menu. If the graphic is smaller than the menu, then the background canvas color is visible. Stretch: Stretches the graphic to cover the entire menu. Tile: Tiles the graphic to cover the entire menu
Background Color	The color of the menu's background canvas. If the image does not cover the entire surface of the menu, parts of the canvas is visible. If you choose not to use a graphic for the menu, then you can choose a solid background color to shows. Click Background Color . The <i>Color</i> dialog box appears. Select the color and click OK .
Size	Determines the overall size of the menu. 640x480 is a size that displays properly on most PC screens. Width: This is how wide the menu is in pixels. Height: This is how tall the menu is in pixels.

Cursor Tab

The *Cursor* tab is used to add cursor sound and visual effects to the menu.



This table describes each of the *Cursor* tab options.

Cursor Tab Option	Description & Use
Cursor File	Choose a cursor or animated cursor that is used when the cursor hovers over an item in the menu. 1. Click Browse  . 2. Find the cursor file. 3. Click OK . File path is updated to <i>Resources</i> tab field.
Mouse Click	Choose a sound file for the mouse when it clicks on the menu. 1. Click Browse  . 2. Find the sound file. 3. Click OK . File path is updated to <i>Resources</i> tab field. Click Test  to test the sound.
Mouse Hover	Choose a sound file for the mouse hovering over an item on the menu. 1. Click Browse  . 2. Find the sound file. 3. Click OK . File path is updated to <i>Resources</i> tab field. Click Test  to test the sound.

See also:

General Tab

List Tab

Content Tab


Content Tab Toolbar

Add a Submenu

Content Tab File Name Field Descriptions

List Tab

The *List* tab is used to set the different properties for the menu's *List Box*.



The screenshot shows the 'List' tab in the software's interface. It is divided into three sections: 'Text', 'Frame', and 'Position (pixels)'. The 'Text' section includes 'Normal color' (black), 'Visited color' (dark grey), 'Highlighted color' (yellow), and 'Default Alignment' (Left). The 'Frame' section includes 'Background color' (white), a 'Blend effect' slider between 'Transparent' and 'Opaque', and 'Frame style' (Bump). The 'Position (pixels)' section includes 'Left' (197), 'Top' (132), 'Width' (295), and 'Height' (264).

Section	Property	Value
Text	Normal color	Black
	Visited color	Dark Grey
	Highlighted color	Yellow
	Default Alignment	Left
Frame	Background color	White
	Blend effect	Slider (between Transparent and Opaque)
	Frame style	Bump
Position (pixels)	Left	197
	Top	132
	Width	295
	Height	264

Once a property is set, click **Apply** to apply that option to the List Box. Click **OK** to exit the *List* tab.

There are many properties that can be changed to get the exact look that you want for the menu. Some of these properties are text color, font attributes, color, style, position, etc.

This table describes each of the List tab options along with its use.

List Tab Option	Description	Use
Text Color	<p>Normal Color: Color of the text in the List Box before that item is ever selected to run.</p> <p>Visited Color: Color of the text in the List Box after an item is accessed.</p> <p>Highlighted Color: Color of the text when the cursor is passed over it.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Text Color. 2. The <i>Color</i> dialog box appears. 3. Select the color and click OK.
Text Alignment	<p>Determines the justification of the text within the List Box.</p> <p>Left: Left justifies the text.</p> <p>Center: Center justifies the text.</p> <p>Right: Right justifies the text.</p>	Click the down arrow to reveal the dropdown menu. From the list, choose the alignment option.
Background Color	Color of the List Box itself.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Background Color. 2. The <i>Color</i> dialog box appears. 3. Select the color and click OK.
Blend Effect	<p>Opacity is the attribute that allows the List Box to be solid (showing none of the graphic behind it) or to have varying degrees of transparency (the ability to see part of the graphic through the image). When applying opacity to the List Box, the entire box is affected.</p>	To adjust the amount of opacity that is applied to the List Box, grab the slider bar and move up toward more opaque (solid) or down toward less opaque (transparent).
Frame Style	<p>Determines the frame style of the List Box. This feature works best with darker colored List Boxes and with a higher level of opacity as well.</p> <p>None: No frame.</p> <p>Bump: Appears to be sitting on top of the menu.</p> <p>Etched: 3D edge effect.</p> <p>Raised: Appears to be raised above the menu.</p> <p>Sunken: Appears to be sunken into the menu.</p>	Click the down arrow to reveal the dropdown menu. From the list, choose the style option.
Position	<p>Left: This is the number of pixels that the List Box is located from the left of the menu.</p> <p>Top: This is the number of pixels that the List Box is located from the top of the menu.</p> <p>Width: This is how wide the List Box is in pixels.</p> <p>Height: This is how tall the List Box is in pixels.</p>	<p>Highlight the number field and type the new number in pixels.</p> <p>The List Box can be manually moved and sized while in preview mode. These fields are updated with the new position and size values once the List Box is altered.</p>

See also:

General Tab

Cursor Tab

Content Tab

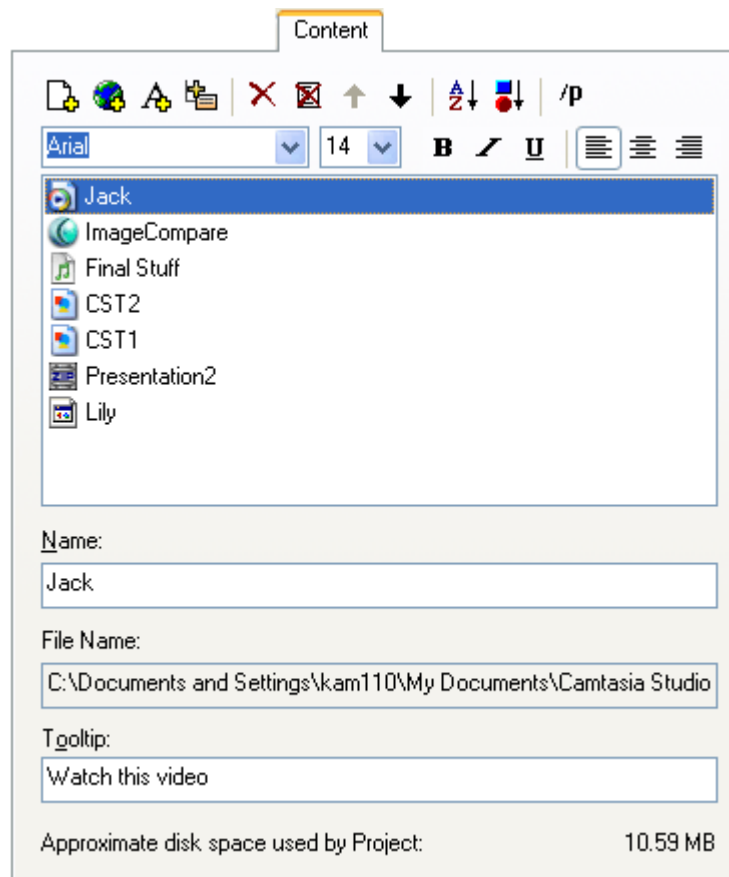
Content Tab Toolbar

Add a Submenu

Content Tab File Name Field Descriptions

Content Tab

The Content tab is used to add and arrange the file or Web link content that you want to include in the menu. There are three parts to this tab: the toolbar, the content list, and the file name fields.



In general, the **toolbar** is used to add the content and to arrange it in the order that it will appear in the menu.

The content **list** contains the content files. To work with any file, highlight it in the list. Alongside the file name is an icon. These icons let you know which application is being used as the default application for opening that file on

the host system.

At the bottom of the tab, the **status** bar will keep you informed of the size of the collective files.

Note: The icon does not imply which application is used for playback if the menu is used on a system other than the one it was created on.

The file name fields allow you to rename the content files, view the content path, and assign a tooltip that appears in the menu when the cursor hovers over an item.

See also:

- **Content Tab Toolbar**
- **Content Tab File Name Field Descriptions**
- **Add Files In the Content Tab**
- **General Tab**
-
- **Cursor Tab**
- **List Tab**
- **Add a Submenu**
- **Content Tab File Name Field Descriptions**

Content Tab File Name Field Descriptions

The file name fields allow you to rename the content files, view the content path, and assign a tooltip that appears in the menu when the cursor hovers over an item.

Name

Rename the selected file. Sometimes the name of the actual file is not the name that is best to show in the menu. This option renames the files in the menu; it does not rename the actual files.

Choose the file from the content list. Press <**Tab**> Make the changes within the **Name** field. As you enter the new name, the name within the content list will change as well.

Web Address

Reflects the path of the selected file. This is populated automatically when a file is selected.

1. To make changes to a Web address, highlight the item in the content list.
 2. Press <**Tab**>.
 3. Make changes within the **File Name** field. The changes are reflected in the content list.
- This field is disabled unless a Web address is selected in the content list.
 - If a Web address is selected, this field is used to make changes to the Web address.
 - Only available when a Web link is selected in the content list.

Tooltip

The information that appears while the cursor is hovered over an item in the menu. Each file's tooltip can be customized.

Simply enter the text for the tooltip in the Tooltip field.

- The **Tooltip** field can contain an unlimited number of characters. Therefore, you can enter or copy and paste an informative paragraph into this field and it appears as a tooltip paragraph in the menu.

Approximate disk space used by Project

This field will track the size of the combined files being added to the menu.

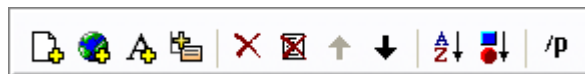
- This is a read-only field.

Add Files In the Content Tab






Content Tab Toolbar







Content Tab Toolbar

The *Content* tab's toolbar contains the options for adding files, submenus, and Web links and for determining how the files will look in the menu. Overall, the order in which the files appear in the Content list is the order in which they will appear in the menu.



To change the order of the content files, delete a file, or sort the files, highlight the file and use the toolbar option described in this table.


Button	Tool Name	Description & Use
	Add Files	Used to add the files to the menu. See Add Files In the Content Tab .
	Add Web Address	Used to add a Web address to the menu. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Add Web Address. 2. The <i>Add Web Address Item</i> dialog box appears. 3. Type in the Web address. 4. Click OK.
	Add Static Text	Use to insert non-selectable text or blank lines into the menu. Most useful when desiring to add titles or headings on top of files in the menu. Adding spaces to the beginning of a file or static text entry give the menu indents. You can also add tooltips to the static text items. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Add Static Text. 2. The <i>Add Static Text Item</i> dialog box appears. 3. Type in the text or leave this blank to add a blank line. 4. Click OK.
	Add Submenu	Add a submenu to this project. See also: Add a Submenu .
	Delete Selected Item	Deletes the selected file. Highlight item and click Delete .

Button	Tool Name	Description & Use
	Delete All Items	Deletes all items. Click Delete All Items . Confirm the deletion of all of the files. Click Yes to delete all files. Click No to abort the deletion of all files.
	Move Item Up	Moves the selected file up in the order. Highlight item and click Move Item Up .
	Move Item Down	Moves the selected file down in the order. Highlight item and click Move Item Down .
	Sort Alphabetically	Sorts all files alphabetically by file name.
	Sort by Type	Sorts all files according to file type and alphabetically.
	Show / Hide Parameters	Enter command line options for an AVI playback application. Should only be used if you are sure of the player that is used on the menu's target system. Highlight the file in the content list. Click the Show / Hide Parameters button. The Parameters field appears. Enter the parameters.

Add Files In the Content Tab

Used to add the files to the menu.

After a file is added, an icon next to the file name appears. These icons let you know which application is used to open that file when it is accessed from the menu. Keep in mind when including files, the host application necessary to run the files needs to reside on the PC that is used to launch the files.

- To add the files, click **Add Files** .
- The *Add File Items* dialog box appears.
- Within the dialog box, choose a directory in the **Look in** field.
- Choose the type of file you want to add in the **File of Type** field.
- Once the file is selected, click **Apply**. If desired, select another file and click **Apply**.
If you are choosing several files from within the same directory, you can add these all at one time. Press and hold the <CTRL> key and use the mouse to select the multiple files to add.
- Repeat this process until you have finished selecting the files.
- Click **OK**

See also:

General Tab

Cursor Tab

List Tab

Content Tab

Content Tab Toolbar




Add a Submenu

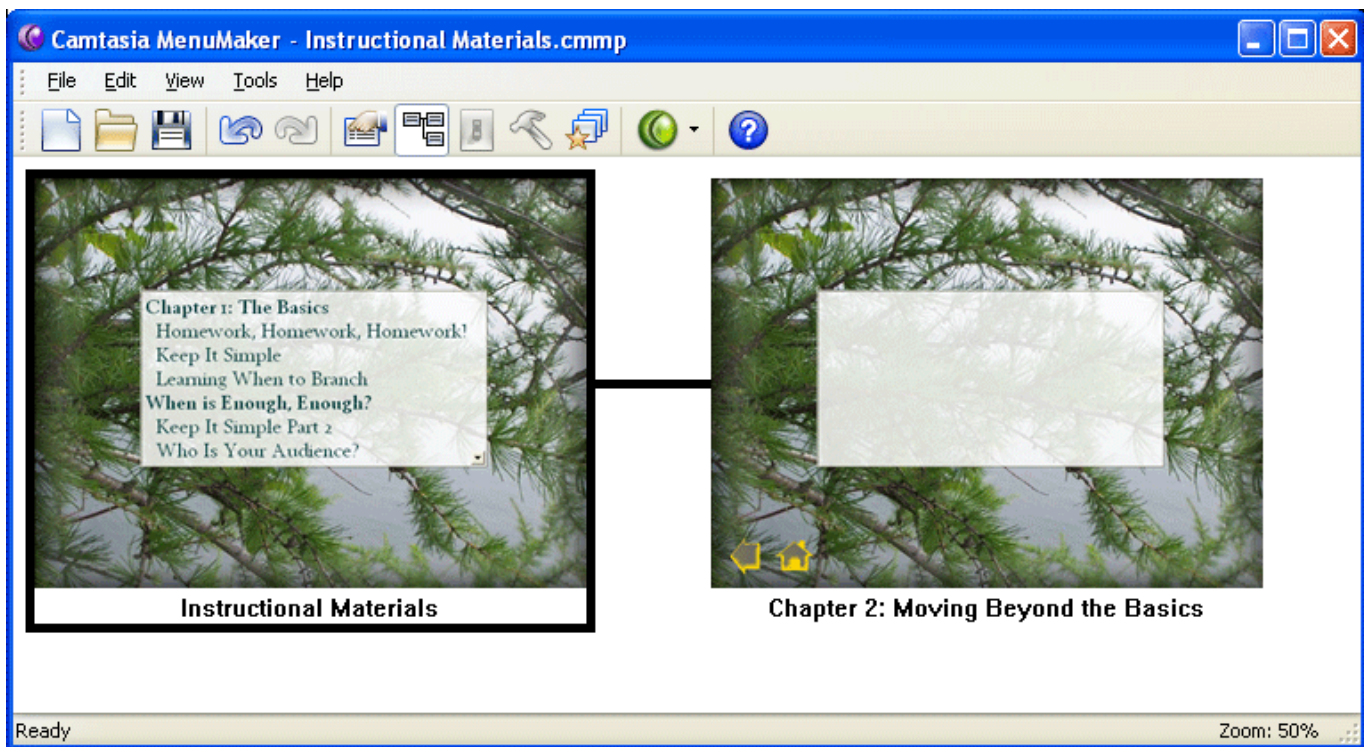
Add a Submenu

Adding a submenu adds another menu to the project which will branch off of the first or main menu. When adding a submenu to a project, the current MenuMaker template and project properties are applied to the new menu.

Once a submenu is added, you can then change its individual properties or add content files by using the options found within the *Main Menu Properties* tabbed dialog box. Or, double-click the *List* box to access the *Menu Properties*.

Add a Submenu

1. Make sure that the project is open within MenuMaker.
2. Double-click the list box. The *Main Menu Properties* dialog box appears. Make sure the *Content* tab is selected.
3. Click **Add Submenu** . The *Add a Submenu* dialog box appears. In the **Submenu Name** field, enter the name for this new menu.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Highlight the new menu that you have just created. Click **Move Down**  until the new menu is placed last in the List box.
6. Click **Apply**.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **Toggle Map View** . The new menu is added.



Add Another Submenu

1. Within Map View, right-click on the menu that you want to branch from.
2. From the context menu, click **Insert Submenu**.
3. The *Add a Submenu* dialog box appears.
4. In the **Submenu Name** field, enter the name for this new menu.
5. Click **OK**. The new menu is visible within the Map View.

Edit a Submenu

Once a Submenu is added, you can change its individual properties or add content files. Within Map View, double-click on the *List Box* of the menu that you want to edit.

See also:

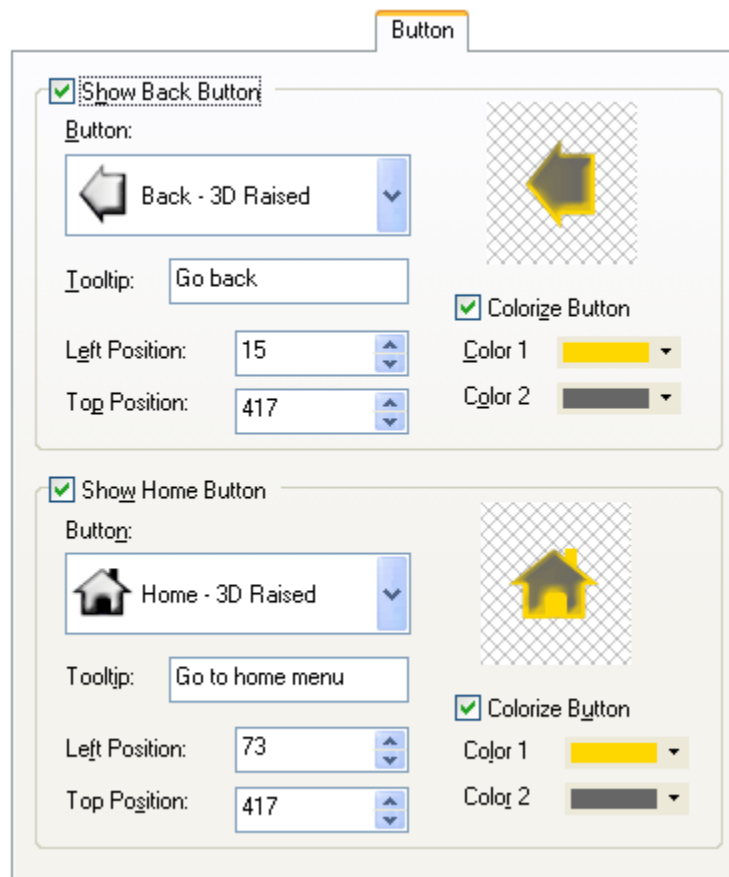
Customize Menu Using Menu Properties Tab Options

Buttons Tab

Moving Content Files

Buttons Tab

The *Buttons* tab is used to set the different properties for the buttons contained within a submenu.

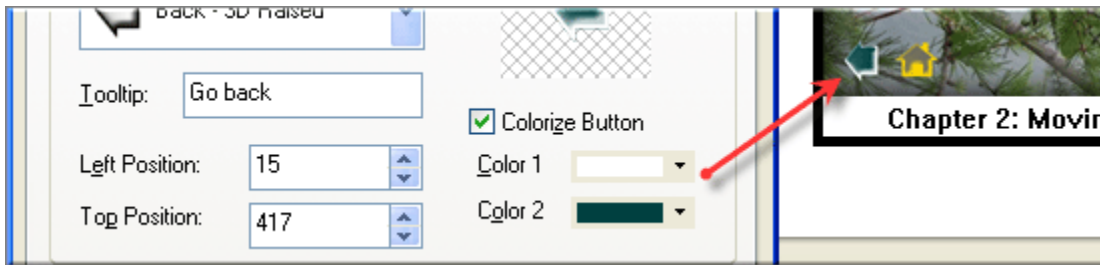


Access the Buttons Tab & Make Changes

1. From within the *Map View*, right-click on the menu to edit.
2. From the context menu, choose **Buttons Properties**.
3. The *Button* tab appears.
4. Make the changes and click **Apply**.
5. Click **OK** to exit the *Buttons* tab. The buttons are changed.

Buttons Tab Options Description Table


After making a change, click **Apply** to see how the change look within the Submenu preview mode.

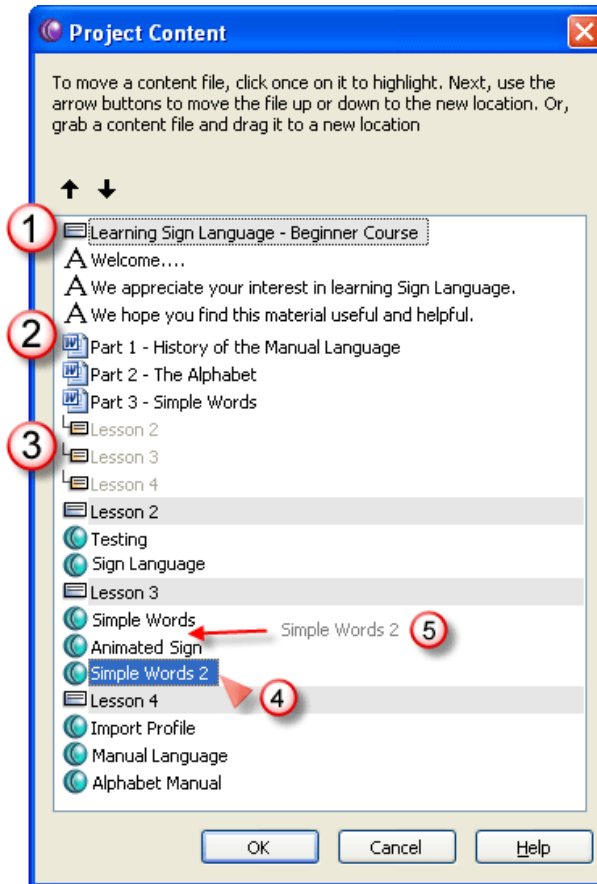





Buttons Tab Option	Description & Use
Show Back Button	The Back button will show on the submenu. The Back button will allow the users of the menu system to go back to the previously viewed menu.
Show Home Button	The Home button will show on the submenu. The Home button will allow the users of the menu system to go back to the main menu.
Tooltip	The tooltip is the information that appears while the cursor is hovered over the button in the menu. Enter the text for the tooltip.
Button	Choose the button to use. Select the button from the dropdown list.
Left Position	The number of pixels that the button is located from the left of the menu. Highlight the number field and type the new number in pixels.
Top Position	The number of pixels that the button is located from the top of the menu. Highlight the number field and type the new number in pixels.
Colorize Button	Change the foreground and background colors of the button. Enable the Colorize Button option.
Color 1	Used to change the foreground color of the button. Select the color from the dropdown list.
Color 2	Used to change the background color of the button. Select the color from the dropdown list.

Moving Content Files Within a Menu or Between Menus

The *Project Content* dialog box is used to easily move content files to a new location either within the same menu or to a different menu.

1. While within *Map View*, choose **Edit > Project Content**. The *Project Content* dialog box appears.
2. To move a content file, click once on the file to highlight it.
3. Use the arrow buttons  to move the file up or down to the new location. Or, grab the content file and drag it to a new location.
4. Make the changes and click **Apply**.
5. Once you have made all the changes, click **OK**.



1	Each menu that is part of the current project is denoted with a Menu icon  . Menus cannot be moved to a new location.
2	Each menu's content files are listed underneath the Menu icon. Alongside the file name is an icon. These icons let you know which application is used to open that file when it is accessed from the menu.
3	Each submenu that is linked to a parent menu is denoted with a Branched Menu icon  . Branched menus cannot be moved to a new location.
4	To move a content file, highlight the file and use the Arrow buttons  to move the file up or down to the new location.
5	Alternately, to move a content file, you can grab the content file and drag it to the new location. When the new location is reached, drop the file.

Audio Editor

Note: The Audio Editor documentation is located on the Camtasia Studio Documentation Page. Please download the PDF guide here: <http://www.techsmith.com/products/studio/documentation.asp>

Camtasia Audio Editor is the perfect tool to quickly add voice annotation and sound effects to a video because Audio Editor uses the familiar Camtasia Player interface. Simply open a video and click the **Record** button—it's that easy!

Audio Editor is accessed from within Camtasia Studio by choosing **Tools > Camtasia Audio Editor** or, choose **Start > All Programs > Camtasia Studio 4 > Applications > Camtasia Audio Editor**.

The *Welcome* dialog box appears which gives you several options for creating a new audio file or editing an existing video or audio file. With the Audio Editor you can:

Record Audio

- Add audio in real time while viewing a video or an image.
- Use Voice Narration to explain a video or an image.
- Create online training movie clips with Voice Narration.
- Add emotion to still images from a digital camera or scanner by adding voice, music, or sound effects.
- Submit help desk problem reports with voice annotation.
- Easily add narration to a video clip or image and add it to a larger production using Camtasia Studio 3.

Import Audio

- Insert a WAV audio file anywhere on a video's soundtrack.
- Add music or sound effects.

Edit Audio

- Add/modify/delete the existing video sound track any number of times.
- Select the audio format.

Extend the length of a movie or image to hold a sound track of any length

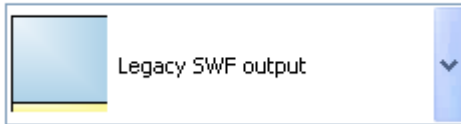
- Optimize the extended video to make the movie file size as small as possible
- Extend any number of individual video frames.

Theater

Read this Important Note about Camtasia Studio Produced SWF Files:

If you plan on using Camtasia Studio-made SWF movies within Camtasia Theater, produce your movies within Camtasia Studio using the **Legacy SWF output** template:

Template:



Note: Only Flash SWF files can be used with Theater. Flash FLV files cannot be used with Theater.

Theater adds DVD-like navigation to Flash SWF screen recording movies. Using Theater's menu, your users can quickly navigate between multiple movies or view them all in a pre-defined sequence. Theater presentations can be viewed online and on CD-ROM.

With Theater, content is easier to use and navigate. As a result, viewers can watch videos at their own pace and even finish their training ahead of schedule.

It is very important to note that Theater is **only** intended to be used in conjunction with screen recordings that have been produced in Flash SWF format using the **Legacy Flash Template** option. See Legacy SWF Output.

Theater is **not the best option** for distributing Flash movies if the produced Flash movies contain any of these:

- Quizzes
- Callouts with Hot Spots
- Full motion or real-world video.
- Picture-in-Picture of real-world video such as a talking head.
- Long PowerPoint presentations.
- PowerPoint presentations with or without animation or transition effects.

Features of Theater

- Select a single Flash SWF file or complete directories
- Sort and rename movies
- Auto-sequencing option
- Scrolling menu
- Flash playback controls
- Font and color control
- HTML output
- XML output for custom configuration

Create a Theater Flash Menu

Camtasia Theater creates an attractive and interactive menu from which to launch Camtasia Studio-made Flash files.

Camtasia Theater adds DVD-like navigation to Flash movies. Using Theater's menu, viewers can quickly navigate between multiple movies or view them all in a pre-defined sequence. Theater presentations can be viewed online and on CD-ROM.

Theater operates on a project basis. This means that you add files, edit the look and feel of the menu and save the work as a project file. Later, you can come back to that project file and change the look of the menu, add or delete files, etc.

Creating a Flash menu with Camtasia Theater is quite simple, involving only seven basic processes from beginning to end. This includes such steps as adding a title, choosing custom colors, adding the files, saving the project, creating the menu, and testing. This section gives you a brief run-through of each step.

Note: Before you begin, **Read this Important Note about Camtasia Studio Produced SWF Files.**

Begin a New Menu

1. Open Camtasia Theater. Within Camtasia Studio, choose **Tools > Camtasia Theater**.
 2. Theater opens with the *Menu* tab displayed. Within the **Menu title** field, enter a title for this menu.
 3. Make any other desired customizations to the title or item fonts, text alignment, or movie sequencing.
 4. Within the *Colors* properties box, customize the colors for the menu's background, title, item text, or item rollover text. To change the color, click the button. A standard *Color* dialog box appears.
 5. Choose the color and click **OK**. The color is updated to the *Color* properties box.
- Continue with **Add Movies**.

Menu Tab Overview

Menu Tab Options

Controls Tab View

Controls Tab Options

Add Movies

1. Within the *Menu List* box, click the **Add SWF movie** button on the sidebar. A standard *Browse* dialog box appears. Find the SWF movie file and click **OK**.
Note: You cannot use Flash FLV movie files.
2. The movie now appears within the *Movie List* area. Continue with this process until all of the movies have been added.
3. To edit the name of the file to a more logical name than what the actual file name might be, double-click the file name in the *Menu Item Name* column and reenter the name.
4. Use the arrow buttons to move the selected movie up or down within the list.

When you have made all the additions and edits to the list box, you are ready to customize the look of the controller.

Continue with **Customize Controller**.

See also:

Menu Tab Overview

Menu Tab Options

Controls Tab View

Controls Tab Options

Customize Controller

Click the *Controls* tab to show the available options. In this tab:

1. Select whether or not you want the movies to pause before playing or start automatically. If you choose to pause first, you have to manually click the **Start** button to play the movie.
2. Click the **Movie controller color** button to select the color of the movie controller.
3. Enable the **About box** option to include ancillary information about the menu or movies. Add the about box text.
4. If desired, select any duration or elapsed time properties to shows in the controller.
5. Select any preload movie options. The preload movie plays until the actual SWF file is loaded according to the percentage specified in the % of main movie to preload field.

Once you have made all of the additions and edits to the controller, you are ready to export and create the actual menu.

See also:

Save Project & Export Flash Menu.

Menu Tab Overview

Menu Tab Options

Controls Tab View

Controls Tab Options

Save Project & Export Flash Menu

To export and create the Flash menu:

1. Click the **Export Flash Menu**.
2. A standard *Browse* dialog box appears. Find the folder that will contain this menu's files.
3. Click **OK**. The folder is created for you.
4. The export process begins. When the export has completed, a confirmation status box appears.
5. Click **OK**. The menu appears. Theater will also remain open for you to continue your work.

Note: Enable the **Launch menu after export option** to view the menu being created after it is exported. If left disabled, you will have to search for the directory that the menu was saved in and launch the menu by double-clicking the HTML file.

See also:

Menu Tab Overview

Menu Tab Options

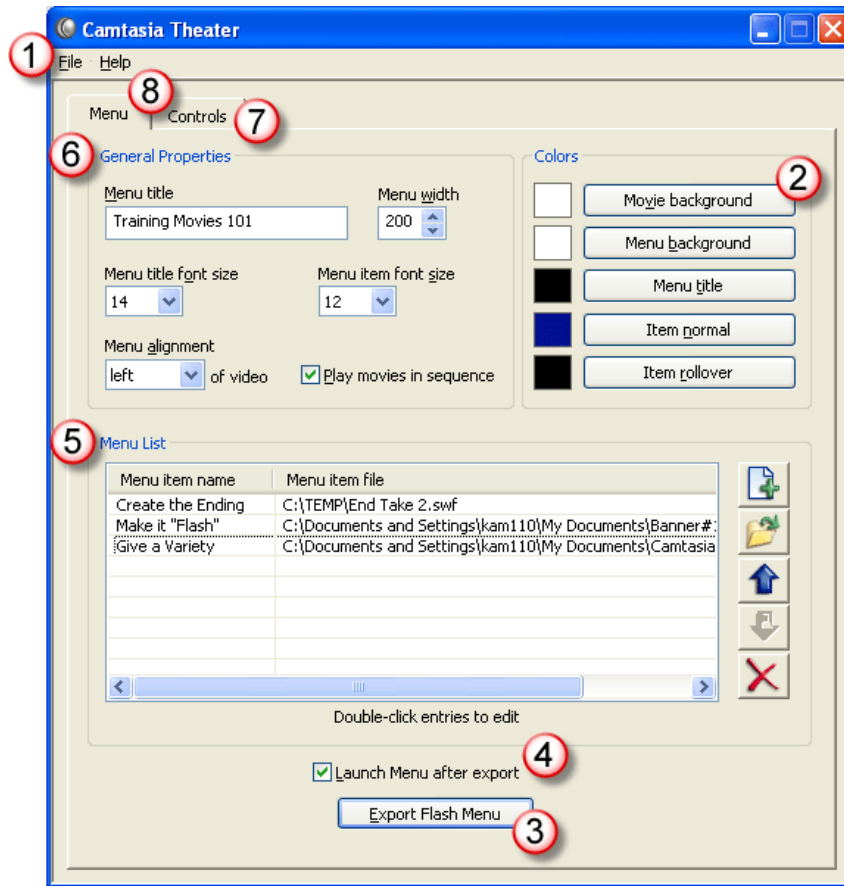
Controls Tab View

Controls Tab Options

Menu Tab Overview

The *Menu* tab view is used to add a title to the menu, customize the look of the menu’s text and background color, add the SWF movies to the menu, and order the movies within the list.

For more information on the options found in this view, see **Menu Tab Options**.



1	Menu Bar. Access all dropdown menus from the menu bar.
2	Colors. Customize the color of the menu background as well as the text for the title and movie items.
3	Export Flash Menu. Create the menu.
4	Launch Menu after export. View the menu when the Export Flash Menu process has completed.
5	Menu List. Choose the SWF files to add to the menu. Also customize the order and names of the items by using the tools in the sidebar.
6	General Properties. Customize the look of the text for title and movie items.
7	Controls Tab Options. Set options for the look of the playback controls.
8	Menu Tab Options. Set the properties for the appearance of the menu.

See also:

Menu Tab Options

Controls Tab View

Controls Tab Options

Menu Tab Options

The *Menu* tab view is used to add a title to the menu, customize the look of the menu's text and background color, add the SWF movies to the menu, and order the movies within the list.

General Properties Options

Used to format the menu's title and as well as the listed item's font size and alignment.

Menu Color Options

Used to format the menu's colors.

Menu List Options

Used to add the actual SWF movies to the menu, edit the movie titles displayed within the menu, and to order the movies in the menu list.

General Properties Options

These options, used to format the menu's title and as well as the listed item's font size and alignment, are explained in this table along with their use.

Option Name	Description and Use
Menu title	Name of the menu's title. This is displayed in the menu's title bar.
Menu title font size	Select the font size for the menu's title.
Menu item font size	Select the font size for the items in the menu list.
Menu alignment	Select the alignment of the text in relation to the menu. Choose either the left or the right.
Play movies in sequence	Automatically play movies in sequence. If not enabled, movies are played by clicking them within the menu's list box.
Launch Menu after export	View the menu when the Export Flash Menu process has completed. If left disabled, you will have to search for the directory that the menu was saved in and launch the menu from there by double-clicking the HTML file.
Export Flash Menu	Begins the menu export process. See also: After you Record .

See also:

Menu Tab Overview

Controls Tab View

Controls Tab Options

Menu Color Options

This table describes each of the Colors options. These options are used to format the menu's colors.

Option Name	Description and Use
Movie background	Color of the playback area within the menu. If the movie that is playing in the menu is not large enough to fill the entire playback area, this color is displayed around the movie. Click this button to open the <i>Color</i> dialog box. Choose the color and click OK .
Menu background	Color of the menu panel that shows the movie titles. Click this button to open the <i>Color</i> dialog box. Choose the color and click OK .
Menu title	Color of the menu's title. Click this button to open the <i>Color</i> dialog box. Choose the color and click OK .
Item normal	Color of the text in the <i>List Box</i> before that item is ever selected to run. Click this button to open the <i>Color</i> dialog box. Choose the color and click OK .
Item rollover	Color of the text when the cursor is passed over it. Click this button to open the <i>Color</i> dialog box. Choose the color and click OK .

See also:

Menu Tab Overview





Menu Tab Options


Controls Tab View

Controls Tab Options

Menu List Options

This table describes each of the Menu List options. These options are used to add the actual SWF movies to the menu, edit the movie titles displayed within the menu, and to order the movies in the menu list.

Tool	Option Name	Description and Use
	Menu Item Name	Shows the name of the SWF file. Edit to be any name. Often it is better to give the movie a standardized name rather than using the file name. Example: TrnVid0002.swf might be the file name but you can rename it to Training Video #2. Edit by double-clicking the entry and reentering the name.
	Menu Item File	Shows the path to the SWF file. Edit by double-clicking the entry and choosing the file from the <i>Browse</i> dialog box.
	Add SWF Movie	Add a movie file to the menu. Click Add SWF Movie . The <i>Add Movie Items</i> dialog box appears. Within the dialog box, choose a directory in the Look in field and choose the movie file you want to add. Once the file is selected, click Open . Repeat this process until you have finished selecting the movies.
	Add all SWF movies in folder	Add all of the SWF movies in a particular folder. To add the files in a folder, click the Add all SWF Movies in a folder button. The <i>Browse for a Folder</i> dialog box appears. Choose a folder and click OK .
	Remove Movie	Removes the selected movie from the list.
	Move Movie Up	Moves the selected movie up in the order.

Tool	Option Name	Description and Use
	Move Movie Down	Moves the selected movie down in the order.

See also:

Menu Tab Overview

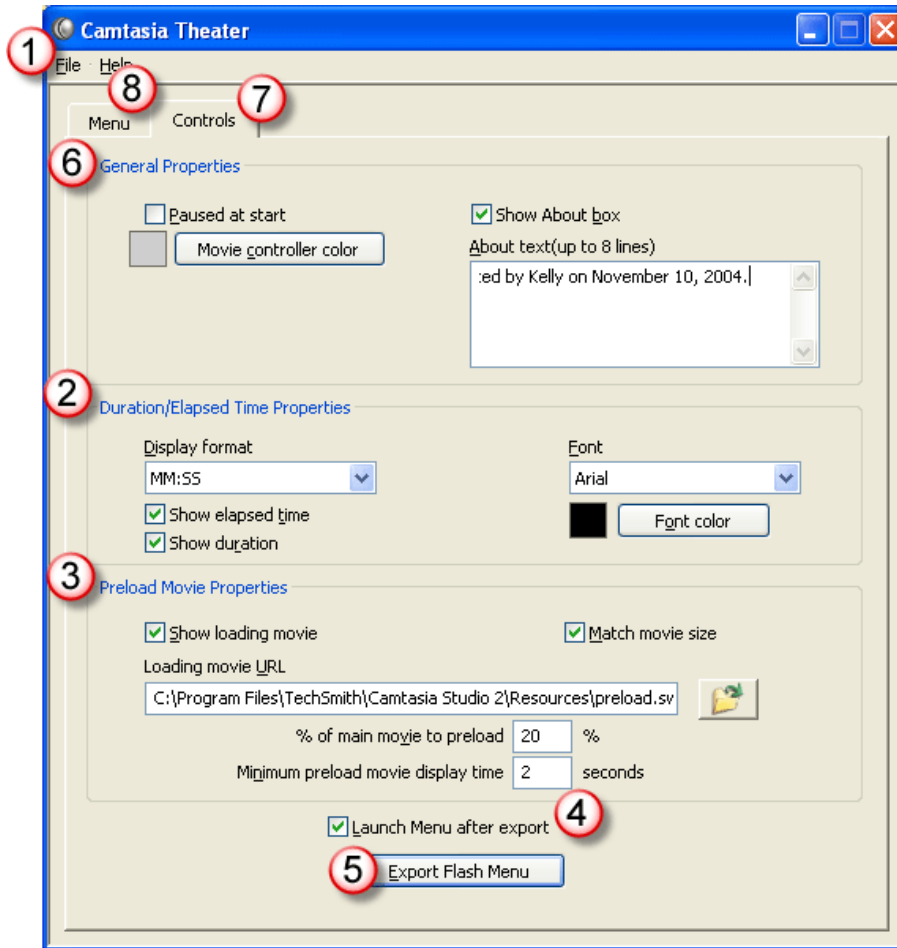
Menu Tab Options

Controls Tab View

Controls Tab Options

Controls Tab View

Within the *Controls* tab view, you can set the options for pausing and playing, change the controller color, add an about box, add duration information, and more. For more information on the options found in this view, see **Controls Tab Options**.



1	Menu bar. Access all dropdown menus from the menu bar.
2	Duration / Elapsed Time Properties. Customize the look of the duration and font.
3	Preload Movie Properties. Choose the loading SWF file to add to the menu. Also set the movie size and loading options.
4	Launch Menu after export. View the menu when the Export Flash Menu process has completed.
5	Export Flash Menu. Used to create the menu.
6	General Properties. Customize the look of the text for title and movie items.
7	Controls Tab Options. Set options for the look of the playback controls.
8	Menu Tab Options. Set the properties for the appearance of the menu.

See also:

Menu Tab Overview

Menu Tab Options

Controls Tab Options

Controls Tab Options

When you first open Camtasia Theater the Menu view is open. To go to the Controls view, click the *Controls* tab. The Controls are used to customize the look of the playback controls that shows within the menu itself and within the individual SWF movies.

Within the *Controls* tab, you can set the options for pausing and playing, the controller color, adding an about box, adding duration information, and more.

This table describes each of the General Properties options. These options are used to select the controller's color, customize the about box, and more.

Option Name	Description and Use
Pause at start	Movie pauses when menu first opens. Viewer will click the Start button to begin playing the movie.
Movie Controller color	Shows the color selection chart. Use the mouse to select the color that you want to tint the Movie Controller.
Launch Menu after export	Immediately view the menu when the Export Flash Menu process has completed. If left disabled, you will have to search for the directory that the menu was saved in and launch the menu from there by double-clicking the HTML file.
Export Flash Menu	Begins the menu export process. See Save Project & Export Flash Menu .
Show About box	Makes an "About" box available to the users. The About box is accessed by the user when the Camtasia Studio button is selected on the Movie Controller. This type of box usually contains important information such as copyright, authorship, dates, etc. When the About box option is enabled, enter the information, up to eight lines of text in the About text field.
Display Format	Select a display text format for the duration and/or elapsed time. You may choose different Hour: Minute: Second combinations.
Show Elapsed Time	Show the current time of the SWF movie in the selected display format.
Show Duration	Show the total duration of the SWF movie in the selected display format.
Font	Select the font of the duration and/or elapsed time display. To assure that the target machine has these fonts, there are two standard options for you to choose from, either Arial or Times New Roman.
Font Color	Select the color of the duration text. Click the Font Color button to show the color selection chart. Use the mouse to select the color. Note: If the color you want is not one of the swatches in the color selection box, enter the hexadecimal number for it in the number field.
Show loading movie	Show a SWF movie while the SWF file downloads.
Loading movie URL	Enter the URL or path to the movie that will play while the SWF file loads. The URL may be absolute (http://www.mydomain.com/mymovie.swf) or relative (./mymovie.swf). To help get you up and going quickly making menus with Camtasia Theater, we have provided a URL that links to a Camtasia Studio-made preload SWF file. This loading movie is entered in this field by default. The loading movie can be found in Theater's Resources folder.
Match movie size	Preloading movie size will match the size of the menu's SWF files and ensures that both movies are the same size in terms of width and height. If not enabled, the preloading movie appears at its own width and height dimensions. In this case, if some of the SWF files are larger in size than the loading movie, the background color will show.
% of main movie to preload	Enter the percentage of the main movie to preload before it begins playing. The preload movie will remain on the screen until this percentage is reached.

Option Name	Description and Use
Minimum Preload movie display time (in seconds)	Minimum amount of time in seconds that the preload movie remains on the screen. This works in combination with the % of Main Movie to Preload setting. This means that <u>both</u> conditions must be met before the movie begins playing.

Player

Camtasia Player is a simple, standalone video player, optimized for playing screen recordings.

- Player always plays back videos at 100% of their original size so that they remain readable.
- It runs on any 32-bit Windows platform, with no dependencies on runtime libraries, OS version, or DirectX.
- The Player is a single .EXE file that does not need any setup, nor does it use the registry or any configuration files.
- Player is designed to be as easy to use as possible. Command line options are provided which allow Player to be invoked in various ways from CD-ROMs, multimedia authoring tools, and scripting languages or batch files.
- Player only plays AVI video files. Any audio or video codecs required by the AVI file must be installed before Player can play the video.
- The basic Windows multimedia support for playing AVI files must be installed.
- Player does not setup any shell associations to become the default AVI player. However, this could be setup by an install program that you provide or, by the end user.

Opening Camtasia Player

You can open Player in two different ways.

- Choose **Start > All Programs > Camtasia Studio 4 > Applications > Camtasia Player**.
- From within any Camtasia Studio application, choose **Tools > Camtasia Player**.

Benefits

The TSCC is built into the Camtasia Player. The benefits of having a built-in TSCC include:

- The ability to playback videos on the host PC without having to install the TSCC.
- Lossless preservation of 100% of the image quality, even through multiple decompression/recompression cycles that are typical during the production process.
- Optimization for screen capture so that the resulting files are small and highly compressed.
- Exceptional compression speed at all color depths.
- Provides reliable playback that you can control using command line arguments. For example, you can command the player to exit after playing, or command it to play full-screen.
- Always plays back videos at 100 percent of their original size for best readability.
- Player is small and self-contained. It works on any 32-bit Windows platform, even Windows 95.
- There are no extraneous DLLs or DirectX components required.

Note: Camtasia Player supports many command line options that allow complete control over the player when it is run from CD-ROMs, multimedia authoring tools, help files, and scripting languages or batch files. See also: **Recorder's Command Line Customizations**.

Player System Requirements


In order to run Camtasia Player, the system must meet these specifications:

- Microsoft Windows 95, 98, Me, NT 4, 2000, XP or later version
- Windows-compatible sound card and speakers (recommended)
- 360 KB of hard-disk space for program installation
- Basic Windows multimedia and AVI file support must be installed.
- Multimedia and AVI file support is normally installed by default with Windows.
- Any audio or video codecs required by the AVI files must be installed. To check if a codec is installed, open **Control Panel > Sounds and Audio Devices > Hardware** tab. Scroll through the list to view codecs.

Make Camtasia Player the Default Player

Use these direction to make Camtasia Player the default video player.

For Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP or later:

1. Right-click on an AVI in Windows Explorer.
2. Select Open With > Other Program or Open With > Choose Program. The Open With dialog box appears.
3. Click **Browse** . Find and select C:\Program Files\TechSmith\Camtasia Studio 2\CamPlay.exe.
4. Click **Open**. The *Open With* dialog box appears.
5. Check the **Always use this program to open these files** or **Always use the selected program to open this kind of file** option.
6. Click **OK**.

For Windows 98, and Windows NT 4:

1. In *My Computer* or *Windows Explorer*, choose **View > Options**.
2. Click the *File Types* tab (or the *Folder Options* tab on Windows 98).
3. In the list of file types, select the file type for the AVI file extension (e.g. "Video Clip" or "Video Clip (AVI)"). The settings for that file type are shown in the *File Type Details* box.
4. Click **Edit**.
5. In the *Actions* box, select **Open**.
6. Click **Edit**. You may want to note the current setting, in case you want to restore it. Specify the full pathname for Camtasia Player followed by "/open" (e.g. "C:\Program Files\TechSmith\Camtasia\CamPlay.exe" /open)
7. Click **OK**.

Technical Reference Library

This section explains all of the properties, buttons, and menu options found with Camtasia Studio and its companion applications.

Choose from one of these main topics:

- **Camtasia Studio Menu Options**
- **Recorder Toolbar**
- **Recorder Effects Options**
- **Camtasia Player Menu Options**
- **Camtasia MenuMaker Menu Options**
- **Recorder or Player Command Line Customizations**
- **Contact TechSmith Technical Support**

Camtasia Studio Menu Options

This section describes the each of the menu options found within Camtasia Studio along with its purpose and use.

Choose from one of these menu topics:

Camtasia Studio File Menu Options

The **File** menu options allow you to access the new, open and save project options, the import and batch options as well as many other important functions.

Camtasia Studio Edit Menu Options

The **Edit** menu options allow you to invoke many edit commands and options used for editing the video such as *Split*, *Cut Selection*, *Edit Audio*, *Clip Speed*, and much more.

Camtasia Studio View Menu Options

The **View** menu options allow you to access the options that determine how the main view will appear.

Camtasia Studio Play Menu Options

The **Play** menu options allow you to access the options for the *Preview Area's Playback Controls* toolbar.

Camtasia Studio Tools Menu Options

The **Tools** menu options give you access to the other Camtasia Studio components as well as to a few Camtasia Studio specific options such as enabling and disabling the *Welcome* dialog box, setting frame rates, etc.

Camtasia Studio Help Menu Options

The **Help** menu options gives you access to the Camtasia Studio online help as well as other Camtasia Studio and TechSmith support options.

Camtasia Studio File Menu Options

The **File** menu options allow you to access the new, open and save project options, the import and batch options as well as many other important functions.

This table describes each of the *File* options along with its use.

File Option	Description & Use
New Project	Begin a new Camtasia Studio project.
Open Project	Open an existing project. Within the <i>Open</i> dialog box, find the project. Click Open .
Save Project	Save the work you have in the current project, including all effects, Transitions, and

File Option	Description & Use
	<p>project settings. Note: Does not create or save an AVI file. This is accomplished with the Produce Video As option. See also: Produce and Share the Final Video and Recommend my Production Settings Wizard.</p>
Save Project As	<p>Save the project as another name. Choose File > Save Project As.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The <i>Save As</i> dialog box appears. 1. Find the folder to save the project file to. 2. In the File name field, give this project a name. 3. Click Save.
Export Project as Zip	<p>Zip the current Camtasia Studio project into a zip file. Zipping the project is an easy way to back up your project. It is also the best way to move the project file from one location to another. See also: Export a Camtasia Studio Project.</p>
Import Zipped Project	<p>Import a zipped Camtasia Studio project file. When a zipped project is imported, Camtasia Studio will unzip it into a folder that you choose. See also: Import a Camtasia Studio Project.</p>
Record the Screen	<p>Open the <i>New Recording Wizard</i> dialog box to help you create a new screen recording. See also: Record the Screen with the Recording Wizard.</p>
Record PowerPoint	<p>Open PowerPoint to create a new screen recording using the PowerPoint Add-in.. See also: Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Add-In and Record the PowerPoint Presentation with the Add-In.</p>
Import Media	<p>Show the <i>Open</i> dialog box used to choose the media files to import. See also: Import Media.</p>
Project Properties	<p>Show the <i>Project Properties</i> tabbed dialog box for the file that is selected in the <i>Clip Bin</i>. The <i>Properties</i> box gives statistical information about the file such as format, file location, file size, etc.</p>
Produce Selection As	<p>Produce the project into shareable video file formats.</p>
Produce Video As	<p>Produce the project into shareable video file formats. See also: Produce and Share the Final Video and Recommend my Production Settings Wizard.</p>
Batch Production	<p>Begin the batch processing process that produces many projects all at once. See also: Batch Produce Several Projects at One Time</p>
Pack and Show	<p>Package the movie for easy one-step distribution to your users. See Package a Video as a Pack and Show Executable File.</p>
Save Audio	<p>Save all of the audio in the project as one separate audio file. See Save Audio Track as an MP3 or WAV File.</p>
Save Frame As	<p>Save the current frame displayed in the Preview Window as a BMP, GIF, JPEG, or PNG file. See Save the Current Frame as an Image.</p>
Recent Projects	<p>Show a list of the most recently opened projects. Click on a recent project name to open the project.</p>
Recent Recordings	<p>Show a list of the most recently created recordings. Click on a recent recording name to import that file.</p>
Exit	<p>Exit the Camtasia Studio application.</p>

Camtasia Studio Edit Menu Options

The **Edit** menu options allow you to invoke many edit commands and options used for editing the video such as Split, Cut Selection, Edit Audio, Clip Speed, and much more.

This table describes each of the Edit options along with its use.

Note: When making splits or cuts to the video using the Edit options, you are not cutting the actual video file. Making edits to a video inside of Camtasia Studio is a nondestructive process, in that the original clip file is not altered in any way.

Edit Option	Description & Use
Undo	Will undo the last action in succession. This is an unlimited undo feature. See also: Timeline Toolbar .
Redo	Will redo the last action that was undone. This is an unlimited redo feature. See also: Timeline Toolbar .
Add to Timeline	When in Timeline view, adds the highlighted clip in the Clip Bin to the Timeline. See also: The Clip Bin and Clips & Elements on the Timeline .
Add to PIP	When in Timeline view, adds an AVI or WMV video clip to the Picture-in-Picture (PIP) track at the current location of the seek bar. Camrec files cannot be added to the PIP track. To create a PIP recording, see Record Camera: Add a Picture-in-Picture Recording . See also: Modify a Picture-in-Picture Recording and PIP Preview .
Add to Storyboard	When in Storyboard view, adds the highlighted clip in the Clip Bin to the Storyboard. See also: The Clip Bin and Storyboard View .
Split	Split the video at the point of the selection seek bar in the Timeline. See also: Make a Split on the Timeline and Basic Timeline Edits .
Cut Selection	Cut the portion of the video that is selected. See also: Make a Cut on the Timeline and Basic Timeline Edits .
Extend Frame	Extend the duration of a frame. See also: Extend the Frame of a Video Clip and Basic Timeline Edits .
Clip Speed	Speed up or slows down the playback time for a clip in the rendered movie. For example, you can stretch a clip to provide more time for voice annotation or you can speed it up to fill gaps. See also: Adjust the Clip Speed of a Video Clip and Basic Timeline Edits .
Audio	Apply audio edits. See also: Basic Audio Edits .
Add a Marker	Add a Marker or placeholder within the video. See also: Add a Marker .
Split at all Markers	Automatically split clips that are on the Timeline into several smaller clips based on the location of the Markers. Markers that are placed at the beginning of a clip or during a Callout, Transition, etc. cannot be split. Choose Edit > Split all Markers . The video is split at all Marker points. See also: Add a Marker .
Remove all Markers	Remove all the Markers from the Timeline.
Image Duration	Increase or decrease the playback time for an image clip. For example, you can increase the duration to provide more time for voice annotation or you can reduce the time to fill gaps. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Place the selection seek bar on the image clip that you want to adjust. 2. Choose Edit > Image Duration. 3. Use the arrow buttons to change the duration to the time in seconds. 4. Click OK.

Edit Option	Description & Use
Title Clips	Open the <i>Title Clips</i> task page used to insert a Title Clip into the video. See also: Title Clips . See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Task List and the Task Area • The Preview Playback Area
Voice Narration	Open the <i>Voice Narration</i> task page used to insert narration into the video using the playback of the clips on the Timeline as your guide. See also: Voice Narration . See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Task List and the Task Area • The Preview Playback Area
Record Camera	Open the <i>Record Camera</i> task page used to add a small talking head video clip over the top of the screen recording video clip(s). See also: Record Camera: Add a Picture-in-Picture Recording .
Picture-in-Picture	Open the <i>Picture-in-Picture</i> task page used to modify the talking head video clip. See also: Modify a Picture-in-Picture Recording .
Audio Enhancements	Open the <i>Audio Enhancement</i> task page used to apply various audio enhancements such as equalization and noise reduction. See also: Audio Enhancements .
Transitions	Open the <i>Transitions</i> task page used to insert Transitions into the video. The view is switched to Storyboard view. See also: Transitions .
Callouts	Open the <i>Callouts</i> task page used to choose and insert Callouts into the video. Callouts are especially useful for calling attention to important information in the video. Callouts can also be designated as Flash Hot Spots, used to add interactivity to the Callout. See also: Callouts .
Zoom-n-Pan	Open the <i>Zoom-n-Pan</i> task page used to set key frame reference points for zooming in and out on a clip. See also: Zoom-n-Pan .
Flash Quiz	Open the <i>Flash Quiz and Survey</i> task page used to insert Quizzes or Surveys into the video project. These appear when the project is produced as a Flash (SWF) movie file. See also: Flash Quiz & Survey .
Captions	Open the <i>Open Captions</i> task page used to create captions that synchronize the Timeline audio with onscreen caption text. This type of captioning is called Open Captioning. See also: Captions .

Camtasia Studio View Menu Options

The View menu options determine how the main view will appear including the options to toggle the toolbar on or off, toggle the status bar on or off, etc. This table describes each of the View options along with its use.

View Option	Description & Use
Storyboard	Toggle the Timeline view to the Storyboard view. See also: Storyboard View .
Timeline	Toggle the Storyboard view to the Timeline view. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Camtasia Studio Interface Overview • Timeline View • Timeline Toolbar • Clips & Elements on the Timeline
Task List	Toggle the Task List on or off. See also: The Task List and the Task Area
Toolbar	Toggle the Toolbar on or off. See also: Timeline Toolbar .
Status Bar	Toggle the Status Bar on or off.
Toggle PIP Preview	Toggle the view of the PIP placement to either side-by-side preview or picture-in-picture preview.
Full Screen	Show the clips on the Timeline in full-screen mode. See also: View Timeline Preview in Full Screen Mode .
Shrink to Fit	Shrink the video to fit within the Preview Area if the size of the Preview Area is smaller than the size of the video. Note: Shrinking the video to fit the Preview Area may distort the view of the video. This distortion only affects the preview view, not the final produced video. Note: If not enabled, you may only see part of the video in the Preview Area.
Zoom In	Use Zoom In to get a closer look at the clips on the Timeline. Best used to get a more precise selection for editing, trimming, etc. Continue to click the Zoom In tool until the desired view is reached.
Zoom Out	Zoom the view out on the Timeline. Continue to click the Zoom Out tool until the desired view is reached.
Zoom to Fit	Zoom in or out on the Timeline to allow the entire Timeline to fit in the window.
Zoom to Selection	Zoom in to the maximum on a Timeline selection.
Zoom to Maximum	Zoom in to the maximum on the entire Timeline.
Clip Bin	Choose the way that you want to view and/or sort the clips within the Clip Bin. A flyout menu appears. From the menu, choose the view option. The Properties option opens the <i>Properties</i> dialog box for the file that is selected in the Clip Bin. The Properties box gives statistical information on the file such as format, file location, file size, etc. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Clip Bin • Adding Clips that are in the Clip Bin to the Timeline • Clips & Elements on the Timeline • Extract an AVI and WMV from a CAMREC Recording

View Option	Description & Use
Snap To	<p>Automatically snap to an exact edge location point on the Timeline when highlighting a selection with the seek bar. This is especially convenient when you want to make a cut that includes the very beginning of a clip, marker, or caption.</p> <p>Choose View > Snap-to. A flyout menu appears. From the menu, choose the snap to option(s):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Clip EdgesMarkersAudio 2Captions

Camtasia Studio Play Menu Options

The **Play** menu options allow you to access the options for the Preview Area's Playback Controls toolbar.

For more information on these topics, see **The Preview Playback Area**.

Play Option	Description	Use
Play/Pause	Begin playing the video. When the video begins to play, this toggles to Pause .	Ctrl + Space
Stop	Stop the video from playing. When Stop is selected, the seek bar will return to the beginning of the video.	Ctrl + Alt + Space
Beginning	Move seek bar to the beginning.	Ctrl + Home
End	Move seek bar to the end.	Ctrl + End
Previous Clip	Move the seek bar to the beginning of the previous clip on the Timeline.	Ctrl + Alt + Left Arrow
Next Clip	Move the seek bar to the beginning of the next clip on the Timeline.	Ctrl + Alt + Right Arrow
Step Backward	Rewind the video frame by frame.	Ctrl + Left Arrow
Step Forward	Forward the video frame by frame.	Ctrl + Right Arrow
Previous Marker	Move the seek bar to the beginning of the previous Marker on the Timeline.	Ctrl + [
Next Marker	Move the seek bar to the beginning of the next Marker on the Timeline.	Ctrl +]

Camtasia Studio Tools Menu Options

The *Tools* menu options gives you access to the other Camtasia Studio components as well as to application specific options. This table describes each of the *Tools* options.

Tools Option	Description
Camtasia Studio	Start Camtasia Studio. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Camtasia Studio Welcome Options • Record the Screen with the Recording Wizard • How Camtasia Studio's Applications Work Together • Camtasia Studio Interface Overview • Clips & Elements on the Timeline • Basic Timeline Edits
Camtasia Recorder	Start Recorder. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recorder Basics • Start, Pause, Stop, and Delete a Recording • Record the Screen with Audio • Record the Screen with Camera (PIP) • Add Annotation Effects While Recording
Camtasia Audio Editor	Start Audio Editor .
Camtasia Theater	Start Theater . See also: Create a Theater Flash Menu .
Camtasia Player	Start Player . See also: Make Camtasia Player the Default Player .
Options	Show the <i>Options</i> dialog box which is used to set system options. For Camtasia Studio options, see Camtasia Studio Tools Options . For Recorder options, see Recorder Tools Options . For MenuMaker Options, see MenuMaker Options & Properties .

Camtasia Studio Help Menu Options

The Help menu options gives you access to the Camtasia Studio online help as well as other Camtasia Studio and TechSmith support options.

Help Options Description Table

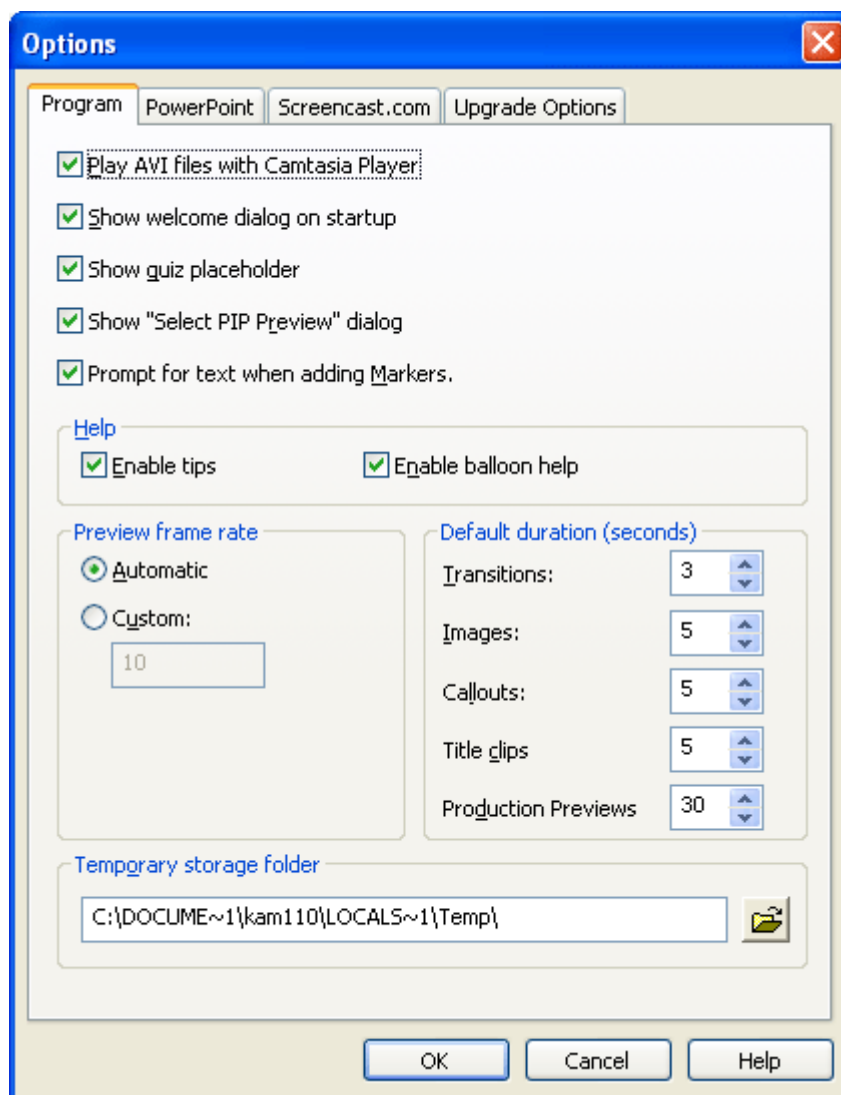
This table describes each of the *Help* options.

Help Option	Description & Use
Camtasia Studio Help	Open the MenuMaker online help.
Support	<p>If you have a question pertaining to Camtasia Studio, we recommend that you first search the built-in help file to find the information that you need.</p> <p>If you still need technical support help, you can get free support by searching our Web site's support database. From within Camtasia Studio, choose Help > Support. Select the TechSmith Support Website link.</p> <p>Diagnostic Information When working with technical support, you could be asked to email or fax Camtasia Studio diagnostics. If so, choose Help > Support. The diagnostic information is highlighted. Choose Copy to Clipboard and paste the information into an e-mail message, along with any other information requested by the Technical Support team. Or print the data and fax (+1 517.913.6121) it to Camtasia Studio support, along with any other information requested by the <i>Technical Support</i> team. Click OK to close the <i>Camtasia Studio Support</i> window.</p>
Check for Upgrade	Access the TechSmith upgrade Web site to check for possible upgrades. On the TechSmith Web page, fill out the requested information and click Submit . A TechSmith representative will contact you in regard to the upgrade status.
Frequently Asked Questions	Access the TechSmith <i>Frequently Asked Question</i> Web site which to search the FAQ database. http://www.techsmith.com/products/studio/faqs.asp
Tell a Friend	Access the TechSmith <i>Tell a Friend</i> Web site which to send information on Camtasia Studio to a friend by entering an e-mail address. Choose Help > Tell a Friend . Once the Web site is accessed, enter the email address of the person you wish to send information to. Click Send .
Quick Start Videos	Access the Web page that houses the Quick Start video menu.
TechSmith on the Web	Show a dropdown menu of several helpful TechSmith Web sites. TechSmith Home: http://www.techsmith.com/defaultflash.asp Camtasia Studio Home: http://www.techsmith.com/products/studio/default.asp Send Feedback: http://www.techsmith.com/products/feedback.asp TechSmith Products: http://www.techsmith.com/products/studio/faqs.asp
Reset Balloon Tips	The first couple of times that Camtasia Studio is used, balloon tips appear to give directional guidance. After a few times, these tips will turn off. Choose Help > Reset Balloon Tips to turn the tips back on.
About Camtasia Studio	Show the <i>About</i> dialog box which lists version and licensing information.

Camtasia Studio Tools Options

Path: Camtasia Studio > Tools > Options.

The *Options* tabbed dialog box is used to set the Camtasia Studio system options as well as options concerning the PowerPoint Add-in, Screencast.com, and Camtasia Studio upgrades.



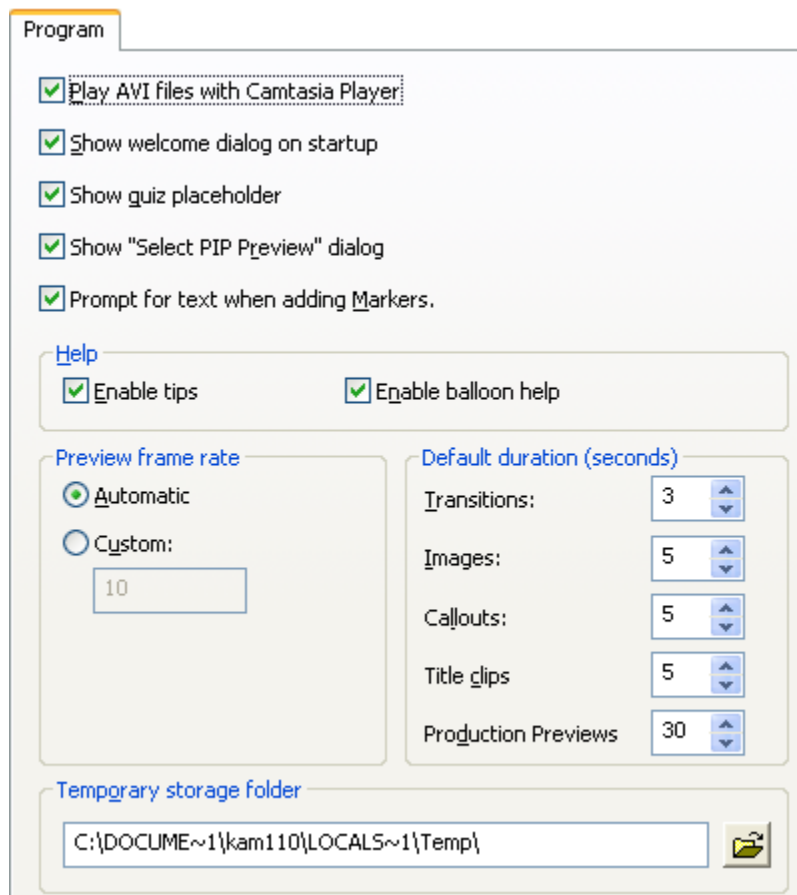
See also:

- **Program Options**
- **PowerPoint Options**
- **Screencast.com Options**
- **Upgrade Options**

Program Options

Path: Camtasia Studio > Tools > Options > Program tab.

The *Program Options* tab is used to set the options concerning the PowerPoint Add-in



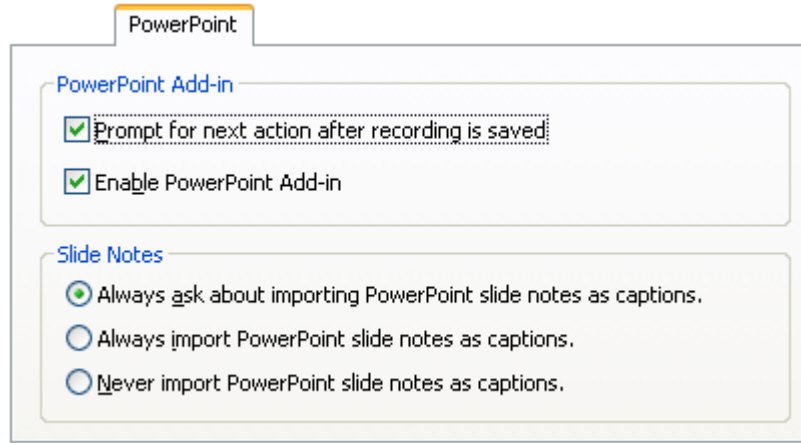
Options	Description & Use
Play AVI files with Camtasia Player	Allow AVI files to play with Camtasia Player by default. This is enabled by default.
Show welcome dialog on startup	Show the <i>Welcome</i> dialog box. This is enabled by default.
Show quiz placeholder	<p>Turn the Quiz placeholder view on or off. When a check mark is present, the Quiz placeholder preview is on. Remove the check mark to turn the Quiz placeholder off.</p> <p>During playback of the clips and elements on the Timeline, if there is a Flash Quiz included on the Timeline, then this placeholder will show in the Preview Area to let you know the Quiz name and its location.</p> <p>When a Quiz Placeholder appears in the Preview Area, you must click Play on the toolbar to continue previewing the Timeline clips.</p>

Options	Description & Use
Show “Select PIP Preview” dialog	<p>Turn the <i>Select PIP Preview</i> dialog box on or off. When a check mark is present, the Select PIP Preview is on. Remove the check mark to turn the Select PIP Preview off.</p> <p>The <i>Select PIP Preview</i> dialog box asks how to show the camera recording as you work within Camtasia Studio.</p> <p>If you have a video that contains a camera recording or, you are importing a stand alone camera recording, the Select PIP Preview dialog box appears whenever you:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Edit the video within Camtasia Studio after creating a recording that contains camera video. • Open a project within Camtasia Studio that contains camera video. • Import a video that contains camera video into the Camtasia Studio project. • Create a camera recording from within Camtasia Studio’s Picture-in-Picture (PIP) option. <p>See also: PIP Preview.</p>
Prompt for text when adding Markers	<p>When adding a Marker, you are prompted for the Marker name. This is enabled by default.</p> <p>Remove the check mark to turn the automatic prompt off. When off, you will need to manually open the <i>Marker Name</i> dialog box in order to name the Marker.</p>
Enable Tips	<p>Turn the tips on or off. When a check mark is present, the tips are on. Remove the check mark to turn the tips off.</p>
Enable balloon help	<p>Turn balloon help tips on or off. When a check mark is present, the balloon help tips are on. Remove the check mark to turn the balloon help tips off.</p>
Preview Frame Rate	<p>Automatically adjusts all clips to play back at the same frame rate on the Timeline/Storyboard.</p> <p>The Automatic option is enabled by default.</p>
Automatic	<p>Automatically adjusts the frame rate to the frame rate that is the highest of all the clips on the Timeline/Storyboard or to 10 fps, whichever is higher. For example, if one clip is 15 fps and one is 5 fps and both of them are on the Timeline/Storyboard, the Automatic setting will make the 5 fps clip run at 15 fps, allowing you to get smooth video playback.</p> <p>If selected and several clips on the Timeline/Storyboard were 5 fps, then these would all be adjusted to run at 10 fps.</p>
Custom	<p>Set a custom fps speed. When setting a custom frame rate, all the clips on the Timeline/Storyboard will run at that frame rate.</p>
Default Durations (In Seconds)	<p>Sets the default duration for the Transitions, Callouts, Title Clips, Images, and Production Preview</p> <p>Use the arrow buttons to set the duration speed higher or lower.</p>
Temporary Storage Folder	<p>Designate the default folder that is used to store temporary files that Camtasia Studio needs in order to process the video.</p> <p>This is set to the system temp directory by default.</p>
OK	<p>Save changes.</p>
Cancel	<p>Exit without making any changes.</p>

PowerPoint Options

Path: Camtasia Studio > Tools > Options > PowerPoint tab.

The *PowerPoint Options* tab is used to enable the PowerPoint add-in and set options pertaining to the PowerPoint notes.



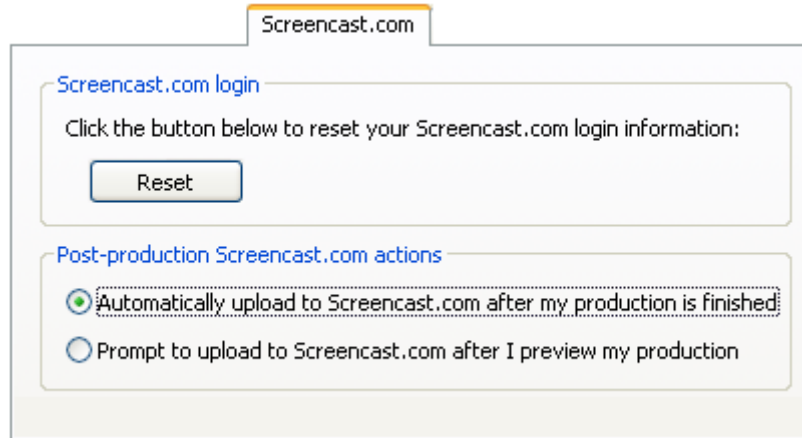
Options	Description & Use
Prompt for next action after recording is saved	The <i>What would you like to do</i> dialog box appears after the PowerPoint recording is saved. Choose to immediately produce the recording or bring the recording into Camtasia Studio for editing.
Enable PowerPoint Add-in	Enable or disable the Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Add-in. This is enabled by default. Deselect to disable the Add-in. The PowerPoint Add-in requires PowerPoint 2000, XP or later.
Always ask about importing PowerPoint slide notes as captions.	Enable to be prompted about whether or not to bring the PowerPoint presentation notes into Camtasia Studio as Captions .
Always import PowerPoint notes as captions	Always bring the PowerPoint presentation notes into Camtasia Studio as Captions .
Never import PowerPoint slide notes as captions	Never bring the PowerPoint presentation notes into Camtasia Studio as Captions .
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

ScreenCast.com Options

Path: Camtasia Studio > Tools > Options > ScreenCast.com tab.

The ScreenCast.com options allow you to reset your ScreenCast.com login and select the post production actions.

ScreenCast.com is a hosting site for business and academic professional users who want an easy-to-use solution with robust features for hosting and sharing video and other rich media files on the web. Unlike typical hosting sites which are geared toward customers for general entertainment purposes, ScreenCast.com has valuable features that a professional would appreciate such as having the choice of whether or not to retain the original quality of the content; the ability to analyze how often the content is viewed and/or downloaded; controlling access to the intellectual property and tailoring the brand experience for your audience with a customizable skin.



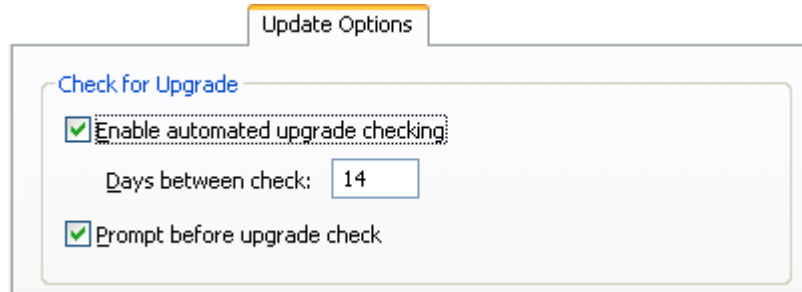
Options	Description & Use
ScreenCast.com login Reset	Change your ScreenCast.com user name and password.
Automatically upload to screencast.com after my production is finished	If you have a ScreenCast.com account, automatically uploads the production files without further prompting. This works in conjunction with the Upload presentation to ScreenCast.com option found in the Production Wizard's <i>Produce Video</i> dialog box.
Prompt to upload to ScreenCast.com after I preview my production	If you already have a ScreenCast.com account, you are prompted at the end of the production to upload the files to ScreenCast.com. This works in conjunction with the Upload presentation to ScreenCast.com option found in the Production Wizard's <i>Produce Video</i> dialog box.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Upgrade Options

Path: Camtasia Studio > Tools > Options > Upgrade tab.

The *Upgrade* Options tab is used to set up Camtasia Studio to automatically check for program updates. Camtasia Studio will launch your Internet Browser and go to the upgrade page on the TechSmith Web site.

Note: No information is collected by TechSmith.



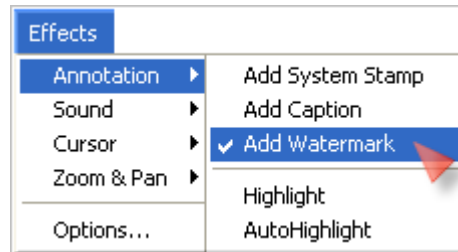
Options	Description & Use
Enabled automated upgrade checking	Automatically checks for program updates on the Camtasia Studio Web site. Enabled by default.
Days between checks	Select the number of days between checking for updates. The default entry is 14 days.
Prompt before update check	Prompt for your Internet access information before checking for an update. If you are on a dial-up connection, sign on to your Internet provider in order to access the Web.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Recorder Toolbars

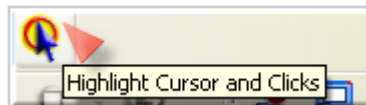
Several of the most-used options have been added to Recorder's main toolbar.



Next to several of the tool buttons there is a small, black down-arrow. Click the down-arrow to reveal a dropdown menu of options related to that tool.



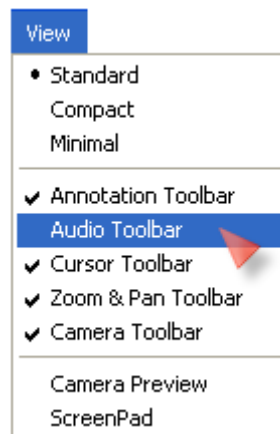
To aid in the navigation around the Recorder toolbar, each time the cursor touches a button, a tooltip will appear. The tooltip gives you the name of the tool.



Choosing a Toolbar

There are several toolbars available within Recorder. By default, only the main toolbar is displayed when Recorder is first opened. You can show any or all of the other toolbars by enabling them from the **View** menu.

To enable a toolbar to view, choose the toolbar from the **View** dropdown menu. Once enabled, a small checkmark is placed next to the toolbar name. The different toolbars are highlighted in the graphic below.



See also:









- **Main Toolbar**
- **Annotation Toolbar**
- **Audio Toolbar**
- **Cursor Toolbar**
- **Zoom and Pan Toolbar**
- **Camera Toolbar**

Main Toolbar

The Main toolbar is used primarily for starting, pausing and stopping the recording, and accessing the Recorder effects and tools options.



This table describes each of the tools that can be found on the Main toolbar along with its use.

Button	Tool Name	Description & Use
	Record	Begin the recording sequence. Click the Record button to begin recording. This becomes the Pause button once recording has begun. For information on the Input options, see Recorder Input Options . See also: Record the Screen with the Recording Wizard .
	Pause	Pause the recording. Click the Pause button to pause recording. This becomes the Resume button once Pause is selected.
	Resume	Resume the recording. Click the Resume button to begin recording again. This becomes the Pause button.
	Stop	Stop the recording. Click the Stop button.
	Delete	Delete the recording. This can be pressed while recording is going on. Click the Delete button to delete the recording. When selected, the capture pauses and a message appears asking if you are sure you want to delete the current video capture. If Yes, the recording stops and any captured frames are discarded.
	Toggle View	Click the Toggle View button to change the Recorder view. Click the small down arrow to access the dropdown list of view options. From the list, you can change the main view, turn toolbars on or off, open ScreenPad, and show the camera preview. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the Recorder View • Recorder Toolbars
	Options	Open the <i>Tools Options</i> tabbed dialog box. Click the small down arrow to access the dropdown list of individual Options tabs. The top part of the list has the <i>Tools Options</i> . The second part of the list has the <i>Effects Options</i> . See also: Recorder Effects Options and Recorder Tools Options .
	Help	Open the Recorder online help. Click the Help button to open the help file.

Change the Recorder View

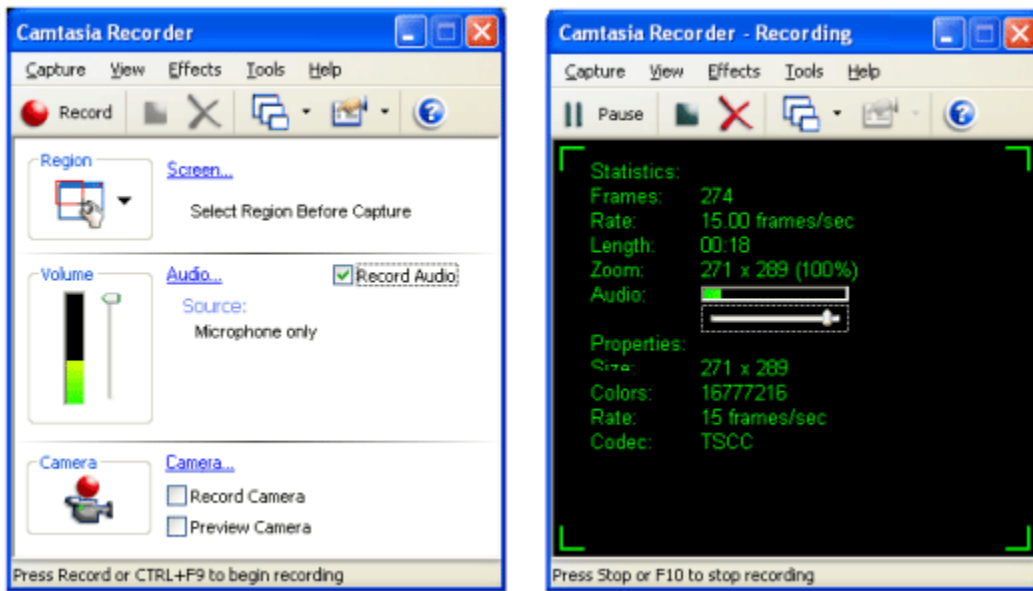
Click the **Toggle View** button on the main toolbar to change the Recorder view. Or, click **View** on the menu bar and select the view from the list.



The toggle button cycles through these views: **Standard View**, **Compact View**, **Minimal View**.

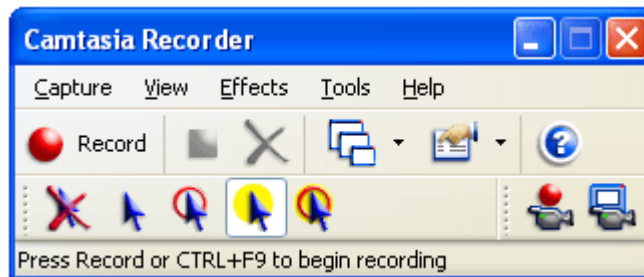
Standard View

This is the default view of Recorder that shows the main toolbar and the output, audio, and camera options. During recording, the video statistics and properties will show in this same area.



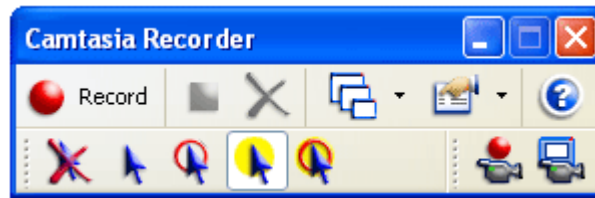
Compact View

This view of Recorder only shows the menu bar, main toolbar, and any other toolbars that are turned on.



Minimal View

This view of Recorder only shows the main toolbar and any other toolbars that are turned on.

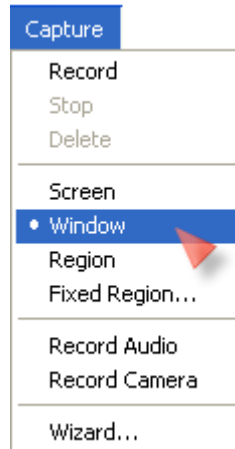


Recorder Input Options

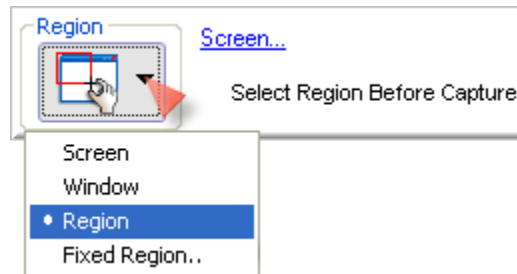
Input defines the area of the desktop that is recorded. The four Recorder Input options let you capture exactly the area of the screen you want to include in the video. This way, the video won't include any superfluous areas of the screen, but will instead focus on the action.

Also, if you're concerned about file size, you can help control the size of the file by concentrating on a smaller area. At the same time, if you require a video of the entire screen, you can still exercise that option. By experimenting with the different input choices, you can find the best input size for your particular needs.



Access these options from Recorder's **Capture** dropdown menu.





Or, from the dropdown menu that appears when the **Capture** tool is selected.



This table describes each of the Input menu options.

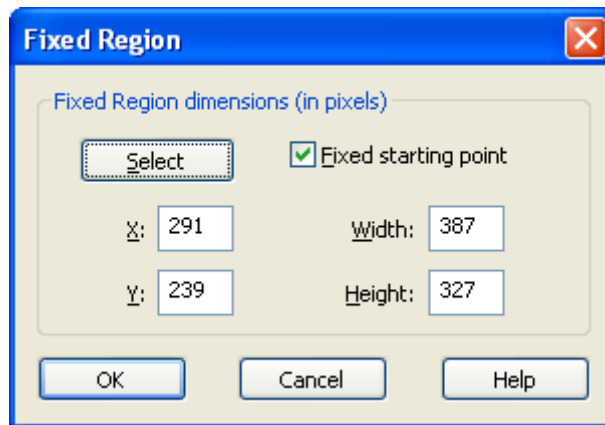
Input Option	Description & Use
Screen	Record the entire computer screen. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Choose Capture > Screen. 2. Click Record .
Window	Record a selected window. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Choose Capture > Window. 2. Click Record . 3. The cursor will change to a finger-pointer/highlighter. With the highlighter, select a window or any portion of a window to be captured. When you pass over areas that can be selected, they are highlighted. 4. Click with the pointer to select the window. 5. Recording begins immediately.

Input Option	Description & Use
Region	Record a user-defined region. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Choose Capture > Region. 2. Click Record . 3. The cursor changes to a crosshair-pointer. Click and drag the cursor over the area you want to capture. 4. Release the cursor. Recording begins immediately.
Fixed Region	Record a pre-defined region. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Choose Capture > Fixed Region. 2. The <i>Fixed Region</i> dialog box appears. Define the size of the fixed region. Click OK. See also: Fixed Region Dialog Box. 3. Click Record .

Fixed Region Dialog Box

Path: Recorder > Capture menu > Fixed Region.

Use the *Fixed Region* dialog box to set the region that is to be captured during recording.



Input Option	Description & Use
Select	Click Select to draw the fixed region on the screen. If you use Select to set starting point and dimensions, the numbers are automatically placed in the appropriate X and Y and Width and Height fields.
Fixed Starting Point	To manually set a starting point rather than drawing it on the screen, check the Fixed starting point box.
Width and Height	Type the pixel dimensions in the Width and Height boxes. These will automatically be populated if the Select option is used.
Start X and Start Y	Type the coordinates, in pixels, in the X and Y fields. Note that (0,0) is the top-left corner of the screen. These will automatically be populated if the Select option is used.
OK	Click OK to save changes and exit back to Recorder.

Annotation Toolbar

Path: Recorder > View menu > Annotation Toolbar.





Note: The Annotation effects are set up and configured using the *Annotation* tab. See also: **Recorder Effects Options**, **Recorder Annotation Tab**, or **Annotation Tab Options**.



The Annotation toolbar is used for turning on the effects that add annotations to the video while you record. Annotations include a timestamp, watermark, captions, highlights, etc.



The Annotation tools are toggle options. This means that you can use the toolbar buttons to turn the option on or off as the video is being recorded. Click the button once to enable the option. Click the button once more to disable the option.

This table describes each of the tools that can be found on the Annotation toolbar along with its use.

Button	Tool Name	Description & Use
	Add System Stamp	Add an annotation with the current time and date, computer or user name, or elapsed time to the video. Click the Add System Stamp button to “turn on” this effect. To configure, see Recorder Annotation Tab . See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Apply a Time or Date Stamp to a Recording • Apply an Elapsed Time Stamp to a Recording • Apply a Computer Name or User Name Stamp to a Recording
	Add Caption	Add a text caption to the video. Click the Add Caption button to “turn on”. To configure, see Recorder Annotation Tab . See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Apply a Caption to a Recording • Add a Watermark While Recording • System Stamp & Caption Customization Option
	Add Watermark	Add a watermark graphic to the video. The watermark is a small image that is placed into the recording area. Click the Add Watermark button to “turn on”. To configure, see Recorder Watermark Tab . See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Watermark Tab Options • Add a Watermark While Recording • Watermark Tab Options
	AutoHighlight	Add a highlight border to areas of the capture (typically a window, dialog, or box) as the cursor passes over them during recording. The highlight area changes dynamically with the cursor position. Click the AutoHighlight button to “turn on”. To configure, see Recorder Annotation Tab . See also: Highlight One Area of the Recording . Note: You can use Capture > Pause/Resume to control exactly when and where the AutoHighlight effect appears.

Button	Tool Name	Description & Use
	Highlight	<p>Select a static area of a window or the whole window to have a highlight rectangle around it.</p> <p>As you record the movie and move the cursor on the screen, the highlight area does not change.</p> <p>Click the Highlight button to “turn on”.</p> <p>To configure, see Recorder Annotation Tab.</p> <p>See also: Highlight One Area of the Recording.</p>
	ScreenDraw	<p>Draw on the screen as you record. You can draw various shapes, such as Highlight, Ellipse, Pen, Line, or Arrow.</p> <p>Click the ScreenDraw button to “turn on”.</p> <p>To configure, see Recorder ScreenDraw Tab.</p> <p>Note: The ScreenDraw documentation can be found on the TechSmith website.</p>

Audio Toolbar

Path: Recorder > View menu > Audio Toolbar.

Note: The Audio effects are set up and configured using the *Sound* tab. See also: **Recorder Effects Options** or **Recorder Sound Tab**.





The Audio toolbar is used for adding audio effects to the video as it is being recorded. Audio effects include real-time audio inputted from a microphone, mouse click sounds, and keyboard sounds.



Note: You must have a working microphone installed in order for the audio options to work.

The Audio tools are toggle options. This means that you can use the toolbar buttons to turn the option on or off as the video is being recorded. Click the button once to turn on the option. Click the button once more to turn off the option.

This table describes each of the tools that can be found on the Audio toolbar along with its use.

Button	Tool Name	Description & Use
	Record Audio	Record real-time audio as you record the video. To record audio, click the Record Audio button. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recorder Audio Tab • Audio Format
	Cursor Sounds	Record sounds for cursor clicks as you record the video. To record cursor sounds, click the Cursor Sounds button. To configure, see Recorder Sound Tab . See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cursor Setup Options • Highlight Cursor Options • Highlight Mouse Clicks Options • Add the Cursor with Mouse Clicks and Apply Cursor Sounds while Recording
	Keyboard Sounds	Record sounds for key clicks as you record the video. To record keyboard sounds, click the Keyboard Sounds button. To configure, see Recorder Sound Tab . See also: Add a Cursor Highlight and Keystroke Clicks to a Recording .
	Mute Audio Effects	Mute all sound effects. To mute all sound effects, click the Mute Audio Effects button.

See also:

Recorder Cursor Tab

Cursor Setup Options

Highlight Cursor Options

Cursor Toolbar

Highlight Cursor Options

Highlight Mouse Clicks Options


Cursor Toolbar

Path: Recorder > View menu > Cursor Toolbar.






Note: The Cursor effects are set up and configured using the *Cursor* tab. See also: **Recorder Effects Options**, **Recorder Cursor Tab**, and **Cursor Setup Options**.

The Cursor toolbar is used for turning the cursor effects on or off during recording. Cursor effects include hiding the cursor, showing the cursor, highlighting the cursor, and highlighting the mouse clicks.



Click the button once to “turn on” the effect. Click the **Hide Cursor** button  to “turn off” the effect.

This table describes each of the tools that can be found on the Cursor toolbar along with its use.

Button	Tool Name	Description & Use
	Hide Cursor	Hide the cursor during recording of video. Click the Hide Cursor button to “turn off” cursor effects.
	Show Cursor	Show the cursor during recording of video. Click the Show Cursor button to “turn on”. To configure, see Recorder Cursor Tab and Cursor Setup Options . See also: Add the Cursor while Recording .
	Highlight Clicks	Visually highlight the mouse clicks during the recording of video using a variety of shapes and colors. Click the Highlight Clicks button to “turn on”. To configure, see Recorder Cursor Tab , Cursor Setup Options , and Highlight Mouse Clicks Options . See also: Highlight Mouse Clicks Options .
	Highlight Cursor	Highlight the cursor with a translucent outline during the recording of video using a variety of colors. Click the Highlight Cursor button to “turn on”. To configure, see Recorder Cursor Tab , Cursor Setup Options and Highlight Cursor Options . See also: Add a Cursor Highlight to a Recording .
	Highlight Cursor & Clicks	Turn on highlighting of both cursor clicks and cursor movement using a variety of shapes and colors. Click the Highlight Cursor button to “turn on”. To configure, see Recorder Cursor Tab , Cursor Setup Options , Highlight Mouse Clicks Options , and Highlight Cursor Options . See also: Add the Cursor and Mouse Clicks while Recording .

See also:

Recorder Cursor Tab

Cursor Setup Options

Highlight Cursor Options

Add a Cursor Highlight and Keystroke Clicks to a Recording

Add the Cursor with Mouse Clicks and Apply Cursor Sounds while Recording

Zoom and Pan Toolbar

Path: Recorder > View menu > Zoom & Pan Toolbar.

Note: The Zoom and Pan effects are set up and configured using the *Zoom* tab. See also: **Recorder Effects Options** and **Recorder Zoom Tab**.

The Zoom and Pan toolbar is used for adding zoom and/or pan effects to the video as it is being recorded.

Important Note:





Zoom and pan effects can also be added after you have recorded the video. For many people, it is easier to add these effects after the video is recorded rather than while the video is being recorded. See also: **Zoom-n-Pan**.



Zooming magnifies your actions while panning focuses your actions. Used together, zooming and panning help to focus your viewer's attention on specific areas of the recording.

- Zoom while recording to show more detail or cover more area.
- Pan to capture the smaller area where the action is taking place.



This table describes each of the tools that can be found on the Zoom and Pan toolbar along with its use.

Tool Name	Description & Use
	<p>AutoPan</p> <p>Focus follows the cursor while you are recording with a floating area that shows where the action happens. Click the AutoPan button to “turn on”. To configure, see Recorder Zoom Tab and Zoom Tab Options. See also: Add an AutoPan Effect During Recording.</p>
	<p>AutoZoom</p> <p>Zoom between two windows, regions, etc., with a smooth, professional appearance. AutoZoom automatically pans the area and zooms in smoothly for a professional transition. Click the AutoZoom button to “turn on”. To configure, see Recorder Zoom Tab and Zoom Tab Options. See also: Add an AutoZoom Effect During Recording.</p>
	<p>Zoom Out</p> <p>Zoom out on the area you are recording to reduce a portion of the screen or application area and therefore capture a larger area. The percentage of zoom is indicated in the statistics area. Always maintains aspect ratio of capture.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To zoom out, click the Zoom Out button. • Continue to click the Zoom Out button until the correct zoom level is achieved.
	<p>Zoom In</p> <p>Zoom in during recording to show more detail on the screen or to record more area of the screen. The percentage of zoom is indicated in the statistics area. Always maintains aspect ratio of capture.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To zoom in, click the Zoom In button. • Continue to click the Zoom In button until the correct zoom level is achieved.

Tool Name		Description & Use
	Zoom To	Zoom directly to a certain size, or to a specific region, window, or the full-screen. Once enabled, click the Zoom To button again to set the zoom view back to 100 percent. Click the Zoom To button to “turn on”. Click the small down arrow on the button to access the dropdown list of Zoom To options. To configure, see Recorder Zoom Tab and Zoom Tab Options . See also: Add a Zoom To Effect During Recording .
	Zoom Undo	Revert back to the last zoom size and toggles between the last two zoom sizes. Click the Zoom Undo button to apply. See also: Recorder Zoom Tab and Zoom Tab Options .

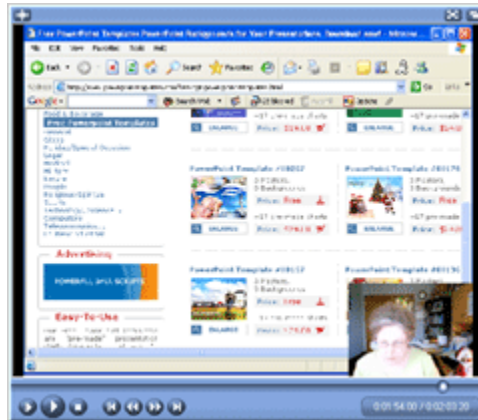
Camera Toolbar

Path: Recorder > View menu > Camera Toolbar.

The Camera toolbar is used for enabling the record camera option as well as for turning on the camera preview during recording.





When recording the screen with the camera recording enabled, the camera video is placed in the lower right corner of the screen recording in picture-in-picture format.



To change the placement or look of the picture-in-picture video, see **Modify an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip**.

This table describes each of the tools that can be found on the Camera toolbar along with its use.

Note: The Camera toolbar is turned on or off using the Camera toolbar option in the View dropdown menu.

Button	Tool Name	Description & Use
	Record Camera	<p>Enable the camera to be recorded during regular screen recording. Click the Record Camera button to “turn on”.</p> <p>To configure, see Recorder Camera Tab.</p> <p>For information on setting the camera options, consult your camera documentation.</p>
	Camera Preview	<p>Enable a preview window of what the camera is recording. Please note that the size or position of the camera preview does not impact the actual recording of the camera.</p> <p>Also, the preview window itself is not being recorded. It is only there as a reference for you.</p> <p>Click the Camera Preview button to “turn on”.</p> <p>To configure, see Recorder Camera Tab.</p> <p>For information on setting the camera options, consult your camera documentation.</p>

Recorder Menu Options

This section describes the each of the menu options found within Camtasia Studio along with its purpose and use. Choose from one of these main topics:

Recorder Capture Menu Options

The **Capture** menu options allow you to access the recording controls as well as the input capture options.

Recorder View Menu Options

The **View** menu options allow you to choose the look and feel of Recorder. You can also use the View menu to access ScreenPad and play recently created Recorder AVI files in Player.

Recorder Effects Menu Options





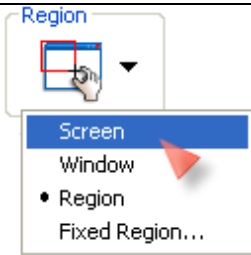

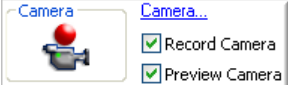
The **Effects** options allow you to turn on or off a variety of special effects while you are recording. Choose the **Options** option to configure these special effects.

Recorder Tools Menu Options

The **Tools** menu gives you quick and easy access to the other Camtasia Studio companion applications. Additionally, the **Options** found under the **Tools** menu allow you to set application-wide preferences.

Recorder Capture Menu Options

The Capture menu options allow you to access the recording controls as well as the input capture options. To select a Capture option, choose the option from the dropdown menu.

Toolbar or Interface Button	Capture Option	Description & Use
	Record	<p>Begin the video capture process. Click the Record button. Click the Capture button to “turn on” or choose Capture > Record. To configure, see Recorder Capture Tab and Recorder Video Tab. See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Record the Screen with the Recording Wizard • Record the PowerPoint Presentation with the Add-In • Record the Screen with Audio • Recorder’s Single Frame Capturing Mode
	Pause	<p>Pause the video capture process. Click the Pause button or choose Capture > Pause.</p>
	Stop	<p>Will stop the video capture process. Click the Stop button or choose Capture > Record. Click the Stop button or choose Capture > Stop. See also: After you Record and Save the Recording</p>
	Delete	<p>Will delete the current video capture. When selected, the capture pauses and a message appears asking if you are sure you want to delete the current video capture. If Yes, the recording stops and any captured frames are discarded. Click the Delete button or choose Capture > Delete. See also: After you Record and Save the Recording</p>
	Input	<p>Define the area of the desktop that is recorded. Four options provide the flexibility to capture the exact part of the screen you want to include in the video. The Input menu options are accessed from either the Capture option on the main menu bar or from the Capture button’s dropdown menu on Recorder’s main interface. See also: Recorder Input Options.</p>
	Record Audio	<p>Record audio while recording. Also available from the Audio portion of Recorder’s main interface. See also: Audio Settings and Recorder Audio Tab.</p>
	Record Camera	<p>Record the camera while recording. Also available from the Camera portion of Recorder’s main interface. See also: Recorder Camera Tab</p>
	Wizard	<p>Create a new recording from "scratch" using an easy-to-use wizard that walks you through choosing all of the capture settings. See also: Record the Screen with the Recording Wizard.</p>

Recorder View Menu Options

The View menu options allow you to choose the look and feel of Recorder. You can also use the View menu to access ScreenPad and play recently created Recorder AVI files in Player.

To select a View option, choose the option from the dropdown menu.

This table describes each of the View menu options.


View Option	Description & Use
Standard	<p>This is the default view of Recorder which shows the main toolbar and the video statistics and properties area. Choose View > Standard. See also: Change the Recorder View.</p>
Compact	<p>This view of Recorder only shows the menu bar, main toolbar, and any other toolbars that are turned on. Choose View > Compact. See also: Change the Recorder View.</p>
Minimal	<p>This view of Recorder only shows the main toolbar and any other toolbars that are turned on. Choose View > Minimal. See also: Change the Recorder View.</p>
Annotation Toolbar	<p>Show the Annotation toolbar used primarily for adding annotations to the video including a timestamp, watermark, caption, highlight, etc. Choose View > Annotation Toolbar. See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Annotation Toolbar • Recorder Annotation Tab • Annotation Tab Options
Audio Toolbar	<p>Show the Audio toolbar used for adding audio effects to the video as it is being recorded. Audio effects include real-time audio inputted from a microphone, mouse click sounds, and keyboard sounds. Choose View > Audio Toolbar. See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Audio Toolbar • Recorder Sound Tab • Recorder Audio Tab
Cursor Toolbar	<p>Show the Cursor toolbar used for adding cursor effects to the video as it is being recorded. Cursor effects include hiding the cursor, showing the cursor, highlighting the cursor, and highlighting the mouse clicks. Choose View > Cursor Toolbar. See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cursor Toolbar • Recorder Cursor Tab • Cursor Setup Options • Highlight Cursor Options • Add the Cursor while Recording
Zoom & Pan Toolbar	<p>Show the Zoom & Pan toolbar used for adding zoom and/or pan effects to the video as it is being recorded. Zooming magnifies the action. Panning focuses the action. Choose View > Zoom and Pan Toolbar. See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Zoom and Pan Toolbar • Recorder Zoom Tab • Add an AutoPan Effect During Recording • Add an AutoZoom Effect During Recording

View Option	Description & Use
Camera Toolbar	Show the Camera toolbar used for enabling the record camera option as well as for turning on the camera preview during recording. Choose View > Camera Toolbar . See also: Camera Toolbar and Recorder Camera Tab .
Camera Preview	Show a preview window of what the camera is showing. The size or position of the camera preview window does not impact the actual recording of the camera. Also, the preview is not actually being recorded. It is only there as a reference for you. Choose View > Camera Preview .
ScreenPad	Open ScreenPad used to add annotations to the video as you record. These can be captions, Callouts, logos, stamps, sticky notes, or any fixed visual you want to include in the scene during recording. Choose View > ScreenPad . See also: http://www.techsmith.com/products/studio/documentation.asp .

Recorder Effects Menu Options

The Effects options allow you to turn on or off a variety of special effects while you are recording. Choose the **Options** option to configure these special effects.

These same effects are easily toggled on and off within the Recorder toolbars.

Effects Option	Description & Use
Annotation	<p>Show the Annotation effects toggle options. Choose Effects > Annotation. Choose the effect to turn on or off from the flyout menu. These options are configured in the Recorder Annotation Tab. See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Annotation Toolbar • Apply a Time or Date Stamp to a Recording • Apply an Elapsed Time Stamp to a Recording
Audio	<p>Show the Audio effects toggle options. Choose Effects > Audio. Select the effect to turn on or off from the flyout menu.</p> <p>These options are configured in the Recorder Sound Tab and Recorder Audio Tab. See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Audio Settings • Tune Volume Input Levels • Audio Toolbar
Cursor	<p>Show the Cursor effects toggle options. Choose Effects > Cursor. Choose the effect to turn on or off from the flyout menu. These options are configured in the Recorder Cursor Tab. See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Highlight Cursor Options • Highlight Mouse Clicks Options • Add the Cursor while Recording • Add the Cursor and Mouse Clicks while Recording
Zoom & Pan	<p>Show the Zoom & Pan effects toggle options. Choose Effects > Zoom and Pan. Choose the effect to turn on or off from the flyout menu. These options are configured in the Recorder Zoom Tab. See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Zoom and Pan Toolbar • Add an AutoPan Effect During Recording • Add an AutoZoom Effect During Recording
Options	<p>Open the <i>Effects Options</i> tabbed dialog box where the effects are configured.</p> <p>Choose Effects > Option or click the Options button  on the toolbar. See also: Recorder Effects Options.</p>

Recorder Tools Menu Options

The Tools menu gives you quick and easy access to the other Camtasia Studio companion applications. Additionally, the **Options** found under the **Tools** menu allow you to set application-wide preferences.

To access another application, use the mouse to select it from the menu.

This table describes each of the *Tools* options.

Tools Option	Description & Use
Camtasia Studio	Start Camtasia Studio Choose Tools > Camtasia Studio . See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • How Camtasia Studio's Applications Work Together • Camtasia Studio Interface Overview
Camtasia Recorder	Start Recorder. Choose Tools > Camtasia Recorder . See also: Recorder .
Camtasia Audio Editor	Start <i>Audio Editor</i> . Choose Tools > Camtasia Audio Editor . See also: Audio Editor .
Camtasia Theater	Start Theater. Choose Tools > Camtasia Theater . See also: Theater
Camtasia Player	Start <i>Player</i> . Choose Tools > Camtasia Player . See also: Player .
Options	Show the <i>Options</i> dialog box which is used to set application-wide preferences for performance. Choose Tools > Options . The <i>Tools Options</i> dialog box appears. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recorder Video Tab • Recorder Audio Tab • Recorder Camera Tab • Recorder Program Tab • Recorder Capture Tab • Recorder Hotkeys Tab

Recorder Help Menu Options

The Help menu options gives you access to the Camtasia Studio online help as well as other Camtasia Studio and TechSmith support options.

Continue with the options found in **Camtasia Studio Help Menu Options**.

Recorder Effects Options

Path: **Recorder > Effects menu > Options.**

The *Effects Options* tabbed dialog box is used to set options for the recording such as system time stamps, mouse and keyboard audio effects, cursor effects, and much more.

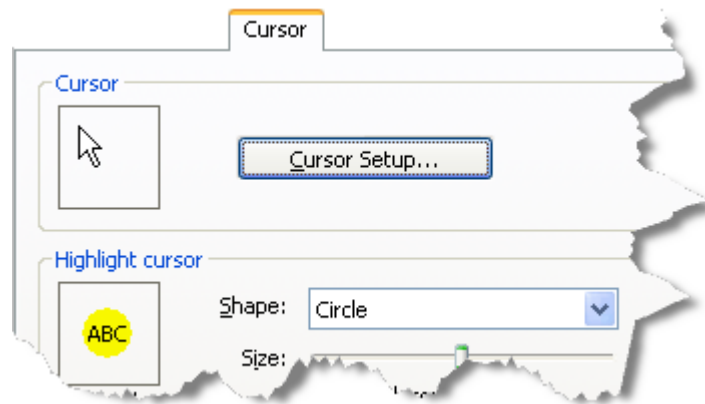
Additionally, click on the small down arrow next to the **Options** button to access the tabs that make up the *Effects Options* dialog box.


Important Message about Enabling the Effects Settings Options

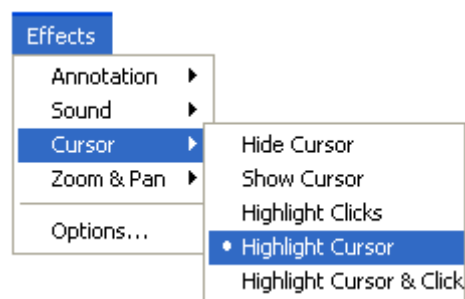
Once you have made the selections regarding the effects settings in the *Options* tabbed dialog box, you must then enable the corresponding option from the main menu's Effects option or the corresponding toolbar **before** the effects are used during the recording process.

Example

For example, to use a highlighted cursor, select the *Cursor* tab in the *Effects Options* dialog box and set the options.



Next, enable the Highlight Cursor option from the Effects dropdown menu or select the **Highlighted Cursor**  button from the Cursor menu.




Click the **Record** button and create the video.

See also:

- **Recorder Annotation Tab**
- **Recorder Sound Tab**
- **Recorder Cursor Tab**
- **Recorder ScreenDraw Tab**
- **Recorder Watermark Tab**
- **Recorder Zoom Tab**

Recorder Annotation Tab

Path: Recorder > Options button down arrow on the toolbar  > Annotation tab.

Use the *Annotation* tab to set the options for system stamps, captions, or capture highlights.

Once you have made the *Annotation* tab selections, you must enable the corresponding option from the **Effects > Annotation** dropdown menu **before** these options can be used during the recording process. Or, choose **View menu > Annotation Toolbar** and enable the options from there.



See also:

- Annotation Tab Options
- Apply a Time or Date Stamp to a Recording
- Apply an Elapsed Time Stamp to a Recording
- Apply a Computer Name or User Name Stamp to a Recording
- Time/Date Format Dialog Box
- Custom Date Format Symbols
- System Stamp & Caption Customization Options
- Annotation Toolbar
- Apply a Caption to a Recording
- Automatically Add Highlights to Multiple Areas of the Recording
- Highlight One Area of the Recording

Annotation Tab Options

This table describes each of the *Annotation* tab's options.

Once you have made the *Annotation* tab selections, you must enable the corresponding option from the **Effects > Annotation** dropdown menu **before** these options can be used during the recording process.

Or, turn on the **Annotation Toolbar** and enable the options from there.



Annotation System Stamp Option	Description & Use
Time/Date	Put a time and/or a date stamp on the recording. See also: Apply a Time or Date Stamp to a Recording.
Time/Date Format	Choose this button to set up the format of the Time/Date stamp. Choose the Time/Date option to enable the Time/Date Format button. See also: Time/Date Format .
Elapsed Time	Put an elapsed time stamp on the recording. The elapsed time indicates how much time has gone by out of the total running time of the view. See also: Apply an Elapsed Time Stamp to a Recording.
Computer Name	Put the name of the computer on the recording. The name of the computer that is used comes from the PC's system registry.
User Name	Puts the user name on the recording. The user name that is used comes from the PC's system registry and is determined by the logon ID that is being used at the time of the recording.

Annotation System Stamp Option	Description & Use
Arrange Stamp	Access to the <i>Arrange Stamp</i> dialog box to change the order of the stamps in the recording. Click the Arrange Stamp button. The <i>Arrange Stamp</i> dialog box appears. To move a stamp up in the order, first highlight the stamp and click Up until the stamp is in the desired position. To move a stamp down in the order, first highlight the stamp and click Down until the stamp is in the desired position.
Preview	See how the time/date stamp will look on the recording.
Show Stamp for	Determine how long the time/date stamp is viewed on the recording. To show the time/date stamp on the recording for a predetermined amount of time, enable and enter the time in seconds.
System Stamp Options	Define the look of the system stamp including the font, font color, font style, location, etc. See also: System Stamp & Caption Customization Option .
Caption	Add a caption to the recording. Several of the last captions entered are saved for you in a dropdown list.
Prompt before capture	Prompt for a new caption each time you record allowing you to change the caption on the fly.
Caption Options	Define the look of the caption including the font, font color, font style, location, etc. See also: System Stamp & Caption Customization Option .
Highlight Width	This is the width, in pixels, of the highlight box. Enter the pixel number in the Width field. See also: Annotation Toolbar .
Highlight Color	The color of the highlight box. To set the color, click the Color button. The <i>Color</i> dialog box appears. Select the color and click OK . See also: Annotation Toolbar .

See also:

Annotation Toolbar

Apply a Time or Date Stamp to a Recording

Apply an Elapsed Time Stamp to a Recording

Apply a Computer Name or User Name Stamp to a Recording

Time/Date Format Dialog Box

Custom Date Format Symbols


System Stamp & Caption Customization Options

Apply a Caption to a Recording

Automatically Add Highlights to Multiple Areas of the Recording

Highlight One Area of the Recording

Recorder Sound Tab

Path: Recorder > Options toolbar button  > **Sound**.








The *Sound* tab is used to set the different audio properties for the mouse clicks and keyboard keystrokes.

Once you have made the *Sound* tab selections, you must enable the corresponding option from the **Effects** menu > **Sound** dropdown menu **before** these options can be used during the recording process.

Or, choose **View** menu > **Audio Toolbar** and enable the options from there. See also: **Audio Toolbar**.



This table describes each of the *Sound* tab options along with its use.

Sound Tab Option	Description	Use
Mouse button down sound	Choose a sound file for the mouse button down sound.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Browse . 2. Find the sound file. 3. Click OK. 4. File path is updated to <i>Sound</i> tab. 5. Click Test Sound  to listen to the sound.
Mouse button up sound	Choose a sound file for the mouse button up sound.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Browse . 2. Find the sound file. 3. Click OK. 4. File path is updated to <i>Sound</i> tab. 5. Click Test Sound  to listen to the sound.
Key down sound	Choose a sound file for the key down sound.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Browse . 2. Find the sound file. 3. Click OK. 4. File path is updated to <i>Audio</i> tab. 5. Click Test Sound  to listen to the sound.
Volume	Use the volume slide bar to increase or decrease the volume level for the different sound files on the recording.	<p>Grab the slider bar with the mouse.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drag to the left to decrease sound. • Drag to the right to increase sound. <p>Click Test Sound  to listen to the sound.</p>

See also:

Add Cursor & Highlight Effects While Recording

Add the Cursor while Recording


Add the Cursor and Mouse Clicks while Recording

Add a Cursor Highlight to a Recording

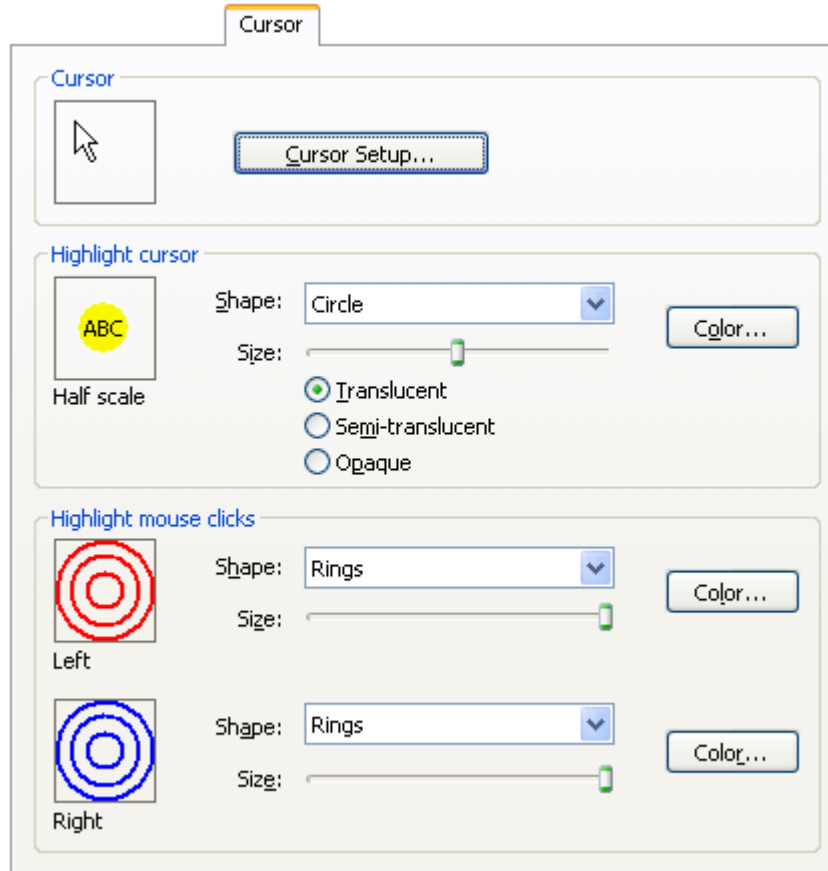
Add a Cursor Highlight and Keystroke Clicks to a Recording

Add the Cursor with Mouse Clicks and Apply Cursor Sounds while Recording

Recorder Cursor Tab

Path: Recorder > Options toolbar button  > **Cursor**.

The *Cursor* tab is used to define how the cursor is displayed in the recording. The effects include cursor selection and highlight capabilities for both the mouse and cursor clicks.



Once you have made the *Cursor* tab selections, you must enable the corresponding cursor option from the **Effects** menu > **Cursor** dropdown menu **before** these options can be used during the recording process.

Or, choose **View** menu > **Cursor Toolbar** and enable the options from there.



See also:

Cursor Setup Options

Highlight Cursor Options

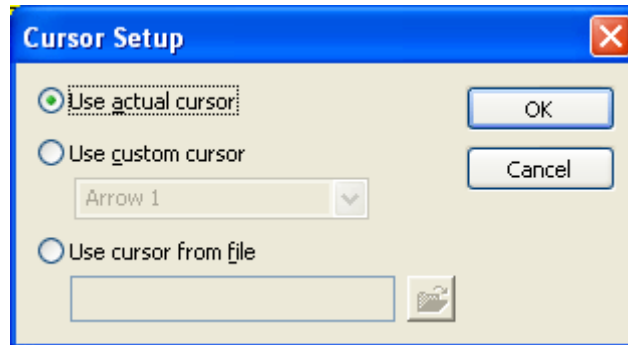
Cursor Toolbar

Highlight Mouse Clicks Options


Cursor Setup Options

Path: Recorder > Options toolbar button  > Cursor > Cursor Setup button.

Use the *Cursor Setup* dialog box to choose the cursor used in the recording.



This table describes each of the Cursor Setup options.

Cursor Setup Option	Description & Use
Use actual cursor	Use the standard Windows default cursor. This is the default setting.
Use custom cursor	Choose a custom cursor from the dropdown menu.
Use cursor from file	Select a cursor from the Windows cursor directory or any other desired directory. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enable this option. 2. Click Browse . The Cursor directory appears. 3. Select the cursor. 4. Click Open. The cursor is updated to the Use cursor from file field.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

See also:


Recorder Cursor Tab

Highlight Cursor Options

Cursor Toolbar


Highlight Mouse Clicks Options

Highlight Cursor Options

Path: Recorder > Options toolbar button  > **Cursor**.

The **Highlight Cursor** options allow you to highlight the cursor on the recording so your audience can see the cursor as it moves across the screen. With these options, you choose the shape, size, and color of the cursor highlight.

Once you have made the *Cursor* tab selections, you must enable the corresponding cursor option from the **Effects** menu > **Cursor** dropdown menu **before** these options can be used during the recording process.

Or, turn on the **Cursor Toolbar** and enable the options from there using the **Highlight Cursor** tool .

This table describes each of the Cursor Highlight options.

Cursor Highlight Option	Description & Use
Shape	From the dropdown menu, choose the shape of the highlight. As you choose a shape a preview of the shape will appear in the preview window.
Size	Using the slider bar, select the size of the highlight. As you move the slider bar to the right for a larger highlight or to the left for a smaller highlight, you can see the size in the preview window.
Color	The Color button is used to select a color for the cursor highlight. You can choose from a palette of existing colors or define a custom color. Once you have selected a color, the color is reflected in the preview window.
Translucent	Cursor highlight is translucent or see-through on the screen. This allows most of the recording's background to come through the highlight.
Semi-translucent	Cursor highlight is semi-translucent or semi see-through on the screen. This allows about half of the recording's background to come through the highlight.
Opaque	Cursor highlight is solid on the screen. This allows none of the recording's background to come through the highlight.

See also:

Recorder Cursor Tab

Cursor Setup Options

Cursor Toolbar


Highlight Mouse Clicks Options

Highlight Mouse Clicks Options

Path: Recorder > Options toolbar button  > **Cursor**.

The **Highlight Mouse Clicks** option is used to highlight the mouse clicks on the recording. This allows your audience to better view selections as they are being made on the screen with the use of the mouse. With these options, you choose the shape, size, and color of the click highlight.

Once you have made the *Cursor* tab selections, you must enable the corresponding cursor option from the **Effects** menu > **Cursor** dropdown menu **before** these options can be used during the recording process.

Or, turn on the **Cursor Toolbar** and enable the options from there using the **Highlight Clicks** tool .

This table describes each of the Mouse Click Highlight options.

Cursor Highlight Option	Description & Use
Shape	From the dropdown menu, choose the shape of the highlight. As you choose a shape a preview of the shape will appear in the preview window.
Size	Using the slider bar, select the size of the highlight. As you move the slider bar to the right for a larger highlight or to the left for a smaller highlight, you can see the size in the preview window.
Color	The Color button is used to select a color for the cursor highlight. You can choose from a palette of existing colors or define a custom color. Once you have selected a color, the color is reflected in the preview window.

See also:

Recorder Cursor Tab

Cursor Setup Options


Highlight Cursor Options

Cursor Toolbar

Add the Cursor while Recording

Recorder ScreenDraw Tab

Path: Recorder > Options toolbar button  > ScreenDraw.

Note: While recording, this feature is activated using the **ScreenDraw** toolbar button  or, by using a customized hotkey. Using the ScreenDraw hotkey lets you even draw on pop-up menus. For information on configuring the ScreenDraw Hotkey, see **Recorder Hotkeys Tab**.

Note: The ScreenDraw and ScreenPad documentation can be found on the Camtasia Studio Documentation Page. Please download the PDF guide here:
<http://www.techsmith.com/products/studio/documentation.asp>

The *ScreenDraw* tab is used to define how the ScreenDraw tool will appear on the recording as you write.

With ScreenDraw:

- Draw on the desktop while you record a video. Make the videos livelier and easier to understand by underlining, pointing, and illustrating with the freehand drawing tool.
- Draw various shapes on the screen while recording in order to highlight and draw focus to a particular area.
- Show the pen moving across the screen as you're recording, or you can pause the recording, then draw, and have the drawing appear already completed.

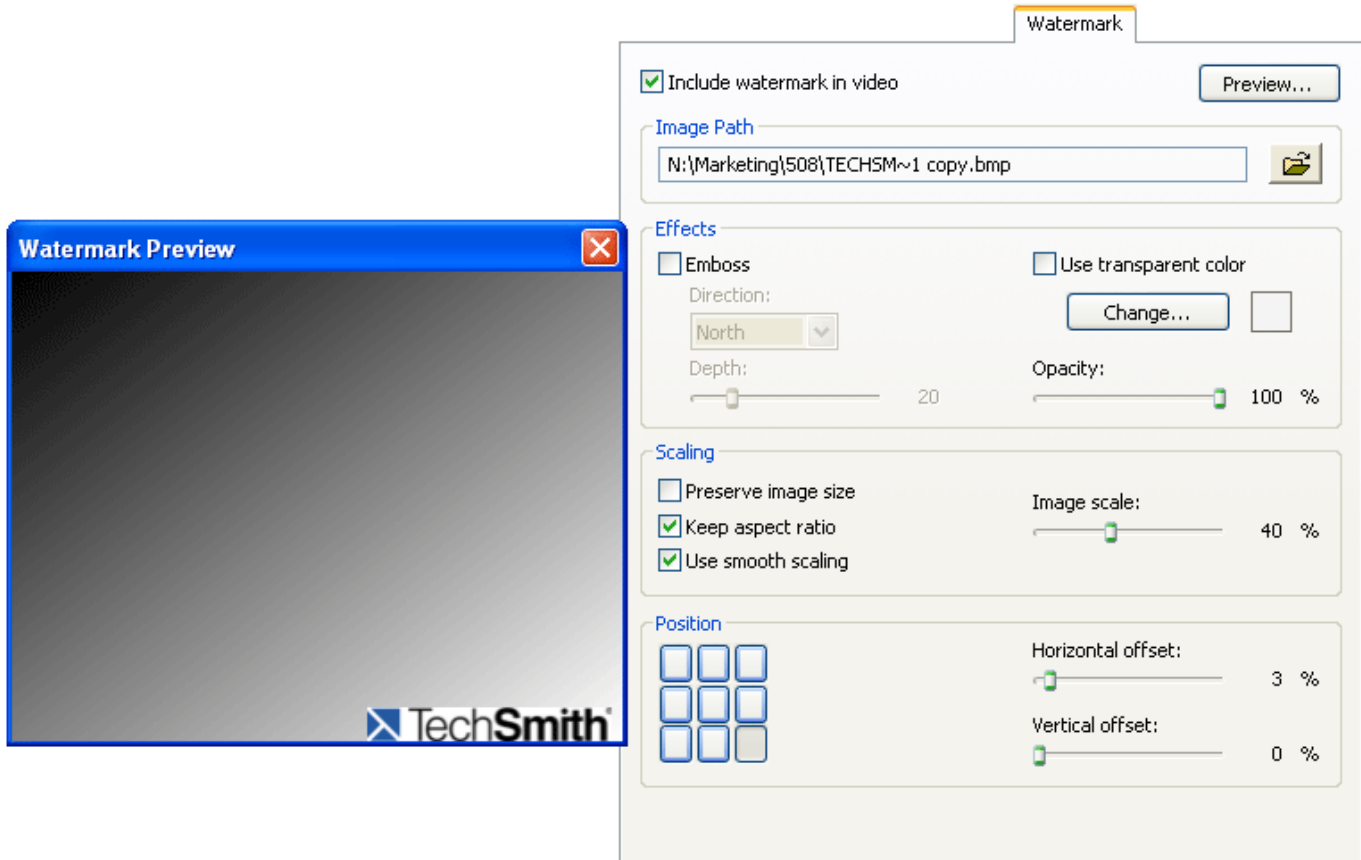
This table describes each of the *ScreenDraw* tab options.

ScreenDraw Tab Option	Description
Tool	From the dropdown menu, choose the tool for the drawing. As you choose a tool, a preview of the shape will appear in the preview window. Frame: Draw a frame (rectangular/square box). Highlight: Draw a highlight rectangle. Ellipse: Draw an ellipse. Pen: Draw freehand. Line: Draw a straight line. Arrow: Draw an arrow.
Color	From the dropdown menu, choose the color for the drawing tool. As you choose a color, a preview will appear in the preview window.
Width	Using the up and down arrows, select a width for the drawing tool. As you choose a width, a preview will appear in the preview window.
Translucent	Allows the <i>ScreenDraw</i> object to be translucent or see-through on the screen. This allows most of the recording's background to come through the highlight.
Disable keyboard and cursor effects during ScreenDraw	Causes all keyboard and cursor activity to cease while the <i>ScreenDraw</i> option is being used. This allows the user's focus to be drawn to the <i>ScreenDraw</i> object, not other activity in the recording.

Recorder Watermark Tab

Path: Recorder > Options toolbar button  > Watermark.

The *Watermark* tab is used to configure a watermark, such as a company logo, in any fixed position in the recording. When the *Watermark* tab is selected, the *Watermark Preview* will also show.




Using a watermark is a helpful way to stamp ownership on the intellectual property that the recording represents. As input, you can use graphic files in BMP, GIF, PNG, or .JPEG format.

Additionally, the watermark feature now supports 32-bit PNG files with per-pixel transparency information. With per-pixel transparency, the watermark can be made with smooth edges and drop shadows that gradually fade into the background. These image files can be authored with any image editing tool that supports 32-bit PNG output, such as Adobe Photoshop(c) or Adobe Fireworks(c).

See also: **Add a Watermark While Recording** or **Watermark Tab Options**.

Watermark Tab Options

This table describes each of the *Watermark* tab options.

Watermark Option	Description
Include Watermark in Video	Include a watermark. Disabled by default and must be enabled before a watermark is included.
Image Path	Select the image used as the watermark. Click Browse  . Select the watermark image and click Open . The image is updated to the <i>Image Path</i> field. Additionally, the image is displayed in the <i>Watermark Preview</i> window.
Use Transparent Color	Make part of the watermark image transparent. When selected, the areas of the watermark image that match the transparent color are hidden so that the video shows through the watermark.
Change	Use the Change button to select the Transparent Color to be used. The transparent color you select must match the area(s) that you want to be transparent in the watermark image. Use the Preview to verify that the transparent effect works. The preview will not show it as being transparent until the right color is selected. In order to make the background transparent, white must be selected in the <i>Color</i> dialog box.
Emboss	Create an underlay watermark effect that appears translucent and slightly raised.
Depth	The emboss direction refers to a shadow effect on the embossed image and a rough indication of the direction of a light source. Use the Preview option to see how the direction changes the embossing effect.
Direction	Change how pronounced the embossing effect appears.
Opacity	Opacity is the attribute that allows the watermark to be solid (showing none of the video behind it) or to have varying degrees of transparency (the ability to see part of the video through the image). To adjust the amount of opacity that is applied to the watermark, grab the slider bar and move up toward more opaque (solid) or down toward less opaque (transparent).
Preserve Image Size	Insert the watermark graphic at its full size. No scaling is applied to the graphic.
Keep aspect ratio	Maintain horizontal and vertical size aspect ratio when scaling the watermark image. The watermark appears normal, not stretched or distorted. Default setting is on.
Image Scale	Change how big the watermark image appears relative to the video frame size. 100% means the watermark image completely covers the video frame.
Use smooth scaling	Apply a smooth scaling algorithm to the watermark image for less jaggedness. Default setting is on. Turn off if it interferes with the transparency of the watermark.
Positioning Cluster	Use the nine-button positioning cluster to select the position of the watermark within the video frame.
Horizontal Offset	Change the horizontal offset of the watermark image from the edge of the video frame and refine the watermark positioning.
Vertical Offset	Change the vertical offset of the watermark image from the edge of the video frame.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

See also:

Add a Watermark While Recording

Recorder Watermark Tab

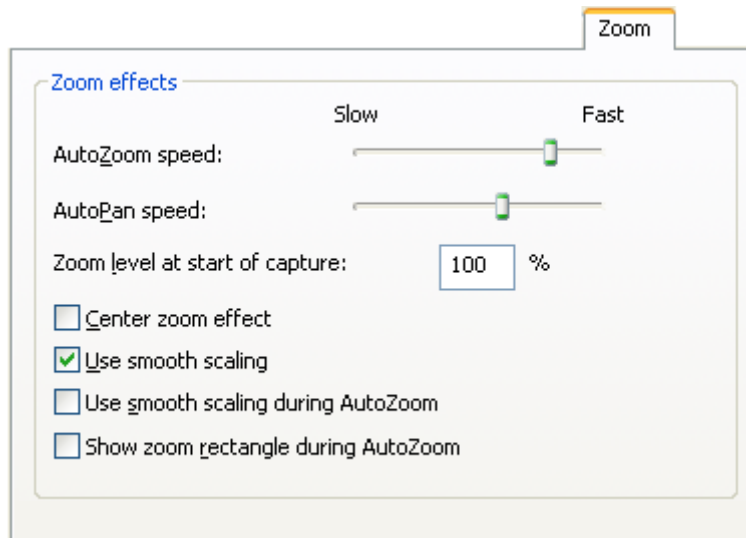
Recorder Zoom Tab

Path: Recorder > Options toolbar button  > **Zoom & Pan.**

Note: Once you have made the zoom and pan selections, you must enable the corresponding option from the **Effects > Zoom & Pan** dropdown menu **before** these options can be used during the recording process.

Note: You can zoom in or out on the action during recording by using the Zoom Hotkeys. See also **Recorder Hotkeys Tab.**

The *Zoom* tab is used to set up zoom and pan options for the recordings such as zoom speed, pan speed, zoom levels, etc.



Once you have made the *Zoom* tab selections, you must enable the corresponding effects from the **Effects** menu > **Zoom & Pan** dropdown menu **before** the zoom and pan effects can be used during the recording process.

Or, turn on the **Zoom and Pan Toolbar** and enable the zoom and pan effects from there using the **Zoom and Pan** tools.



The zoom and pan effects are included on all recordings until the **Effects** menu > **Zoom & Pan** option is turned “off” (or the tool on the toolbar is turned off). See also: **Zoom and Pan Toolbar.**

See also:

Zoom Tab Options

Zoom and Pan Toolbar

Add an AutoPan Effect During Recording

Add an AutoZoom Effect During Recording

Add a Zoom To Effect During Recording

Zoom Tab Options

This table describes each of the *Zoom* tab options.

Zoom Tab Option	Description & Use
AutoZoom Speed	Control the speed of the rendered zooming effect (that is, the speed of the image scaling). To increase or decrease the AutoZoom Speed, use the slider bar.
AutoPan Speed	Control the speed at which the capture area follows the mouse. Use this when you want to capture a smaller area of a screen where the action is and ignore the inactive areas. This can help limit file size and help to focus attention. To increase or decrease the AutoPan Speed, use the slider bar.
Zoom level at start of capture	Configure a preset zoom level when the capture begins. The default value is 100%. Values less than 100% make Recorder start zoomed out. Values greater than 100% make Recorder start zoomed in. To change the zoom level, click inside the Zoom level field and enter the level.
Center zoom effect	When the zoom effect is rendered, Camtasia Studio always centers the new capture area over the old area. In the final recording, the visual effect is that Camtasia Studio automatically pans the image so it stays centered over the previous area. The default setting is off.
Use smooth scaling	Recorder uses a smooth scaling algorithm that makes images more readable when zoomed out. The default setting is on. Note: May degrade the video frame rate since smooth interpolated scaling requires much more computer processing to render the effect.
Use smooth scale during AutoZoom	Recorder uses the smooth scaling algorithm while rendering the AutoZoom effect. This makes the zooming effect look smoother, but the video frame rate may degrade. Off by default.
Show zoom rectangle during AutoZoom	Show the zoom rectangle during the AutoZoom transition. When disabled, no rectangle will show around the zoomed in portion of the screen. Off by default.

See also:

Recorder Zoom Tab

Zoom and Pan Toolbar

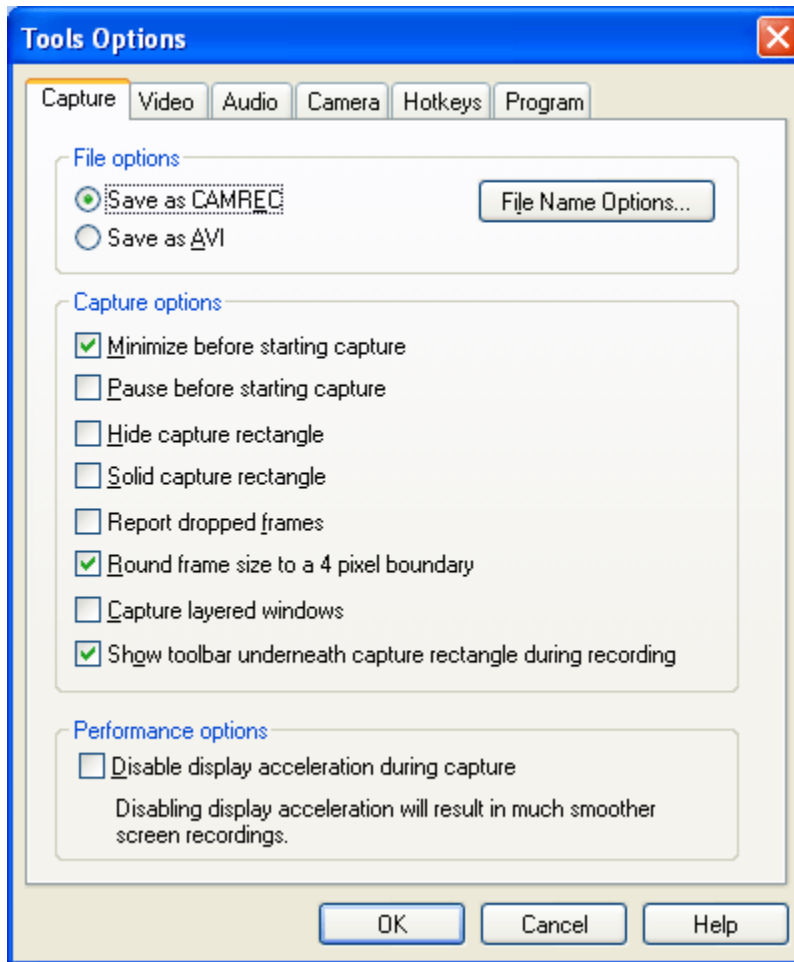
Add an AutoPan Effect During Recording

Add an AutoZoom Effect During Recording

Add a Zoom To Effect During Recording

Recorder Tools Options

The *Tools* tabbed dialog box is used to set Recorder program options concerning the actual capture of the recording, audio and camera streams, hotkeys, and more.



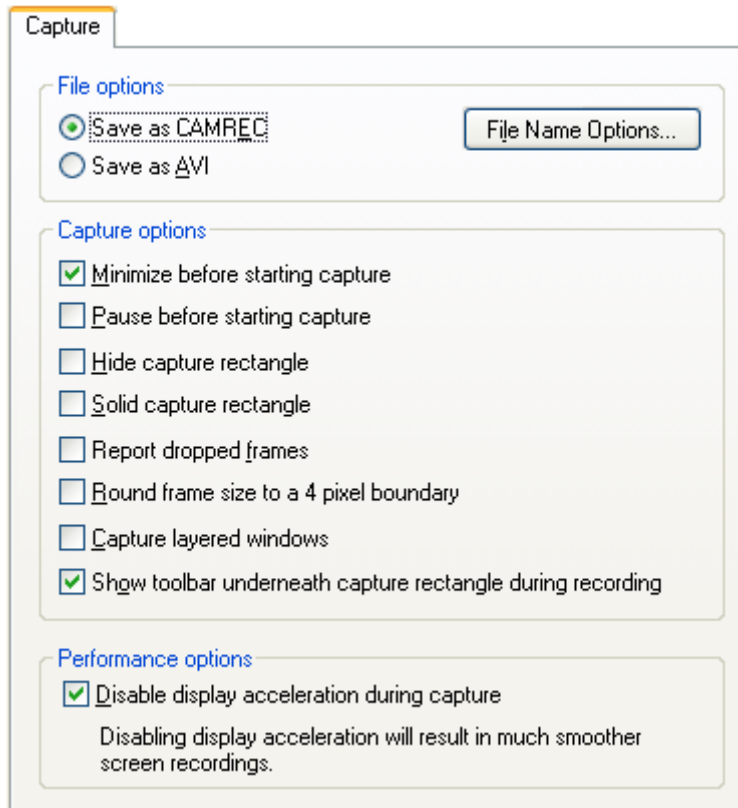
See also:

- **Recorder Capture Tab**
- **Recorder Video Tab**
- **Recorder Audio Tab**
- **Recorder Camera Tab**
- **Recorder Hotkeys Tab**
- **Recorder Program Tab**

Recorder Capture Tab


Path: Choose **Recorder > Tools menu > Options > Capture** tab.

Use the *Capture* tab to set the various capture options such as the default file format and to also show the Recorder toolbar during capture.



This table describes each of the *Capture* tab options.

Capture Option	Default Setting	Description
Save as CAMREC	On	When making a recording, the recording is saved as CAMREC file. A CAMREC video file is a proprietary TechSmith file format used to store screen and camera recording plus some meta data about the various streams in a single package. See also: Camtasia Studio's CAMREC Files and Extract an AVI and WMV from a CAMREC Recording.
Save as AVI	Off	The AVI video file format is the default output. See also: Camtasia Studio's CAMREC Files and Record an AVI – Not a CAMREC
File Name Options		Sets the file naming options for the video recordings. See also: Recorder's File Name Options Button.
Minimize before starting capture	On	The Recorder window will reduce to the system tray while recording.
Pause before starting capture	Off	Pausing before capture is used to arrange and position windows and the capture rectangle before beginning the capture.
Hide capture rectangle	Off	Capture rectangle will no longer appear before and during captures.
Solid capture rectangle	Off	The default capture rectangle consists of short angles at each corner of the rectangle. This option turns that box into a solid rectangle.

Capture Option	Default Setting	Description
Report dropped frames	Off	Recorder will report dropped frames in the status area. This is helpful to see and understand what the maximum frame rate Recorder can achieve.
Round frame size to a 4 pixel boundary	On	The horizontal and vertical pixel dimensions of the video you are creating are forced to a multiple of 4. This eliminates errors occurring when viewing videos created with certain codecs (such as Microsoft Video 1), which requires frames that are in multiples of 4 pixels. Note: The TSCC video codec does not have this limitation—videos are encoded and decoded with any pixel dimensions.
Capture layered windows	Off	Allow the capture of translucent or irregularly shaped layered windows. An example of a layered window is the Office Assistant in Microsoft Office 2000. Note: This feature only works when capturing on Windows 2000, XP, or later.
Single Frame capture	Off	Toggle to the single frame capture mode which allows only one frame at a time to be captured. When selected, Recorder is always in a paused state. Use the Record button like a camera shutter button to capture one or more stills that can be saved as an AVI file. See also: Recorder’s Single Frame Capturing.
Show toolbar underneath capture rectangle during recording	On	Show the recording toolbar while recording. This makes it easier to pause, stop, or delete the recording. You can also adjust the volume level. 
Disable display acceleration during capture	On	Disabling hardware acceleration on Windows 2000 or later can dramatically increase frame rates and/or reduce system load during recording. Note: When display (hardware) acceleration is disabled, the screen will momentarily blank at the start and end of recording. This is normal. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hardware Acceleration • Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Recorder • Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Studio’s New Recording Wizard

See also:

Recorder Video Tab

Recorder Audio Tab

Recorder Camera Tab

Recorder Hotkeys Tab

Recorder Program Tab

Camtasia Studio's CAMREC Files

By default, recordings are saved as a .camrec file. A CAMREC video file is a proprietary TechSmith file format used to store screen and camera recording plus some meta data about the various streams in a single package.

Within Camtasia Studio, you use CAMREC files like any other video file, with the exception that they cannot be placed on the PIP track.

It is important to note that you cannot view or play CAMREC files outside of Camtasia Studio. If you want to share a recording, bring the CAMREC file into Camtasia Studio and produce it into another sharable video file format. Or, quickly extract the videos out of the CAMREC file.

See also:

- **Record an AVI – Not a CAMREC**
- **Extract an AVI and WMV from a CAMREC Recording**

Record an AVI – Not a CAMREC

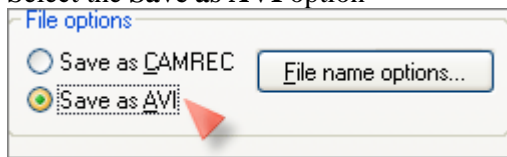
By default, recordings are saved as a CAMREC file. You can, however, make AVI video file format the default output.

However, there are some limitations to recording with AVI as the default output:

- Unable to simultaneously record camera video.
- Unable to take advantage of Camtasia Studio's built-in processes for producing and creating different types of sharable video files that might suit your needs better than an AVI would.

Make AVI Your Default Output

1. Within Recorder, choose **Tools** menu > **Options** > **Capture** tab.
2. Select the **Save as AVI** option



3. Click **OK**. Record as usual.

Hardware Acceleration

Screen recording is very demanding and can exhaust CPU resources. This can result in low frame rates or sluggish system performance. Too low of a frame rate makes videos appear jerky and if system resources are exhausted, even moving the mouse can be difficult and/or background applications may run slowly. Additionally, after recording, you might just see a black box instead of the screen recording. This is especially evident on slower systems, when running CPU intensive applications and recording large areas of the screen.

Turning off hardware acceleration greatly reduces CPU utilization on Microsoft® Windows 2000 and Windows XP.

This table gives you a side-by-side comparison of the fps achieved with and without the use of hardware acceleration.

Video Capture Settings	Frame rate per second (fps), with hardware acceleration	Frame rate per second (fps), without hardware acceleration
32-bit color, 1280x1024	9 fps	12 fps
16-bit color, 1280x1024	2 fps	20 fps
16-bit color, 800x600	6 fps	50 fps

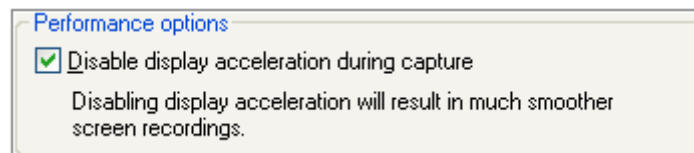
There are some applications which require hardware acceleration to run properly. Games, CAD programs and TV cards are some examples. In this case, try other methods to reduce CPU load such as reducing the capture area, lowering the capture frame rate, or using a faster computer.

See also:

- **Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Recorder**
- **Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Studio's New Recording Wizard**
- **Turn off Hardware Acceleration System-Wide**
- **Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Specific Media Players**

Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Recorder

In Camtasia Recorder, choose **Tools** menu > **Options** > **Capture** tab. Check the **Disable display acceleration during capture** option:



The hardware acceleration is disabled only during recording. As soon as you stop Camtasia Recorder, the acceleration is turned on again.

See also:

Hardware Acceleration

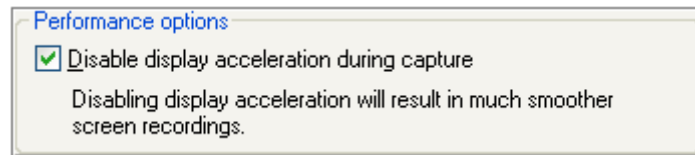
Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Studio's New Recording Wizard

Turn off Hardware Acceleration System-Wide

Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Specific Media Players

Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Studio's New Recording Wizard

In the New Recording Wizard, the option to turn off hardware acceleration is found on the last dialog box. Check the **Disable display acceleration during capture** option:



The hardware acceleration is disabled only during recording. As soon as you stop Camtasia Recorder, the acceleration is turned on again.

See also:

Hardware Acceleration

Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Recorder

Turn off Hardware Acceleration System-Wide

Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Specific Media Players

Turn off Hardware Acceleration System-Wide

Because the system-wide option effects all applications on the system, it may cause performance problems for some applications and others may not run at all.

There are some applications which require hardware acceleration to run properly. Games, CAD programs and TV cards are some examples. In this case, try other methods to reduce CPU load such as reducing the capture area, lowering the capture frame rate, or using a faster computer.

On Windows XP or 2000

1. Select **Control Panel > Display > Properties > Settings > Advanced > Troubleshooting**.
2. Slide the Hardware Acceleration slider to **None**.

On other versions of Windows

1. Select **Control Panel > System > Performance tab > Graphics > Advanced** settings.
2. Slide the Hardware Acceleration slider to **None**.

See also:

Hardware Acceleration

Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Recorder

Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Studio's New Recording Wizard

Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Specific Media Players

Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Specific Media Players

Disabling the hardware acceleration is crucial if you want to record video from another media player such as Windows Media Player, RealPlayer or QuickTime. Otherwise you'll get nothing but a blank screen.

The best solution is to disable hardware acceleration in the application that is playing the video.

Windows Media Player

1. In Media Player 7, select **Tools > Options > Performance**.
 2. Slide the Hardware Acceleration slider to **None**.
- or-
1. In Media Player v6.4 and earlier, select **View > Options > Playback**.
 2. Slide the Hardware Acceleration slider to **None**.

RealPlayer

1. Choose **Tools** menu > **Preferences > Hardware**.
2. Set the Video Card Compatibility to **Most reliable** by moving the slider all the way to the left.

RealPlayer G2

1. From the RealPlayer menu, choose **Options/Preferences** .
2. On the **Performance** tab, uncheck the **Use optimized video display** setting.
3. You may need to close and restart RealPlayer G2 to have the change take effect.

Apple QuickTime

1. Choose **Edit** menu > **Preferences > Streaming Transport**.
2. In the dropdown box, select **Video Settings**.
3. Uncheck all of the **DirectDraw** options.

See also:

Hardware Acceleration

Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Recorder


Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Studio's New Recording Wizard

Turn off Hardware Acceleration System-Wide

Recorder's File Name Options Button

Path: Choose **Recorder** > **Tools** menu > **Options** > **Capture** tab > **File Name Options** button.

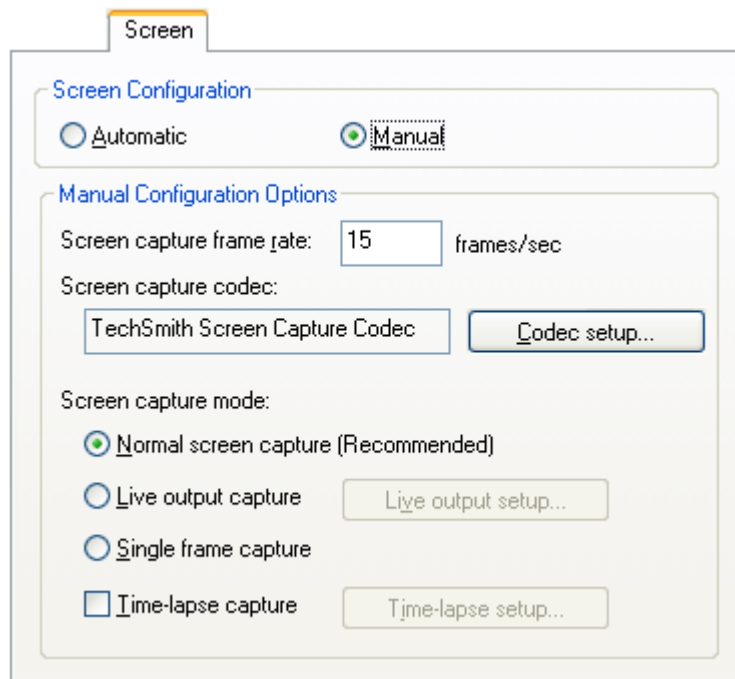
Use these options to set the file naming preferences for the video recordings. This table describes each of the *File* tab options.

File Tab Option	Description
Ask for File Name	Will name each file separately after it is recorded.
Fixed File Name	Define a single file name. Any recording with this file name will automatically be overwritten when saving subsequent recordings.
Name	Type the name of the file in the text box that you want to be used in conjunction with the Fixed File Name option.
Automatic File Name	Assigns Camtasia Studio created and incremental filenames to the recordings.
Prefix	Files are saved with the prefix you supply along with a number, such as Video-001AVI, Video-002AVI, and so on.
Output Folder	Enter the name of a destination <i>Output Folder</i> in the text box provided or click Browse  to search for the folder.

Recorder Video Tab

Path: Choose **Recorder > Tools menu > Options > Video** tab.

Use the *Video* tab to manually set any configuration options concerning the codecs or capture mode.



This table describes each of the *Video* tab options.

AVI Option	Description
Automatic Configuration	Use the Recorder defaults. The program automatically determines the best frame rate and compression to use.
Manual Configuration	Set the default preferences for the codec and capture mode.
Screen capture frame rate / frames/sec	Enter the frame rate in frames/sec. While more frames per second usually produce smoother videos, the resulting video file is proportionally larger and more system resources are required to record the video.
Screen capture codec	A read-only field. Reflects the codec that is selected in the <i>Video Compression Setup</i> dialog box. To access, click the Codec setup button. See also: Codec Setup (Video Compression) .
Codec setup	Give you access to the <i>Video Compression Setup</i> dialog box to set options such as the compressor or compression quality. See also: Codec Setup (Video Compression) .
Normal screen capture	Normal mode is the recording option that is most frequently used for capturing screen activity. This is the recommended mode.
Live output capture	Allow Recorder to appear as a standard video capture device that can be used as a video source by applications such as streaming media encoders, video conferencing applications, video editors, and Webcam applications. Note: Time-lapse capture mode is on, the audio recording and camera recording features are disabled. See also: Live Output Capture .
Live output setup	Set a default size for the output that is seen by the third party. See also: Set the Recorder to Live Output Mode .

AVI Option	Description
Single frame capture	The recording option that captures just one frame at a time using the Record button just like a camera shutter button. Every time you click it, you take a still picture of the screen. You can repeat the capture as many times as needed, and you can change the contents of the capture region between captures to achieve the desired effect. These still frames can be saved as an AVI file to create a slide show or make a "stop frame animation" style video. See also: Recorder's Single Frame Capturing Mode .
Time-lapse capture	Capture at one frame rate and to playback at a slower / faster rate. Time-lapse mode also supports very low capture and playback frame rates. Note: If Time-lapse capture is On , audio recording is disabled. See also: Time-Lapse Capture Mode .
Time-lapse Setup	Give you access to the <i>Time-Lapse Capture Setup</i> to set record and playback rate options. See also: Time-Lapse Capture Mode .

See also:

Recorder Video Tab

Recorder Audio Tab

Recorder Camera Tab

Recorder Hotkeys Tab

Recorder Program Tab

Codec Setup (Video Compression)

Path: Choose **Recorder** > **Tools** menu > **Options** > **Screen** tab > **Manual** option > **Codec setup** button..

The **Codec Setup** button gives you access to the *Video Compression Setup* dialog box where the video options such as the compressor or compression quality are selected.

While the fields for each video compression may be similar, the default settings or availability of each of the fields on this screen may change according to which compressor is selected from the drop-down menu.

This table gives an overview of each of the fields found on the *Video Compressor Setup* dialog box. Not all of these options are available with every compressor that is selected. To determine which options are available in conjunction with a particular compressor, select the compressor from the dropdown menu.

Note: **Only** the Video Compression options for the *TechSmith Screen Capture Codec* are covered in the scope of the Recorder documentation.

Note: It is important to note that each compressor option will have unique configuration options. For more information on each of those options, consult that specific company's documentation. For information about a particular company, select the compressor option from the dropdown menu and choose the **About** button.

Video Compression Setup Field Description Table

Video Compression Setup Field	Description
Compressor	Dropdown selection box for choosing the compressor.
Compression Quality	Some codecs are lossy, meaning that the type of compression algorithm used will sacrifice image quality when it is applied to the image data. This can be configurable so that the users gets to decide on making a smaller file and losing more quality, or a larger file with better image quality. Disabled when using the TSCC codec.
Key Frame Every	Leave as default value.
Frames	Leave as default value.
Data Rate	Data Rate is the measurement of how much data can be transmitted over some period of time. Generally this is measured in kilobits per second. Disabled when using the TSCC codec.
KB/Sec	This is Kilobytes per second. The number of bytes that can be transmitted or received in one second. Note KB = kilobyte, not the general kilobits used for data transmission. However there is no reason why you could not measure data transmission in bytes / second. Disabled when using the TSCC codec.
Configure	Click the Configure button to set configuration options for the selected compressor. For more information on the configure options, see Codec Configure Button .
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.
About	Read the compressor's maker and copyright information.

See also:

Codec Configure Button

Codec Configure Button

Path: Choose **Recorder** > **Tools** menu > **Options** > **Screen** tab > **Manual** option > **Codec setup** button > **Configure** button.

The **Configure** button located on the *Video Compression Setup* dialog box is used to access options to customize the compression setting for the TSCC codec.

Only the configure options for the TechSmith Screen Capture Codec are covered in the scope of this documentation. Each compressor option will have its own unique configuration options.

For more information on each of those options, consult that specific company's documentation. For information about a particular company, select the compressor option from the dropdown menu and click the **About** button.

Configure TSCC Options Description Table

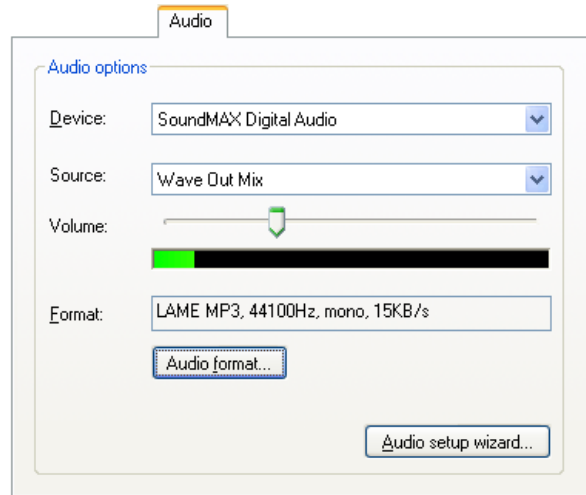
This table describes each of the Configure TSCC options.

Configure TSCC Field	Description
Compression Control	The slider bar is used to choose faster compression but a larger file size vs. slower compression with a smaller file size. In all cases, the TSCC video codec is 100% lossless. Typically, you want faster compression during recording and a smaller file size when producing/editing.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.
Default	Resets to default configuration. These are the settings that were set when Camtasia Studio was installed.
About	Read the compressor's maker and copyright information.

Recorder Audio Tab

Path: Choose **Recorder > Tools menu > Options > Audio** tab.

Use the *Audio* tab to select the audio input device and the input source. You can also set the audio format for videos that you capture while recording audio.



This table describes each of the Audio options.

Audio Field	Description
Device	The correct soundcard device should be selected by default. If it is not, use the dropdown menu to select the soundcard.
Input	Choose the audio input. Only the input sources that are supported by the current soundcard are enabled.
Meter	You should see that the audio input source is live by the activity within the Input Level gage. If you do not see any activity, try selecting another Input source.
Level	Adjust the Input Level slider up or down to control the overall volume level of the input. Adjust the slider so the loudest part of the audio is in the upper yellow to mid-orange range. If you are testing into the red range, the final audio may become clipped resulting in unsatisfactory results. In this case, you should adjust the slider down.
Format	A read-only field that reflects the options selected within the <i>Audio Format</i> dialog box. See also: Audio Format .
Audio Format	This button access the <i>Audio Format</i> dialog box used to set the audio format for videos that you capture while recording audio. To use this feature, you must have a sound card with a microphone attached. See also: Audio Format .
Audio setup wizard	The Audio setup wizard gives you even more options for adjusting the audio. See also: Tune Volume Input Levels and Audio Settings .

See also:

- Recorder Capture Tab**
- Recorder Video Tab**
- Recorder Camera Tab**
- Recorder Hotkeys Tab**
- Recorder Program Tab**

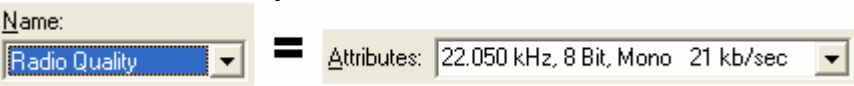
Audio Format

Path: Choose **Recorder** > **Tools** menu > **Options** > **Audio** tab > **Audio Format** button.

Note: If the Time-lapse capture mode is enabled, the audio recording feature is disabled.

These options allow you to set the audio format for videos that you capture while recording audio. To use this feature, you must have a sound card with a microphone attached.

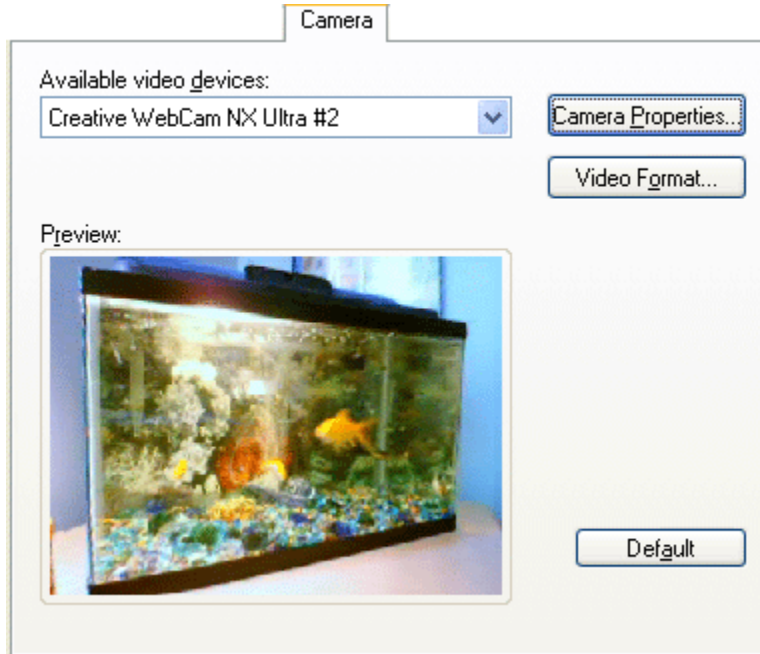
This table describes each of the Audio Format options.

Audio Format Field	Description
Name	<p>This box lists the name, if there is one, of the <i>Audio Format</i> you select or save. Choose an audio format using a simple, understandable name. There are usually several names already assigned.</p> <p>For example, on most computers you can select Radio Quality in the Name list box, instead of the more cryptic 22.050kHz, 16 Bit, Mono in the <i>Attributes</i> list. These would be the same because they have the same audio format and attributes.</p> 
Save As	Add an audio format name using the Save As button.
Remove	Remove an existing audio format name using the Remove button.
Format	Select an audio file format from the Format dropdown menu. Refer to the file type provider for information about the individual selections.
Attributes	Select the audio <i>Attributes</i> from the dropdown menu. The higher the KB/s number, the larger the files are.
OK	Save changes.
Cancel	Exit without making any changes.

Recorder Camera Tab

Path: Choose **Recorder > Tools menu > Options > Camera tab.**

Use the *Camera* tab to select the camera input device. The rest of these options are populated by your web camera. For information on setting these options, consult your camera documentation.



This table describes each of the camera options.

Name	Description & Use
Available video devices	Lists cameras that you can record from. Choose the camera device from the dropdown menu. A preview appears within the <i>Preview</i> window.
Camera Properties	Populated by your camera device. Consult your camera’s documentation for information on these options.
Video Format	Populated by your camera device. Consult your camera’s documentation for information on these options.
Preview	If the camera is set up correctly, a preview appears in this area. If no preview appears, choose another camera or consult your camera documentation.
Default	Resets the camera settings to their original settings.

See also:

Recorder Capture Tab

Recorder Video Tab

Recorder Audio Tab

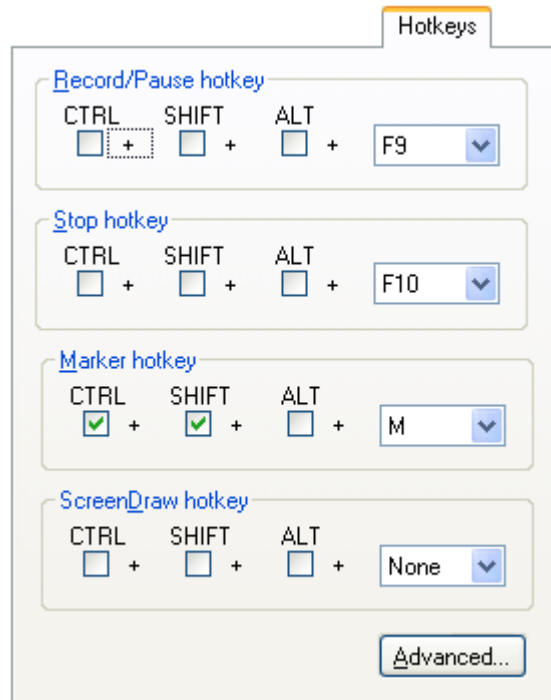
Recorder Hotkeys Tab

Recorder Program Tab

Recorder Hotkeys Tab

Path: Choose **Recorder > Tools menu > Options > Hotkeys** tab.

Use the *Hotkeys* tab to define hotkey options used in the making of the recordings. A hotkey is a key or combination of keys that you push to run a command or operate a program.



- You can change the default hotkeys.
- There are three standard Recorder hotkeys.
- Additionally, there are five advanced hotkeys which are accessed by choosing the **Advanced Hotkeys** button.

See also: **Create a Hotkey** and **Advanced Hotkeys**.

This table describes each of the options found on the *Hotkey* tab.

Hotkey Option	Default Hotkey	Description
Record/Pause	F9	Starts recording if Recorder is stopped; pauses recording if Recorder is running.
Stop	F10	Stops Recorder.
Marker	Ctrl+Shift+M	Adds a Marker during recording.
ScreenDraw	None	Start the ScreenDraw feature.
Advanced		There are five advanced hotkeys which are accessed by choosing the Advanced Hotkeys button.

See also:

Recorder Capture Tab

Recorder Video Tab

Recorder Audio Tab

Recorder Camera Tab

Recorder Program Tab

Create a Hotkey

1. Choose **Recorder > Tools menu> Options > Hotkeys** tab.
2. Place a check mark in one or more boxes below **<CTRL>**, **<SHIFT>**, or **<ALT>** to include them in the hotkey combination for the selected action.
3. Select a keyboard key from the dropdown box. You can choose most keyboard keys here.
4. Click **OK**.

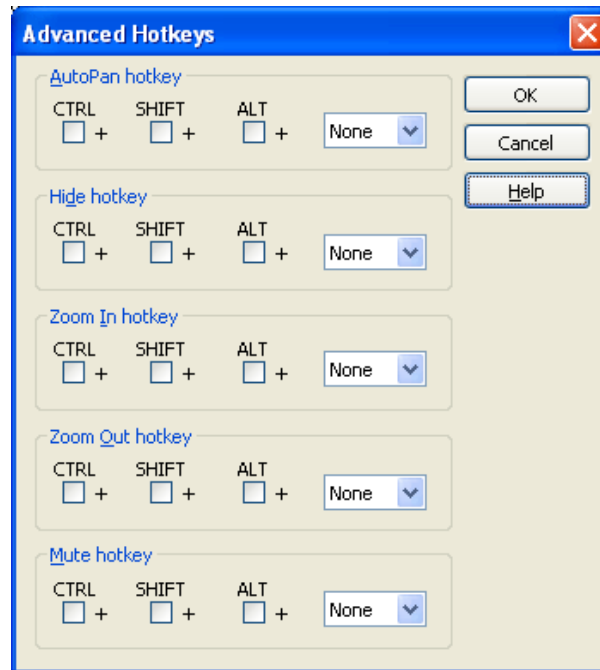
Example

If you want to use the key combination **<Ctrl> + <Alt> + <R>** to *Record/Pause* a recording, you would check the **CTRL** and **ALT** boxes, and choose the letter **R** from the dropdown list. Then, to start or pause recording, you would hold down the **<Ctrl>** and **<Alt>** keys while you press **<R>**.

Advanced Hotkeys

Path: Choose **Recorder > Tools menu> Options > Hotkeys** tab > **Advanced** button.

Use to define hotkeys used while making of a recording. A hotkey is a key or combination of keys that you push to run a command or operate a program.



This table describes each of the options found in the *Advanced Hotkey* dialog box.

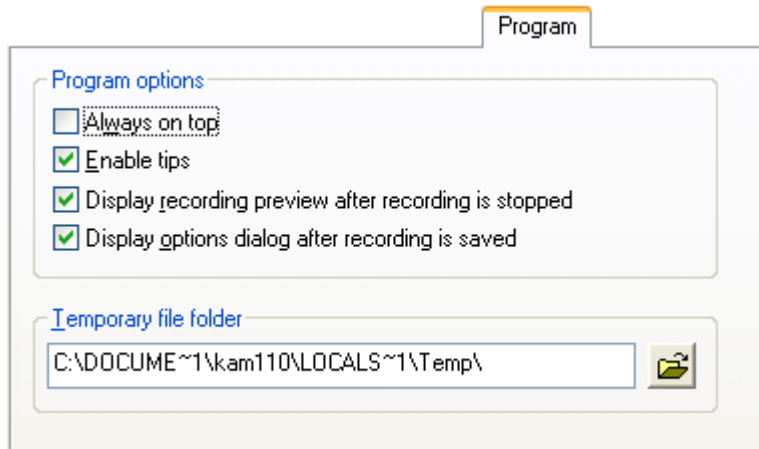
See also: **Recorder Hotkeys Tab** and **Create a Hotkey**.

Hotkey Option	Default Hotkey	Description
AutoPan	None	Turn on the AutoPan feature during recording.
Hide	None	Hide Recorder and disables the hide/unhide tray icon hotkey.
Zoom In	None	Zoom in on the recorded area. Press hotkey additional times to zoom farther.
Zoom Out	None	Zoom out from the recorded area. Press hotkey additional times to zoom farther.
Mute	None	Mute the sound of the cursor and keyboard clicks.

Recorder Program Tab

Path: Choose **Recorder > Tools menu > Options > Program** tab.

Use the *Program* tab to set the Camtasia Studio program options.



This table describes each of the options found in the *Program* tab.

Program Option	Default Setting	Description
Always on top	Off	Put Recorder at the top of any layered applications on the computer desktop.
Enable Tips	On	Tips will show.
Display recording preview after recording is stopped	On	The <i>Recorder Preview Window</i> appears after you have finished recording. This is used to playback the video that you have just created.
Display options dialog after recording is saved	On	The <i>Post-Save Options</i> dialog box appears after you have finished recording and have saved the file. This gives you several post-recording options such as editing within Camtasia Studio, producing the video in a shareable format, or creating another recording.
Temporary File Folder		Specify a drive and folder where files are stored temporarily during capture and before you save them to another location. The default C:\WINDOWS\TEMP is fine if you have room on the C: drive. Use the fastest local hard drive on the system that has the most free space. If you need to change the location, click [...] to search for a new one.

See also:

Recorder Capture Tab

Recorder Video Tab

Recorder Audio Tab

Recorder Camera Tab

Recorder Hotkeys Tab

Camtasia Player Menu Options

This sections describes each of the Player Menu options.

File Menu Options

The File menu options allow you to access the open, close, and exit options. To select a File option, choose the option from the dropdown menu.

File Option	Description
Open	Select the AVI file that you want to play.
Close	Closes the current AVI.
Exit	Exits the Player.

Play Menu Options

The Play menu options allow you to access the play options. These are many of the same options that are available in the playback controls. To select a Play option, choose the option from the dropdown menu.

Play Option	Description
Play/Pause	Begin playing the video and toggles to Pause which pauses the video.
Stop	Stop the video from playing.
Beginning	Move video to the beginning.
Rewind	Rewind the video.
Forward	Fast-forwards the video.
End	Move video to the end.
Full Screen	Play the video in full-screen mode. The video itself does not enlarge. Instead, the background of the screen is filled in to hide the rest of the desktop. Use the ESC key to exit the full screen mode.
Repeat	Play the video again from the beginning.
Volume	Increase, decrease, or mute the volume.

Camtasia MenuMaker Menu Options

This section describes each of the MenuMaker dropdown menu options.

See the these main topics:

MenuMaker File Menu Options

The **File** menu options allow you to access the menu project's open, close, and save options. To select a *File* option, choose the option from the dropdown menu.

MenuMaker Edit Menu Options

The **Edit** menu options allow you to access the options used to change the different properties of the menu such as the menu graphic, font attributes, list box style, etc.

MenuMaker View Menu Options

The **View** menu options allow you to customize the look of MenuMaker. To select a *View* option, choose the option from the dropdown menu.

MenuMaker Tools Menu Options

The **Tools** menu options gives you access to the other Camtasia Studio components as well as to a few MenuMaker options such as choosing the template folder and enabling and disabling the welcome menu and tips.

MenuMaker Help Menu Options

The **Help** menu options gives you access to the MenuMaker online help as well as other Camtasia Studio and TechSmith support options.

MenuMaker File Menu Options

The **File** menu options allow you to access the menu project's open, close, and save options. To select a File option, choose the option from the dropdown menu.

This table describes each of the File options.

File Option	Description
New Project	<p>Will open the MenuMaker <i>Welcome</i> dialog box. Use this to open the wizard, begin a new blank project, open a project, or open a recent project.</p> <p>For a complete discussion of this topic, see Create a MenuMaker Project, MenuMaker Welcome Options, Create a MenuMaker Project, Generate the Menu Using the Wizard, and Customize Menu Using Menu Properties.</p>
Open Project	<p>Show a standard <i>Open</i> dialog box used to open a project file. In the <i>Open</i> dialog box, find the file. Click Open. Note: Project files have a .CMMP extension.</p>
Open Template	<p>Show a standard <i>Open</i> dialog box used to open a template. The folder that is open by default is the folder that is defined in Tools > Options. In the <i>Open</i> dialog box, find the file. Click Open. Note: Template files have a .CMMTPL extension.</p>
Test Menu	<p>Will open up the menu in preview mode. While in preview mode, you can test each of the files to ensure that they work correctly before creating the menu files. Also used to preview the menu graphics, colors, font, sound effects, etc. If you do not like any of these properties, you can change them before creating the menu files.</p>
Create Menu	Will open up the wizard that walks you through the menu creation process.
Close Project	Close the current project.
Save Project	Save the MenuMaker project file. Select the folder to store project in and enter a name for the project. Click OK .
Save Project As	Save the project as another name. Select the folder to store project in and enter a name for the project. Click OK .
Save As Template	<p>Save the project as a template. When saving as a template, only the menu properties are saved, not the files allowing the use of the graphic interface in later projects. Enter the name of the template and click OK.</p> <p>Note: The default folder where the templates are saved is called User Templates. This is found in C:\Program Files\TechSmith\Camtasia Studio\Media\MenuMaker. This folder can be changed by selecting a different folder in the Select template folder field under Tools > Options.</p> <p>Note: If you change the location of the template folder, the templates that you create will not show up in the Wizard when opting to create a menu using the Wizard. However, if you choose to create a menu using the Create a New menu option, then you can browse for the templates and use them from any location.</p>
Project Properties	Show the <i>Project Properties</i> dialog box used to set default project options. See also: Set the Display Options for my Menu using the Project Properties.
Recent File	Show a list of the most recently opened projects.
Exit	Exit the MenuMaker application.

MenuMaker Edit Menu Options

The Edit menu options allow you to access the options used to change the different properties of the menu such as the menu graphic, font attributes, list box style, etc.

To select an Edit option, choose the option from the dropdown menu. This table describes each of the Edit options.

Edit Option	Description & Use
Undo	Will undo the last action in succession. This is an unlimited undo.
Redo	Will redo the last action in that was undone. This is an unlimited redo.
Project Content	Show the <i>Project Content</i> dialog box used to move content files to a new location within the same menu or different menus. See also: Moving Content Files and Add a Submenu .
Insert Submenu	Add a submenu to this project. The same MenuMaker template and other project properties are applied to the new menu. See also: Add a Submenu .
Delete this Submenu	Delete a menu. All of the other menus that are branching off from the menu will also be deleted. Note: You must be in Map View to use. Click the Toggle Map View button and choose Edit > Project Content . Note: Move any content files within the project to another menu(s) before deleting. To delete a menu, first highlight the menu that you want to delete. Choose Edit > Delete the Submenu. At the confirmation dialog box, click Yes to delete. The menu and all branching submenus are deleted.
General Properties	Open the General Tab of the <i>Menu Properties</i> dialog box.
Cursor Properties	Open the Cursor Tab of the <i>Menu Properties</i> dialog box.
List Properties	Open the List Tab of the <i>Menu Properties</i> dialog box.
Menu Content	Open the Content Tab of the <i>Menu Properties</i> dialog box.
Button Properties	Set the options for the buttons located on the submenus. See also: Buttons Tab .

See also:

MenuMaker File Menu Options

MenuMaker View Menu Options

MenuMaker Tools Menu Options

MenuMaker Help Menu Options

MenuMaker View Menu Options

The View menu options allow you to customize the look of MenuMaker. To select a View option, choose the option from the dropdown menu.

This table describes each of the View options. These options are toggle options. That is, you choose the option once to enable the option and once again to disable it.

View Option	Description
Toolbar	View the toolbar.
Status bar	View the status bar at the bottom of MenuMaker.
Map View	Change the Normal view to the Map view.
Zoom In	Zoom in on the thumbnail views of the menus in the project. Click the Toggle Map View button and choose Edit > Project Content .
Zoom Out	Zoom out on the thumbnail views of the menus in the project. Click the Toggle Map View button and choose Edit > Project Content .
Zoom to Fit	View of all of the menus in the project. Click the Toggle Map View button and choose Edit > Project Content .
Show Large Toolbar Buttons	View the toolbar using large buttons.

See also:

MenuMaker File Menu Options

MenuMaker Edit Menu Options

MenuMaker Tools Menu Options

MenuMaker Help Menu Options

MenuMaker Tools Menu Options

The *Tools* menu options gives you access to the other Camtasia Studio components as well as to a few MenuMaker options such as choosing the template folder and enabling and disabling the welcome menu and tips.

This table describes each of the *Tools* options.

Tools Option	Description
Camtasia Studio	Start Camtasia Studio. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Camtasia Studio Welcome Options • Record the Screen with the Recording Wizard • How Camtasia Studio's Applications Work Together • Camtasia Studio Interface Overview • Clips & Elements on the Timeline • Basic Timeline Edits
Camtasia Recorder	Start Recorder. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recorder Basics • Start, Pause, Stop, and Delete a Recording • Record the Screen with Audio • Record the Screen with Camera (PIP) • Add Annotation Effects While Recording
Camtasia Audio Editor	Start Audio Editor . See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MenuMaker Welcome Options • Create a MenuMaker Project • Generate the Menu Using the Wizard
Camtasia Theater	Start Theater . See also: Create a Theater Flash Menu.
Camtasia Player	Start Player . See also: Make Camtasia Player the Default Player.
Options	Open the <i>Options</i> dialog box used to set system options. For Camtasia Studio options, see Camtasia Studio Tools Options . For Recorder options, see Recorder Tools Options . For MenuMaker Options, see MenuMaker Options & Properties .

See also:

MenuMaker File Menu Options

MenuMaker Edit Menu Options

MenuMaker View Menu Options

MenuMaker Help Menu Options

MenuMaker Help Menu Options

The Help menu options gives you access to the Camtasia Studio online help as well as other Camtasia Studio and TechSmith support options.

Continue with the options found in **Camtasia Studio Help Menu Options**.

See also:

MenuMaker File Menu Options

MenuMaker Edit Menu Options

MenuMaker View Menu Options

MenuMaker Tools Menu Options

Camtasia MenuMaker Toolbar Options











Several of the most-used options have been added to the MenuMaker toolbar.





To aid in the navigation around the MenuMaker toolbar, each time the cursor touches a button, a tooltip will appear. The tooltip gives you the name of the tool.

Toolbar Description Table

This table describes each of the MenuMaker tools that can be found on the toolbar along with its use.

Button	Tool Name	Description & Use
	New Project	Open the MenuMaker <i>Welcome</i> dialog box used to open the wizard, begin a new project, open a project, or open a recent project. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Create a MenuMaker Project • Set the Display Options for my Menu using the Project Properties • Customize Menu Using Menu Properties
	Open Project	Show a standard <i>Open</i> dialog box allowing used to open a project or template file. Project files have a .CMMP extension. Template files have a .CMMTPL extension. Choose file. Click Open . See also: Create a MenuMaker Project .
	Save Project	Save the MenuMaker project file.
	Undo	Undo the last action in succession. This is an unlimited undo.
	Redo	Redo the last action that was undone. This is an unlimited redo.
	Edit Menu Properties	Open the <i>Menu Properties</i> dialog box used to make changes to the menu's font attributes, color scheme, list box attributes, etc. For complete information on the Menu Properties options, continue with MenuMaker Edit Menu Options and Customize Menu Using Menu Properties .
	Toggle Map View	Open the Map view showing the main menu in relation to any submenus.
	Test Menu	Open up the menu in preview mode. While in preview mode, you can test each of the files to ensure that they work correctly before creating the menu files. Also, preview the menu graphics, colors, font, sound effects, etc. If you don't like any of these properties, you can change them before creating the menu files. Click the Test Menu button. The menu is displayed in preview mode. To exit out of preview mode, click the system close button in the upper right hand corner of the menu.
	Create Menu	Open up the creation wizard that walks you through the menu creation process.
	Wizard	Open up the wizard that walks you through the process of creating a new menu project. .

Button	Tool Name	Description & Use
	Camtasia Studio	Used to access the other Camtasia Studio components. Click the small down arrow to reveal a dropdown menu of individual Camtasia Studio components.
	Help Contents	Open the online help.

Recorder or Player Command Line Customizations

The command line options allow you to automate and/or control certain Recorder or *Player* functions from other applications or a batch file.

See these main topics:

Recorder's Command Line Customizations

Recorder command line options allow you to automate and/or control Recorder from other applications or a batch file.

Player Command Line Customizations

When you launch *Player*, by default it has a title bar, a menu bar, a tool bar, and a status bar. You can customize those elements by specifying arguments on the command line when launching *Player*.

Player Background Color Command Line Customizations

You can add background color to Camtasia Player using RGB codes in the command line. For the background color, you must supply a color argument with the syntax RGB (r, g, b) where r, g, and b are the red, green and blue components of the color.

Recorder's Command Line Customizations

These Recorder command line options allow you to automate and/or control Recorder from other applications or a batch file.

When the command line options are used, Recorder exits with an exit code of 0 on success and 1 on any failure. The exit code is reflected as the "errorlevel" in DOS batch files.

Command Option	Function	Description
/r	Start/Resume	Start/resume recording using the current Recorder settings. Fails if Recorder is already recording.
/p	Pause	Pause recording. Fails if Recorder is not running, or if Recorder is not recording.
/s	Stop	Stop recording. Fails if Recorder is not running, or if Recorder is not recording or paused.
/h	Run Hidden	Hide Recorder and disables the hide/unhide tray icon hotkey.
/x	Exit	Cause the running instance of Recorder to exit. Fails if Recorder is not running. If a recording session is active, the /x option aborts the capture and discards any video file. Note: You can safely perform a /s to stop recording followed by a /x to cause Recorder to exit. (Example: CamRecorder.exe /s/x).

Player Command Line Customizations

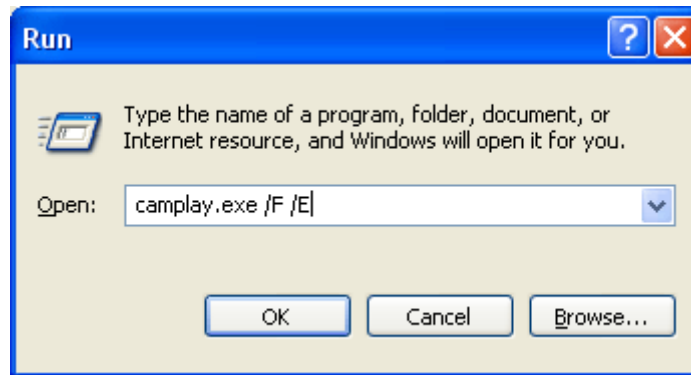
When you launch *Player*, by default it has a title bar, a menu bar, a tool bar, and a status bar. You can customize those elements by specifying arguments on the command line when launching *Player*.

The exact syntax for the command line arguments is:

CAMPLAY [<options>] [<file>]

where <options> is an optional set of options and <file> is an optional video file name.

For example, when putting Camplay.exe in the **Run Program** field, you could set it up to run full-screen and to exit when finished, by using these command line arguments and syntax:



Or, you could not have it run full-screen and just exit when finished by using this syntax: Camplay.exe /E.

Player Command Line Options Table

This table lists the command line options that are available for use with *Player*.

Command	Description
/A	Launch with "Always on top" option.
/BC RGB(255,0,255)	Set background color, default is black.
/D	Launch without allowing "Dragging" by the video area.
/E	Exit after playing the video.
/F	Launch in full-screen Mode
/M	Launch without a menu bar
/MX	Launch with its window maximized
/open	Open the specified video (<file>) but does not play it
/p x, y	Set the movie player window's top corner to an X, Y position indicated in pixels. Example: /p 300, 300
/p x%, y%	Set the movie player window's top corner to an X, Y position indicated in percent. Example: Example: /p 60%, 50%
/play	Immediately play the specified video (<file>) [default]
/R	Repeat the video forever
/S	Launch without a status bar
/T	Launch without a title bar
/TB	Launch without a tool bar

Command Line Examples

This table lists the command line options that are available for use with *Player*.

Examples	Examples
CAMPLAY "clip1AVI" Plays "clip1AVI" with the default user interface.	CAMPLAY /E /F "my videoAVI" Plays "my videoAVI" full-screen and exit after playing.
CAMPLAY /M "clip2AVI" Opens "clip2AVI" without a menu bar (i.e. no File > Open menu option).	CAMPLAY /BC RGB(128,128,128) /F "clip3AVI" Plays "clip3AVI" full-screen and fill the background with dark gray if the video does not fill the entire screen.

Player Background Color Command Line Customizations

You can add background color using RGB codes in the command line. For the background color, you must supply a color argument with the syntax RGB (r, g, b) where r, g, and b are the red, green and blue components of the color.

Valid values for r, g, and b are in the range 0 to 255. For example:

RGB(0,0,0) = black

RGB(255,255,255) = white

RGB(0,0,255) = blue

RGB(255,0,255) = hot pink

RGB(128,128,128) = dark gray

The background color shows only when the video that is playing does not fill the entire frame. For example, if the player is maximized while a 360x240 video is playing, the background color will show.

You can use MS Paint for easy way to generate the RGB numbers by following these steps:

1. Open MS Paint.
2. Double-click on the paint box to open the *Edit Color* dialog box.
3. Click the **Define Custom Colors** button. The *Custom Color* palette appears.
4. Click on a color in the color grid. The spectrum appears along with the RGB color code. Find the color.
5. Enter the RGB code in the command line using the format given in the paragraph above.

Flash Player 8 Security

Flash is a powerful animation and presentation tool but it was designed for the Web and for security reasons Macromedia correctly placed limitations on what it could do. The same limitations that make Flash content safe for people to run from the Web make it somewhat clumsy in a desktop environment.

If attempting to play a Camtasia Studio-produced Flash movie with Flash Player 8 and the Flash movie contains a Quiz that reports via e-mail and/or you have a Callout that contains a jump to a URL, you are prompted with a Flash Player 8 Security warning when testing these features prior to uploading the movie to a Web server.

If you are distributing this movie for playback on the Web, the Quiz and Callout content will function correctly and without warnings after you upload the movie to a Web server.

If you are distributing this movie for playback from any desktop environment such as a hard drive, network drive, or CD-ROM, your viewers **will** encounter the Flash Player 8 Security warning if they view the movie with the Flash Player 8 or higher version.

Creating a Flash Movie for a Desktop Environment

If you need to distribute a Flash movie for playback on a desktop environment, and that movie has a Quiz that reports via e-mail and/or a Callout that contains a jump to a URL, then there are several things that you can do to help your viewer overcome the security warnings put in place with Flash Player 8.

1. Within Camtasia Studio, remove any Jump to a URL hotspots contained within the Callouts.
2. Within Camtasia Studio, produce with the **Report results through e-mail** option disabled. See **Quiz and Survey Reporting Options**.
3. Use a third party tool to create a projector executable file out of the controller.swf that CS produces. Creating a projector executable file guarantees that the movie will playback from all desktop environments such as a hard drive, network drive, or CD-ROM. The projector executable takes the place of the HTML and controller.swf (which causes the security warning to appear). The movie will playback inside a standalone Flash Player wrapper instead of a browser page. To play the movie, double-click on the projector EXE file instead of launching the HTML browser file.

Contact TechSmith Technical Support

If you have a question pertaining to Camtasia Studio, we recommend that you first search the built-in help file to find the information that you need.

If you still need technical support help, you can get free support by searching our Web site's support database

1. Log on to the Internet.
2. From within Camtasia Studio, choose **Help > Support**.
3. Select the [TechSmith Support Website](#) link.

Diagnostic Information

When working with technical support, you could be asked to email or fax Camtasia Studio diagnostics.

If so:

1. Select **Help > Support**.
2. The diagnostic information is highlighted. Click **Copy to Clipboard** and paste the information into an e-mail message, along with any other information requested by the Technical Support team.
3. Alternatively, save the diagnostic information to a file by clicking **Save to File**, then attach the file to the e-mail or print the data and fax (+1 517.913.6121) it to Camtasia Studio support, along with any other information requested by the Technical Support team.
4. Click **OK** to close the Camtasia Studio Support window.

Mailing Address

TechSmith Corporation
2405 Woodlake Drive
Okemos, MI 48864 USA

Telephone

Toll free: 800.517.3001 (USA Only)

Voice: 517.381.2300

Fax: 517.381.2336

TechSmith Support Links

- For more information on Camtasia Studio, visit our homepage at <http://www.techsmith.com/products/studio/default.asp>.
- For the most up to date FAQs, visit <http://www.techsmith.com/products/studio/faqs.asp>.
- For information on TechSmith's upgrade policy, visit <http://www.techsmith.com/products/upgrade/default.asp>.
- To find out about TechSmith's products, visit <http://www.techsmith.com>.
- For Frequently Asked Questions, visit <http://www.techsmith.com/products/studio/faqs.asp>.
- Download a free evaluation copy of Camtasia Studio at <http://www.techsmith.com/Camtasiastudiofreetrial>.

Index

- % of main movie to preload
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 336
- (FLV) Bitrate Control
 - Flash Options Video Tab, 213
- (FLV) Frame Rate
 - Flash Options Video Tab, 212
- (FLV) Key Frame Rate
 - Flash Options Video Tab, 213
- (FLV) Max Bitrate
 - Flash Options Video Tab, 212
- (FLV) Video Codec
 - Flash Options Video Tab, 213
- (FLV) Video Quality
 - Flash Options Video Tab, 213
- (SWF) Colors
 - Flash Options Video Tab, 212
- (SWF) Frame Rate
 - Flash Options Video Tab, 212
- (SWF) Use JPEG compression
 - Flash Options Video Tab, 212
- 2 Pass Encoding
 - RealMedia Encoding Options, 228
- About box text
 - Flash Options Control Tab, 218
- About Flash Player Compatibility, 195
- Add, 118, 119
 - Callouts, 104, 105
 - Cursor Effects, 313
 - Flash Quiz, 114
 - Movies to Flash Menu, 332
 - Picture-in-Picture Recording, 83
 - Title Clip to Timeline, 81
 - Transitions between Clips, 103
 - Voice Narration, 87
 - Zoom in and Zoom out Key Frames, 112
 - Zoom-n-Pan Effects, 111
- Add a Cursor Highlight and Keystroke Clicks to a Recording, 283
- Add a Cursor Highlight to a Recording, 282
- Add a Marker, 68
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 343
- Add a Quiz, 114
- Add a Submenu, 320
- Add a Survey, 116
- Add a Watermark While Recording, 285
- Add a Zoom To Effect During Recording, 289
- Add all SWF movies in folder
 - Theater Menu Color, 332
- Add an AutoPan Effect During Recording, 287
- Add an AutoZoom Effect During Recording, 288
- Add Annotation Effects While Recording, 267
- Add Another Submenu, 320
- Add Callout, 110
- Add Caption, 132
 - Recorder Annotation Toolbar, 362
- Add Captions with the Manual Captions Method, 126
- Add Captions with the Sync Text and Audio Method, 125
- Add Cursor & Highlight Effects While Recording, 279
- Add Drop Shadow, 107
- Add File to a Project, 49
- Add Files
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 318
- Add Files In the Content Tab, 319
- Add index to file (to enable seeking within the file)
 - Windows Media Encoding Options, 222
- Add Keystroke Clicks to a Recording, 283
- Add Metadata Using the Project Properties, 136
- Add Mouse Clicks While Recording, 281
- Add Movies
 - Theater Menu, 327
- Add Special Effects and Enhancements, 80
- Add Static Text
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 318
- Add Submenu
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 318
- Add SWF Movie
 - Theater Menu Color, 332
- Add System Stamp
 - Recorder Annotation Toolbar, 362
- Add the Cursor and Mouse Clicks While Recording, 281
- Add the Cursor While Recording, 280
- Add the Cursor with Mouse Clicks and Apply Cursor Sounds while Recording, 284
- Add to PIP
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 343
- Add to Storyboard
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 343
- Add to Timeline
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 343
- Add Transitions between Clips on the Timeline, 103
- Add Watermark
 - Recorder Annotation Toolbar, 362
- Add Web Address
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 318
- Add Zoom and Pan Effects While Recording, 286
- Add Zoom-n-Pan key frame, 113
- Add-In
 - PowerPoint Options, 28
 - Record PowerPoint Presentation, 26
- Add-In for PowerPoint, 25
- Adding a Blur Callout, 106
- Adding Author Information, 139
- Adding Captions to my Video (Open Captions), 124
- Adding Clips that are in the Clip Bin to the Timeline, 48
- Adding Files to the Clip Bin, 49
- Adding iTunes Information, 140
- Adding Project Information, 137
- Adding Voice Narration, 88
- Adding Zoom-n-Pan Key Frames, 111
- Additional Info
 - Metadata Field, 139
- Additional Output Options, 148, 208
- Adjust or Edit an Audio Clip, 76

- Adjust Sensitivity, 102
- Adjust the Width of your Caption Text, 128
- Adjusting a clip or element, 73
- Adjusting the Clip Speed of a Video Clip, 74
- Adjusting the Width of your Caption Text, 128
- Adobe Flash (SWF)
 - Files, 325
- Adobe Flash (SWF/FLV), 195
 - Encoding Options Screen, 209
 - Video File Type, 193
- Advanced
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 29
 - Recorder Hotkeys Tab, 404
- Advanced Hotkeys, 405
- Advanced Video and Audio Setup, 32
- Alignment
 - HTML Options Screen, 243
- Allow resizing
 - Flash Options Control Tab, 219
- Always ask about importing PowerPoint slide notes as captions
 - Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Options, 353
- Always import PowerPoint notes as captions
 - Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Options, 353
- Always on top
 - Pack and Show Wizard Options, 257
 - Player Command Line Options, 309
 - Recorder Program Tab, 407
- Always use Camtasia Player on AVI files
 - MenuMaker Project Properties, 308
- ANIMATED GIF
 - Video File Type, 194
- Animated GIF Encoding Options Screen
 - Custom Production Wizard, 233
- Annotation
 - Recorder Effects Menu Options, 373
- Annotation Tab
 - Recorder Effects Options, 377
- Annotation Tab Options, 377
- Annotation Toolbar
 - Recorder, 362
 - Recorder View Menu Options, 371
- Answer, 122
- Answer Dialog Box, 122
- Answer numbering, 115, 116, 121
- Answers, 118, 119
- Apply a Caption to a Recording, 271
- Apply a Computer Name or User Name Stamp to a Recording, 270
- Apply a Time or Date Stamp to a Recording, 268
- Apply an Elapsed Time Stamp to a Recording, 269
- Apply Audio Enhancements, 100
- Apply Cursor Sounds while Recording, 284
- Approximate disk space used by Project
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 317
- Are Video Dimensions Visible?, 156
- Arrange Stamp
 - Recorder Annotation Tab, 378
- Ask for File Name
 - Recorder Capture tab, 396
- At end of presentation
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 29
- Attributes
 - Recorder Audio Tab, 402
- Audio
 - Add Voice Narration to Video, 87
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 343
 - Record the Screen With, 264
 - Recorder Effects Menu Options, 373
 - Replace Existing Audio with Silence, 79
 - Voice Narration Options, 88
 - Audio device, 89
 - Audio input source, 89
 - Finished, 89
 - Input level, 89
 - Mute speakers during recording, 89
 - Record selection, 89
 - Record to audio track 1, 89
 - Record to audio track 2, 89
 - Record until end of clip, 89
 - Record until end of *Timeline*, 89
 - Start Recording, 88
 - Stop Recording, 88
- Audio Attributes
 - Flash Options Audio Tab, 216
- Audio Codec, 33
- Audio device, 89
- Audio Device, 33
- Audio Editor, 324
- Audio Encoding
 - MP3 Audio Only, 227
- Audio Enhancement Options, 101
 - Adjust Sensitivity, 102
 - Audio Enhancement Options
 - Restore noise, 102
 - Click Sensitivity, 102
 - Even out volume levels, 101
 - Gain, 102
 - Manually select a region of audio with noise but no voice narration, 101
 - Optimize for, 102
 - Ratio, 102
 - Remove, 102
 - Settings, 101
 - Start Training Audio, 102
 - Threshold, 102
- Audio Enhancements, 99
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 344
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Audio Format
 - AVI Encoding Options, 225
 - CAMV Encoding Options, 232
 - Flash Options Audio Tab, 216
 - RealMedia Encoding Options, 228
 - Recorder Audio Tab, 401
- Audio input source, 89
- Audio Quality
 - Making Improvements, 99
- Audio Settings, 19
- Audio Setup Button

- Recorder, 402
- Audio setup wizard, 33
 - Recorder Audio Tab, 401
- Audio Setup Wizard, 89
 - Picture-in-Picture Options, 85
- Audio Source
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 30
- Audio Tab, 216
 - Recorder, 401
- Audio Target Settings
 - CAMV Encoding Options, 232
- Audio Toolbar
 - Recorder, 364
 - Recorder View Menu Options, 371
- Audio Video Interleave (AVI)
 - DVD Productions, 202
 - Video File Type, 194
- Audio Wizard, 89
- Author Information, 139
 - Metadata, 139
- Auto Configure
 - Recorder Video Tab, 397
- Auto extend last video framePicture-in-Picture Options, 85
- AutoHighlight
 - Recorder Annotation Toolbar, 362
- Automatic
 - Camtasia Studio Program Options, 352
- Automatic File Name
 - Recorder Capture tab, 396
- Automatically Add Highlights to Multiple Areas of the Screen, 272
- Automatically try to detect noise on the timeline, 101
- Automatically upload to screencast.com after my production is finished
 - Camtasia Studio Screencast.com Options, 354
- AutoPan
 - Recorder Hotkeys Tab, 406
 - Recorder Zoom Toolbar, 366
- AutoPan Speed
 - Recorder Zoom Tab, 388
- AutoZoom
 - Recorder Zoom Toolbar, 366
- AutoZoom Speed
 - Recorder Zoom Tab, 388
- Available video devices
 - Recorder Camera Tab, 403
- Available video devicesPicture-in-Picture Options, 85
- AVI
 - As your Default Output, 392
- AVI Capture Rate
 - Streams Tab, 293
- AVI Encoding Options Screen
 - Custom Production Wizard, 224
- AVI Options Description Table
 - Custom Production Wizard, 224
- AVI Playback Rate
 - Streams Tab, 293
- Background color
 - Video Size Screen, 236
- Background Color
 - List Tab MenuMaker, 314
 - MenuMaker General Tab, 312
 - Pack and Show Wizard Options, 257
 - Player Command Line Options, 309
- Background Color Command Line Customizations
 - Player, 421
- Background Image
 - Flash Options PIP Tab, 215
- Balloon Tips
 - Camtasia Studio Help Menu, 349
- Basic Audio Edits, 76
- Basic Timeline Edits, 62
- Batch Produce Several Camtasia Studio Projects at One Time, 249
- Batch Production
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
 - Use More Than One Production Preset for all Produced Files, 252
 - Use One Production Preset for all Produced Files, 249
- Begin Recording, 22
- Beginning
 - Camtasia Studio Play Menu, 347
 - Player Options, 408
- Bitrate Control
 - Flash Options PIP Tab, 215
- Black Box, 393
- Black Text, 131
- Blank Caption, 132
- Blank Captions, 126
- Blend Effect
 - List Tab MenuMaker, 315
- Block from iTunes Podcast directory
 - Metadata Field, 140
- Blurring a Portion of the Screen, 106
- Border Color, 107
- Browse
 - MenuMaker Project Properties, 309
- Button
 - MenuMaker Buttons Tab, 322
- Button Properties
 - MenuMaker Edit Menu, 411
- Buttons Tab, 321
- Callout
 - Custom, 104, 107
- Callout Options, 106
- Callout Type, 106
- Callouts
 - Add, 104
 - Add Callout, 110
 - Adding a New Callout, 105
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 344
 - Copy Selected Callout, 110
 - Creating a Custom Callout, 107
 - Finished, 110
 - Flash Hot Spot Options, 109
 - Modify Selected Callout, 110
 - Paste Callout, 110
 - Property Description Options, 106
 - Property Options

- Add Drop Shadow, 107
- Border Color, 107
- Callout Type, 106
- Fade In, 107
- Fade Out, 107
- Fill Color, 106
- Font, 107
- Font Alignment, 107
- Font Attributes, 107
- Font Size, 107
- Keep Aspect Ratio, 107
- Make Flash Hot Spot, 107
- Opacity, 107
- Restore Shape Defaults, 107
- Shape Size, 107
- Text Box, 107
- Remove all Callouts, 110
- Remove Selected Callout, 110
- With a Flash Hot Spot, 108
- Working with Callouts Options, 109
- Camera (PIP)
 - Record the Screen With, 265
- Camera Preview
 - Recorder Camera Toolbar, 368
 - Recorder View Menu Options, 372
- Camera Properties
 - Recorder Camera Tab, 403
- Camera Tab
 - Recorder, 403
- Camera Toolbar
 - Recorder, 368
 - Recorder View Menu Options, 372
- CAMREC Files, 392
- CAMREC Recording
 - Extract an AVI and WMV, 48
- Camtasia for RealPlay Option Descriptions, 231
- Camtasia for RealPlayer (RealPlayer Plug-In(CAMV), 205
- Camtasia for RealPlayer (RealPlayer Plug-In) (CAMV), 205, 206
- Camtasia for RealPlayer Plug-in
 - Custom Production Wizard, 230
- Camtasia MenuMaker Menu Options, 409
- Camtasia MenuMaker Toolbar Options, 415
- Camtasia Player, 337
- Camtasia Player Command Line Options, 309
- Camtasia Player Menu Options, 408
- Camtasia Recorder, 260
- Camtasia Recorder Basics, 262
- Camtasia Studio
 - Batch Produce Several Camtasia Studio Projects at One Time, 249
 - Control Toolbar Buttons
 - Next Clip, 58
 - File Menu Options, 341
 - Main Toolbar Buttons, 43
 - Import Media Files, 43
 - New Project, 43
 - Open Project, 43
 - Produce Video As..., 43
 - Redo, 43
 - Save Project, 43
 - Tools, 43
 - Undo, 43
 - View Task List, 43
- Playback Control Toolbar Buttons, 57
 - Pause, 58
 - Play, 57
 - Previous Clip, 58
 - Seek Bar, 58
 - Step Backward, 58
 - Step Forward, 58
 - Stop, 58
 - Time Status Bar, 58
 - Preview Playback Area, 57
- Camtasia Studio Add-In for PowerPoint, 25
- Camtasia Studio Edit Menu Options, 343
- Camtasia Studio Help Menu Options, 349
- Camtasia Studio Interface Overview, 42
- Camtasia Studio Menu Options, 341
- Camtasia Studio Overview, 35
- Camtasia Studio Play Menu Options, 347
- Camtasia Studio Tools
 - PowerPoint Options, 353
 - Program Options, 351
 - Screencast.com Options, 354
 - Upgrade Options, 355
- Camtasia Studio Tools Menu Options, 348
- Camtasia Studio Tools Options, 350
- Camtasia Studio Tutorial, 11
- Camtasia Studio View Menu Options, 345
- Camtasia Studio Welcome Screen Options, 13
- Camtasia Studio Zipped Project, 59
- Camtasia Studio's CAMREC Files, 392
- Camtasia Theater and the Legacy SWF Output Flash
 - Template Option, 162
- CAMV, 205
 - Custom Production Wizard, 230
 - Video File Type, 194
- CAMV Options
 - Pack and Show Wizard, 258
- Caption
 - Apply, 271
 - Recorder Annotation Tab, 378
- Caption Options
 - Recorder Annotation Tab, 378
- Caption Text
 - Width, 128
- Caption Toolbar & Other Options, 131
 - Add Caption, 132
 - Black Text, 131
 - Blank Caption, 132
 - Display, 133
 - Overlay, 133
 - Paste, 131
 - Pause, 132
 - Red Text, 131
 - Resume, 132
 - Start, 131
 - Width in Chars, 133

Captions

- Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 344
- Inserting Manual Captions, 126
- Sync Text and Audio, 125
- Captions (Open Captions), 124
- Captions on the Video
 - Overlay, 129
- Captions Options, 131
- Captions Underneath the Video, 130
- Capture Frame Rates and Hardware Acceleration, 393
- Capture layered windows
 - Recorder Capture Tab, 391
- Capture Menu Options
 - Recorder, 370
- Capture Tab
 - Recorder, 390
- Category
 - Metadata Field, 137
- CD
 - What Would You Like To Do Next?
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 180
- CD Distribution Production Option
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 150
- CD Production is Complete
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 172
- Center zoom effect
 - Recorder Zoom Tab, 388
- Change
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 31
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- Change Dimensions
 - Flash Templates Screen, 159, 210
- Change Dimensions (Video Dimensions Preview Screen), 163
- Change the PIP Preview, 98
- Change the Preview Manager Display Fields, 145
- Change the Recommended Dimensions, 156
- Change the Recorder View, 358
- Changing My Video, 62
- Changing the View of the Clip Bin, 47
- Check for Upgrade
 - Camtasia Studio Help Menu, 349
- Choose a MenuMaker Template, 300
- Choose Camera Settings, 21
- Choose the Files to include on the CD, 301
- Choosing a Toolbar
 - Recorder, 356
- Click Sensitivity, 102
- Click to Continue, 109
- Clip & Element Content Menu Option, 50
- Clip Bin, 47
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 345
 - Using, 47
- Clip Bin to the Timeline, 48
- Clip Speed
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 343
- Clip Speed Options, 74
 - New Clip Duration, 74

- Original Clip Duration, 74
- Percentage of original clip speed, 74
- Clips
 - Add Callouts, 104
 - Transitions between Clips, 103
- Clips & Elements on the Timeline, 50
- Close Project
 - MenuMaker File Menu, 410
- Closer Look at the Clips & Elements on the Timeline, 50
- Close-Up Look
 - Recorder, 260
 - Timeline Elements, 50
- Codec Configure Button, 400
- Codec setup
 - Recorder Video Tab, 397
- Codec Setup (Video Compression), 399
- Color
 - Recorder Highlight Cursor, 382
 - Recorder Highlight Mouse Clicks, 383
 - ScreenDraw Tab, 384
- Color 1
 - MenuMaker Buttons Tab, 322
- Color 2
 - MenuMaker Buttons Tab, 322
- Colorize Button
 - MenuMaker Buttons Tab, 322
- Colors
 - Animated GIF Encoding Options, 233
 - AVI Encoding Options, 224
 - CAMV Encoding Options, 232
- Command Line Customizations, 417
 - Player, 419
 - Recorder, 418
- Compact
 - Recorder View Menu Options, 371
- Compact View
 - Recorder, 358
- Compare Setting Details
 - Production Preview Manager, 145
- Completing the Camtasia Studio Production Wizard
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 167
- Compression Control
 - Recorder Streams Configure Button, 400
- Compression Quality
 - Screen Tab Video Compression Options, 399
- Compressor
 - Screen Tab Video Compression Options, 399
- Computer Name
 - Apply, 270
 - Recorder Annotation Tab, 377
- Computer Name or User Name Stamp to a Recording, 270
- Configure
 - Screen Tab Video Compression Options, 399
- Contains explicit material
 - Metadata Field, 140
- Content Tab File Name Preview Fields, 317
- Content Tab MenuMaker, 316
- Content Tab Toolbar

- MenuMaker, 318
- Context Menu
 - Clip & Element, 50
- Contributor
 - Metadata Field, 139
- Controller color
 - Flash Options Control Tab, 219
- Controls Tab
 - Custom Production Wizard, 218
- Controls Tab Options
 - Theater, 335
- Controls Tab View
 - Theater, 334
- Copy Selected Callout, 110
- Coverage
 - Metadata Field, 138
- Create a Camtasia Studio Project Zip File, 60
- Create a Hotkey in Recorder, 405
- Create a MenuMaker Project, 300
- Create a New Production Preset, 189
- Create a Production Preset, 185
- Create a Production Preset at the End of the Production Process, 190
- Create a Table of Contents
 - Recommend my Production Settings Wizard, 165
- Create a Theater Flash Menu, 326
- Create a Title Clip, 82
- Create a WAV File, 79
- Create an EXE File
 - Pack and Show Wizard, 256
- Create an MP3 or WAV File, 79
- Create Menu, 305
 - MenuMaker File Menu, 410
 - MenuMaker Toolbar, 415
- Create Menu Folder, 304
- Creating a Custom Callout, 104, 107
- Creating a Flash Movie for a Desktop Environment, 422
- Creating a Pack and Show File, 256
- Creator
 - Metadata Field, 139
- Cursor
 - Recorder Effects Menu Options, 373
- Cursor & Highlight Effects
 - Add While Recording, 279
- Cursor Effects
 - MenuMaker, 313
- Cursor File
 - Cursor Tab MenuMaker, 313
- Cursor Highlight, 283
- Cursor Properties
 - MenuMaker Edit Menu, 411
- Cursor Setup Options
 - Recorder, 381
- Cursor Sounds, 284
 - Recorder Audio Toolbar, 364
- Cursor Tab
 - MenuMaker, 313
- Cursor Toolbar
 - Recorder, 365
- Recorder View Menu Options, 371
- Cursor with Mouse Clicks, 284
- Custom
 - Camtasia Studio Program Options, 352
 - Video Dimensions Preview Screen, 164
- Custom Callout Manager
 - Graphic File, 108
 - Image Dimensions, 108
 - New Custom Callout, 108
 - Remove Selected Callout, 108
 - Text Indent, 108
 - Vector Grow, 108
- Custom Date Format
 - Time/Date Format Options, 274
- Custom Date Format Symbols, 276
- Custom Production Profile, 185
- Custom Production Wizard, 207
 - Additional Output Options, 208
 - Animated GIF Encoding Options Screen, 233
 - AVI Encoding Options Screen, 224
 - Camtasia for RealPlay Options, 231
 - Camtasia for RealPlayer Plug-in Encoding Options Screen, 230
 - Flash Options, 211
 - Flash Options Audio Tab, 216
 - Flash Options Controls Tab, 218
 - Flash Options PIP Tab, 214
 - Flash Options Table of Contents Tab, 217
 - Flash Options Video Tab, 211
 - Flash Templates, 209
 - HTML Options Screen, 243
 - iPod Options Screen, 226
 - Loading Movie Options, 220
 - Manifest Options Screen, 241
 - Marker Options Screen, 244
 - MP3 Audio Only Screen, 227
 - Produce Video Screen, 246
 - Production Results Screen, 247
 - QuickTime Encoding Options Screen, 223
 - Quiz and Survey Reporting Options, 240
 - RealMedia Encoding Options Screen, 228
 - Video Options Screen, 237
 - Video Size Screen, 235
 - Watermark Screen, 238
 - Windows Media Encoding Options Screen, 221
- Custom Production WizardHow Would you like to produce your video?, 208
- Custom size
 - Video Size Screen, 235
- Custom Time Format
 - Time/Date Format Options, 274
- Custom Time Format Symbols, 275
- Custom Zoom Size, 112
- Customize Camtasia Player Command Line Options, 309
- Customize Controller
 - Theater Menu, 328
- Customize Menu Using Menu Properties Tab Options, 310
- Customize this question, 121

- Cut off long Marker names, don't wrap
 - Marker Options Screen, 244
- Cut Selection
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 343
- Cutting a Selection from the Timeline, 66
- Data Rate
 - Screen Tab Video Compression Options, 399
- Date
 - Metadata Field, 137
- Date only
 - Time/Date Format Options, 274
- Date Stamp
 - Apply, 268
- Date then time
 - Time/Date Format Options, 274
- Days between checks
 - Camtasia Studio Upgrade Options, 355
- Decrease the Volume Down, 78
- Default
 - Picture-in-Picture Options, 85
 - Recorder Camera Tab, 403
- Default Durations (In Seconds)
 - Camtasia Studio Program Options, 352
- Default Font
 - MenuMaker Project Properties, 308
- Default Output
 - AVI, 392
- Delete, 118, 119
 - Production Preview Manager, 144
 - Recorder
 - Main Toolbar, 357
 - Recorder Capture Menu Options, 370
- Delete a Recording, 263
- Delete All Items
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 318
- Delete Files
 - MenuMaker Choose Files Screen, 302
- Delete Selected Item
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 318
- Delete this Submenu
 - MenuMaker Edit Menu, 411
- Deleting an Element from the Timeline, 71
- Depth
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- Description
 - Manifest Options Screen, 242
 - Metadata Field, 138
 - Windows Media Encoding Options, 222
- Desktop Color
 - MenuMaker Project Properties, 308
- Detailed Feedback, 123
- Details
 - Animated GIF Encoding Options, 234
 - AVI Encoding Options, 225
 - CAMV Encoding Options, 232
 - Windows Media Encoding Options, 222
- Device
 - Recorder Audio Tab, 401
- Diagnostic Information, 423
- Direction
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- Disable Callout fade effects to reduce file size
 - Video Size Screen, 236
- Disable display acceleration during capture
 - Recorder Capture Tab, 391
- Disable keyboard and cursor effects during
 - ScreenDraw
 - ScreenDraw Tab, 384
- Display, 133
- Display feedback when questions are answered, 115, 116
- Display feedback when this question is answered, 121
- Display format
 - Flash Options Control Tab, 219
- Display Format
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 335
- Display Mode
 - MenuMaker Project Properties, 308
- Display options dialog after recording is saved
 - Recorder Program Tab, 407
- Display Options for Menu using the Project
 - Properties, 308
- Display recording preview after recording is stopped
 - Recorder Program Tab, 407
- Dithered color reduction
 - Animated GIF Encoding Options, 234
- Dragging a Clip, 69
- Dragging a Clip or Element to a New Location on the
 - Timeline, 69
- Drop shadow
 - Picture-in-Picture Properties, 94
- Duration
 - Manifest Options Screen, 242
- DVD Production is Complete
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 174
- DVD What Would You Like To Do Next?
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 181
- DVD-ready Distribution Production Option
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 151
- Each Kind of Clip in the Clip Bin, 47
- Edit, 39, 118
 - Adjusting the Audio of a Clip on the Timeline, 76
 - Adjusting the Clip Speed of a Video Clip, 74
 - Cutting A Selection from the Video, 66
 - Deleting an Element from the Timeline, 71
 - Dragging a Clip or Element to a New Location on the
 - Timeline, 69
 - Extending the Frame of a Video Clip, 72
 - Marking In or Marking Out a Clip or Element on the
 - Timeline, 73
 - Removing a Video or Audio Clip from the Timeline, 70
 - Searching the Video using the Timeline, 63
 - Splitting a Clip on the Timeline, 67
- Edit a Picture-in-Picture Recording, 91
- Edit an Existing Production Preset, 192
- Edit Answer Dialog Box, 122

- Edit in Camtasia Studio when finished
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 29
- Edit Menu Options
 - Camtasia Studio, 343
 - MenuMaker, 411
- Edit Menu Properties
 - MenuMaker Toolbar, 415
- Edit Quiz Answer Options, 122
- Editing
 - Audio Basics, 76
- Editing My Video, 62
- Effects Menu Options
 - Recorder, 373
- Effects Options
 - Recorder, 376
- Elapsed Time
 - Recorder Annotation Tab, 377
- Elapsed Time Stamp
 - Apply, 269
- Element Content Menu Option, 50
- Elements on the Timeline, 50
- E-mail
 - Metadata Field, 139
- E-mail address
 - Quiz and Survey Reporting Options, 240
- E-Mail Distribution Production Option
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 149
- E-mail Production is Complete
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 171
- Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip, 93
- Embedded PIP Preview, 97
- Emboss
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- Enable balloon help
 - Camtasia Studio Program Options, 352
- Enable PowerPoint Add-in
 - Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Options, 353
- Enable Single Frame Capture Mode, 291
- Enable Tips
 - Camtasia Studio Program Options, 352
 - Recorder Program Tab, 407
- Enabled automated upgrade checking
 - Camtasia Studio Upgrade Options, 355
- Enabling the Effects Settings Options, 376
- Encode Audio
 - AVI Encoding Options, 225
 - Flash Options Audio Tab, 216
- End
 - Camtasia Studio Play Menu, 347
 - Player Options, 408
- End action
 - Flash Options Control Tab, 219
- Enhancements
 - Add, 80
- Enhancements, Audio
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Enter Menu Title
 - MenuMaker, 302
- Even Out the Audio, 99
- Even out volume levels, 101
- Exit
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
 - Recorder
 - Command Line, 418
- Exit after playing movie
 - Pack and Show Wizard Options, 257
 - Player Command Line Options, 309
- Exit sound
 - MenuMaker Project Properties, 309
- Export a Camtasia Studio Project, 60
- Export Flash Menu
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 335
 - Theater General Properties, 331
- Export Project as Zip
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
- Extend Current Frame, 88, 90
 - Picture-in-Picture Options, 85
- Extend Frame
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 343
- Extending the Frame of a Video Clip, 72
- Extract a WMV from a CAMREC Recording, 48
- Extract an AVI and WMV from a CAMREC
 - Recording, 48
- Fade In, 107
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Fade In Audio, 77
- Fade Out, 107
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Fade Out Audio, 77
- Fade PIP Clip In and Out, 93
- Fade PIP video in and out
 - Picture-in-Picture Properties, 94
- Feedback, 116, 121
- File Formats
 - Adobe Flash (SWF) Files, 325
 - Adobe Flash (SWF/FLV), 195
 - Audio Video Interleave (AVI) & DVD Productions, 202
 - Audio Video Interleave (AVI) and CD-ROM
 - Distribution, 201
 - Camtasia for RealPlayer (RealPlayer Plug-In(CAMV), 205
 - GIF Animation File (GIF), 206
 - Help Me Choose a Format, 193
 - iPod/iTunes, 203
 - MP3 Audio Only, 203
 - QuickTime (MOV), 200
 - RealMedia Streaming Media, 204
 - Windows Media (WMV), 197
- File Menu Options
 - Camtasia Studio, 341
 - MenuMaker, 410
 - Player, 408
- File Name Options
 - Recorder Capture Tab, 390
- File Name Options Button
 - Recorder, 396
- File Type
 - RealMedia Encoding Options, 228
- File Type Overview Table, 193

- Fill Color, 106
- Fill in the Blank Example, 119
- Fill in the Blank Question Options, 119
- Fill in the Blank Question Options Table, 119
- Final Video
 - Production Tutorials, 141
- Finish Menu, 306
- Finished
 - Manage PIP Clips, 95
 - Picture-in-Picture Options, 86
- Fit in
 - Flash Templates Screen, 159, 210
 - Video Dimensions Preview Screen:, 163
- Fixed File Name
 - Recorder Capture tab, 396
- Fixed Palette
 - Animated GIF Encoding Options, 234
- Fixed Region
 - Recorder Input Options, 361
- Fixed Region Dialog Box
 - Recorder Capture Menu, 361
- Fixed Starting Point
 - Fixed Region Dialog Box, 361
- Flash Hot Spot Properties, 108
- Flash Hot Spot Properties Options
 - Click to Continue, 109
 - Go to frame at time, 109
 - Go to Marker, 109
 - Jump to URL, 109
 - Pause at end of Callout, 109
- Flash Hot Spot Properties Options Description Table, 109
- Flash Menu for the Web, 326
- Flash Movie
 - Menu List Options, 332
 - Take the Camtasia Studio Tutorial, 11
- Flash Movie for a Desktop Environment, 422
- Flash Options
 - Custom Production Wizard, 211
 - Flash Templates Screen, 210
 - Loading Movie Options, 220
- Flash Options Audio Tab
 - Custom Production Wizard, 216
- Flash Options Controls Tab
 - Custom Production Wizard, 218
- Flash Options PIP Tab, 214
- Flash Options Table of Contents Tab, 217
- Flash Options Video Tab, 211
- Flash Player 6, 160, 195, 214
- Flash Player 7, 160, 195, 214
- Flash Player 8, 160, 195, 214
- Flash Player 8 Security, 422
- Flash Player Compatibility, 195
- Flash Quiz, 114
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 344
 - Creating a Flash Quiz, 114
 - Creating a Flash Survey, 116
- FITB
 - Question Properties Options
 - Question, 119, 120
- Multiple Choice
 - Question Properties Options
 - Edit, 118
 - Preview the Question, 118, 119, 120
 - Question, 118
 - Question Properties, 118, 119, 120
- Question Properties Options, 117
 - Answer Numbering, 115, 121
 - If correct, display, 115, 121
 - If incorrect display, 115, 122
- Multiple Choice
 - Answers, 118, 119
 - Delete, 118, 119
 - Move Down, 118
 - Move Up, 118
 - Multiple Choice
 - Add, 118, 119
 - Place a check mark next to the correct answer, 118
 - Quiz name, 118
 - Quiz name, 121
- Flash Survey
 - Question Properties Options
 - Answer Numbering, 116
- Flash Template Examples, 160
- Flash Templates, 209
- Flash Templates Screen
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 158
- FLV
 - Flash Options Video Tab, 212
- FLV High Quality Settings, 196
- FLV Medium Quality Settings, 196
- FLV Smallest Size Settings, 196
- Folder
 - Produce Video Screen, 247
- Font, 107
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 335
- Font Alignment, 107
- Font Attributes, 107
- Font Color
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 335
- Font Size, 107
- Format
 - Metadata Field, 137
 - Recorder Audio Tab, 401, 402
- Forward
 - Player Options, 408
- Frame Rate
 - Animated GIF Encoding Options, 233
 - AVI Encoding Options, 224
 - CAMV Encoding Options, 232
 - Flash Options PIP Tab, 214
- Frame Style
 - List Tab MenuMaker, 315
- Frames
 - AVI Encoding Options, 225
 - Screen Tab Video Compression Options, 399
- Frequently Asked Questions
 - Camtasia Studio Help Menu, 349
- Full Screen
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 345

- Player Options, 408
- Full Screen Mode
 - Preview Window, 61
- Full Screen Play Controls, 61
- Gain, 102
- General Properties
 - MenuMaker Edit Menu, 411
- General Properties Options
 - Theater, 331
- General Suggestions for Recording, 262
- General Tab
 - MenuMaker, 312
- Generate the Menu Using the Wizard, 304
- GIF Animation File
 - About, 206
- Go to frame at time, 109
- Go to Marker, 109
- Graphic File, 108
- Hard Drive Production is Complete
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 175, 176
- Hard Drive What Would You Like To Do Next?
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 182
- Hardware Acceleration, 393
 - Turn Off System-Wide, 394
 - Turn Off Within Camtasia Recorder, 393
 - Turn Off Within Specific Media Players, 395
 - Turn Off Within the New Recording Wizard, 394
- Help Menu Options
 - Camtasia Studio, 349
 - Recorder, 375
- Hide
 - Recorder Hotkeys Tab, 406
- Hide a portion of a clip or element, 73
- Hide capture rectangle
 - Recorder Capture Tab, 390
- Hide Cursor
 - Recorder Cursor Toolbar, 365
- Higher Motion Screen Recordings & Camcorder Videos, 198
- Highlight
 - Recorder Annotation Toolbar, 363
- Highlight Clicks
 - Recorder Cursor Toolbar, 365
- Highlight Color
 - Recorder Annotation Tab, 378
- Highlight Cursor
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 29
 - Recorder Cursor Toolbar, 365
- Highlight Cursor & Clicks
 - Recorder Cursor Toolbar, 365
- Highlight Cursor Options
 - Recorder, 382
- Highlight Effects
 - Add While Recording, 279
- Highlight Mouse Clicks Options, 383
- Highlight One Area of the Recording, 273
- Highlight Width
 - Recorder Annotation Tab, 378
- Homepage
 - Metadata Field, 139
- Horizontal Offset
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- Hotkey Tab
 - Recorder, 404
- Hotkeys
 - Create a Hotkey in Recorder, 405
- How Camtasia Studio's Applications Work Together, 35
- How do I
 - Add a Submenu?, 320
 - use Camtasia Studio?, 35
- How Do I
 - Add a Marker to the Timeline?, 68
 - Add a Quiz or Survey, 114
 - Add Annotation Effects While Recording, 267
 - Add Callouts?, 104
 - Add Captions To My Video?, 124
 - Add Cursor & Highlight Effects While Recording?, 279
 - Add Metadata?, 136
 - Add Transitions?, 103
 - Apply Audio Enhancements?, 100
 - Blur a Portion of the Screen?, 106
 - Change the Look of a Picture-in-Picture Recording?, 91
 - Create a Title Clip?, 82
 - Create an MP3 or WAV File, 79
 - Edit My Recording?, 39
 - Edit the Audio?, 76
 - Export a Camtasia Studio Project?, 60
 - Extend a Frame for Narrating?, 90
 - Fade In the Audio?, 77
 - Fade Out the Audio?, 77
 - Import a Camtasia Studio Project?, 59
 - Increase the Volume?, 78
 - Make a Timeline Selection?, 65
 - Make Audio Enhancements?, 99
 - Make Basic Audio Edits?, 76
 - Make Changes to a Clip on the Timeline?, 62
 - Make the Audio Go Away?, 79
 - Make Timeline Edits?, 62
 - Narrate a Video Clip?, 87
 - Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline?, 142
 - Produce my Video?, 40
 - Record a Picture-in-Picture Recording?, 83
 - Record the Camera?, 83
 - Record?, 37
 - Save a Frame as an Image?, 75
 - Share My Video?, 41
 - Turn the Volume Down?, 78
 - Use The Clip Bin?, 47
 - Use Theater?, 325
- How to Report Quiz Results, 115
- How to Report Survey Results, 116
- How will you distribute your video?
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 147
- How will you share your videos?, 193, 207
- How Would you like to produce your video?, 208
- HTML
 - Video Options Screen, 238
- HTML Options Screen

- Custom Production Wizard, 243
- Icon File
 - MenuMaker Project Properties, 308
- Identifier
 - Manifest Options Screen, 242
- Identifying each Kind of Clip in the Clip Bin, 47
- If correct, display, 115, 121
- If incorrect, display, 115, 122
- If incorrect:, 122
- Image Dimensions, 108
- Image Duration
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 343
- Image File
 - MenuMaker General Tab, 312
- Image Path
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 31
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
 - Video Options Screen, 237
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- Image Scale
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 32
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- Import a Camtasia Studio Project, 59
- Import Media, 49
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
- Import Media Files
 - Camtasia Studio
 - Main Toolbar, 43
- Import Zipped Project
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
- Improve Audio Quality, 99
- Include a Flash Hot Spot in a Callout, 108
- Include a table of contents with my produced video
 - Marker Options Screen, 244
- Include Border
 - Picture-in-Picture Properties, 94
- Include iPod Video
 - Additional Output Options, 208
- Include MP3
 - Additional Output Options, 208
- Include PowerPoint
 - Additional Output Options, 208
- Include score in e-mail
 - Quiz and Survey Reporting Options, 240
- Include watermark
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 29
 - Video Options Screen, 237
- Include Watermark in Video
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
- Include Windows colors
 - Animated GIF Encoding Options, 234
- Increase the Volume Up, 78
- Input
 - Recorder Audio Tab, 401
 - Recorder Capture Menu Options, 370
- Input level, 89
 - Picture-in-Picture Options, 86
- Input Menu Options
 - Recorder, 360
- Insert Submenu
 - MenuMaker Edit Menu, 411
- Interface Overview
 - Camtasia Studio, 42
- Interleave Audio
 - AVI Encoding Options, 225
- iPod/iTunes
 - Video File Type, 194
- iPod bandwidth
 - iPod Options, 226
- iPod Options Screen
 - Custom Production Wizard, 226
- iPod or iTunes
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 153
- iPod Video
 - Additional Output Options, 148, 208
- iPod What Would You Like To Do Next?
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 183
- iPod/iTunes, 203
- iTunes category
 - Metadata Field, 140
- iTunes Information, 140
 - Metadata, 140
- Jump to URL, 109
- KB/Sec
 - Screen Tab Video Compression Options, 399
- Keep aspect ratio
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
 - Video Dimensions Preview Screen, 164
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- Keep Aspect Ratio, 107, 113
- Key down sound
 - Recorder Sound Tab, 379
- Key Frame Every
 - Screen Tab Video Compression Options, 399
- Key Frame Rate
 - Flash Options PIP Tab, 215
- Keyboard Sounds
 - Recorder Audio Toolbar, 364
- Keyframe every
 - CAMV Encoding Options, 232
- Keystroke Clicks, 283
- Keywords
 - Metadata Field, 138
- Language
 - Manifest Options Screen, 242
 - Metadata Field, 138
- Largest video size (Recommended)
 - Video Size Screen, 235
- Launch Menu after export
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 335
 - Theater General Properties, 331
- Layout
 - MenuMaker General Tab, 312
- Left Position
 - MenuMaker Buttons Tab, 322
- Legacy SWF Output
 - Flash Template Examples, 162
- Legacy SWF Output Flash Template Option, 162
- Lesson Title

- Manifest Options Screen, 242
- Level
 - Recorder Audio Tab, 401
- List Properties
 - MenuMaker Edit Menu, 411
- List Tab
 - MenuMaker, 314
- Live output capture
 - Recorder Video Tab, 397
- Live Output Capture Mode, 294
- Live output setup
 - Recorder Video Tab, 397
- Load Default
 - Player Command Line Options
 - Player Command Line Options, 310
- Loading Movie Options
 - Custom Production Wizard, 220
- Loading movie URL
 - Flash Options, 220
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 335
- Lock and Unlock Timeline Tracks, 64
- Locking and Unlocking the Timeline Tracks, 64
- Loop indefinitely
 - Animated GIF Encoding Options, 233
- Main Toolbar, 43
 - Recorder, 357
- Make a Recording, 37
- Make a Timeline Selection, 65
- Make AVI your default output, 392
- Make Camtasia Player your Default Player, 339
- Make Changes to a Picture-in-Picture Recording, 91
- Make Flash Hot Spot, 107
- Make your First Recording, 37
- Making Basic Timeline Edits, 62
- Making Camtasia Player your Default Player, 339
- Manage Callouts, 109
- Manage PIP Clips, 95
- Manage Production Presets, 191
- Manage Zoom-n-Pan Keyframes, 113
- Manifest Options Screen
 - Custom Production Wizard, 241
- Manual Captions, 126
- Manual Configuration
 - Recorder Video Tab, 397
- Manually select a region of audio with noise but no voice narration, 101
- Map View
 - MenuMaker View Menu, 412
- Marker
 - Recorder Hotkeys Tab, 404
- Marker Options Screen
 - Custom Production Wizard, 244
- Marking In or Marking Out a Clip or Element on the Timeline, 73
- Match loading movie size to main movie size
 - Flash Options, 220
- Match movie size
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 335
- Max Bitrate
 - Flash Options PIP Tab, 215
- Media
 - Importing Into a Project, 49
- Menu alignment
 - Theater General Properties, 331
- Menu Color Options
 - Theater, 332
- Menu Content
 - MenuMaker Edit Menu, 411
- Menu Item File
 - Theater Menu Color, 332
- Menu item font size
 - Theater General Properties, 331
- Menu Item Name
 - Theater Menu Color, 332
- Menu Options
 - Camtasia Player, 408
 - Camtasia Studio, 341
 - Recorder, 369
- Menu Properties Tab Options
 - MenuMaker, 310
- Menu Tab Options
 - Theater, 331
- Menu Tab View
 - Theater, 330
- Menu title
 - Theater General Properties, 331
- Menu Title
 - MenuMaker General Tab, 312
- Menu title font size
 - Theater General Properties, 331
- MenuMaker, 296
 - Add a Submenu, 320
 - Add Another Submenu, 320
 - Add Cursor Effects, 313
 - Arrange and Customize my File Content, 316
 - Buttons Tab, 321
 - Content Tab, 316
 - Content Tab Toolbar, 318
 - Create a new project (Advanced), 298
 - Create a new project using the Wizard, 298
 - Create Menu, 305
 - Create Menu Folder, 304
 - Customize Menu Using Menu Properties Tab Options, 310
 - Customize your Menu Navigation Buttons, 321
 - Edit a Submenu, 321
 - Edit Menu Options, 411
 - File Menu Options, 410
 - Finish Menu, 306
 - General Tab, 312
 - List Tab, 314
 - Menu Display Options, 308
 - Move MenuMaker Project Content into a New Menu, 323
 - Open a recent project, 299
 - Open an existing menu, 298
 - Project Properties, 308
 - Steps to Create an Interactive MenuMaker CD for Video Distribution, 300
 - Tools Menu Options, 413

- Tutorials
 - Create an Interactive MenuMaker CD for Video Distribution, 300
 - View Menu Options, 412
- MenuMaker Menu Options, 409
- MenuMaker Options & Properties, 307
- MenuMaker Overview, 297
- MenuMaker Toolbar Options, 415
- MenuMaker Welcome Screen Options, 298
- MenuMaker Wizard
 - Choose Files, 301
 - Choose Template, 300
 - Enter Title, 302
 - Make Menu, 304
- Metadata Using the Project Properties, 136
- Meter
 - Recorder Audio Tab, 401
- Minimal
 - Recorder View Menu Options, 371
- Minimal View
 - Recorder, 359
- Minimize before starting capture
 - Recorder Capture Tab, 390
- Minimum preload movie display time (in seconds)
 - Flash Options, 220
- Minimum Preload movie display time (in seconds)
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 336
- Modes
 - Recorder Capture, 290
- Modify a Picture-in-Picture Recording, 91
- Modify a Side-by-Side Picture-in-Picture Clip, 92
- Modify Selected Callout, 110
- Modify selected PIP clip
 - Manage PIP Clips, 95
- Modify the Look of a Picture-in-Picture Recording, 93
- Modify the Properties of an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip, 93
- Modify Zoom-n-Pan key frame, 113
- Mouse button down sound
 - Recorder Sound Tab, 379
- Mouse button up sound
 - Recorder Sound Tab, 379
- Mouse Click
 - Cursor Tab MenuMaker, 313
- Mouse Clicks Options
 - Recorder, 383
- Mouse Hover
 - Cursor Tab MenuMaker, 313
- Move Down, 118
 - MenuMaker Choose Files Screen, 302
- Move Item Down
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 318
- Move Item Up
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 318
- Move Left
 - Flash Options TOC Tab, 217
 - Marker Options Screen, 245
 - Table of Contents Screen, 165
- Move Movie Down
 - Theater Menu Color, 333
- Move Movie Up
 - Theater Menu Color, 332
- Move Right
 - Flash Options TOC Tab, 217
 - Marker Options Screen, 245
 - Table of Contents Screen, 165
- Move Up, 118
 - MenuMaker Choose Files Screen, 302
- Movie background, 332
- Movie Controller color
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 335
- Moving a Clip, 69
- Moving Content Files Within a Menu or Between Menus, 323
- MP3
 - Additional Output Options, 148, 208
 - Save Audio Track As, 79
- MP3 Audio
 - Video File Type, 194
- MP3 Audio Only, 203
- MP3 Audio Only Screen
 - Custom Production Wizard, 227
- Multiple Choice Question Options, 117, 118
- Mute
 - Recorder Hotkeys Tab, 406
- Mute Audio Effects
 - Recorder Audio Toolbar, 364
- Mute speakers during recording, 89
 - Picture-in-Picture Options, 85
- Nam
 - Recorder Audio Tab, 402
- Name
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 317
 - Recorder Capture tab, 396
- Narration to a Video on the Timeline
 - Add, 87
- Never import PowerPoint slide notes as captions
 - Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Options, 353
- New Callout, 105
- New Clip Duration
 - Clip Speed Options:, 74
- New Custom Callout, 108
- New Project
 - Camtasia Studio
 - Main Toolbar, 43
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 341
 - MenuMaker File Menu, 410
 - MenuMaker Toolbar, 415
- Next Clip
 - Camtasia Studio Play Menu, 347
 - Playback Control Toolbar, 58
- Next Marker
 - Camtasia Studio Play Menu, 347
- No dragging by movie area
 - Pack and Show Wizard Options, 257
 - Player Command Line Options, 309
- No menu bar
 - Pack and Show Wizard Options, 257
 - Player Command Line Options, 309
- No Reporting

- Quiz and Survey Reporting Options, 240
- No status bar
 - Pack and Show Wizard Options, 257
 - Player Command Line Options, 309
- No title bar
 - Player Command Line Options, 309
- No toolbar
 - Pack and Show Wizard Options, 257
 - Player Command Line Options, 309
- Normal screen capture
 - Recorder Video Tab, 397
- Number marker entries
 - Flash Options TOC Tab, 217
- One video
 - Flash Template Examples, 161
- One Video with PIP
 - Flash Template Examples, 161
- One Video with PIP and TOC
 - Flash Template Examples, 161
- One Video with TOC
 - Flash Template Examples, 161
- Opacity, 107
 - Picture-in-Picture Properties, 94
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 32
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- Opaque
 - Recorder Highlight Cursor, 382
- Open a Zipped Camtasia Studio Project, 59
- Open an existing project, 14
- Open Caption Toolbar & Other Options, 131
- Open Captions, 124
- Open Files in Camtasia Studio, 49
- Open Project
 - Camtasia Studio
 - Main Toolbar, 43
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 341
 - MenuMaker File Menu, 410
 - MenuMaker Toolbar, 415
- Open Template
 - MenuMaker File Menu, 410
- Opening Camtasia Player, 337
- Optimize for, 102
- Optimize for File Size or Audio Quality, 157
- Optimize for File Size or Video Quality
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 156
- Optimized Palette
 - Animated GIF Encoding Options, 233
- Options
 - iPod Options, 226
 - MenuMaker Project Properties, 308
 - MenuMaker Tools Menu, 413
 - MP3 Audio Only, 227
 - Recorder
 - Main Toolbar, 357
 - Recorder Effects Menu Options, 373
- Options & Properties
 - MenuMaker, 307
- Organize produced files into sub-folders
 - Produce Video Screen, 247
- Original Clip Duration
 - Clip Speed Options:, 74
- Other
 - Flash Templates Screen, 159, 210
- Output Folder
 - Recorder Capture tab, 396
- Overlay, 133
- Overlay Captions on the Video, 129
- Pack & Show Executable, 255
- Pack and Show
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
- Pack and Show Wizard, 256
- Pack and Show Wizard Options, 256
- Package a Video as a Pack & Show Executable File, 255
- Package Video Options
 - Pack and Show Wizard, 259
- Paste, 131
- Paste Callout, 110
- Pause, 132
 - Playback Control Toolbar, 58
 - Recorder
 - Command Line, 418
 - Main Toolbar, 357
 - Recorder Capture Menu Options, 370
- Pause a Recording, 263
- Pause at end of Callout, 109
- Pause at start
 - Flash Options Control Tab, 219
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 335
- Pause before starting capture
 - Recorder Capture Tab, 390
- Percent of main movie to preload
 - Flash Options, 220
- Picture (PIP) Video Clip
 - How to Record, 84
- Picture-in-Picture, 83, 92
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 344
 - Modify the Look, 93
 - Options, 85
- Picture-in-Picture Modify Options
 - Drop shadow, 94
 - Fade PIP video in and out, 94
 - Include Border, 94
 - Opacity, 94
 - Position, 94
 - Shadow direction, 94
 - Show/Hide PIP video, 94
 - Size, 94
- Picture-in-Picture Options
 - Audio Setup Wizard, 85
 - Auto extend last video frame, 85
 - Available video devices, 85
 - Camera Properties, 85
 - Default, 85
 - Extend Frame, 85
 - Finished, 86
 - Input level, 86
 - Mute speakers during recording, 85
 - Record Audio, 85

- Record selection, 85
- Record until end of clip, 85
- Record until end of Timeline, 85
- Start Recording, 85
- Stop Recording, 85
- Video Format, 85
- Picture-in-Picture Properties, 85, 94
- Picture-in-Picture Properties Options, 85
- PIP
 - Flash Templates Screen, 159, 210
 - Record the Screen With, 265
- PIP Preview, 96
- PIP Tab, 214
- Place a check mark next to the correct answer, 118
- Placing Captions Underneath the Video, 130
- Play
 - Animated GIF Encoding Options, 233
 - Playback Control Toolbar, 57
- Play AVI files with Camtasia Player
 - Camtasia Studio Program Options, 351
- Play Controls For Full Screen Viewing, 61
- Play in full screen mode
 - Pack and Show Wizard Options, 257
 - Player Command Line Options, 309
- Play in maximized mode
 - Pack and Show Wizard Options, 257
 - Player Command Line Options, 309
- Play Menu Options Camtasia Studio, 347
- Play movie after production
 - Produce Video Screen, 247
- Play movies in sequence
 - Theater General Properties, 331
- Play Selected Preview
 - Production Preview Manager, 144
- Play/Pause
 - Camtasia Studio Play Menu, 347
 - Player Options, 408
- Playback Control Toolbar, 57
- Player, 337
 - Background Color Command Customizations, 421
 - Command Line Customizations, 419
 - Command Line Options, 309
 - File Menu Options, 408
 - Options Description Table, 257
 - Play Menu Options, 408
- Player as your Default Player, 339
- Player Command Line Customizations, 417
- Player Command Line Customizations Examples, 420
- Player Options
 - Always on top, 257
 - Background Color, 257
 - Exit after playing movie, 257
 - No dragging by movie area, 257
 - No menu bar, 257
 - No status bar, 257
 - No toolbar, 257
 - Play in full screen mode, 257
 - Play in maximized mode, 257
 - Repeat movie until closed, 257
 - Start playing automatically, 257
 - Stay on last frame, 257
 - To title bar, 257
- Player System Requirements, 338
- Position, 113
 - List Tab MenuMaker, 315
 - Picture-in-Picture Properties, 94
- Positioning Cluster
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 32
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- PowerPoint, 25
 - Additional Output Options, 148, 208
- PowerPoint Add' In Turn Off Within Camtasia Studio, 34
- PowerPoint Add-In Option Descriptions, 28
- PowerPoint Add-In Options, 28
- PowerPoint Add-In Turn On or Off, 34
- PowerPoint Add-In Turn On Within Camtasia Studio, 34
- PowerPoint Add-In Watermark Options, 31
- PowerPoint Options
 - Camtasia Studio Tools, 353
- PowerPoint to DVD
 - Production Preset, 186
- PowerPoint to iPod
 - Production Preset, 186
- PowerPoint to Web
 - Production Preset, 187
- PowerPoint to Window Mobile Device (320x240)
 - Production Preset, 187
- PowerPoint to Window Mobile Device (640x480)
 - Production Preset, 187
- Prefix
 - Recorder Capture tab, 396
- Preroll
 - CAMV Encoding Options, 232
- Preserve Image Size
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 32
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- Preset video size
 - Video Size Screen, 235
- Preview
 - Time/Date Format Options, 274
- Preview
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- Preview
 - Recorder Annotation Tab, 378
- Preview
 - Recorder Camera Tab, 403
- Preview Current Settings, 143
- Preview Frame Rate
 - Camtasia Studio Program Options, 352
- Preview Manager, 144
- Preview Manager Display Fields, 145
- Preview Playback Area, 57
- Preview the PIP track as a floating window (side-by-side), 97
- Preview the PIP track on top of the Video track, 97

- Preview the Question, 118, 119, 120
- Previous Clip
 - Camtasia Studio Play Menu, 347
 - Playback Control Toolbar, 58
- Previous Marker
 - Camtasia Studio Play Menu, 347
- Produce
 - Multiple Projects at One Time, 249
- Produce both zip file and unzipped files
 - Manifest Options Screen, 242
- Produce Just a Sample of the Timeline, 142
- Produce Multiple Files
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 154
- Produce multiple files based on my Markers
 - Flash Options TOC Tab, 217
 - Marker Options Screen, 244
- Produce Selection As
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
- Produce unzipped files
 - Manifest Options Screen, 242
- Produce Video As
 - Camtasia Studio
 - Main Toolbar, 43
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
- Produce Video for Sharing, 40
- Produce Video Screen
 - Custom Production Wizard, 246
- Produce zip file
 - Manifest Options Screen, 242
- Production
 - What is it?, 40
- Production Name
 - Produce Video Screen, 246
- Production Options
 - Adobe Flash, 195
 - Audio Video Interleave (AVI) and CD-ROM
 - Distribution, 201
 - CD Distribution
 - Interactive MenuMaker, 300
 - CD-ROM Distribution, 201
 - DVD and AVI, 202
 - Hard Drive Distribution
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 152
 - QuickTime (MOV), 200
 - SWF/FLV, 195
- Production Preset
 - Create at the End of Production, 190
 - Create New, 189
 - Use to Produce Video, 186
- Production Preset Details, 186
 - PowerPoint to DVD, 186
 - PowerPoint to iPod, 186
 - PowerPoint to Web, 187
 - PowerPoint to Window Mobile Device (320x240), 187
 - PowerPoint to Window Mobile Device (640x480), 187
 - Screen Recording to iPod, 187
 - Screen Recording to Web, 188
 - Timeline Audio to MP3, 188
- Production Presets
 - Managing, 191
- What are they?, 185
- Production Preview, 142
 - Preview Current Settings, 143
 - Preview Manager, 144
- Production Profiles
 - Customize, 185
 - Manage, 191
- Production Results Screen, 247
- Production Wizard
 - Custom, 207
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 146
- Professional Quality Effects, 80
- Profiles
 - Windows Media Encoding Options, 221
- Program Options
 - Camtasia Studio Tools, 351
- Project Content
 - MenuMaker Edit Menu, 411
- Project Information, 137
 - Metadata, 137
- Project Properties
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
 - MenuMaker File Menu, 410
- Prompt before capture
 - Recorder Annotation Tab, 378
- Prompt before update check
 - Camtasia Studio Upgrade Options, 355
- Prompt for next action after recording is saved
 - Camtasia Studio PowerPoint Options, 353
- Prompt for text when adding Markers
 - Camtasia Studio Program Options, 352
- Prompt to upload to Screencast.com after I preview my production
 - Camtasia Studio Screencast.com Options, 354
- Properties of an Embedded Picture-in-Picture Clip, 93
- Publisher
 - Metadata Field, 139
- Question, 118, 119, 120
- Question Properties, 118, 119, 120, 121
- Question Type Dialog Box, 117
- Quick Look at Creating Captions, 124
- Quick Start Videos
 - Camtasia Studio Help Menu, 349
- QuickTime (MOV), 200
 - Encoding Options Screen
 - Custom Production Wizard, 223
 - Video File Type, 193
- Quiz
 - Add to my Timeline, 114
- Quiz and Survey Reporting Options
 - Custom Production Wizard, 240
 - Video Options Screen, 237
- Quiz Appearance and Feedback, 115
- Quiz name, 115, 118, 119, 120, 121
- Ratio, 102
 - Video Dimensions Preview Screen, 164
- RealMedia Encoding Options Screen
 - Custom Production Wizard, 228
- RealMedia Streaming Media (RM), 204

- RealPlayer Plug-In, 205, 206
- Recent File
 - MenuMaker File Menu, 410
- Recent Projects
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
- Recent Recordings
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
- Recommend my Production Settings WiFlash
 - Templates Screen, 158
- Recommend my Production Settings Wizard, 146
 - Hard Drive or Other Distribution Production Option, 152
 - Table of Contents, 165
- Recommend my Production Settings Wizard DVD
 - Production is Complete, 174
- Recommend my Production Settings Wizard Hard
 - Drive Production is Complete, 175
- Recommend my Production Settings Wizard iPod or
 - iTunes Production is Complete, 176
- Recommend my Production Settings Wizard Web
 - What Would You Like To Do Next?, 177
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardCD
 - Distribution Production Option, 150
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardCD
 - Production is Complete, 172
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardCD What
 - Would You Like To Do Next?, 180
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardChange
 - Dimensions, 163
- Recommend my Production Settings
 - WizardCompleting the Camtasia Studio
 - Production Wizard, 167
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardDVD
 - What Would You Like To Do Next?, 181
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardDVD-
 - ready Distribution Production Option, 151
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardE-Mail
 - Distribution Production Option, 149
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardE-mail
 - Production is Complete, 171
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardHard
 - Drive What Would You Like To Do Next?, 182
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardHow will
 - you distribute your video?, 147
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardiPod or
 - iTunes, 153
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardiPod
 - What Would You Like To Do Next?, 183
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardOptimize
 - for File Size or Audio Quality, 157
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardOptimize
 - for File Size or Video Quality, 156
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardProduce
 - Multiple Files, 154
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardShare
 - Your Video by E-Mail, 179
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardWeb
 - Distribution Production Option, 148
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardWeb
 - Production is Complete, 169
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardWhat
 - Type of Content does your Timeline Include, 155
- Recommend my Production Settings WizardWhere
 - would you like to save your video files, 166
- Recommended Settings for Normal Screen
 - Recordings, 197
- Recommended Settings: Higher Motion Screen
 - Recordings & Camcorder Videos, 198
- Record
 - Annotation Effects, 267
 - Automatically Add Highlights to Multiple Areas, 272
 - Delete a Recording, 263
 - Highlight One Area Of the Screen, 273
 - How do I?, 37
 - Pause a Recording, 263
 - Picture-in-Picture, 83
 - Recorder
 - Capture Menu Options, 370
 - Main Toolbar, 357
 - Stop a Recording, 263
 - Record a Picture-in-Picture (PIP) Video Clip, 84
 - Record a pre-defined region, 361
 - Record a selected window, 360
 - Record a Time or Date Stamp, 268
 - Record a user-defined region, 361
 - Record a Video Using Single Frame Capturing, 291
 - Record an AVI – Not a CAMREC, 392
 - Record an Elapsed Time Stamp, 269
 - Record audio
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 29
 - Record Audio
 - Picture-in-Picture Options, 85
 - Recorder Audio Toolbar, 364
 - Recorder Capture Menu Options, 370
 - Record Camera
 - Recorder Capture Menu Options, 370
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 344
 - Recorder Camera Toolbar, 368
 - Record from camera
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 30
 - Record mouse cursor
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 29
 - Record PowerPoint
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
 - Record selection, 89
 - Record the Cursor with Mouse Clicks and Apply
 - Cursor Sounds, 284
 - Record the entire computer screen, 360
 - Record the Screen
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
 - Record the Screen with Audio, 264
 - Record the Screen with Camera (PIP), 265
 - Record to audio track 1, 89
 - Record to audio track 2, 89
 - Record until end of clip, 89
 - Record until end of *Timeline*, 89
 - Record While Highlighting Multiple Areas of the
 - Screen, 272
 - Record While Highlighting One Area of the Screen,
 - 273

- Record with a Caption, 271
- Record with a Computer Name, 270
- Record with a Cursor Highlight, 282
- Record with a Cursor Highlight and Keystroke Clicks, 283
- Record with a Time or Date Stamp, 268
- Record with a User Name Stamp, 270
- Record with a Watermark, 285
- Record with an Elapsed Time Stamp, 269
- Record with AutoPan Effect, 287
- Record with AutoZoom Effect, 288
- Record with Cursor and Mouse Clicks, 281
- Record with Keystroke Clicks, 283
- Record with the Cursor, 280
- Record with Zoom and Pan Effects, 286
- Record with Zoom To Effect, 289
- Record your PowerPoint Presentation with the Add-In, 26
- Record/Pause
 - Recorder Hotkeys Tab, 404
- Record/Pause Hotkey
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 30
- Recorder, 260
 - Advanced Hotkeys, 405
 - Annotation Toolbar, 362
 - Audio Setup Button, 402
 - Audio Toolbar, 364
 - Camera Toolbar, 368
 - Capture Menu Options, 370
 - Choosing a Toolbar, 356
 - Command Line Customizations, 418
 - Compact View, 358
 - Configure TSCC Options, 400
 - Create a Hotkey, 405
 - Cursor Setup Options, 381
 - Cursor Toolbar, 365
 - Custom Date Format Symbols, 276
 - Effects Menu Options, 373
 - Effects Options, 376
 - Font Options
 - Background Color, 278
 - Drop Shadow, 277
 - Font, 278
 - Normal, 277
 - Outline Color, 278
 - Outlined Shadow, 277
 - Position, 278
 - Shadow Color, 278
 - Text Color, 278
 - Transparent Background, 278
 - Word Wrap, 278
 - Help Menu Options, 375
 - Highlight Cursor Options, 382
 - Highlight Mouse Clicks Options, 383
 - Hotkeys Tab, 404
 - Live Output Capture Mode, 294
 - Live Tab
 - Use Live Output, 295
 - Main Toolbar, 357
 - Minimal View, 359
 - Normal Mode, 290
 - ScreenDraw Tab Options, 384
 - Set to Time-Lapse Capture Mode, 293
 - Single Frame Capturing, 291
 - Standard View, 358
 - System Stamp & Caption Option Buttons, 277
 - Time/Date Format Dialog Box, 274
 - Time-lapse Capture Setup Options, 293
 - Tool Options
 - Time-lapse Setup Fields
 - AVI Capture Rate, 293
 - Streams Tab
 - Time-lapse Setup Fields
 - AVI Playback Rate, 293
 - Tools Menu Options, 374
 - View Menu Options, 371
 - Watermark Tab, 385
 - Watermark Tab Options, 386
 - Zoom Tab Options, 388
 - Zoom-n-Pan Toolbar, 366
- Recorder Annotation Tab
 - Effects Options, 377
- Recorder Audio Tab, 401
- Recorder Basics, 262
- Recorder Camera Tab, 403
- Recorder Capture Modes, 290
- Recorder Capture Tab, 390
- Recorder Cursor Tab
 - Effects Options, 380
 - Recorder Effects Options, 380
- Recorder Effects
 - Annotation Tab Options, 377
- Recorder Input Options, 360
- Recorder Menu Options, 369
- Recorder or Player Command Line Customizations, 417
- Recorder Sound Tab
 - Effects Options, 379
 - Recorder Effects Options, 379
- Recorder Toolbars, 356
- Recorder Tools Options, 389
- Recorder View
 - Change, 358
- Recorder Zoom Tab, 387
- Recorder's File Name Options Button, 396
- Recording
 - Add a Watermark, 285
 - Add a Zoom To Effect, 289
 - Add an AutoPan Effect, 287
 - Add an AutoZoom Effect, 288
 - Add Zoom and Pan Effects, 286
- Recording Wizard, 15
 - After you Record, 23
 - Audio Settings, 19
 - Begin Recording, 22
 - Choose Camera Settings, 21
 - Record a Region, 16
 - Record a Window, 17
 - Recording Options, 18
 - Save the Recording, 24

- Tune Volume Input Levels, 20
- Red Text, 131
- Redo, 415
 - Camtasia Studio
 - Main Toolbar, 43
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 343
 - MenuMaker Edit Menu, 411
- Region
 - Recorder Input Options, 361
- Relation
 - Metadata Field, 138
- Remove, 102
 - Recorder Audio Tab, 402
- Remove a Production Preset, 192
- Remove all Callouts, 110
- Remove all Markers
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 343
- Remove all PIP clips
 - Manage PIP Clips, 95
- Remove Movie
 - Theater Menu Color, 332
- Remove Selected Callout, 108
- Remove selected PIP clip
 - Manage PIP Clips, 95
- Remove Selected Zoom-n-Pan key frame, 113
- Removing a Video or Audio Clip from the Timeline, 70
- Rename
 - Flash Options TOC Tab, 217
 - Marker Options Screen, 245
 - Table of Contents Screen, 165
- Repeat
 - Player Options, 408
- Repeat movie until closed
 - Pack and Show Wizard Options, 257
 - Player Command Line Options, 309
- Replace with Silence
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Replacing Existing Audio with Silence, 79
- Report dropped frames
 - Recorder Capture Tab, 391
- Report Quiz Results, 115
- Report results through e-mail
 - Quiz and Survey Reporting Options, 240
- Report score using SCORM
 - Quiz and Survey Reporting Options, 240
- Report Survey Results, 116
- Reset Balloon Tips
 - Camtasia Studio Help Menu, 349
- Resource Identifier
 - Metadata Field, 138
- Resource Type
 - Metadata Field, 138
- Response, 123
- Restore noise, 102
- Restore Shape Defaults, 107
- Resume, 132
 - Recorder
 - Main Toolbar, 357
- Rewind
 - Player Options, 408
- Rights Management
 - Metadata Field, 139
- RM
 - Video File Type, 194
- Round frame size to a 4 pixel boundary
 - Recorder Capture Tab, 391
- Run Hidden
 - Recorder
 - Command Line, 418
- Sample Production, 142
- Save As
 - Recorder Audio Tab, 402
- Save as AVI
 - Recorder Capture Tab, 390
- Save as AVI with a project file, 33
- Save as CAMREC, 33
 - Recorder Capture Tab, 390
- Save as Default
 - Player Command Line Options
 - Player Command Line Options, 310
- Save As Template
 - MenuMaker File Menu, 410
- Save Audio
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
- Save Audio Track as an MP3 or WAV File, 79
- Save Frame As
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
- Save Project
 - Camtasia Studio
 - Main Toolbar, 43
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
 - MenuMaker File Menu, 410
 - MenuMaker Toolbar, 415
- Save Project & Export Flash Menu
 - Theater Menu, 329
- Save Project As
 - Camtasia Studio File Menu, 342
 - MenuMaker File Menu, 410
- Save the Current Frame as an Image, 75
- Save the Recording, 24
- Save this and add another question, 120
- Save this and return to the manager, 120
- Score this question, 121
- SCORM
 - Manifest Options Screen
 - Custom Production Wizard, 241
- SCORM Options
 - Quiz and Survey Reporting Options, 240
- Screen
 - Recorder Input Options, 360
- Screen capture codec
 - Recorder Video Tab, 397
- Screen capture frame rate / frames/sec
 - Recorder Video Tab, 397
- Screen Draw and ScreenPad, 266
- Screen Recording Enhancement, 80
- Screen Recording to iPod
 - Production Preset, 187
- Screen Recording to Web

- Production Preset, 188
- Screen Size, 235
- Screencast.com login Reset
 - Camtasia Studio Screencast.com Options, 354
- Screencast.com Options
 - Camtasia Studio Tools, 354
- ScreenDraw
 - Recorder Annotation Toolbar, 363
 - Recorder Hotkeys Tab, 404
- ScreenDraw Tab
 - Recorder, 384
- ScreenPad, 266
 - Recorder View Menu Options, 372
- Scrubber
 - Playback Control Toolbar, 58
- Seconds
 - AVI Encoding Options, 225
- Security
 - Flash Player 8, 422
- Seek Bar
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Select
 - Fixed Region Dialog Box, 361
- Select a Part of the Timeline, 65
- Select Package Video Options, 259
- Select PIP Preview, 96
- Select Screen Region, 16
- Select Window, 17
- Selecting Markers or Quizzes
 - Flash Options TOC Tab, 217
 - Table of Contents Screen, 165
- Selecting the Pack and Show Options, 256
- Semi-translucent
 - Recorder Highlight Cursor, 382
- Set the Display Options for my Menu using the
 - Project Properties, 308
- Set the Recorder to Live Output Mode, 295
- Set the Recorder to Time-Lapse Capture Mode, 293
- Settings, 101
- Settings for Normal Screen Recordings, 197
- Shadow direction
 - Picture-in-Picture Properties, 94
- Shape
 - Recorder Highlight Cursor, 382
 - Recorder Highlight Mouse Clicks, 383
- Shape Size, 107
- Share
 - Videos, 193
- Share Your Video by E-Mail
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 179
- Sharing My Video, 41
- Short Answer Question Options, 120
- Short Answer Question Options Table, 120
- Show / Hide Parameters
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 318
- Show "Select PIP Preview" dialog
 - Camtasia Studio Program Options, 352
- Show a Hidden Section of the PIP Clip, 93
- Show about box
 - Flash Options Control Tab, 218
- Show About box
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 335
- Show Back Button
 - MenuMaker Buttons Tab, 322
- Show Cursor
 - Recorder Cursor Toolbar, 365
- Show duration
 - Flash Options Control Tab, 218
- Show Duration
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 335
- Show elapsed time
 - Flash Options Control Tab, 219
- Show Elapsed Time
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 335
- Show Entire Video, 112
- Show Home Button
 - MenuMaker Buttons Tab, 322
- Show Large Toolbar Buttons
 - MenuMaker View Menu, 412
- Show loading movie
 - Flash Options Control Tab, 219
 - Theater Controls Tab Options, 335
- Show Play Controls
 - HTML Options Screen, 243
- Show Previews for Project
 - Production Preview Manager, 144
- Show Production Results
 - Produce Video Screen, 247
- Show Quiz Feedback
 - Quiz and Survey Reporting Options, 240
- Show quiz placeholder
 - Camtasia Studio Program Options, 351
- Show Stamp for
 - Recorder Annotation Tab, 378
- Show Storyboard
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Show Timeline
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Show toolbar underneath capture rectangle during
 - recording
 - Recorder Capture Tab, 391
- Show welcome dialog on startup
 - Camtasia Studio Program Options, 351
- Show zoom rectangle during AutoZoom
 - Recorder Zoom Tab, 388
- Show zoom rectangles, 113
- Show/Hide PIP video
 - Picture-in-Picture Properties, 94
- Shrink to Fit
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 345
- Side'by'Side Video, 97
- Silence the Audio, 79
- Single frame capture
 - Recorder Video Tab, 398
- Single Frame capture
 - Recorder Capture Tab, 391
- Single Frame Capture Mode
 - Enable, 291
- Size
 - MenuMaker General Tab, 312

- Picture-in-Picture Properties, 94
- Recorder Highlight Cursor, 382
- Recorder Highlight Mouse Clicks, 383
- Snap To
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 346
- Solid capture rectangle
 - Recorder Capture Tab, 390
- Sort Alphabetically
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 318
- Sort By Name
 - MenuMaker Choose Files Screen, 302
- Sort by Type
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 318
- Sort By Type
 - MenuMaker Choose Files Screen, 302
- Source
 - Metadata Field, 138
- Special Effects
 - Add, 80
- Split
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 343
- Split at all Markers
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 343
- Split Video
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Splitting a Clip on the Timeline, 67
- Standard
 - Recorder View Menu Options, 371
- Standard video size
 - Video Size Screen, 235
- Standard View
 - Recorder, 358
- Standard Zoom Size, 112
- Start, 131
- Start a new project by importing media files, 13
- Start a new project by recording a PowerPoint presentation, 13
- Start a new project by recording the screen, 13
- Start a Recording, 263
- Start Menu automatically when CD-ROM is inserted
 - MenuMaker Project Properties, 308
- Start playing automatically
 - Pack and Show Wizard Options, 257
 - Player Command Line Options, 309
- Start Recording, 88
 - Picture-in-Picture Options, 85
- Start recording paused
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 29
- Start Training Audio, 102
- Start Video Playing
 - HTML Options Screen, 243
- Start X and Start Y
 - Fixed Region Dialog Box, 361
- Start, Pause, Stop, and Delete a Recording, 263
- Start/Resume
 - Recorder
 - Command Line, 418
- Startup sound
 - MenuMaker Project Properties, 309
- Status bar
 - MenuMaker View Menu, 412
- Status Bar
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 345
- Stay on last frame
 - Pack and Show Wizard Options, 257
 - Player Command Line Options, 309
- Step Backward
 - Camtasia Studio Play Menu, 347
 - Playback Control Toolbar, 58
- Step Forward
 - Camtasia Studio Play Menu, 347
 - Playback Control Toolbar, 58
- Stop, 132
 - Camtasia Studio Play Menu, 347
 - Playback Control Toolbar, 58
- Stop a Recording, 263
- Stop Recording, 88
 - Picture-in-Picture Options, 85
- Storyboard
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 345
 - Learn About Storyboard View, 46
- Storyboard View, 46
- Stretch to fit, 235
- Subject
 - Manifest Options Screen, 242
 - Metadata Field, 137
- Submenu
 - Add to MenuMaker Project, 320
- Summary
 - Metadata Field, 140
- Support, 423
 - Camtasia Studio Help Menu, 349
 - Contact TechSmith, 423
- Support Links, 423
- Survey
 - Add to my Timeline, 114
- Survey Appearance and Feedback, 116
- Survey name, 116
- SWF
 - Flash Options Video Tab, 212
- SWF High Quality Settings, 195
- SWF Medium Quality Settings, 195
- SWF Options
 - Pack and Show Wizard, 257
- SWF Smallest Size Settings, 196
- Sync Text & Audio Dialog Box
 - Sync Open Captions, 134
- Sync Text and Audio, 125
- System Stamp & Caption Customization Options, 277
- System Stamp Options
 - Recorder Annotation Tab, 378
- Table Column Headings
 - Production Preview Manager, 144
- Table of Contents

- Recommend my Production Settings Wizard, 165
- Table of Contents Tab
 - Custom Production Wizard, 217
- Take the Camtasia Studio Tutorial, 11
- Target Audience
 - CAMV Encoding Options, 231
 - RealMedia Encoding Options, 228
- Target Bitrate Settings
 - CAMV Encoding Options, 231
- Target Flash Version
 - Flash Options Video Tab, 212
- Task List
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 345
- Task List and Task Area, 56
- Technical Reference Library, 340
- TechSmith Contact Information
 - Mailing Address, 423
 - Telephone, 423
- TechSmith on the Web
 - Camtasia Studio Help Menu, 349
- TechSmith Support Links, 423
- TechSmith Technical Support, 423
- Tell a Friend
 - Camtasia Studio Help Menu, 349
- Tell Me More about this File Type, 193
- Template
 - Choose a MenuMaker, 300
 - Flash Templates Screen, 159, 210
- Template Examples, 160
- Temporary File Folder
 - Recorder Program Tab, 407
- Temporary Storage Folder
 - Camtasia Studio Program Options, 352
- Test Menu
 - MenuMaker File Menu, 410
 - MenuMaker Toolbar, 415
- Text & Audio Dialog Box, 134
- Text Alignment
 - List Tab MenuMaker, 314
- Text Box, 107
- Text Color
 - List Tab MenuMaker, 314
- Text Indent, 108
- The Basics of Using Recorder, 262
- The Task List and the Task Area, 56
- Theater, 325
 - Controls Tab Options, 335
 - Controls Tab View, 334
 - Flash Menu for Web, 326
 - Menu Color Options, 332
 - Menu Tab View, 330
- Theater General Properties Options, 331
- Theme
 - Flash Templates Screen, 159, 210
- Threshold, 102
- Time
 - Time/Date Format Options, 274
- Time Increments
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Time only
 - Time/Date Format Options, 274
 - Time or Date Stamp
 - Apply, 268
 - Time Status Bar
 - Playback Control Toolbar, 58
 - Time then date
 - Time/Date Format Options, 274
 - Time/Date Format
 - Recorder Annotation Tab, 377
 - Time/Date Format Dialog Box, 274
 - Time/Date Format Options
 - Date, 274
 - Time-lapse capture
 - Recorder Video Tab, 398
 - Time-Lapse Capture Mode, 292
 - Time-lapse Capture Setup Options, 293
 - Time-lapse Setup
 - Recorder Video Tab, 398
- Timeline
 - Add a Marker, 68
 - Add a Picture-in-Picture Recording, 83
 - Add a Title Clip, 81
 - Adding Clips to, 48
 - Adjusting the Audio of a Clip, 76
 - Adjusting the Clip Speed of a Video Clip, 74
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 345
 - Content
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 155
 - Cutting a Selection from the Video, 66
 - Deleting an Element from the Timeline, 71
 - Dragging a Clip or Element to a New Location on the Timeline, 69
 - Editing Toolbar Buttons, 45
 - Cut Selection, 45
 - Fade In, 45
 - Fade Out, 45
 - Replace with Silence, 45
 - Replacing Existing Audio with Silence, 79
 - Selection Seek Bar, 45
 - Show Storyboard, 45
 - Show Timeline, 45
 - Split Video, 45
 - Time Increments, 45
 - Tracks, 45
 - Volume Down, 45, 78
 - Volume Fade Out, 77
 - Volume Up, 45
 - Zoom In, 45
 - Zoom Out, 45
 - Elements, 50
 - Extending the Frame of a Video Clip, 72
 - Fade In Audio, 77
 - Increase the Volume Up, 78
 - Locking and Unlocking Tracks, 64
 - Make a Timeline Selection, 65
 - Marking In or Marking Out a Clip or Element on the Timeline, 73
 - Removing a Video or Audio Clip from the Timeline, 70
 - Save the Current Frame as an Image, 75
 - Searching the Video, 63

- Searching the Video using the Timeline, 63
- Splitting a Clip on the Timeline, 67
- Toolbar, 45
- What is it?, 44
- Timeline Audio to MP3
 - Production Preset, 188
- Timeline Help
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Timeline View, 44
 - What is it?, 44
- Title
 - Manifest Options Screen, 242
 - Metadata Field, 137
- Title Clip
 - Add a Title Clip to Timeline, 81
- Title Clips
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 344
- To Add a Submenu, 320
- To Add Another Submenu, 320
- To Edit a Submenu, 321
- To Enable Single Frame Capture Mode, 291
- To title bar
 - Pack and Show Wizard Options, 257
- Toggle Map View
 - MenuMaker Toolbar, 415
- Toggle PIP Preview
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 345
- Toggle View
 - Recorder
 - Main Toolbar, 357
- Tool
 - ScreenDraw Tab, 384
- Toolbar
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 345
 - MenuMaker View Menu, 412
 - Timeline, 45
- Toolbars
 - Recorder, 356
- Tools
 - Camtasia Studio
 - Main Toolbar, 43
- Tools Menu Options
 - Camtasia Studio, 348
 - MenuMaker, 413
 - Recorder, 374
- Tools Options
 - Camtasia Studio, 350
 - Recorder, 389
- Tooltip
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 317
 - MenuMaker Buttons Tab, 322
- Top Position
 - MenuMaker Buttons Tab, 322
- Total
 - Flash Templates Screen, 159, 210
- Tracks
 - On or Off, 64
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Transitions
 - Adding, 103
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 344
- Translucent
 - Recorder Highlight Cursor, 382
 - ScreenDraw Tab, 384
- Tune Volume Input Levels, 20
- Turn off Hardware Acceleration System-Wide, 394
- Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Recorder, 393
- Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Camtasia Studio's New Recording Wizard, 394
- Turn off Hardware Acceleration Within Specific Media Players, 395
- Turn Off the PowerPoint Add-In Within Camtasia Studio, 34
- Turn On the PowerPoint Add-In Within Camtasia Studio, 34
- Turn the PowerPoint Add-In On or Off, 34
- Turn the Volume Down, 78
- Turn Tracks On or Off, 64
- Turning the Volume Up, 78
- Tutorial
 - Create a Camtasia Studio Flash Movie, 11
- Tutorials
 - Creating your Final Video, 141
- Two Videos Side-by-Side
 - Flash Template Examples, 161
- Two Videos Side-by-Side with TOC
 - Flash Template Examples, 161
- Undo, 43
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 343
 - MenuMaker Edit Menu, 411
 - MenuMaker Toolbar, 415
- Unlock Timeline Tracks, 64
- Until end of clip
 - Picture-in-Picture Options, 85
- Until end of selection on Timeline
 - Picture-in-Picture Options, 85
- Until end of Timeline
 - Picture-in-Picture Options, 85
- unzipped files, 242
- Upgrade Options
 - Camtasia Studio Tools, 355
- Upload files to the Web using a hosting service
 - Produce Video Screen, 247
- Upload video to Screencast.com, 178
- Use a Production Preset to Produce Your Video, 186
- Use a Zipped Camtasia Studio Project, 59
- Use actual cursor
 - Recorder Cursor Setup, 381
- Use as Default, 123
- Use cursor from file
 - Recorder Cursor Setup, 381
- Use custom cursor
 - Recorder Cursor Setup, 381
- Use instant Zoom-n-Pan speed to reduce size
 - Video Size Screen, 236
- Use Live Output
 - Recorder, 295
- Use More Than One Production Preset for all Produced Files, 252

- Use One Production Preset for all Produced Files, 249
- Use smooth scale during AutoZoom
 - Recorder Zoom Tab, 388
- Use smooth scaling
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
 - Recorder Zoom Tab, 388
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- Use survey defaults, 121
- Use these Settings
 - Production Preview Manager, 145
- Use Transparent Color
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 31
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- User Name
 - Recorder Annotation Tab, 378
- User Name Stamp
 - Apply, 270
- Using Camtasia Studio's, 35
- Using Recorder
 - The Basics, 262
- Using the Clip Bin, 47
- Using the Preview Playback Area, 57
- Using the Task List and the Task Area, 56
- Variable Bit Rate Encoding
 - RealMedia Encoding Options, 229
- Vector Grow, 108
- Version
 - Manifest Options Screen, 242
- Vertical Offset
 - Recorder Watermark Tab, 386
 - Watermark Screen, 239
- Video
 - Flash Templates Screen, 159, 210
 - Pack & Show Executable File, 255
 - Record Using Single Frame Capturing, 291
 - Screen Size, 235
 - Searching, 63
 - Share, 193
 - Zoom-n-Pan Effects, 111
- Video Codec, 32
 - Flash Options PIP Tab, 215
- Video Codec button, 32
- Video Compression, 399
 - AVI Encoding Options, 225
- Video Dimensions Preview Screen
 - Recommend my Production Settings Wizard, 163
- Video File Type Overview Table, 193
- Video Format
 - Picture-in-Picture Options, 85
 - Recorder Camera Tab, 403
- Video Frame rate
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 29
- Video Info Options
 - Video Options Screen, 237
- Video Options Screen
 - Custom Production Wizard, 237
- Video Quality
 - Flash Options PIP Tab, 215
 - RealMedia Encoding Options, 228
- Video Screen Tab, 397
- Video Size Screen
 - Custom Production Wizard, 235
- Video Tab
 - Custom Production Wizard, 211
 - Recorder, 397
- View Menu Options
 - Camtasia Studio, 345
 - MenuMaker, 412
 - Recorder, 371
- View Task List
 - Camtasia Studio
 - Main Toolbar, 43
- View Timeline Preview in Full Screen Mode, 61
- Views in the Clip Bin, 47
- Visual Cues When Audio Enhancements Are Turned On, 100
- Voice Narration, 87, 88
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 344
 - Extend Current Frame, 90
- Voice Narration Add to a Video on the Timeline, 87
- Voice Narration Options, 88
 - Audio Setup Wizard, 89
 - Extend Current Frame, 88
- Volume
 - Player Options, 408
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 30
 - Recorder Sound Tab, 379
- Volume Down, 78
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Volume Up, 78
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Watermark Options
 - PowerPoint Add-In Option, 29, 31
 - Video Options Screen, 237
- Watermark Screen
 - Custom Production Wizard, 238
- Watermark Tab
 - Recorder, 385
- Watermark Tab Options, 386
- WAV File
 - Save Audio Track As, 79
- Web Address
 - Content Tab MenuMaker, 317
- Web Distribution Production Option
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 148
- Web Production is Complete
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 169
- Web What Would You Like To Do Next?
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 177
- Welcome Screen Options, 13
 - MenuMaker, 298
- Welcome to MenuMaker, 297
- What Are Callouts?, 104
- What Are Captions?, 124
- What Are Transitions?, 103
- What is a CAMREC File?, 392
- What is a Flash Hot Spot?, 108
- What is a Hot Spot?, 108

- What is a Production Preset?, 185
- What is a Recording?, 37
- What is Editing?, 39
- What is Metadata?, 136
- What is The Clip Bin?, 47
- What is the Storyboard View?, 46
- What is the Timeline View?, 44
- When Audio Enhancements Are Turned On, 100
- When Do I Produce?, 40
- When Do I Use the Storyboard View?, 46
- Where would you like to save your video files(s)?
 - Recommend my Production Settings, 166
- Which Markers would you like to use in the Table of Contents?
 - Marker Options Screen, 245
- Width
 - ScreenDraw Tab, 384
- Width (in chars), 133
- Width and Height
 - Fixed Region Dialog Box, 361
- Width of your Caption Text, 128
- Window
 - Recorder Input Options, 360
- Windows Media (WMV - Streaming Format), 197
- Windows Media Encoding Options Screen
 - Custom Production Wizard, 221
- Windows Media Video (WMV)
 - Video File Type, 193
- Wizard
 - MenuMaker Toolbar, 416
 - Pack and Show, 256
 - Recorder Capture Menu Options, 370
 - Recording, 15
- Would you like to Create a Table of Contents?
 - Recommend my, 165
- Zip Output to send to you Web administrator, 177
- Zip Up a Camtasia Studio Project, 60
- Zoom
 - Key Frames, 112
- Zoom & Pan
 - Recorder Effects Menu Options, 373
- Zoom & Pan Toolbar
 - Recorder View Menu Options, 372
- Zoom and Pan Toolbar
 - Recorder, 366
- Zoom in, 112
- Zoom In
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 345
 - MenuMaker View Menu, 412
 - Recorder Hotkeys Tab, 406
 - Recorder Zoom Toolbar, 366
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Zoom level at start of capture
 - Recorder Zoom Tab, 388
- Zoom Out, 112
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 345
 - MenuMaker View Menu, 412
 - Recorder Hotkeys Tab, 406
 - Recorder Zoom Toolbar, 366
 - Timeline Toolbar, 45
- Zoom Speed, 113
- Zoom Tab
 - Recorder, 387
- Zoom Tab Options, 388
- Zoom To
 - Recorder Zoom Toolbar, 367
- Zoom to Fit
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 345
 - MenuMaker View Menu, 412
- Zoom to Maximum
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 345
- Zoom to Selection
 - Camtasia Studio View Menu, 345
- Zoom Undo
 - Recorder Zoom Toolbar, 367
- Zoom-n-Pan
 - Camtasia Studio Edit Menu, 344
 - Effects, 111
 - Properties, 113
 - Properties Options, 112
- Zoom-n-Pan Properties
 - Add Zoom-n-Pan key frame, 113
 - Finished, 113
 - Modify Zoom-n-Pan key frame, 113
 - Remove all Zoom-n-Pan key frame, 113
 - Remove Selected Zoom-n-Pan key frame, 113
 - Show zoom rectangles, 113
- Zoom-n-Pan Properties Options
 - Custom Zoom Size, 112
 - Keep Aspect Ratio, 113
 - Position, 113
 - Show Entire Video, 112
 - Standard Zoom Size, 112
 - Zoom Speed, 113